

**UNITED STATES
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION**
Washington, D.C. 20549

**Amendment No. 3
to
Form F-1
REGISTRATION STATEMENT
UNDER
THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933**

Autolus Therapeutics plc

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

England and Wales
(State or other jurisdiction of
incorporation or organization)

2836
(Primary Standard Industrial
Classification Code Number)

Not applicable
(I.R.S. Employer
Identification Number)

**Forest House
58 Wood Lane
White City
London W12 7RZ
United Kingdom
Tel: +44 20 3829 6230**

(Address, including zip code, and telephone number, including area code, of registrant's principal executive offices)

**Corporation Service Company
1180 Avenue of the Americas, Suite 210
New York, NY 10036
+1 800 927 9801**

(Name, address, including zip code, and telephone number, including area code, of agent for service)

Copies of all communications, including communications sent to agent for service, should be sent to:

**Darren K. DeStefano
Christian E. Plaza
Brian F. Leaf
Courtney T. Thorne
Cooley LLP
11951 Freedom Drive
Reston, VA 20190-5656
+1 703 456 8000**

**Ed Lukins
Edward Dyson
Thomas Goodman
Cooley (UK) LLP
Dashwood
69 Old Broad Street
London EC2M 1QS
United Kingdom
+44 20 7785 9355**

**Patrick O'Brien
Emily Oldshue
Ropes & Gray LLP
Prudential Tower
800 Boylston Street
Boston, MA 02199
+1 617 951 7000**

Approximate date of commencement of proposed sale to public: As soon as practicable after this registration statement becomes effective.

If any of the securities being registered on this form are to be offered on a delayed or continuous basis pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act of 1933, check the following box. ☐

If this Form is filed to register additional securities for an offering pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering. ☐

If this Form is a post-effective amendment filed pursuant to Rule 462(c) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering. ☐

If this Form is a post-effective amendment filed pursuant to Rule 462(d) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering. ☐

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, a smaller reporting company or an emerging growth company. See the definitions of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer," "smaller reporting company" and "emerging growth company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

Large Accelerated Filer ☐

Accelerated Filer ☐

Non-Accelerated Filer ☒

(Do not check if a smaller reporting company)

Smaller Reporting Company ☐

Emerging Growth Company ☒

If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards[†] provided to Section 7(a)(2)(B) of the Securities Act. ☒

[†] The term "new or revised financial accounting standard" refers to any update issued by the Financial Accounting Standards Board to its Accounting Standards Codification after April 5, 2012.

CALCULATION OF REGISTRATION FEE

TITLE OF EACH CLASS OF SECURITIES BEING REGISTERED	AMOUNT TO BE REGISTERED(1)(2)	PROPOSED MAXIMUM OFFERING PRICE PER SHARE	PROPOSED MAXIMUM AGGREGATE OFFERING PRICE(1)(2)	AMOUNT OF REGISTRATION FEE(3)
Ordinary shares, nominal value \$0.000042 per share(4)	8,984,375	\$17.00	\$152,734,375	\$19,016.00

(1) Estimated solely for the purpose of computing the amount of the registration fee pursuant to Rule 457(a) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended.

(2) Includes shares represented by American Depositary Shares, or ADSs, that are issuable upon exercise of the underwriters' option to purchase additional shares.

(3) Calculated pursuant to Rule 457(a) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, based on an estimate of the proposed maximum aggregate offering price. Of this amount, a total of \$17,896.88 was previously paid.

(4) These ordinary shares are represented by ADSs, each of which represents one ordinary share of the registrant. ADSs issuable upon deposit of the ordinary shares registered hereby are being registered pursuant to a separate registration statement on Form F-6 (File No. 333-224837).

The registrant hereby amends this registration statement on such date or dates as may be necessary to delay its effective date until the registrant shall file a further amendment which specifically states that this registration statement shall thereafter become effective in accordance with Section 8(a) of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or until the registration statement shall become effective on such date as the Securities and Exchange Commission, acting pursuant to such Section 8(a), shall determine.

The information in this preliminary prospectus is not complete and may be changed. These securities may not be sold until the registration statement filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission is effective. This preliminary prospectus is not an offer to sell nor does it seek an offer to buy these securities in any jurisdiction where the offer or sale is not permitted.

SUBJECT TO COMPLETION, DATED JUNE 19, 2018

PRELIMINARY PROSPECTUS

7,812,500 American Depositary Shares



Representing 7,812,500 Ordinary Shares

We are offering 7,812,500 American Depositary Shares, or ADSs. Each ADS represents one ordinary share. The ADSs may be evidenced by American Depositary Receipts, or ADRs. This is the initial public offering of our ADSs. All of the ADSs are being sold by us.

Prior to this offering, there has been no public market for our ADSs or ordinary shares. It is currently estimated that the initial public offering price per ADS will be between \$15.00 and \$17.00. Our ADSs have been approved for listing on The Nasdaq Global Select Market under the symbol "AUTL."

Investing in our ADSs involves a high degree of risk. Before buying any ADSs, you should carefully read the discussion of material risks of investing in our ADSs in "[Risk Factors](#)" beginning on page 20 of this prospectus.

We are an "emerging growth company" as defined in Section 2(a) of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, and, as such, will be subject to reduced public company reporting requirements. See "Prospectus Summary—Implications of Being an Emerging Growth Company and a Foreign Private Issuer" for additional information.

Neither the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission nor any other regulatory body has approved or disapproved of these securities or passed upon the accuracy or adequacy of this prospectus. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.

	PER ADS	TOTAL
Initial public offering price	\$	\$
Underwriting discounts and commissions(1)	\$	\$
Proceeds, before expenses, to Autolus Therapeutics	\$	\$

(1) We have agreed to reimburse the underwriters for certain expenses. See the section titled "Underwriting" for additional information regarding underwriting compensation.

The underwriters have an option to purchase up to 1,171,875 additional ADSs from us at the initial public offering price less the underwriting discount. The underwriters may exercise this option at any time within 30 days after the date of the final prospectus.

Certain of our existing principal shareholders and their affiliated entities have indicated an interest in purchasing up to an aggregate of \$60 million in ADSs in this offering at the initial public offering price per ADS. However, because indications of interest are not binding agreements or commitments to purchase, the underwriters may determine to sell more, less or no ADSs in this offering to any of these entities, or any of these entities may determine to purchase more, less or no ADSs in this offering. The underwriters will receive the same underwriting discount on any ADSs purchased by these entities as they will on any other ADSs sold to the public in this offering.

The underwriters expect to deliver the ADSs to the purchasers on or about , 2018.

Goldman Sachs & Co. LLC
Wells Fargo Securities

Jefferies
William Blair

Prospectus dated , 2018

TABLE OF CONTENTS

MARKET, INDUSTRY AND OTHER DATA	ii
ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS	ii
PROSPECTUS SUMMARY	1
THE OFFERING	14
SUMMARY FINANCIAL DATA	17
RISK FACTORS	20
SPECIAL NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS	81
USE OF PROCEEDS	83
DIVIDEND POLICY	85
CORPORATE REORGANIZATION	86
CAPITALIZATION	89
DILUTION	91
SELECTED FINANCIAL DATA	93
MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS	96
BUSINESS	112
MANAGEMENT	170
RELATED PARTY TRANSACTIONS	185
PRINCIPAL SHAREHOLDERS	189
DESCRIPTION OF SHARE CAPITAL AND ARTICLES OF ASSOCIATION	192
DESCRIPTION OF AMERICAN DEPOSITARY SHARES	211
SHARES AND ADSs ELIGIBLE FOR FUTURE SALE	223
MATERIAL INCOME TAX CONSIDERATIONS	226
UNDERWRITING	236
EXPENSES OF THIS OFFERING	242
LEGAL MATTERS	243
EXPERTS	243
SERVICE OF PROCESS AND ENFORCEMENT OF LIABILITIES	243
WHERE YOU CAN FIND ADDITIONAL INFORMATION	244
INDEX TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS	F-1

We are responsible for the information contained in this prospectus and any free writing prospectus we prepare or authorize. We have not, and the underwriters have not, authorized anyone to provide you with different information, and we and the underwriters take no responsibility for any other information others may give you. We are not, and the underwriters are not, making an offer to sell our ADSs in any jurisdiction where the offer or sale is not permitted. You should not assume that the information contained in this prospectus is accurate as of any date other than the date on the front cover of this prospectus, regardless of the time of delivery of this prospectus or the sale of any ADSs.

For investors outside the United States: Neither we nor the underwriters have done anything that would permit this offering or possession or distribution of this prospectus in any jurisdiction, other than the United States, where action for that purpose is required. Persons outside the United States who come into possession of this prospectus must inform themselves about, and observe any restrictions relating to, the offering of the ADSs and the distribution of this prospectus outside the United States.

We are incorporated under the laws of England and Wales and a majority of our outstanding securities are owned by non-U.S. residents. Under the rules of the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission, or the SEC, we are currently eligible for treatment as a "foreign private issuer." As a foreign private issuer, we will not be required to file periodic reports and financial statements with the SEC as frequently or as promptly as domestic registrants whose securities are registered under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or the Exchange Act.

MARKET, INDUSTRY AND OTHER DATA

This prospectus contains estimates, projections and other information concerning our industry, our business and the markets for our product candidates. Information that is based on estimates, forecasts, projections, market research or similar methodologies is inherently subject to uncertainties, and actual events or circumstances may differ materially from events and circumstances that are assumed in this information. Unless otherwise expressly stated, we obtained this industry, business, market and other data from our own internal estimates and research as well as from reports, research surveys, studies and similar data prepared by market research firms and other third parties, industry, medical and general publications, government data and similar sources.

In addition, assumptions and estimates of our and our industry's future performance are necessarily subject to a high degree of uncertainty and risk due to a variety of factors, including those described in the section titled "Risk Factors." These and other factors could cause our future performance to differ materially from those expressed in the industry publications, as well as from our assumptions and estimates. See the section titled "Special Note Regarding Forward-Looking Statements."

ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS

We have begun to undertake the corporate reorganization described in the section titled "Corporate Reorganization," pursuant to which Autolus Limited has become a wholly owned subsidiary of Autolus Holdings (UK) Limited, which in turn is now a wholly owned subsidiary of Autolus Therapeutics Limited. Autolus Therapeutics Limited is a recently formed holding company with nominal assets and liabilities. We also have formed another holding company, Autolus Holdings (UK) Limited. Both of these entities are holding companies which have not conducted any operations prior to this offering other than acquiring the entire issued share capital of Autolus Limited and other actions incidental to their formation, the corporate reorganization and this offering.

On June 18, 2018, we re-registered Autolus Therapeutics Limited as a public limited company and changed our name from Autolus Therapeutics Limited to Autolus Therapeutics plc.

Unless otherwise indicated or the context otherwise requires, all references in this prospectus to the terms "Autolus Limited," "Autolus Therapeutics Limited," "Autolus Therapeutics plc," "the company," "we," "us" and "our" refer to (i) Autolus Limited and its wholly owned U.S. subsidiary, Autolus Inc., prior to the completion of our corporate reorganization, (ii) Autolus Therapeutics Limited and its subsidiaries after the completion of our corporate reorganization and (iii) Autolus Therapeutics plc and its subsidiaries after the re-registration of Autolus Therapeutics Limited as a public limited company. See "Corporate Reorganization" for more information.

We own various trademark registrations and applications, and unregistered trademarks, including Autolus Limited and our corporate logo. All other trade names, trademarks and service marks of other companies appearing in this prospectus are the property of their respective holders. Solely for convenience, the trademarks and trade names in this prospectus may be referred to without the ® and ™ symbols, but such references should not be construed as any indicator that their respective owners will not assert, to the fullest extent under applicable law, their rights thereto. We do not intend to use or display other companies' trademarks and trade names to imply a relationship with, or endorsement or sponsorship of us by, any other companies.

PROSPECTUS SUMMARY

The following summary highlights information contained elsewhere in this prospectus and does not contain all of the information you should consider before investing in our ADSs. You should read the entire prospectus carefully, including "Risk Factors," "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations," and our financial statements and the related notes, in each case included in this prospectus before making an investment decision.

Overview

We are a biopharmaceutical company developing next-generation programmed T cell therapies for the treatment of cancer. Using our broad suite of proprietary and modular T cell programming technologies, we are engineering precisely targeted, controlled and highly active T cell therapies that are designed to better recognize cancer cells, break down their defense mechanisms and eliminate these cells. We believe our programmed T cell therapies have the potential to be best-in-class and offer cancer patients substantial benefits over the existing standard of care, including the potential for cure in some patients.

Cancers thrive on their ability to fend off T cells by evading recognition by T cells and by establishing other defense mechanisms, such as checkpoint inhibition and creating a hostile microenvironment. Our next-generation T cell programming technologies allow us to tailor our therapies to address the specific cancer we are targeting and introduce new programming modules into a patient's T cells to give those T cells improved properties to better recognize cancer cells and overcome fundamental cancer defense mechanisms. We believe our leadership in T cell programming technologies will provide us with a competitive advantage as we look to develop future generations of T cell therapies targeting both hematological cancers and solid tumors.

Our clinical-stage pipeline comprises five programs being developed in six hematological and solid tumor indications. We expect to complete the proof-of-concept phases of four Phase 1/2 clinical trials in hematological cancer indications by early 2019. These clinical programs are adaptive and designed to allow collection of sufficient data in the expansion phase of the trials to potentially support registration. We have worldwide commercial rights to all of our programmed T cell therapies.

Our current clinical-stage programs are:

- AUTO1:** a CD19-targeting programmed T cell therapy designed to improve the safety profile of the CD19 binder while maintaining its anti-leukemia activity. AUTO1 has demonstrated this anti-leukemia activity in the absence of severe cytokine release syndrome, or CRS, in a Phase 1 trial of 11 patients with pediatric relapsed or refractory acute B lymphocytic leukemia, or pediatric ALL. A Phase 1 clinical trial in adult patients with ALL is ongoing.
- AUTO2:** the first dual-targeting programmed T cell therapy for the treatment of relapsed or refractory multiple myeloma targeting B-cell Maturation Antigen, or BCMA, and the transmembrane activator and CAML interactor, or TACI. We initiated a Phase 1/2 clinical trial in the third quarter of 2017.
- AUTO3:** the first dual-targeting programmed T cell therapy for the treatment of relapsed or refractory diffuse large B-cell lymphoma, or DLBCL, and pediatric ALL, independently targeting B-lymphocyte antigens CD19 and CD22. We initiated separate Phase 1/2 clinical trials of AUTO3 in DLBCL and in pediatric ALL in the third quarter of 2017.

- AUTO4:** a programmed T cell therapy for the treatment of peripheral T-cell lymphoma targeting TRBC1. We intend to initiate a Phase 1/2 clinical trial in the middle of 2018.
- AUTO6:** a programmed T cell therapy targeting GD2 in development for the treatment of neuroblastoma. A Phase 1 clinical trial with AUTO6 is being sponsored and conducted by Cancer Research UK, or CRUK, and preliminary data has shown initial anti-tumor activity in this solid tumor indication. We are developing a next-generation product candidate, which we refer to as AUTO6 NG, incorporating additional programming modules designed to improve the efficacy, safety and persistence of AUTO6. We expect to initiate a Phase 1/2 clinical trial of AUTO6 NG in 2020.

Our most advanced product candidate, AUTO1, has an optimized engagement of the CD19 target designed to reduce the risk of severe CRS without adversely impacting efficacy. We believe that these properties may make AUTO1 a suitable candidate for the treatment of adult patients with ALL, who tend to be less tolerant of severe toxicity than children with ALL. There are currently no programmed T cell therapies approved for the treatment of adult ALL. AUTO2 and AUTO3 are designed to address a key escape route used by hematological cancers in response to T cell therapies. Cancer cells often mutate and cease to express the antigen that current therapies were designed to recognize. This loss of the target antigen leads to patient relapse. Consequently, we have developed AUTO2 and AUTO3 to employ a dual-targeting mechanism because we believe it may improve durability of treatment response and reduce the frequency of cancer relapse when compared to other currently approved single-targeting T cell therapies, including other chimeric antigen receptor, or CAR, T cell therapies and T cell engager approaches. Our product candidate AUTO4, which we are developing for the treatment of peripheral T-cell lymphoma, employs a novel and differentiated treatment approach. AUTO4 is designed to kill cancerous T cells in a manner that we believe will preserve a portion of the patient's normal, healthy T cells to maintain immunity. AUTO2 and AUTO4 target antigens for which there is limited or no clinical data and also are programmed with a "safety switch" in order to allow us to manage toxicity by eliminating the programmed T cells if a patient experiences severe adverse side effects from the treatment. We are developing AUTO6 NG, which builds upon AUTO6 by incorporating programming modules intended to enhance efficacy and aiming to extend persistence and address the layers of defense that cancer cells deploy to evade T cell killing.

The manufacture and delivery of programmed T cell therapies to patients involves complex, integrated processes, including harvesting T cells from patients, programming the T cells *ex vivo*, or outside the body, multiplying the programmed T cells to obtain the desired dose, and ultimately infusing the programmed T cells back into a patient's body. Providing T cell therapies in a commercially successful manner requires a manufacturing process that is reliable, scalable and economical. We are using a semi-automated, fully enclosed system for cell manufacturing, which is designed to provide a common platform suitable for manufacturing all of our product candidates and to allow for rapid development of our product candidates through clinical trial phases and the regulatory approval processes. In addition, this platform allows for parallel processing and the ability to scale for commercial supply in a controlled environment and at an economical cost. We plan to build internal manufacturing and supply capabilities as well as to utilize the expertise of collaborators on some of the aspects of product delivery, logistics and capacity expansion. We believe having established manufacturing processes suitable for commercialization early in the development of our T cell therapies will allow us to focus on expanding manufacturing capacity during our clinical trials.

We anticipate that the market for T cell therapies will be characterized by rapid cycling of product improvements. We believe our modular approach to T cell programming and the common manufacturing platform used across all our T cell therapies will position us to more quickly develop

follow-on, or next-generation, product candidates with enhanced characteristics, such as pharmacological control, insensitivity to checkpoint inhibition or other desirable features.

Recent Developments

Cash as of March 31, 2018

As of March 31, 2018, our cash and cash equivalents were \$120.7 million.

Our Team

Our management team has a strong track record of accomplishment in redirected T cell therapies, gene therapy, transplantation and oncology. Their collective experience spans key areas of expertise required of a fully integrated company delivering advanced programmed T cell therapies, including fundamental innovation in therapeutic design, translational medicine and clinical development, process sciences, manufacturing and commercialization. We are led by Dr. Christian Itin, our Chairman and Chief Executive Officer. His prior experience includes serving as the chief executive officer of Micromet, Inc., a public biotechnology company acquired by Amgen Inc. in 2012 for \$1.2 billion, where he led the development of blinatumomab, which in 2014 became the first redirected T cell therapy approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration, or FDA. Our proprietary and modular T cell programming technologies were invented by Dr. Martin Pulé, our scientific founder and Senior Vice President and Chief Scientific Officer. Dr. Pulé has been an innovator in the field of genetic engineering of T cells for cancer treatment for almost 20 years. We are backed by leading life sciences investors, including Syncona Limited, Woodford Investment Management, Arix Bioscience plc, Cormorant Asset Management, Google Ventures and Nextech Invest Ltd.

Our Pipeline

The following table summarizes key information about our programmed T cell therapy product candidates and other pipeline programs. We have retained worldwide commercial rights with respect to all of these product candidates.

Product	Indication	Target	Preclinical	Phase 1/2	Phase 2/3
B Cell Malignancies					
AUTO1	Pediatric ALL	CD19	UCL - CARPALL		
AUTO1	Adult ALL	CD19	UCL – ALLCAR19		
AUTO3	Pediatric ALL	CD19 & CD22			
AUTO3	DLBCL	CD19 & CD22			
AUTO3 NG	B-Cell Malignancies	Undisclosed			
Multiple Myeloma					
AUTO2	Multiple Myeloma	BCMA & TAC			
AUTO2 NG	Multiple Myeloma	Undisclosed			
T Cell Lymphoma					
AUTO4	TRBC1+ Peripheral TCL	TRBC1			
AUTO5	TRBC2+ Peripheral TCL	TRBC2			
GD2+ Tumors					
AUTO6	Neuroblastoma	GD2	CRUK		
AUTO6 NG	Neuroblastoma; Melanoma; Osteosarcoma; SCLC	GD2			
Prostate Cancer					
AUTO7	Prostate Cancer	Undisclosed			
Autolus				NG = Next Generation SCLC = Small Cell Lung Cancer	

Our Strategy

Our goal is to use our broad array of proprietary and modular T cell programming technologies to become a fully integrated biopharmaceutical company offering advanced, differentiated, best-in-class programmed T cell therapies. In order to accomplish this goal, we plan to execute on the following key strategies:

- **Simultaneously develop our four current clinical-stage product candidates for the treatment of hematological cancers.** In March 2018, we licensed global rights to develop and commercialize AUTO1 from UCL Business plc, or UCLB, which we plan to develop for the treatment of adult ALL in collaboration with University College London, or UCL. We are co-funding a Phase 1 clinical trial of AUTO1 in adult ALL being conducted by UCL, which is designed to establish proof-of-concept in 2018. We will also consider further development of

AUTO1 for the treatment of pediatric ALL based on emerging data generated from UCL's Phase 1 CARPALL trial of AUTO1. In 2017, we commenced a Phase 1/2 clinical trial for AUTO2 for the treatment of multiple myeloma and Phase 1/2 clinical trials for AUTO3 for the treatment of DLBCL and pediatric ALL. We expect to initiate a Phase 1/2 clinical trial of AUTO4 for the treatment of peripheral T-cell lymphoma in the middle of 2018. We intend to progress each of these product candidates in parallel through clinical trials. Depending on the results we observe in our clinical trials, we believe these product candidates may be eligible for accelerated regulatory approval pathways and we may seek to achieve breakthrough therapy designation from the FDA or PRiority MEdicines, or PRIME, designation from the European Medicines Agency, or EMA.

- **Continue to innovate and develop our product pipeline using a modular approach to T cell programming.** We have a broad and expanding array of programming modules that can be used to bring improved properties to T cells. These modules may lead to improved product features such as an enhanced ability to recognize cancer cells, elements to overcome fundamental cancer defense mechanisms, improved safety through pharmacological control or improved survival or persistence of the programmed T cells. By continuing to develop and deploy new modules as our knowledge of cancer defense mechanisms advances, we believe we will be well positioned to design new programmed T cell product candidates with additional cancer-fighting properties or enhanced safety features tailored to specific indications or cancer sub-types.
- **Expand our product pipeline in solid tumor indications.** CRUK is conducting an exploratory Phase 1 clinical trial of AUTO6, a GD2-targeting programmed T cell therapy, which has shown initial signs of clinical activity in two pediatric patients with neuroblastoma. We have worldwide commercial rights to the Phase 1 clinical data and UCLB patent families covering this program, and are planning to initiate a Phase 1/2 clinical trial of AUTO6 NG, a next-generation product candidate building upon AUTO6, in 2020. In addition, we are planning to initiate a clinical trial of AUTO7 for the treatment of prostate cancer. Both AUTO6 NG and AUTO7 are being developed to incorporate multiple programming elements designed to address certain complexities of solid tumors.
- **Scale our economical manufacturing process.** We have developed our own proprietary viral vector and semi-automated cell manufacturing processes, which we are already using in our clinical-stage programs. We believe these processes are fit for commercial scale and we anticipate they will enable commercial supply at an attractive cost of goods. Manufacturing is currently conducted by, or under the supervision of, our own employees and we have established plans to increase manufacturing capacity to meet our anticipated future clinical and commercial needs.
- **Establish a focused commercial infrastructure.** Our current clinical-stage product candidates are being developed for the treatment of patients with late-stage or rare hematological cancers, most of whom will be treated in specialized treatment centers or hospitals. With our experience in gene therapy, transplantation and oncology, we aim to provide high levels of service and scientific engagement at these treatment centers, and to pilot and establish systems necessary for product delivery by the time of launch.

Our Solution

There remains a critical unmet medical need for improved T cell therapies. We believe that improving efficacy and durability over the products currently on the market or in development for the treatment of cancers requires addressing target antigen loss, countering checkpoint inhibition and

adding novel targets to expand the range of indications amenable to programmed T cell therapy. We believe our clinical-stage product candidates and our approach to T cell programming have the potential to address these limitations.

We are applying our broad array of T cell programming technologies and capabilities to engineer precisely targeted, controlled and highly active T cell therapies that are designed to better recognize cancer cells, break down their defense mechanisms and attack and kill these cells. The breadth of our technology platform allows us to select from a range of programming modules, and our modular approach is designed to enable us to tailor our therapies to address the specific cancer we are targeting, or to improve an already established therapy, such as by making it suitable for outpatient use. We believe this capability represents a competitive advantage in the field and will allow us to position our product candidates to have the potential to be best-in-class.

After identifying a cancer target, we select the suite of programming modules that we believe is best suited to target that particular cancer based on our latest clinical data and the results of our cancer research. A viral vector is used to introduce combinations of these modules into the DNA of the T cells. The particular modules selected may vary, and not every product candidate, including our current product candidates, contains all categories of modules. With the exception of AUTO1, all of our product candidates contain two or more programming modules.

Advanced Targeting Technologies Used in our Modular Approach

We have developed advanced antigen targeting technologies to improve the ability of our programmed T cell therapies to selectively identify, target and destroy cancer cells and overcome shortcomings of the current generation of T cell therapies. These targeting technologies include innovative binders, novel targets, dual-targeting and pattern recognition.

Innovative Binders and Novel Targets

Binding domains allow for selective targeting of cancer cells, and the properties of binders are crucial to the performance of T cell therapies. The binders of each of our programs have been optimized, are novel binders, or bind to novel targets.

The T cells of other CD19 CAR T cell therapies that have been approved or that are in clinical development are engineered to express high affinity binders that can engage their targets for an extended period of time. This can lead to excessive T cell activation and toxicities caused by cytokine release, as well as exhaustion of the CAR T cell. The programmed T cells of AUTO1 express a CD19 binder with a fast off-rate, which refers to the rate at which a T cell disengages from a target antigen. This is similar to the off-rate of naturally occurring T cells. AUTO1, with this enhanced kinetic profile, appears to result in reduced CRS and in increased T cell engraftment compared to data reported for other CAR T cell product candidates in clinical development for ALL that use high affinity binders.

The APRIL ligand is a human single domain protein that was selected as the targeting moiety in AUTO2 because it can bind with high affinity to BCMA and to TACI, two different antigens expressed on multiple myeloma cells. Using a single binder for two targets provides for efficiencies in the T cell programming process and leaves additional capacity in the viral vector to include further programming modules.

AUTO3 includes an optimized CD22 binder. It is challenging to target CD22 for immunotherapy because of its large size and extensive posttranslational modifications. Our optimized CD22 binder

combines five CAR binding domains to allow for suitable orientation and efficient target engagement compared to a traditional CAR.

The TRBC1 binder used in AUTO4 is highly selective for one of two highly related variants of the constant domain in T cell receptor beta chains. The binder allows AUTO4 to target TRBC1-positive T cell lymphoma cells without affecting healthy TRBC2-positive T cells.

AUTO6 is designed to target GD2 with an optimized anti-GD2 binder which uses a humanized targeting domain. Initial clinical data from an ongoing Phase 1 clinical trial sponsored by CRUK indicates early signs of clinical activity in the absence of neurotoxicity.

Dual-Targeting Technology

Escape from T cell recognition by losing the antigen, the very structure the programmed T cell is designed to recognize, is a fundamental defense mechanism of hematological cancers. All clinical programs targeting CD19, CD22 or BCMA in a single-target approach have reported patients relapsing with cells that no longer have detectable levels of the target antigen. The most profound impact of this defense mechanism of cancer cells was reported for children relapsing under CD19-targeting Kymriah® treatment, with more than half the children at time of relapse showing a loss of the CD19 antigen on the recurring cancer cells.

We believe that directly targeting two antigens on a cancer cell will reduce the chances for relapse and may also improve a response in those patients with low levels of expression of a target antigen on their cancer cells. AUTO2, the first dual-targeting programmed T cell therapy for the treatment of multiple myeloma, binds to two receptors, BCMA and TACI, both of which are expressed in varying levels on the surface of multiple myeloma cancer cells. AUTO3, the first dual-targeting programmed T cell therapy for the treatment of pediatric ALL and DLBCL, targets both the CD19 and CD22 antigens, both of which are B-cell antigens with similar patterns of expression.

Pattern Recognition Technology

Programmed T cells are very powerful and must be highly selective for the cancer cells in order to avoid unwanted side effects. Particularly for the treatment of solid tumors, which have greater complexity, achieving a sufficient level of selectivity based on a single target to avoid toxicity can be challenging. For such cancers, we have developed a programming module designed to make a kill decision based on the presence of two or more targets on the cancer cell. This technology is designed to allow us to program T cells to eliminate tumor cells only if two different targets are both present on the surface of the cell, thereby sparing healthy cells that express only one of these targets in isolation. We are also developing technology that we believe will allow us to program T cells to eliminate a tumor if only the tumor target, but not a target only found on healthy cells, is present on the cancer cell.

Pharmacological Control of T Cell Activity

Management of toxicity is a critical step in the successful application of programmed T cell therapies. We have developed multiple technologies designed to pharmacologically control T cell activity. These technologies fall into two distinct categories: safety switches and tunable T cells.

Safety Switches

Also referred to as “off switches” or “suicide switches,” safety switches selectively eliminate the programmed T cells and are intended to be triggered in the event a patient suffers certain serious

adverse events related to the T cell therapy, such as CRS or neurotoxicity. We incorporate the RQR8 safety switch into some of our programmed T cell product candidates, which allows us to selectively eliminate the programmed T cells by the administration of the commercially available monoclonal antibody rituximab, or Rituxan®, which binds to the surface of the T cell and thereby triggers cell death. We use the RQR8 safety switch in our AUTO2, AUTO4 and AUTO6 programs. The next generation of our safety switches, which we plan to incorporate in our solid tumor programs, utilizes rapamycin activated Caspase 9 (rapaCasp9), a cell therapy safety switch that allows for selective elimination of programmed T cells using a single therapeutic dose of the commercially available product rapamycin, such as sirolimus or Rapamune®. Rapamycin is a small molecule drug, which we expect will have the benefit of better tissue penetration and may require less time to take effect as compared to a monoclonal antibody-activated safety switch.

Tunable T Cells

Eliminating programmed T cells with a safety switch like RQR8 has the potential to allow the patient to recover from treatment-related side effects but also to preclude the anti-tumor activity following elimination of the programmed T cells, which could lead to relapse. To avoid this undesirable consequence of the safety switch, we are developing several programming modules that are designed to allow tunable programmed T cell responses by reducing programmed T cell activity if a patient experiences severe toxicity, while also allowing for the subsequent reactivation of programmed T cells, thereby allowing for the possibility of persistence and sustained anti-tumor activity. One such system we have developed is designed to reversibly dampen the activity of the programmed T cells by temporarily dislocating the signaling domain on the inside of the T cell from the cancer cell recognition domain with two commercially available antibiotics, tetracycline and minocycline.

Enhanced T Cell Activity Technologies

We have also developed a wide range of technologies designed to inhibit the immunosuppressive effects of the tumor microenvironment and enhance T cell persistence.

Evading Hostile Tumor Microenvironments Including Checkpoint Inhibition

Proteins expressed on tumor cells can trigger inhibitory receptors on T cells to block their ability to eliminate the tumor, such as PD-L1/PD-1 immune checkpoints. These inhibitory receptors act through a common signaling pathway inside the T cell that prevents normal T cell activation. We have developed a programming module designed to cause T cells to express a modified version of an adaptor protein, SHP2, that in preclinical studies has been shown to efficiently counteract the inhibition of T cells resulting from the PD-L1/PD-1 checkpoint interaction. Unlike methods that rely on blocking one inhibitory receptor using antibodies that are separately administered to the patient and are known to have significant side effects on their own, we have designed this programming module to be engineered into the T cells and not to require the administration of a separate pharmaceutical agent. In addition, it is designed to simultaneously disarm multiple inhibitory receptors on the cancer cell.

Enhanced T Cell Persistence

Programmed T cell therapies that target hematological malignancies are regularly stimulated by engaging tumor and normal cells in the bone marrow and lymph tissue. This continued stimulation helps the programmed T cell survive and persist, allowing them to attack the tumor for an extended period of time. One of the challenges of targeting some solid tumors is the lack of such easily

accessible stimulation for programmed T cells, leading to poor persistence and a weak anti-tumor activity. Programmed T cell therapies have been co-administered with cytokines that boost T cell activity and persistence in an attempt to enhance their effect on solid tumors. However, systemic or local administration of cytokines can be toxic. Therefore, we have developed a technology that is designed to deliver a cytokine signal directly inside our programmed T cells without administration of cytokines themselves. Depending on the tumor microenvironment, the cytokine persistence signal may be further enhanced by antigens secreted by the tumor. We believe our approach will be more potent and will have the potential to be less toxic, when compared to approaches that rely on systemic or local delivery of cytokines.

Advanced T Cell Programming is Key for Solid Tumor Programs

Achieving a meaningful and durable response with programmed T cell therapies in the treatment of solid tumors is more challenging than in hematological cancers for a variety of reasons. Solid tumors have fewer suitably selective, single antigen targets that can be used as a basis for tumor recognition, and solid tumors employ multiple sophisticated lines of defense to evade T cell killing.

Consequently, in order to be able to tackle the more complex biology of solid tumors, we anticipate that programmed T cell products will need to employ multiple modules of technology to overcome these challenges. With our broad array of proprietary programming modules and our ability to incorporate multiple elements into our programmed T cell product candidates, we believe we are well positioned to design these types of products and expand our pipeline into solid tumor indications, including with our development of AUTO6 NG.

Risks Associated with Our Business

Our business is subject to a number of risks of which you should be aware before making an investment decision. You should carefully consider all of the information set forth in this prospectus and, in particular, should evaluate the specific factors set forth in the section titled "Risk Factors" before deciding whether to invest in our ADSs. Among these important risks are, but such risks are not limited to, the following:

- We have incurred significant losses in every year since our inception. We expect to continue to incur losses over the next several years and may never achieve or maintain profitability.
- Our limited operating history may make it difficult for you to evaluate the success of our business to date and to assess our future viability.
- We will need additional funding to complete the development of our product candidates, which may not be available on acceptable terms, if at all.
- We are very early in our development efforts. All of our product candidates are in early-stage clinical development or in preclinical development. If we are unable to advance our product candidates through clinical development, obtain regulatory approval and ultimately commercialize our product candidates, or experience significant delays in doing so, our business will be materially harmed.
- Our proprietary, next-generation T cell programming technologies, our modular approach for engineering T cells and our manufacturing platform for our programmed T cell product candidates, represent emerging approaches to cancer treatment that face significant challenges and hurdles.

- Our future success is highly dependent on the regulatory approval of our current clinical-stage programmed T cell product candidates and our preclinical programs. All of our product candidates will require significant clinical or preclinical testing before we can seek regulatory approval for and launch a product commercially.
- Adverse side effects or other safety risks associated with our product candidates could delay or preclude approval, cause us to suspend or discontinue clinical trials, cause us to abandon product candidates, could limit the commercial profile of an approved label, or could result in significant negative consequences following any potential marketing approval.
- If the clinical trials of any of our product candidates fail to demonstrate safety and efficacy to the satisfaction of the FDA, the EMA or other comparable regulatory authorities, or do not otherwise produce favorable results, we may incur additional costs or experience delays in completing, or ultimately be unable to complete, the development and commercialization of our product candidates.
- We may not be able to successfully create our own manufacturing infrastructure for supply of our requirements of programmed T cell product candidates for use in clinical trials and for commercial sale.
- Our product candidates are biologics and the manufacture of our product candidates is complex and we may encounter difficulties in production, particularly with respect to process development or scaling-out of our manufacturing capabilities. If we encounter such difficulties, our ability to provide supply of our product candidates for clinical trials or our products for patients, if approved, could be delayed or stopped.
- We operate in a rapidly changing industry and face significant competition, which may result in others discovering, developing or commercializing products before or more successfully than we do.
- If we are unable to obtain and maintain patent protection for our T cell programming technologies and product candidates, or if the scope of the patent protection obtained is not sufficiently broad, our competitors could develop and commercialize technology and biologics similar or identical to ours, and our ability to successfully commercialize our technology and product candidates may be impaired.
- In connection with the audit of our financial statements as of and for the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2017 in preparation for this offering, our independent registered public accounting firm identified a material weakness in our internal control over financial reporting. If we are not able to remediate the material weakness or if we otherwise fail to maintain an effective system of internal control over financial reporting, we may not be able to accurately report our financial statements in a timely manner, which may adversely affect our business, investor confidence in our company and the market value of our ADSs.
- As an English public limited company, certain capital structure decisions will require shareholder approval, which may limit our flexibility to manage our capital structure.

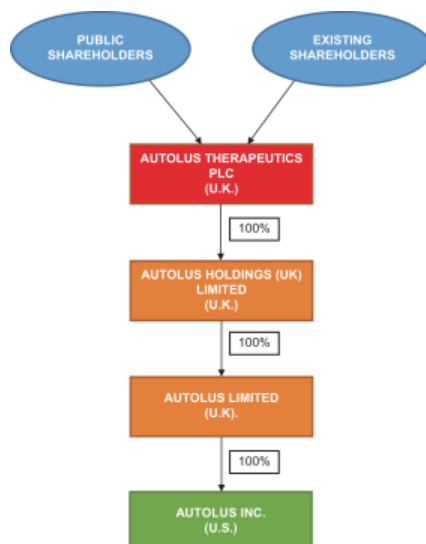
Corporate Information

Autolus Therapeutics plc was incorporated under the laws of England and Wales in February 2018. Our registered office is located at Forest House, 58 Wood Lane, White City, London W12 7RZ, United Kingdom and our telephone number is +44 20 3829 6230. Our website address is www.autolus.com. The information contained on our website is not incorporated by reference into this prospectus, and you should not consider any information contained on, or that can be accessed through, our website as part of this prospectus or in deciding whether to purchase our ADSs.

Corporate Reorganization

We have begun to undertake a corporate reorganization pursuant to which (i) Autolus Therapeutics Limited has become the direct holding company of Autolus Holdings (UK) Limited, a new holding company we recently formed, and the indirect holding company of Autolus Limited; (ii) Autolus Holdings (UK) Limited has become the wholly owned subsidiary of Autolus Therapeutics Limited and the direct holding company of Autolus Limited; and (iii) Autolus Therapeutics Limited has re-registered as a public limited company and changed its name to Autolus Therapeutics plc. Pursuant to the terms of the corporate reorganization, the shareholders of Autolus Limited have exchanged each of the shares held by them in Autolus Limited for the same number and class of newly issued shares of Autolus Therapeutics Limited and, as a result, Autolus Limited became a wholly owned subsidiary of Autolus Therapeutics Limited. Following this share exchange, Autolus Holdings (UK) Limited (wholly owned by Autolus Therapeutics Limited) acquired the entire issued share capital of Autolus Limited in exchange for an issue of shares in Autolus Holdings (UK) Limited and, as a result, Autolus Limited became a wholly owned subsidiary of Autolus Holdings (UK) Limited. In addition, all of our outstanding series A preferred shares, B ordinary shares and C ordinary shares will convert into a single class of ordinary shares on a 3.185-for-1 basis and three classes of deferred shares. Please see “Corporate Reorganization” in this prospectus for more information.

The diagram below sets forth our anticipated group structure after the completion of the corporate reorganization described above and this offering:



After the completion of our corporate reorganization and this offering, Autolus Limited will transfer, by way of a dividend in specie, the entire issued share capital of its wholly owned subsidiary, Autolus Inc., our U.S. subsidiary which was incorporated under the laws of the State of Delaware in October 2017, to its immediate parent, Autolus Holdings (UK) Limited. Following the dividend in specie,

each of Autolus Limited and Autolus Inc. will be repositioned as direct wholly owned subsidiaries of Autolus Holdings (UK) Limited.

Implications of Being an Emerging Growth Company and a Foreign Private Issuer

We qualify as an “emerging growth company” as defined in the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012, or the JOBS Act, as amended. An emerging growth company may take advantage of specified reduced reporting and other burdens that are otherwise applicable generally to public companies in the United States. These provisions include:

- the ability to include only two years of audited financial statements in addition to any required interim financial statements and correspondingly reduced Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations disclosure;
- reduced executive compensation disclosure; and
- an exemption from the auditor attestation requirement in the assessment of our internal control over financial reporting pursuant to the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.

We may choose to take advantage of some but not all of these reduced disclosure requirements. We may take advantage of these provisions until we are no longer an emerging growth company. We will remain an emerging growth company until the earliest to occur of: (1) (a) the last day of the fiscal year following the fifth anniversary of the closing of this offering, (b) the last day of the fiscal year in which our annual gross revenue is \$1.07 billion or more, or (c) the date on which we are deemed to be a “large accelerated filer,” under the rules of the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission, or SEC, which means the market value of our equity securities that is held by non-affiliates exceeds \$700 million as of the end of our second quarter and (2) the date on which we have issued more than \$1.0 billion in non-convertible debt during the prior three-year period.

In addition, under the JOBS Act, emerging growth companies can delay adopting new or revised accounting standards until such time as those standards apply to private companies. We have elected to comply with new or revised accounting standards on the relevant dates on which adoption of such standards is required for non-emerging growth companies. See “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations—JOBS Act.”

Upon the completion of this offering, we will report under the Exchange Act as a non-U.S. company with foreign private issuer status. Even after we no longer qualify as an emerging growth company, as long as we qualify as a foreign private issuer under the Exchange Act, we will be exempt from certain provisions of the Exchange Act that are applicable to U.S. domestic public companies, including:

- the sections of the Exchange Act regulating the solicitation of proxies, consents or authorizations with respect to a security registered under the Exchange Act;
- the requirement to comply with Regulation Fair Disclosure, or Regulation FD, which regulates selective disclosure of material information;
- the sections of the Exchange Act requiring insiders to file public reports of their share ownership and trading activities and liability for insiders who profit from trades made in a short period of time; and
- the rules under the Exchange Act requiring the filing with the SEC of quarterly reports on Form 10-Q containing unaudited financial and other specified information, or current reports on Form 8-K upon the occurrence of specified significant events.

Both foreign private issuers and emerging growth companies are also exempt from certain more stringent executive compensation disclosure rules. Thus, even if we no longer qualify as an emerging growth company, but remain a foreign private issuer, we will continue to be exempt from the more stringent compensation disclosures required of companies that are neither an emerging growth company nor a foreign private issuer. As a result, we do not know if some investors will find our ADSs less attractive, which may result in a less active trading market for our ADSs or more volatility in the price of our ADSs.

THE OFFERING	
ADSSs offered by us	7,812,500 ADSSs, each ADS representing one ordinary share.
Option to purchase additional ADSSs	We have granted the underwriters an option for a period of 30 days from the date of the final prospectus to purchase up to an additional 1,171,875 ADSSs from us.
after this offering	Ordinary shares to be outstanding 37,775,184 shares (or 38,947,059 shares if the underwriters exercise in full their option to purchase additional ADSSs).
American Depositary Shares	Each ADS represents one ordinary share, nominal value \$0.000042 per share. The ADSSs may be evidenced by American Depositary Receipts, or ADRs. The depositary will hold the ordinary shares underlying the ADSSs in a custody account with the custodian, and you will have the rights of an ADS holder or beneficial owner (as applicable) as provided in the deposit agreement among us, the depositary and holders and beneficial owners of ADSSs from time to time. To better understand the terms of our ADSSs, see "Description of American Depositary Shares." We also encourage you to read the deposit agreement, the form of which is filed as an exhibit to the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part.
Depositary	Citibank, N.A.
Custodian	Citibank, N.A. (London)
Use of proceeds	<p>We estimate that the net proceeds to us from this offering, after deducting the estimated underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us, to be approximately \$110.7 million based on an assumed initial public offering price of \$16.00 per ADS, which is the midpoint of the price range set forth on the cover page of this prospectus.</p> <p>We currently intend to use the net proceeds from this offering, together with our existing cash, as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> to complete the proof-of-concept phases of our Phase 1/2 clinical trials of AUTO2 in multiple myeloma, AUTO3 in pediatric ALL and DLBCL and AUTO4 in peripheral T-cell lymphoma and support the clinical trial conducted by UCL for AUTO1 in adult ALL through proof-of-concept, and advance

	<p>three of these product candidates through later phases of clinical development and, potentially, registration;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • to conduct non-clinical development to IND filing of AUTO2 NG, AUTO3 NG and AUTO5, our earlier-stage hematological programs, and AUTO6 NG and AUTO7, our initial product candidates targeting solid tumor indications; • to fund our research and development activities to further expand our T cell programming technologies and develop future product candidates and follow-on versions; • to fund our manufacturing activities to support our ongoing and future clinical trials and potential commercial launch; and • for other general corporate purposes. <p>See the section titled “Use of Proceeds” for a more complete description of the intended use of proceeds from this offering.</p>
Risk factors	<p>See the section titled “Risk Factors” and the other information included in this prospectus for a discussion of factors you should carefully consider before deciding to invest in our ADSs.</p>
Nasdaq Global Select Market listing	<p>Our ADSs have been approved for listing on the Nasdaq Global Select Market under the symbol “AUTL.”</p>
<p>The number of our ordinary shares to be outstanding after this offering is based on 29,962,684 ordinary shares outstanding as of September 30, 2017 and gives effect to our corporate reorganization (including the conversion of all issued shares into ordinary shares on a 3.185-for-1 basis) and excludes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 570,927 ordinary shares issuable upon the exercise of share options outstanding under our 2017 Share Option Plan, or 2017 Plan, as of September 30, 2017, at a weighted average exercise price of \$0.50 per share and an additional 889,612 ordinary shares issuable upon the exercise of share options outstanding under the 2017 Plan that were granted subsequent to September 30, 2017, at a weighted average exercise price of \$8.71 per share (after giving effect to the conversion of all issued shares into ordinary shares on a 3.185-for-1 basis); and • 3,281,622 ordinary shares authorized for future issuance under our 2018 Equity Incentive Plan, or 2018 Plan, as well as any automatic increases in the number of ordinary shares reserved for future issuance under the 2018 Plan. <p>Except as otherwise indicated herein, all information in this prospectus assumes or gives effect to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • the consummation of the transactions described under the section titled “Corporate Reorganization” in this prospectus prior to the completion of this offering; 	

- no exercise of outstanding options after September 30, 2017; and
- no exercise of the option granted to the underwriters to purchase additional ADSs in this offering.

Certain of our existing principal shareholders and their affiliated entities have indicated an interest in purchasing up to an aggregate of \$60 million in ADSs in this offering at the initial public offering price per ADS. However, because indications of interest are not binding agreements or commitments to purchase, the underwriters may determine to sell more, less or no ADSs in this offering to any of these entities, or any of these entities may determine to purchase more, less or no ADSs in this offering. The underwriters will receive the same underwriting discount on any ADSs purchased by these entities as they will on any other ADSs sold to the public in this offering.

SUMMARY FINANCIAL DATA

The following tables present our summary financial data. We derived the summary statement of operations and comprehensive loss data for the fiscal years ended September 30, 2016 and 2017 and the selected balance sheet data as of September 30, 2017 from our audited financial statements included elsewhere in this prospectus. We prepare our financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States, or U.S. GAAP, as issued by the Financial Accounting Standards Board, or FASB.

Our historical results are not necessarily indicative of our future results. You should read this data together with our financial statements and related notes appearing elsewhere in this prospectus and the information under the sections titled "Capitalization" and "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations."

Our functional currency is the pound sterling. However, for financial reporting purposes, our financial statements, which are prepared using the functional currency, have been translated into U.S. dollars. Our assets and liabilities are translated at the exchange rates at the balance sheet date; our revenue and expenses are translated at average exchange rates and shareholders' equity is translated based on historical exchange rates. Translation adjustments are not included in determining net income (loss) but are included in foreign exchange translation adjustment to other comprehensive loss, a component of shareholders' equity.

Foreign currency transactions in currencies different from the functional currency are translated into the functional currency using the exchange rates prevailing at the dates of the transactions. Foreign exchange differences resulting from the settlement of such transactions and from the translation at period-end exchange rates of monetary assets and liabilities denominated in foreign currencies are recorded in general and administrative expense in the statement of operations and comprehensive loss.

As of September 29, 2017, the last business day of the year ended September 30, 2017, the representative exchange rate was £1.00 = \$1.3392.

	Year Ended September 30,	
	2016	2017
	(in thousands, except share and per share data)	
Statement of Operations and Comprehensive Loss Data:		
Grant income	\$ 1,212	\$ 1,693
Operating expenses:		
Research and development	(10,436)	(16,012)
General and administrative	(5,152)	(9,099)
Total operating expenses, net	(14,376)	(23,418)
Other income, net	49	38
Net loss before income taxes	(14,327)	(23,380)
Income tax benefit	1,777	3,653
Net loss	(12,550)	(19,727)
Other comprehensive income (loss):		
Foreign currency translation adjustment	(2,942)	802
Total comprehensive loss	\$ (15,492)	\$ (18,925)
Basic and diluted net loss per ordinary share	\$ (1.16)	\$ (1.61)
Weighted-average basic and diluted ordinary shares	10,794,798	12,226,019
Pro forma basic and diluted net loss per share to ordinary shareholders (unaudited)(1)		\$ (0.45)
Pro forma weighted-average basic and diluted ordinary shares (unaudited)(1)		43,899,562
Adjusted pro forma basic and diluted net loss per share to ordinary shareholders (unaudited)(2)	\$ (1.26)	\$ (1.43)
Adjusted pro forma weighted-average basic and diluted ordinary shares (unaudited)(2)	9,933,399	13,783,222

	As of September 30, 2017		
	Actual	Pro Forma(3)	Pro Forma As Adjusted(4)
	(in thousands)		
Balance Sheet Data:			
Cash	\$137,070	\$ 137,070	\$ 247,720
Working capital(5)	137,449	137,449	248,099
Total assets	148,662	148,662	259,312
Preferred shares	1	—	—
Ordinary shares	—	1	338
Deferred shares	—	118	118
Additional paid-in capital	194,351	194,233	304,546
Total shareholders' equity	142,601	142,601	253,251

- (1) As described in Note 2 to our audited financial statements included in this prospectus, the unaudited pro forma basic and diluted net loss per share to ordinary shareholders and unaudited weighted-average number of basic and diluted ordinary shares for the year ended September 30, 2017 give effect to the automatic conversion of all outstanding series A preferred shares of Autolus Limited into B ordinary shares, as if the offering contemplated by this prospectus had occurred as of October 1, 2016; further, the shares to be sold in the proposed offering are excluded from the unaudited pro forma basic and diluted loss per share to ordinary shareholders and unaudited weighted-average number of basic and diluted ordinary shares for the year ended September 30, 2017. See page F-16 of this prospectus for further details on the calculation of unaudited pro forma basic and diluted net loss per share to ordinary shareholders. The unaudited pro forma basic and diluted net loss per share to ordinary shareholders and unaudited weighted-average number of basic and diluted ordinary shares for the year ended September 30, 2017 do not give effect to the corporate reorganization completed in June 2018, the effect of which is described in footnote (2) below.
- (2) The unaudited adjusted pro forma basic and diluted net loss per share to the ordinary shareholders and unaudited weighted-average number of basic and diluted ordinary shares for the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2017 have been prepared to give effect to our corporate reorganization, including (i) the exchange by the shareholders of Autolus Limited of

the shares held by them in Autolus Limited for the same number and class of newly issued shares of Autolus Therapeutics Limited, (ii) the re-registration of Autolus Therapeutics Limited as Autolus Therapeutics plc and (iii) the conversion of all resulting series A preferred shares, B ordinary shares and C ordinary shares of Autolus Therapeutics plc into a single class of ordinary shares of Autolus Therapeutics plc on a 3.185-for-1 basis, but excluding the shares to be sold in the proposed offering. See "Prospectus Summary—Corporate Reorganization" on page 11 and "Corporate Reorganization" on page 86 of this prospectus for more details on the steps involved.

- (3) The unaudited pro forma balance sheet data gives effect to the corporate reorganization. See "Corporate Reorganization" for more details on the steps involved, including a capital reduction.
- (4) The unaudited pro forma as adjusted balance sheet data gives further effect to the issuance and sale of 7,812,500 ADSs in this offering by us at an assumed initial public offering price of \$16.00 per ADS, which is the midpoint of the price range set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, and the application of the net proceeds of the offering, after deducting estimated underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us, as set forth under "Use of Proceeds." A \$1.00 increase (decrease) in the assumed initial public offering price of \$16.00 per ADS, which is the midpoint of the price range set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, would increase (decrease) the pro forma as adjusted amount of each of cash, working capital, total assets and total shareholders' equity by \$7.3 million, assuming that the number of ADSs offered by us, as set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, remains the same, and after deducting estimated underwriting discounts and commissions. An increase (decrease) of 1,000,000 in the number of ADSs offered by us, as set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, would increase (decrease) the pro forma as adjusted amount of each of cash, working capital, total assets and total shareholders' equity by \$14.9 million, assuming the assumed initial public offering price per ADS remains the same, and after deducting estimated underwriting discounts and commissions. This pro forma as adjusted information is illustrative only and will depend on the actual initial public offering price and other terms of this offering determined at pricing.
- (5) We define working capital as current assets less current liabilities.

RISK FACTORS

Investing in our ADSs involves a high degree of risk. Before you invest in our ADSs, you should carefully consider the risks described below together with all of the other information contained in this prospectus, including our financial statements and the related notes included elsewhere in this prospectus. If any of the following risks actually occurs, our business, prospects, operating results and financial condition could suffer materially. In such event, the trading price of our ADSs could decline, which would cause you to lose all or part of your investment. Please also see "Special Note Regarding Forward-Looking Statements."

Risks Related to Our Financial Position

We have incurred significant losses in every year since our inception. We expect to continue to incur losses over the next several years and may never achieve or maintain profitability.

We are a clinical-stage biopharmaceutical company with a limited operating history and we have incurred significant net losses since our inception in 2014. Our net loss was \$12.6 million and \$19.7 million for the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2017, respectively. As of September 30, 2017, we had an accumulated deficit of \$47.9 million. We have funded our operations to date primarily with proceeds from the sale of our equity securities.

We have no products approved for commercial sale, have not generated any product revenue, and are devoting substantially all of our financial resources and efforts to research and development of our programmed T cell product candidates as well as to building out our manufacturing platform, T cell programming technologies and management team. Investment in biopharmaceutical product development is highly speculative because it entails substantial upfront capital expenditures and significant risk that any potential product candidate will fail to demonstrate adequate effect or an acceptable safety profile, gain regulatory approval and become commercially viable.

We expect that it will take at least several years until any of our product candidates receive marketing approval and are commercialized, and we may never be successful in obtaining marketing approval and commercializing product candidates. We expect to continue to incur significant expenses and increasing operating losses for the foreseeable future. These net losses will adversely impact our shareholders' equity and net assets and may fluctuate significantly from quarter to quarter and year to year. We anticipate that our expenses will increase substantially as we:

- continue our ongoing and planned research and development of our current clinical-stage programmed T cell product candidates for the treatment of hematological cancers, AUTO1, AUTO2, AUTO3 and AUTO4;
- initiate preclinical studies and clinical trials for any additional product candidates that we may pursue in the future, including our planned development of additional T cell therapies for the treatment of solid tumors;
- seek to discover and develop additional product candidates and further expand our clinical product pipeline;
- seek regulatory approvals for any product candidates that successfully complete clinical trials;
- continue to scale up internal and external manufacturing capacity with the aim of securing sufficient quantities to meet our capacity requirements for clinical trials and potential commercialization;
- establish sales, marketing and distribution infrastructure to commercialize any product candidate for which we may obtain regulatory approval;

- make required milestone and royalty payments to UCL Business plc, or UCLB, the technology-transfer company of University College London, under our license agreement with UCLB pursuant to which we were granted some of our intellectual property rights;
- develop, maintain, expand and protect our intellectual property portfolio;
- acquire or in-license other product candidates and technologies;
- hire additional clinical, quality control and manufacturing personnel;
- add clinical, operational, financial and management information systems and personnel, including personnel to support our product development and planned future commercialization efforts;
- expand our operations in the United States, Europe and other geographies; and
- incur additional legal, accounting and other expenses associated with operating as a public company.

To become and remain profitable, we must succeed in developing and eventually commercializing products that generate significant revenue. This will require us to be successful in a range of challenging activities, including completing preclinical studies and clinical trials of our product candidates, obtaining regulatory approval, manufacturing, marketing and selling any products for which we may obtain regulatory approval, as well as discovering and developing additional product candidates. We may never succeed in these activities and, even if we do, may never generate revenues that are significant enough to achieve profitability.

Because of the numerous risks and uncertainties associated with the development, delivery and commercialization of complex autologous cell therapies, we are unable to accurately predict the timing or amount of expenses or when, or if, we will be able to achieve profitability. If we are required by regulatory authorities to perform studies in addition to those currently expected, or if there are any delays in the initiation and completion of our clinical trials or the development of any of our product candidates, our expenses could increase and profitability could be further delayed.

Even if we achieve profitability, we may not be able to sustain or increase profitability on a quarterly or annual basis. Our failure to become and remain profitable would depress the value of our ADSs and could impair our ability to raise capital, expand our business, maintain our research and development efforts or continue our operations. A decline in the value of our ADSs could also cause you to lose all or part of your investment.

Our limited operating history may make it difficult for you to evaluate the success of our business to date and to assess our future viability.

We are a clinical-stage biopharmaceutical company with a limited operating history. As an organization, we have not demonstrated an ability to successfully complete late-stage clinical trials, obtain regulatory approvals, manufacture our product candidates at commercial scale or arrange for a third party to do so on our behalf, conduct sales and marketing activities necessary for successful commercialization, or obtain reimbursement in the countries of sale. We may encounter unforeseen expenses, difficulties, complications, and delays in achieving our business objectives. Our very short history as an operating company makes any assessment of our future success or viability subject to significant uncertainty. If we do not address these risks successfully or are unable to transition at some point from a company with a research and development focus to a company capable of supporting commercial activities, then our business will suffer.

We will need additional funding to complete the development of our product candidates, which may not be available on acceptable terms, if at all.

We will require substantial additional funding to meet our financial needs and to pursue our business objectives. If we are unable to raise capital when needed, we could be forced to delay, reduce or altogether cease our product development programs or commercialization efforts.

We believe that the net proceeds from this offering, together with our existing cash, will enable us to fund our operating expenses and capital expenditure requirements through the completion of the proof-of-concept phases of our ongoing and planned Phase 1/2 clinical trials of AUTO2 in multiple myeloma, AUTO3 in pediatric ALL and DLBCL and AUTO4 in peripheral T-cell lymphoma and support the clinical trial conducted by UCL for AUTO1 in adult ALL through proof-of-concept, and advance three of these product candidates through later stages of clinical development and, potentially, registration; the non-clinical development to IND filing of AUTO2 NG, AUTO3 NG, AUTO5, AUTO6 NG and AUTO7; the funding of our research and development to further expand our T cell programming technologies and develop future product candidates and follow-on versions; and the funding of manufacturing activities. However, this funding will not be sufficient for us to fund any of our programmed T cell product candidates through regulatory approval, and we will need to raise additional capital to complete the development and commercialization of our programmed T cell candidates and in connection with our continuing operations and other planned activities. Our future capital requirements will depend on many factors, including:

- the progress, results and costs of laboratory testing, manufacturing, preclinical and clinical development for our current and future product candidates;
- the scope, progress, results and costs of preclinical development, laboratory testing and clinical trials of other product candidates that we may pursue;
- the development requirements of other product candidates that we may pursue;
- the timing and amounts of any milestone or royalty payments we may be required to make under current or future license agreements;
- the costs of building out our infrastructure including hiring additional clinical, quality control and manufacturing personnel;
- the costs, timing and outcome of regulatory review of our product candidates;
- the costs and timing of future commercialization activities, including product manufacturing, marketing, sales and distribution, for any of our product candidates for which we receive marketing approval;
- the revenue, if any, received from commercial sales of our product candidates for which we receive marketing approval;
- the costs and timing of preparing, filing and prosecuting patent applications, maintaining and enforcing our intellectual property rights and defending any intellectual property-related claims;
- the costs of operating as a public company; and
- the extent to which we acquire or in-license other product candidates and technologies.

Identifying potential product candidates and conducting preclinical testing and clinical trials is a time-consuming, expensive and uncertain process that takes years to complete, and we may never generate the necessary data or results required to obtain regulatory approval and achieve product sales. In addition, our product candidates, if approved, may not achieve commercial success. Our product revenues, if any, will be derived from sales of product candidates that we do not expect to be commercially available for several years, if at all. Accordingly, we will need to continue to rely on additional financing to achieve our business objectives. Adequate additional financing may not be available to us on acceptable terms, or at all. In addition, we may seek additional capital due to

favorable market conditions or strategic considerations even if we believe we have sufficient funds for our current or future operating plans. If we raise additional funds through collaboration and licensing arrangements with third parties, we may have to relinquish some rights to our technologies or our product candidates on terms that are not favorable to us. Any additional capital raising efforts may divert our management from their day-to-day activities, which may adversely affect our ability to develop and commercialize our current and future product candidates, if approved. If we are unable to raise capital when needed or on attractive terms, we could be forced to delay, reduce or altogether cease our research and development programs or future commercialization efforts.

Risks Related to the Development of Our Product Candidates

We are very early in our development efforts. All of our product candidates are in early-stage clinical development or in preclinical development. If we are unable to advance our product candidates through clinical development, obtain regulatory approval and ultimately commercialize our product candidates, or experience significant delays in doing so, our business will be materially harmed.

Our product candidate AUTO1, which has generated some positive preliminary data in pediatric ALL, is in early development stage for the treatment of adult ALL. We initiated Phase 1/2 clinical trials for our dual-targeting programmed T cell product candidates, AUTO2 and AUTO3, in the second half of 2017 and are currently in the Phase 1 dose-escalation phases of these clinical trials. We have not established clinical proof-of-concept for any of these product candidates. There is no assurance that these or any other future clinical trials of our product candidates will be successful or will generate positive clinical data and we may not receive marketing approval from the U.S. Food and Drug Administration, or FDA, or other regulatory agencies, including the European Medicines Agency, or EMA, for any of our product candidates. With the exception of AUTO2, we have not submitted an Investigational New Drug Application, or IND, with the FDA for our current clinical-stage product candidates, which must be in effect before commencing clinical trials in the United States. There can be no assurance that the FDA will permit the IND to go into effect in a timely manner or at all. Without the IND, we will not be permitted to conduct clinical trials in the United States.

Biopharmaceutical development is a long, expensive and uncertain process, and delay or failure can occur at any stage of any of our clinical trials. Failure to obtain regulatory approval for our product candidates will prevent us from commercializing and marketing our product candidates. The success in the development of our programmed T cell product candidates will depend on many factors, including:

- completing preclinical studies and receiving regulatory approvals or clearance for conducting clinical trials for our preclinical-stage programs;
- obtaining positive results in our clinical trials demonstrating efficacy, safety, and durability of effect of our product candidates;
- receiving approvals for commercialization of our product candidates from regulatory authorities;
- manufacturing our product candidates at an acceptable cost; and
- maintaining and growing an organization of scientists, medical professionals and business people who can develop and commercialize our products and technology.

Many of these factors are beyond our control, including the time needed to adequately complete clinical testing and the regulatory submission process. It is possible that none of our product candidates will ever obtain regulatory approval, even if we expend substantial time and resources seeking such approval. If we do not achieve one or more of these factors in a timely manner or at all, or any other factors impacting the successful development of biopharmaceutical products, we could experience significant delays or an inability to successfully develop our product candidates, which would materially harm our business.

Our proprietary, next-generation T cell programming technologies, our modular approach for engineering T cells and our manufacturing platform for our programmed T cell product candidates, represent emerging approaches to cancer treatment that face significant challenges and hurdles.

We have concentrated our research and development efforts on our T cell technology platform using our expertise in tumor biology and cell programming, and our future success is highly dependent on the successful development and manufacture of our programmed T cell product candidates. We do not currently have any approved or commercialized products. Two of our most advanced product candidates employ a dual-targeting mechanism. By targeting two separate antigens on the cancer cell surface, we believe these product candidates have the potential to improve durability of treatment response and reduce the frequency of cancer relapse as compared to other currently available single-targeting T cell therapies. Our product candidate for the treatment of T-cell lymphoma employs a novel approach to killing malignant T cells that aims to preserve normal, healthy T cells. Some of our product candidates include a “safety switch” that is designed to allow for the elimination of the engineered T cells if a patient experiences severe adverse side effects from the treatment. However, this “safety switch” technology has not been used to date in our clinical studies, and we do not know whether it would have the intended effect if used. Additionally, as with other targeted therapies, off-tumor or off-target activity could delay development or require us to reengineer or abandon a particular product candidate. Because programmed T cell therapies represent a relatively new field of cellular immunotherapy and cancer treatment generally, developing and commercializing our product candidates subjects us to a number of risks and challenges, including:

- obtaining regulatory approval for our product candidates, as the FDA, the EMA and other regulatory authorities have limited experience with programmed T cell therapies for cancer;
- sourcing clinical and, if approved, commercial supplies of the materials used to manufacture our product candidates;
- developing programming modules with the desired properties, while avoiding adverse reactions;
- creating viral vectors capable of delivering multiple programming modules;
- developing a reliable and consistent vector and cell manufacturing process;
- establishing manufacturing capacity suitable for the manufacture of our product candidates in line with expanding enrollment in our clinical studies and our projected commercial requirements;
- achieving cost efficiencies in the scale-up of our manufacturing capacity;
- developing protocols for the safe administration of our product candidates;
- educating medical personnel regarding our programmed T cell therapies and the potential side effect profile of each of our product candidates, such as potential adverse side effects related to cytokine release syndrome;
- establishing integrated solutions in collaboration with specialty treatment centers in order to reduce the burdens and complex logistics commonly associated with the administration of T cell therapies;
- establishing sales and marketing capabilities to successfully launch and commercialize our product candidates if and when we obtain any required regulatory approvals, and risks associated with gaining market acceptance of a novel therapy if we receive approval; and
- the availability of coverage and adequate reimbursement from third-party payors for our novel and personalized therapies in connection with commercialization of any approved product candidates.

We may not be able to successfully develop our programmed T cell product candidates or our T cell programming technologies in a manner that will yield products that are safe and effective, scalable or profitable.

Additionally, because our technology involves the genetic modification of patient cells *ex vivo*, we are subject to additional regulatory challenges and risks, including regulatory requirements governing genetically modified organisms that have changed frequently and will likely continue to change in the future, and that may limit or delay our ability to import our product candidates into certain countries for use in clinical trials or for commercial sale even if we receive applicable marketing approvals.

Moreover, public perception and awareness of T cell therapy safety issues may adversely influence the willingness of subjects to participate in clinical trials of our product candidates, or if approved, of physicians to prescribe our products. Physicians, hospitals and third-party payors often are slow to adopt new products, technologies and treatment practices that require additional upfront costs and training. Treatment centers may not be willing or able to devote the personnel and establish other infrastructure required for the administration of programmed T cell therapies. Physicians may not be willing to undergo training to adopt this novel and personalized therapy, may decide the therapy is too complex to adopt without appropriate training and may choose not to administer the therapy. Based on these and other factors, hospitals and payors may decide that the benefits of this new therapy do not or will not outweigh its costs.

Our future success is highly dependent on the regulatory approval of our current clinical-stage programmed T cell product candidates and our preclinical programs. All of our product candidates will require significant clinical or preclinical testing before we can seek regulatory approval for and launch a product commercially.

We do not have any products that have gained regulatory approval. Our business is substantially dependent on our ability to obtain regulatory approval for, and, if approved, to successfully commercialize our current clinical-stage programmed T cell product candidates and our preclinical programs. We cannot commercialize product candidates in the United States without first obtaining regulatory approval for the product from the FDA; similarly, we cannot commercialize product candidates in countries outside of the United States without obtaining regulatory approval from comparable regulatory authorities in relevant jurisdictions, such as the EMA in Europe. Before obtaining regulatory approvals for the commercial sale of any product candidate for a particular indication, we must demonstrate with substantial evidence gathered in preclinical and clinical studies, that the product candidate is safe and effective for that indication and that the manufacturing facilities, processes and controls are adequate with respect to such product candidate. To date, we have had only limited interaction with both the FDA and the EMA regarding our product candidates. Prior to seeking approval for any of our product candidates, we will need to confer with the FDA, the EMA and other regulatory authorities regarding the design of our clinical trials and the type and amount of clinical data necessary to seek and gain approval for our product candidates.

The time required to obtain approval by the FDA, the EMA and other regulatory authorities is unpredictable but typically takes many years following the commencement of preclinical studies and clinical trials and depends upon numerous factors, including the substantial discretion of the regulatory authorities. In addition, approval policies, regulations, or the type and amount of clinical data necessary to gain approval may change during the course of a product candidate's clinical development and may vary among jurisdictions. It is possible that none of our existing product candidates or any future product candidates will ever obtain regulatory approval.

Our product candidates could fail to receive regulatory approval from the FDA, the EMA or other regulatory authorities for many reasons, including:

- disagreement with the design, protocol or conduct of our clinical trials;

- failure to demonstrate that a product candidate is safe and effective for its proposed indication;
- failure of clinical trials to meet the level of statistical significance required for approval;
- failure to demonstrate that a product candidate's clinical and other benefits outweigh its safety risks;
- disagreement with our interpretation of data from preclinical studies or clinical trials;
- insufficiency of data collected from clinical trials of our product candidates to support the submission and filing of a Biologics License Application, or BLA, or other submission or to obtain regulatory approval;
- failure to obtain approval of the manufacturing processes or our facilities;
- changes in the approval policies or regulations that render our preclinical and clinical data insufficient for approval; or
- lack of adequate funding to complete a clinical trial in a manner that is satisfactory to the applicable regulatory authority.

The FDA, the EMA or a comparable regulatory authority may require more information, including additional preclinical or clinical data to support approval, including data that would require us to perform additional clinical trials or modify our manufacturing processes, which may delay or prevent approval and our commercialization plans, or we may decide to abandon the development program. If we change our manufacturing processes, we may be required to conduct additional clinical trials or other studies, which also could delay or prevent approval of our product candidates. If we were to obtain approval, regulatory authorities may approve any of our product candidates for fewer indications than we request (including failing to approve the most commercially promising indications), may limit indications, may grant approval contingent on the performance of costly post-marketing clinical trials or other post-marketing commitments, or may approve a product candidate with a label that does not include the labeling claims necessary or desirable for the successful commercialization of that product candidate.

Depending on results we observe in our clinical trials, our development strategy may include the pursuit of expedited approvals from the FDA or the EMA, such as through the accelerated approval pathway, and we may seek to achieve breakthrough therapy designation from the FDA or the PRiority Medicines, or PRIME, designation from the EMA. There is no certainty that our product candidates will qualify for breakthrough therapy or PRIME designations, nor can we assume that the clinical data obtained from trials of our product candidates will be sufficient to qualify for any expedited approval program.

Even if a product candidate were to successfully obtain approval from the FDA, the EMA or other comparable regulatory authorities in other jurisdictions, any approval might contain significant limitations related to use restrictions for specified age groups, warnings, precautions or contraindications, or may be subject to burdensome post-approval study or risk management requirements. If we are unable to obtain regulatory approval for one of our product candidates in one or more jurisdictions, or any approval contains significant limitations, we may not be able to obtain sufficient funding to continue the development of that product or generate revenues attributable to that product candidate. Also, any regulatory approval of our current or future product candidates, once obtained, may be withdrawn. See the risk factor titled “—Even if we complete the necessary preclinical studies and clinical trials, the regulatory approval process is expensive, time-consuming and uncertain and may prevent us from obtaining approvals for the commercialization of some or all of our product candidates. As a result, we cannot predict when or if, and in which territories, we will obtain marketing approval to commercialize a product candidate.”

We may not be successful in our efforts to build a pipeline of product candidates.

A key element of our strategy is to use our expertise in tumor biology and cell programming and our proprietary and modular T cell programming technologies to develop what we believe are safer and more effective T cell therapies. Our initial focus is on the development of a pipeline of product candidates for the treatment of hematological cancers and the progression of these product candidates through clinical development. We also intend to develop follow-on, or next-generation, product candidates with additional elements of programming built into the programmed T cell product candidate to offer enhanced characteristics as compared to the earlier product generation, such as pharmacological control or insensitivity to checkpoint inhibition. However, we may not be able to develop product candidates that are safe and effective, or which compare favorably with our existing product candidates. Even if we are successful in continuing to build our pipeline and developing next-generation product candidates or expanding into solid tumor indications, the potential product candidates that we identify may not be suitable for clinical development, including as a result of lack of safety, lack of tolerability, lack of anti-tumor activity, or other characteristics that indicate that they are unlikely to be products that will receive marketing approval, achieve market acceptance or obtain reimbursements from third-party payors. If we do not successfully develop and commercialize product candidates or collaborate with others to do so, we will not be able to obtain product revenue in future periods, which could significantly harm our financial position and adversely affect the trading price of our ADSs.

Our preclinical programs may experience delays or may never advance to clinical trials, which would adversely affect our ability to obtain regulatory approvals or commercialize these programs on a timely basis or at all, which would have an adverse effect on our business.

Our product candidates AUTO5, AUTO7 and all of our next generation product candidates are still in the preclinical development stage, and the risk of failure of preclinical programs is high. Before we can commence clinical trials for a product candidate, we must complete extensive preclinical testing and studies to obtain regulatory clearance to initiate human clinical trials, including based on INDs in the United States and clinical trial applications, or CTAs, in Europe. We cannot be certain of the timely completion or outcome of our preclinical testing and studies and cannot predict if the FDA, the EMA or other regulatory authorities will accept our proposed clinical programs or if the outcome of our preclinical testing and studies will ultimately support the further development of our programs. As a result, we cannot be sure that we will be able to submit INDs or similar applications for our preclinical programs on the timelines we expect, if at all, and we cannot be sure that submission of INDs or similar applications will result in the FDA, the EMA or other regulatory authorities allowing clinical trials to begin.

Clinical trials are difficult to design and implement, involve uncertain outcomes and may not be successful.

Human clinical trials are difficult to design and implement, in part because they are subject to rigorous regulatory requirements. The design of a clinical trial can determine whether its results will support approval of a product and flaws in the design of a clinical trial may not become apparent until the clinical trial is well advanced. As an organization, we have limited experience designing clinical trials and may be unable to design and execute a clinical trial to support regulatory approval. There is a high failure rate for biologic products proceeding through clinical trials, which may be higher for our product candidates because they are based on new technology and engineered on a patient-by-patient basis. Many companies in the pharmaceutical and biotechnology industries have suffered significant setbacks in late-stage clinical trials even after achieving promising results in preclinical testing and earlier-stage clinical trials. Data obtained from preclinical and clinical activities are subject to varying interpretations, which may delay, limit or prevent regulatory approval. In addition, we may experience

regulatory delays or rejections as a result of many factors, including changes in regulatory policy during the period of our product candidate development. Any such delays could negatively impact our business, financial condition, results of operations and prospects.

Success in preclinical studies or clinical trials may not be indicative of results in future clinical trials.

Results from preclinical studies are not necessarily predictive of future clinical trial results, and interim results of a clinical trial are not necessarily indicative of final results. For example, while we have received some positive preliminary data in a clinical trial of AUTO1 in pediatric ALL, we have no clinical data for AUTO1 in adult ALL and we are in the Phase 1 dose-escalation phases of our ongoing clinical trials with AUTO2 and AUTO3, and we have treated only a small number of patients in all of these trials. For that reason, we do not know whether these candidates will be effective for the intended indications or safe in humans. Our product candidates may fail to show the desired safety and efficacy in clinical development despite positive results in preclinical studies or having successfully advanced through initial clinical trials. This failure to establish sufficient efficacy and safety could cause us to abandon clinical development of our product candidates.

We depend on enrollment of patients in our clinical trials for our product candidates. If we encounter difficulties enrolling patients in our clinical trials, our clinical development activities could be delayed or otherwise adversely affected.

Identifying and qualifying patients to participate in clinical trials of our product candidates is critical to our success. We may experience difficulties in patient enrollment in our clinical trials for a variety of reasons. The timely completion of clinical trials in accordance with their protocols depends, among other things, on our ability to enroll a sufficient number of patients who remain in the study until its conclusion. The enrollment of patients depends on many factors, including:

- the patient eligibility criteria defined in the protocol;
- the number of patients with the disease or condition being studied;
- the perceived risks and benefits of the product candidate in the trial;
- clinicians' and patients' perceptions as to the potential advantages of the product candidate being studied in relation to other available therapies, including any new drugs that may be approved for the indications we are investigating or drugs that may be used off-label for these indications;
- the size and nature of the patient population required for analysis of the trial's primary endpoints;
- the proximity of patients to study sites;
- the design of the clinical trial;
- our ability to recruit clinical trial investigators with the appropriate competencies and experience;
- competing clinical trials for similar therapies or other new therapeutics not involving T cell-based immunotherapy;
- our ability to obtain and maintain patient consents; and
- the risk that patients enrolled in clinical trials will drop out of the clinical trials before completion of their treatment.

In particular, some of our clinical trials will look to enroll patients with characteristics which are found in a very small population. For example, our planned clinical trials for AUTO4 will seek to enroll patients with peripheral T-cell lymphoma, a rare and heterogeneous form of non-Hodgkin lymphoma, or NHL. Other companies are conducting clinical trials with their redirected T cell therapies in multiple myeloma, pediatric relapsed or refractory acute B lymphocytic leukemia, or pediatric ALL, and relapsed or refractory diffuse large B-cell lymphoma, or DLBCL, and seek to enroll patients in their studies that may otherwise be eligible for our clinical trials, which could lead to slow recruitment and delays in our clinical programs. In addition, since the number of qualified clinical investigators is limited, we expect to conduct some of our clinical trials at the same clinical trial sites that some of our competitors use, which could further reduce the number of patients who are available for our clinical trials in these clinical trial sites. Moreover, because our product candidates represent a departure from more commonly used methods for cancer treatment, potential patients and their doctors may be inclined to use conventional therapies, such as chemotherapy and antibody therapy, rather than enroll patients in our clinical trials.

Delays in patient enrollment may result in increased costs or may affect the timing or outcome of the planned clinical trials, which could prevent completion of these clinical trials and adversely affect our ability to advance the development of our product candidates. In addition, many of the factors that may lead to a delay in the commencement or completion of clinical trials may also ultimately lead to the denial of regulatory approval of our product candidates.

The market opportunities for certain of our product candidates may be limited to those patients who are ineligible for or have failed prior treatments and may be small, and our projections regarding the size of the addressable market may be incorrect.

Cancer therapies are sometimes characterized as first line, second line or third line, and the FDA often approves new therapies initially only for third line use. When blood cancers are detected they are treated with first line of therapy with the intention of curing the cancer. This generally consists of chemotherapy, radiation, antibody drugs, tumor targeted small molecules, or a combination of these. In addition, sometimes a bone marrow transplantation can be added to the first line therapy after the combination chemotherapy is given. If the patient's cancer relapses, then they are given a second line or third line therapy, which can consist of more chemotherapy, radiation, antibody drugs, tumor targeted small molecules, or a combination of these, or bone marrow transplant. Generally, the higher the line of therapy, the lower the chance of a cure. With third or higher line, the goal of the therapy in the treatment of lymphoma and myeloma is to control the growth of the tumor and extend the life of the patient, as a cure is unlikely to happen. Patients are generally referred to clinical trials in these situations.

We are initially developing AUTO1 as second line therapy for patients with ALL who are considered at high risk for relapse and as third line therapy for other patients with ALL, AUTO2 as a fourth line therapy for multiple myeloma, AUTO3 as a third line therapy for DLBCL and AUTO4 as a second line therapy for TRBC1-positive T-cell lymphoma patients. If AUTO2 or AUTO3 are approved as a fourth line and third line therapy in their respective indications, we would expect to initiate a trial to potentially position either or both of the products to an earlier line of therapy, such as third line and second line, respectively. Similarly, a clinical trial with AUTO4 may be initiated to position it as a consolidation therapy after first line chemotherapy in T-cell lymphoma, but there is no guarantee that any of our product candidates, even if approved, would be approved for an earlier line of therapy. In addition, we may have to conduct additional large randomized clinical trials prior to gaining approval for the earlier line of therapy.

Our projections of both the number of people who have the cancers we are targeting, as well as the size of the patient population subset of people with these cancers in a position to receive first,

second, third and fourth line therapy and who have the potential to benefit from treatment with our product candidates, are based on our beliefs and estimates. These estimates have been derived from a variety of sources, including scientific literature, surveys of clinics, patient foundations, or market research and may prove to be incorrect. Further, new studies may change the estimated incidence or prevalence of these cancers. The number of patients may turn out to be fewer than expected. Additionally, the potentially addressable patient population for our product candidates may be limited or may not be amenable to treatment with our product candidates. For instance, in our planned clinical trials for AUTO4 we expect to initially target a small patient population that suffers from peripheral T-cell lymphoma, a rare and heterogeneous form of NHL. Even if we obtain significant market share for our product candidates, because the potential target populations are small, we may never achieve significant revenues without obtaining regulatory approval for additional indications or as part of earlier lines of therapy.

Adverse side effects or other safety risks associated with our product candidates could delay or preclude approval, cause us to suspend or discontinue clinical trials, cause us to abandon product candidates, could limit the commercial profile of an approved label, or could result in significant negative consequences following any potential marketing approval.

In clinical trials conducted by other companies involving CAR T cells, the most prominent acute toxicities included symptoms thought to be associated with cytokine release syndrome, or CRS, such as fever, low blood pressure and kidney dysfunction. Some patients also experienced toxicity of the central nervous system, or neurotoxicity, such as confusion, tremor, cranial nerve dysfunction, seizures and speech impairment. Adverse events with the worst grades and attributed to CAR T cells were severe and life threatening in some patients. The life threatening events were related to kidney dysfunction and neurotoxicity. Severe and life threatening toxicities occurred mostly in the first two weeks after cell infusion and generally resolved within three weeks, but several patients died in clinical trials involving CAR T cells developed by other companies and academic institutions. In initial clinical trials of AUTO1, we have observed Grade 1 and Grade 2 CRS, but no Grade 3 or higher CRS. We have also observed severe neurotoxicity in the trials and one patient has died due to a serious adverse event (sepsis). In addition, in our Phase 1/2 clinical trial of AUTO2, one patient had experienced a serious adverse event of Grade 4 neutropenia. There can be no assurance that patients in future trials of AUTO1, AUTO2 or any of our other product candidates will not experience more severe CRS, unacceptable levels of neurotoxicity or other serious adverse events.

Our clinical trials include cancer patients who are very sick and whose health is deteriorating, and we expect that additional clinical trials of our other product candidates will include similar patients with deteriorating health. It is possible that some of these patients may experience similar adverse side effects as were observed in clinical trials conducted by other companies and academic institutions involving CAR T cells, and that additional patients may die during our clinical trials for various reasons, including as a result of receiving our product candidates, because the patient's disease is too advanced, or because the patient experiences medical problems that may not be related to our product candidate. Even if the deaths are not related to our product candidate, the deaths could affect perceptions regarding the safety of our product candidate.

Patient deaths and severe side effects caused by our product candidates, or by products or product candidates of other companies that are thought to have similarities with our therapeutic candidates, could result in the delay, suspension, clinical hold or termination of clinical trials by us, the FDA, the EMA or other regulatory authorities for a number of reasons. If we elect or are required to delay, suspend or terminate any clinical trial of any product candidates that we develop, the commercial prospects of such product candidates will be harmed and our ability to generate product revenues from any of these product candidates would be delayed or eliminated. Serious adverse events observed in clinical trials could hinder or prevent market acceptance of the product candidate at issue. Any of these occurrences may harm our business, prospects, financial condition and results of operations significantly.

If the clinical trials of any of our product candidates fail to demonstrate safety and efficacy to the satisfaction of the FDA, the EMA or other comparable regulatory authorities, or do not otherwise produce favorable results, we may incur additional costs or experience delays in completing, or ultimately be unable to complete, the development and commercialization of our product candidates.

We may not commercialize, market, promote or sell any product candidate without obtaining marketing approval from the FDA, the EMA or other comparable regulatory authority, and we may never receive such approvals. It is impossible to predict accurately when or if any of our product candidates will prove effective or safe in humans and will receive regulatory approval. Before obtaining marketing approval from regulatory authorities for the commercial sale of any of our product candidates, we must demonstrate through lengthy, complex and expensive preclinical testing and clinical trials that our product candidates are both safe and effective for use in each target indication. Clinical testing is expensive, difficult to design and implement, can take many years to complete and is uncertain as to outcome. A failure of one or more clinical trials can occur at any stage of testing.

We may experience numerous unforeseen events prior to, during, or as a result of, clinical trials that could delay or prevent our ability to receive marketing approval or commercialize any of our product candidates, including:

- the FDA, the EMA or other comparable regulatory authority may disagree as to the number, design or implementation of our clinical trials, or may not interpret the results from clinical trials as we do;
- regulators or institutional review boards may not authorize us or our investigators to commence a clinical trial or conduct a clinical trial at a prospective trial site;
- we may not reach agreement on acceptable terms with prospective clinical trial sites, the terms of which can be subject to extensive negotiation and may vary significantly among different clinical trial sites;
- clinical trials of our product candidates may produce negative or inconclusive results;
- we may decide, or regulators may require us, to conduct additional clinical trials or abandon product development programs;
- the number of patients required for clinical trials of our product candidates may be larger than we anticipate, enrollment in these clinical trials may be slower than we anticipate, participants may drop out of these clinical trials at a higher rate than we anticipate or we may fail to recruit suitable patients to participate in a trial;
- our third-party contractors may fail to comply with regulatory requirements or meet their contractual obligations to us in a timely manner, or at all;
- regulators may issue a clinical hold, or regulators or institutional review boards may require that we or our investigators suspend or terminate clinical research for various reasons, including noncompliance with regulatory requirements or a finding that the participants are being exposed to unacceptable health risks;
- the cost of clinical trials of our product candidates may be greater than we anticipate;
- the FDA, the EMA or other comparable regulatory authorities may fail to approve our manufacturing processes or facilities;
- the supply or quality of our product candidates or other materials necessary to conduct clinical trials of our product candidates may be insufficient or inadequate;
- our product candidates may have undesirable side effects or other unexpected characteristics, particularly given their novel, first-in-human application, such as cytokine-induced toxicity and

T-cell aplasia, causing us or our investigators, regulators or institutional review boards to suspend or terminate the clinical trials; and

- the approval policies or regulations of the FDA, the EMA or other comparable regulatory authorities may significantly change in a manner rendering our clinical data insufficient for approval.

To the extent that the results of the trials are not satisfactory for the FDA, the EMA or regulatory authorities in other countries or jurisdiction to approve our BLA, Marketing Approval Application, or MAA, or other comparable application, the commercialization of our product candidates may be significantly delayed, or we may be required to expend significant additional resources, which may not be available to us, to conduct additional trials in support of potential approval of our product candidates.

We may not be able to successfully create our own manufacturing infrastructure for supply of our requirements of programmed T cell product candidates for use in clinical trials and for commercial sale.

Our manufacturing and commercialization strategy is based on establishing a fully integrated vein-to-vein product delivery cycle. Over time, we expect to establish regional or zonal manufacturing hubs to service major markets to meet projected needs for commercial sale quantities. However, we do not currently own any facility that may be used as our clinical-scale manufacturing and processing facility and rely on the use of manufacturing suites on-site at Royal Free Hospital's Centre for Cell, Gene and Tissue Therapeutics and King's College London Vector Lab, where our employees currently perform or supervise viral vector manufacturing and cell processing for our product candidates.

We expect to expand our cell manufacturing capacity in 2018 by taking occupancy of a specialized manufacturing suite at the Cell and Gene Therapy Catapult manufacturing center in Stevenage, United Kingdom. Our long-term plan is to establish additional manufacturing sites in the United States and in Europe as needed. The implementation of this plan is subject to many risks. For example, the establishment of a cell-therapy manufacturing facility is a complex endeavor requiring knowledgeable individuals. Creating an internal manufacturing infrastructure will rely upon finding personnel with an appropriate background and training to staff and operate the facility. Should we be unable to find these individuals, we may need to rely on external contractors or train additional personnel to fill the needed roles. There are a small number of individuals with experience in cell therapy and the competition for these individuals is high.

We expect that the establishment of our own commercial cell manufacturing facilities will provide us with enhanced control of material supply for both clinical trials and the commercial market, enable the more rapid implementation of process changes, and allow for better long-term cost margins. However, we have no experience as a company in designing and operating a commercial manufacturing facility and may never be successful in developing our own manufacturing facility or capability. We may establish additional manufacturing sites as we expand our commercial footprint to multiple geographies, which may lead to regulatory delays or prove costly. Even if we are successful, our manufacturing operations could be affected by cost-overruns, unexpected delays, equipment failures, labor shortages, natural disasters, power failures and numerous other factors, or we may not be successful in establishing sufficient capacity to produce our product candidates in sufficient quantities to meet the requirements for the potential launch or to meet potential future demand, all of which could prevent us from realizing the intended benefits of our manufacturing strategy and have a material adverse effect on our business.

We may not be successful in achieving cost of goods at commercial scale that provide for an attractive margin.

We believe that our current, fully enclosed manufacturing processes are fit for commercial scale and we anticipate they will enable commercial supply at an economical cost. However, we have not yet established manufacturing capacity at commercial scale and may underestimate the cost and time required to do so, or overestimate cost reductions from economies of scale that can be realized with our manufacturing processes. We may ultimately be unable to manage the cost of goods for our product candidates to levels that will allow for a margin in line with our expectations and return on investment if and when those product candidates are commercialized.

Our product candidates are biologics and the manufacture of our product candidates is complex and we may encounter difficulties in production, particularly with respect to process development or scaling-out of our manufacturing capabilities. If we encounter such difficulties, our ability to provide supply of our product candidates for clinical trials or our products for patients, if approved, could be delayed or stopped.

We have developed a process for manufacturing programmed T cells in a fully enclosed system designed to minimize the risk of contamination, and we have improved the viral transduction process to help eliminate processing inconsistencies. We believe that our current processes are suitable for commercialization. While we have established a process which we believe is scalable for commercial production, each manufacturing process must be validated through the performance of process validation runs to guarantee that the facility, personnel, equipment, and process work as designed. We have not yet manufactured or processed our product candidates on a commercial scale and may not be able to do so for any of our product candidates.

We, like other manufacturers of biologic products, may encounter difficulties in production, particularly in scaling up or out, validating the production process, and assuring high reliability of the manufacturing process. These problems include delays or breakdowns in logistics and shipping, difficulties with production costs and yields, quality control, and product testing, operator error, lack of availability of qualified personnel, as well as failure to comply with strictly enforced federal, state and foreign regulations.

Furthermore, if microbial, viral or other contaminations are discovered in our supply of product candidates or in the manufacturing facilities, such manufacturing facilities may need to be closed for an extended period of time to investigate and remedy the contamination. We cannot assure you that any of these or other issues relating to the manufacture of our product candidates will not occur in the future. Any delay or interruption in the supply of clinical trial supplies could delay the completion of clinical trials, increase the costs associated with maintaining clinical trial programs and, depending upon the period of delay, require us to begin new clinical trials at additional expense or terminate clinical trials completely.

The manufacture and delivery of programmed T cell therapies to patients involves complex, integrated processes, including harvesting T cells from patients, programming the T cells *ex vivo*, multiplying the T cells to obtain the desired dose, and ultimately infusing the T cells back into a patient's body. As a result of the complexities, the cost to manufacture biologics in general, and our programmed T cell product candidates in particular, is generally higher than traditional small molecule chemical compounds, and the manufacturing process is less reliable and is more difficult and costly to reproduce. In addition, our manufacturing process will be susceptible to product loss or failure due to logistical issues associated with the collection of white blood cells from the patient, shipping such patient material to the manufacturing site, storing and processing such patient material, shipping the patient material with the programmed T cells back to the patient, and infusing the patient with the final

product. Other manufacturing issues include the differences in patient starting materials, inconsistency in cell growth, variability in product characteristics, interruptions in the manufacturing process, equipment or reagent failure, improper installation or operation of equipment, and vendor or operator error. Even minor deviations from normal manufacturing processes could result in reduced production yields, product defects, and other supply disruptions. If we lose, destroy or otherwise impair the patient materials at any point in the vein-to-vein supply chain, the manufacturing process for that patient will need to be restarted and the resulting delay may adversely affect that patient's outcome due to the risk of disease progression. In addition, because our product candidates are manufactured for each particular patient, we will be required to maintain a chain of identity with respect to materials as they move from the patient to the manufacturing facility, through the manufacturing process, and back to the patient. Maintaining such a chain of identity is difficult and complex, and failure to do so could result in adverse patient outcomes, loss of product, or regulatory action including withdrawal of our products from the market. Further, as product candidates are developed through preclinical to late stage clinical trials towards approval and commercialization, it is common that various aspects of the development program, such as manufacturing methods, are altered along the way in an effort to optimize processes and results. Such changes carry the risk that they will not achieve these intended objectives, and any of these changes could cause our product candidates to perform differently and affect the results of planned clinical trials or other future clinical trials.

Our manufacturing facilities also require commissioning and validation activities to demonstrate that they operate as designed, and are subject to government inspections by the FDA, the EMA and other comparable regulatory authorities. If we are unable to reliably produce products to specifications acceptable to the regulatory authorities, we may not obtain or maintain the approvals we need to manufacture our products. Further, our facilities may fail to pass government inspections prior to or after the commercial launch of our product candidates, which would cause significant delays and additional costs required to remediate any deficiencies identified by the regulatory authorities. Any of these challenges could delay completion of clinical trials, require bridging clinical trials or the repetition of one or more clinical trials, increase clinical trial costs, delay approval of our product candidate, impair commercialization efforts, increase our cost of goods, and have an adverse effect on our business, financial condition, results of operations and growth prospects.

Prior treatments can alter the cancer and negatively impact chances for achieving clinical activity with our programmed T cells.

Patients with hematological cancers receive highly toxic lympho-depleting chemotherapy as their initial treatments that can impact the viability of the T cells collected from the patient and can contribute to highly variable responses to programmed T cell therapies. Patients could also have received prior therapies that target the same target antigen on the cancer cells as our intended programmed T cell product candidate and thereby lead to a selection of cancer cells with low or no expression of the target. As a result, our programmed T cell product candidates may not recognize the cancer cell and may fail to achieve clinical activity. Both of our most advanced product candidates, AUTO2 and AUTO3, may face this challenge. For example, multiple myeloma patients could have received a BCMA-targeting antibody drug conjugate (BCMA-ADC) (GSK 2857916), BCMA targeting T cell engagers like AMG-420 (Amgen) and EM-901 (Celgene), BCMA targeting CAR-T approaches like bb2121 (bluebird bio), or similar products or product candidates prior to receiving AUTO2; pediatric ALL patients could have received blinatumomab or Kymriah, or a CD19 ADC, or a CD22 targeting CAR T, or CD22 ADC, like inotuzomab, or similar products or product candidates prior to receiving AUTO3; and DLBCL patients could have received Yescarta, Kymriah, JCAR-17, inotuzomab, CD22 targeting CAR or blinatumomab, or similar products or product candidates prior to receiving AUTO3. If any of our product candidates do not achieve a sufficient level of clinical activity, we may discontinue the development of that product candidate, which could have an adverse effect on the value of our ADSs.

We may expend our limited resources to pursue a particular product candidate or indication and fail to capitalize on product candidates or indications that may be more profitable or have a greater likelihood of success.

Because we have limited financial and management resources, we focus on research programs and product candidates that we identify for specific indications. As a result, we may forego or delay pursuit of opportunities with other product candidates or for other indications that later prove to have greater commercial potential. Our resource allocation decisions may cause us to fail to capitalize on viable commercial products or profitable market opportunities. Our spending on current and future research and development programs and product candidates for specific indications may not yield any commercially viable products. If we do not accurately evaluate the commercial potential or target market for a particular product candidate, we may relinquish valuable rights to that product candidate through collaboration, licensing or other royalty arrangements in cases in which it would have been more advantageous for us to retain sole development and commercialization rights to such product candidate.

We plan to seek, but may fail to obtain “breakthrough therapy” designation from the FDA and “PRIME” designation from the EMA, and may pursue accelerated approval for some or all of our programmed T cell product candidates, which may prolong the regulatory approval process for our product candidates.

In 2012, the FDA established a breakthrough therapy designation which is intended to expedite the development and review of product candidates that treat serious or life-threatening diseases when “preliminary clinical evidence indicates that the drug may demonstrate substantial improvement over existing therapies on one or more clinically significant endpoints, such as substantial treatment effects observed early in clinical development.” The designation of a product candidate as a breakthrough therapy provides potential benefits that include more frequent meetings with FDA to discuss the development plan for the product candidate and ensure collection of appropriate data needed to support approval; more frequent written correspondence from the FDA about such things as the design of the proposed clinical trials and use of biomarkers; guidance on an efficient drug development program, beginning as early as Phase 1; organizational commitment involving senior managers; and eligibility for rolling review and priority review. The frequency of communication from the FDA is intended to allow for questions and issues to be resolved quickly, which often leads to earlier drug approval and access by patients. Similarly, the EMA has established the PRIME scheme to expedite the development and review of product candidates that show a potential to address to a significant extent an unmet medical need, based on early clinical data.

We intend to seek breakthrough therapy designation or PRIME designation for some or all of our programmed T cell product candidates that may qualify. There is no assurance that we will obtain breakthrough therapy designation, or that we will obtain access to PRIME, for any of our product candidates. Breakthrough therapy designation and PRIME eligibility do not change the standards for product approval, and there is no assurance that such designation or eligibility will result in expedited review or approval. Additionally, breakthrough therapy designation and access to PRIME can each be revoked if the criteria for eligibility cease to be met as clinical data emerges.

We may also seek accelerated approval for certain of our product candidates. Under the FDA's fast track and accelerated approval programs, the FDA may approve a drug or biologic for a serious or life-threatening illness that provides meaningful therapeutic benefit to patients over existing treatments based upon a surrogate endpoint that is reasonably likely to predict clinical benefit, or on a clinical endpoint that can be measured earlier than irreversible morbidity or mortality, that is reasonably likely to predict an effect on irreversible morbidity or mortality or other clinical benefit, taking into account the severity, rarity, or prevalence of the condition and the availability or lack of alternative treatments. For

drugs granted accelerated approval, post-marketing confirmatory trials have been required to describe the anticipated effect on irreversible morbidity or mortality or other clinical benefit. These confirmatory trials must be completed with due diligence. Moreover, the FDA may withdraw approval of our indication approved under the accelerated approval pathway if, for example:

- the trial or trials required to verify the predicted clinical benefit of our product candidates fail to verify such benefit or do not demonstrate sufficient clinical benefit to justify the risks associated with the drug;
- other evidence demonstrates that our product candidates are not shown to be safe or effective under the conditions of use;
- we fail to conduct any required post-approval trial of our product candidates with due diligence; or
- we disseminate false or misleading promotional materials relating to the relevant product candidate.

Risks Related to our Business Operations

As a company based outside of the United States, our business is subject to economic, political, regulatory and other risks associated with international operations.

As a company based in the United Kingdom, our business is subject to risks associated with conducting business outside of the United States. Many of our suppliers and clinical trial relationships are located outside the United States. Accordingly, our future results could be harmed by a variety of factors, including:

- economic weakness, including inflation, or political instability in particular non-U.S. economies and markets;
- differing and changing regulatory requirements for product approvals;
- differing jurisdictions could present different issues for securing, maintaining or obtaining freedom to operate in such jurisdictions;
- potentially reduced protection for intellectual property rights;
- difficulties in compliance with different, complex and changing laws, regulations and court systems of multiple jurisdictions and compliance with a wide variety of foreign laws, treaties and regulations;
- changes in non-U.S. regulations and customs, tariffs and trade barriers;
- changes in non-U.S. currency exchange rates of the pound sterling, U.S. dollar, euro and currency controls;
- changes in a specific country's or region's political or economic environment, including the implications of the recent decision of the eligible members of the U.K. electorate for the United Kingdom to withdraw from the European Union;
- trade protection measures, import or export licensing requirements or other restrictive actions by governments;
- differing reimbursement regimes and price controls in certain non-U.S. markets;
- negative consequences from changes in tax laws;
- compliance with tax, employment, immigration and labor laws for employees living or traveling abroad, including, for example, the variable tax treatment in different jurisdictions of options granted under our share option schemes or equity incentive plans;

- workforce uncertainty in countries where labor unrest is more common than in the United States;
- litigation or administrative actions resulting from claims against us by current or former employees or consultants individually or as part of class actions, including claims of wrongful terminations, discrimination, misclassification or other violations of labor law or other alleged conduct;
- difficulties associated with staffing and managing international operations, including differing labor relations;
- production shortages resulting from any events affecting raw material supply or manufacturing capabilities abroad; and
- business interruptions resulting from geo-political actions, including war and terrorism, or natural disasters including earthquakes, typhoons, floods and fires.

Exchange rate fluctuations may materially affect our results of operations and financial condition.

Our functional currency and that of our subsidiaries is the pound sterling and our reporting currency is the U.S. dollar. Given that our functional currency and that of our subsidiaries is the pound sterling, but our reporting currency is the U.S. dollar, fluctuations in currency exchange rates between the U.S. dollar and the pound sterling could materially and adversely affect our business. There may be instances in which costs and revenue will not be matched with respect to currency denomination. Currently, we do not have any exchange rate hedging arrangements in place.

Additionally, although we are based in the United Kingdom, we source research and development, manufacturing, consulting and other services from the United States and other countries. Further, potential future revenue may be derived from the United States, countries within the euro zone, and various other countries around the world. As a result, our business and the price of our ADSs may be affected by fluctuations in foreign exchange rates not only between the pound sterling and the U.S. dollar, but also the euro and other currencies, which may have a significant impact on our results of operations and cash flows from period to period. As a result, to the extent we continue our expansion on a global basis, we expect that increasing portions of our revenue, cost of revenue, assets and liabilities will be subject to fluctuations in currency valuations. We may experience economic loss and a negative impact on earnings or net assets solely as a result of currency exchange rate fluctuations.

We will need to grow the size of our organization, and we may experience difficulties in managing this growth.

As of April 15, 2018, we had 126 employees, 122 of whom are full-time. As our development and commercialization plans and strategies develop, and as we transition into operating as a public company, we expect to need additional managerial, operational, financial and other personnel, including personnel to support our product development and planned future commercialization efforts. Future growth will impose significant added responsibilities on members of management, including:

- identifying, recruiting, integrating, maintaining and motivating additional employees;
- managing our internal development efforts effectively, including the clinical, FDA and EMA review processes for our product candidates; and
- improving our operational, financial and management controls, reporting systems and procedures.

There are a small number of individuals with experience in cell therapy and the competition for these individuals is high. Our future financial performance and our ability to commercialize our product candidates will depend, in part, on our ability to effectively manage any future growth, and our management may also have to divert a disproportionate amount of its attention away from day-to-day activities in order to devote a substantial amount of time to managing these growth activities.

If we are not able to effectively expand our organization by hiring new employees, we may not be able to successfully implement the tasks necessary to further develop and commercialize our product candidates and, accordingly, may not achieve our research, development and commercialization goals.

In addition to expanding our organization, we are increasing the size of our facilities and building out our development and manufacturing capabilities, which requires significant capital expenditures. If these capital expenditures are higher than expected, it may adversely affect our financial condition and capital resources. In addition, if the increase in the size of our facilities is delayed, it may limit our ability to rapidly expand the size of our organization in order to meet our corporate goals.

Our future success depends on our ability to retain key members of senior management and to attract, retain and motivate qualified personnel.

Our ability to compete in the highly competitive biopharmaceutical industry depends upon our ability to attract and retain highly qualified management, research and development, clinical, financial and business development personnel. We are highly dependent on our management, scientific and medical personnel, including Dr. Christian Itin, our Chief Executive Officer and Dr. Martin Pulé, our scientific founder, Senior Vice President and Chief Scientific Officer. Although we intend to enter into new employment arrangements with the members of our senior management that will be effective upon the closing of this offering, each of them may currently terminate their employment with us at any time and will continue to be able to do so after the closing of this offering. We do not maintain “key person” insurance for any of our employees.

Recruiting and retaining qualified scientific and clinical personnel and, if we progress the development of any of our product candidates, commercialization, manufacturing and sales and marketing personnel, will be critical to our success. The loss of the services of members of our senior management or other key employees could impede the achievement of our research, development and commercialization objectives and seriously harm our ability to successfully implement our business strategy. Furthermore, replacing members of our senior management and key employees may be difficult and may take an extended period of time because of the limited number of individuals in our industry with the breadth of skills and experience required to successfully develop, gain regulatory approval of and commercialize our product candidates. Our success also depends on our ability to continue to attract, retain and motivate highly skilled junior, mid-level and senior managers, as well as junior, mid-level and senior scientific and medical personnel. Competition to hire from this limited candidate pool is intense, and we may be unable to hire, train, retain or motivate these key personnel on acceptable terms given the competition among numerous pharmaceutical and biotechnology companies for similar personnel. We also experience competition for the hiring of scientific and clinical personnel from universities and research institutions. In addition, we rely on consultants and advisors, including scientific and clinical advisors, to assist us in formulating our research and development and commercialization strategy. Our consultants and advisors may have commitments under consulting or advisory contracts with other entities that may limit their availability to us. If we are unable to continue to attract and retain high-quality personnel, our ability to pursue our growth strategy will be limited.

If we engage in future acquisitions or strategic collaborations, this may increase our capital requirements, dilute our shareholders, cause us to incur debt or assume contingent liabilities and subject us to other risks.

From time to time, we may evaluate various acquisitions and strategic collaborations, including licensing or acquiring complementary products, intellectual property rights, technologies or businesses, as we may deem appropriate to carry out our business plan. Any potential acquisition or strategic collaboration may entail numerous risks, including:

- increased operating expenses and cash requirements;
- the assumption of additional indebtedness or contingent liabilities;
- assimilation of operations, intellectual property and products of an acquired company, including difficulties associated with integrating new personnel;
- the diversion of our management's attention from our existing programs and initiatives in pursuing such a strategic partnership, merger or acquisition;
- retention of key employees, the loss of key personnel and uncertainties in our ability to maintain key business relationships;
- risks and uncertainties associated with the other party to such a transaction, including the prospects of that party and their existing products or product candidates and regulatory approvals; and
- our inability to generate revenue from acquired technology sufficient to meet our objectives in undertaking the acquisition or even to offset the associated acquisition and maintenance costs.

Additionally, if we undertake acquisitions, we may issue dilutive securities, assume or incur debt obligations, incur large one-time expenses and acquire intangible assets that could result in significant future amortization expenses. Moreover, we may not be able to locate suitable acquisition opportunities and this inability could impair our ability to grow or obtain access to technology or products that may be important to the development of our business.

Our internal computer systems, or those of our future collaborators or other contractors or consultants, may fail or suffer security breaches, which could result in a significant disruption of our product development programs and our ability to operate our business effectively.

Our internal computer systems and those of our current and any future collaborators and other contractors or consultants are vulnerable to damage from computer viruses, unauthorized access, natural disasters, terrorism, war and telecommunication and electrical failures. While we have not experienced any significant system failure, accident or security breach to date, if such an event were to occur and cause interruptions in our operations, it could result in a disruption of our development programs and our business operations, whether due to a loss of our trade secrets or other proprietary information or other similar disruptions. For example, the loss of clinical trial data from completed or future clinical trials could result in delays in our regulatory approval efforts and significantly increase our costs to recover or reproduce the data. To the extent that any disruption or security breach were to result in a loss of, or damage to, our data or applications, or inappropriate disclosure of confidential or proprietary information, we could incur liability, our competitive position could be harmed and the further development and commercialization of our product candidates could be delayed.

Business disruptions could seriously harm our future revenue and financial condition and increase our costs and expenses.

Our operations, and those of our vendors and suppliers, could be subject to earthquakes, power shortages, telecommunications failures, water shortages, floods, hurricanes, typhoons, fires, extreme

weather conditions, medical epidemics and other natural or man-made disasters or business interruptions, for which we are predominantly self-insured. The occurrence of any of these business disruptions could seriously harm our operations and financial condition and increase our costs and expenses. We currently rely on third-party suppliers to produce and process our product candidates on a patient-by-patient basis. Our ability to obtain clinical supplies of our product candidates could be disrupted if the operations of these suppliers are affected by a man-made or natural disaster or other business interruption.

Risks Related to Our Dependence on Third Parties

We are dependent on licensed intellectual property, and if we were to fail to comply with our obligations under our existing and any future intellectual property licenses with third parties, we could lose license rights that are important to our business and we may not be able to continue developing or commercializing our product candidates, if approved.

We are party to an exclusive intellectual property license agreement with UCLB, the technology-transfer company of University College London, which is important to our business and under which we in-license patent rights related to 25 patent families and other intellectual property related to our business. We expect to enter into additional license agreements in the future. Our existing license agreement with UCLB imposes, and we expect that future license agreements will impose, various due diligence, milestone payment, royalty, insurance and other obligations on us. Any uncured, material breach under the UCLB license agreement could result in our loss of rights to practice the patent rights and other intellectual property licensed to us, and could compromise our development and commercialization efforts for our current or any future product candidates.

Licensing of intellectual property is of critical importance to our business and involves complex legal, business and scientific issues. For example, under our license agreement with UCLB, our exclusive license under certain of the patent rights is subject to specified exclusions. Our right to enforce any patents that may issue from such patent rights similarly excludes enforcing them in such excluded fields, and obligates us to coordinate our enforcement efforts with a licensee, if any, with rights in that excluded field. If a third party-licensee has the right to enforce those patents in their field, it could put a patent that may issue from this family at risk of being invalidated or construed narrowly, in which case we would no longer have the benefit of the patents for our own exclusivity. Disputes may arise between us and our licensors regarding intellectual property subject to a license agreement, including disputes regarding:

- the scope of rights granted under the license agreement and other interpretation-related issues;
- whether and the extent to which our technology and processes infringe on intellectual property of the licensor that is not subject to the licensing agreement;
- our rights to third parties;
- our diligence obligations with respect to the use of the licensed technology in relation to our development and commercialization of our product candidates, and what activities satisfy those diligence obligations;
- the ownership of inventions and know-how resulting from the joint creation or use of intellectual property by our licensors and us;
- our right to transfer or assign the license; and
- the effects of termination.

If disputes over intellectual property that we have licensed prevent or impair our ability to maintain our current licensing arrangement on acceptable terms, we may be unable to successfully develop and

commercialize the affected product candidates. See the section of this prospectus titled “Business—Our License Agreement with UCL Business plc” for a more detailed description of our license agreement with UCLB, as well as our rights and obligations under the agreement.

We rely, and expect to continue to rely, on third parties to conduct the preclinical and clinical trials for our product candidates, and those third parties may not perform satisfactorily, including failing to meet deadlines for the completion of such trials or failing to comply with applicable regulatory requirements.

We depend and will continue to depend upon independent investigators and collaborators, such as universities, medical institutions, and strategic partners to conduct our preclinical and clinical trials. Agreements with such third parties might terminate for a variety of reasons, including a failure to perform by the third parties. If we need to enter into alternative arrangements, our product development activities would be delayed.

Our reliance on these third parties for research and development activities will reduce our control over these activities but will not relieve us of our responsibilities. For example, we will remain responsible for ensuring that each of our clinical trials is conducted in accordance with the general investigational plan and protocols for the trial. Moreover, the FDA requires us to comply with regulatory standards, commonly referred to as good laboratory practices, or GLP, and good clinical practices, or GCP, for conducting, recording and reporting the results of preclinical and clinical trials to assure that data and reported results are credible and accurate and that the rights, integrity and confidentiality of trial participants are protected. Similar regulatory requirements apply outside the United States, including the International Council for Harmonisation of Technical Requirements for the Registration of Pharmaceuticals for Human Use, or ICH. We are also required to register certain ongoing clinical trials and post the results of certain completed clinical trials on a government-sponsored database, ClinicalTrials.gov, within specified timeframes. Failure to do so by us or third parties can result in FDA refusal to approve applications based on the clinical data, enforcement actions, adverse publicity and civil and criminal sanctions.

Furthermore, these third parties may also have relationships with other entities, some of which may be our competitors. If these third parties do not successfully carry out their contractual duties, meet expected deadlines or conduct our clinical trials in accordance with regulatory requirements or our stated protocols, we will not be able to obtain, or may be delayed in obtaining, marketing approvals for our product candidates and will not be able to, or may be delayed in our efforts to, successfully commercialize our product candidates.

In addition, principal investigators for our clinical trials may serve as scientific advisors or consultants to us from time to time and may receive cash or equity compensation in connection with such services. If these relationships and any related compensation result in perceived or actual conflicts of interest, or the FDA concludes that the financial relationship may have affected the interpretation of the trial, the integrity of the data generated at the applicable clinical trial site may be questioned and the utility of the clinical trial itself may be jeopardized, which could result in the delay or rejection by the FDA. Any such delay or rejection could prevent us from commercializing our clinical-stage product candidates or any future product candidates.

Cell-based therapies rely on the availability of reagents, specialized equipment, and other specialty materials, which may not be available to us on acceptable terms or at all. For some of these reagents, equipment, and materials, we rely or may rely on sole source vendors or a limited number of vendors, which could impair our ability to manufacture and supply our products.

Manufacturing our product candidates will require many reagents, which are substances used in our manufacturing processes to bring about chemical or biological reactions, and other specialty materials and equipment, some of which are manufactured or supplied by small companies with limited resources and experience to support commercial biologics production. We currently depend on a limited number of vendors for access to facilities and supply of certain materials and equipment used in the manufacture of our product candidates. For example, we currently use facilities and equipment at Royal Free Hospital and King's College London for vector and cell manufacturing. In addition, we purchase equipment and reagents critical for the manufacture of our product candidates from Miltenyi GmbH and other suppliers on a purchase order basis. Some of our suppliers may not have the capacity to support commercial products manufactured under cGMP by biopharmaceutical firms or may otherwise be ill-equipped to support our needs. We also do not have supply contracts with many of these suppliers, and may not be able to obtain supply contracts with them on acceptable terms or at all. Accordingly, we may not be able to obtain key materials and equipment to support clinical or commercial manufacturing.

For some of these reagents, equipment, and materials, we rely and may in the future rely on sole source vendors or a limited number of vendors. An inability to continue to source product from any of these suppliers, which could be due to regulatory actions or requirements affecting the supplier, adverse financial or other strategic developments experienced by a supplier, labor disputes or shortages, unexpected demands, or quality issues, could adversely affect our ability to satisfy demand for our product candidates, which could adversely and materially affect our product sales and operating results or our ability to conduct clinical trials, either of which could significantly harm our business.

As we continue to develop and scale our manufacturing process, we may need to obtain rights to and supplies of certain materials and equipment to be used as part of that process. We may not be able to obtain rights to such materials on commercially reasonable terms, or at all, and if we are unable to alter our process in a commercially viable manner to avoid the use of such materials or find a suitable substitute, it would have a material adverse effect on our business.

Risks Related to Regulatory Approval of Our Product Candidates and Other Legal Compliance Matters

Even if we complete the necessary preclinical studies and clinical trials, the regulatory approval process is expensive, time-consuming and uncertain and may prevent us from obtaining approvals for the commercialization of some or all of our product candidates. As a result, we cannot predict when or if, and in which territories, we will obtain marketing approval to commercialize a product candidate.

Our product candidates and the activities associated with their development and commercialization, including their design, research, testing, manufacture, safety, efficacy, quality control, recordkeeping, labeling, packaging, storage, approval, advertising, promotion, sale, distribution, import, export, and reporting of safety and other post-market information, are subject to comprehensive regulation by the FDA, the EMA and other comparable regulatory authorities in other jurisdictions. Failure to obtain marketing approval for a product candidate will prevent us from commercializing the product candidate. We have not received approval to market any of our product candidates from regulatory authorities in any jurisdiction. We have only limited experience in filing and

supporting the applications necessary to gain marketing approvals and may rely on third-party contract research organizations, or CROs, to assist us in this process. Securing marketing approval requires the submission of extensive preclinical and clinical data and supporting information to regulatory authorities for each therapeutic indication to establish the product candidate's safety and efficacy. Securing marketing approval also requires the submission of information about the product manufacturing process to, and inspection of manufacturing facilities by, the regulatory authorities. Our product candidates may not be effective, may be only moderately effective or may prove to have undesirable or unintended side effects, toxicities or other characteristics that may preclude our obtaining marketing approval or prevent or limit commercial use. If any of our product candidates receives marketing approval, the accompanying label may limit its approved use, which could limit sales of the product.

The process of obtaining marketing approvals, both in the United States and abroad, is expensive and may take many years, if approval is obtained at all, and can vary substantially based upon a variety of factors, including the type, complexity and novelty of the product candidates involved. Securing marketing approval requires the submission of extensive preclinical and clinical data and supporting information to regulatory authorities for each therapeutic indication to establish the product candidate's safety and efficacy. Securing marketing approval also requires the submission of information about the product manufacturing process to, and inspection of manufacturing facilities by, the regulatory authorities. The FDA, the EMA or other regulatory authorities may determine that our product candidates are not safe and effective, only moderately effective or have undesirable or unintended side effects, toxicities or other characteristics that preclude our obtaining marketing approval or prevent or limit commercial use. Any marketing approval we ultimately obtain may be limited or subject to restrictions or post-approval commitments that render the approved product not commercially viable.

In addition, changes in marketing approval policies during the development period, changes in or the enactment of additional statutes or regulations, or changes in regulatory review for each submitted product application, may cause delays in the approval or rejection of an application. Regulatory authorities have substantial discretion in the approval process and may refuse to accept any application or may decide that our data is insufficient for approval and require additional preclinical, clinical or other studies. In addition, varying interpretations of the data obtained from preclinical and clinical testing could delay, limit or prevent marketing approval of a product candidate. Any marketing approval we ultimately obtain may be limited or subject to restrictions or post-approval commitments that render the approved product not commercially viable. Any marketing approval we ultimately obtain may be limited or subject to restrictions or post-approval commitments that render the approved product not commercially viable.

If we experience delays in obtaining approval or if we fail to obtain approval of our product candidates, the commercial prospects for our product candidates may be harmed and our ability to generate revenues will be impaired.

In order to market and sell our products in the European Union and any other jurisdictions, we must obtain separate marketing approvals and comply with numerous and varying regulatory requirements. The approval procedure varies among countries and can involve additional testing. The time required to obtain approval may differ substantially from that required to obtain approval from the FDA. The regulatory approval process outside the United States generally includes all of the risks associated with obtaining approval from the FDA. In addition, in many countries outside the United States, it is required that the product be approved for reimbursement before the product can be approved for sale in that country. We may not obtain approvals from regulatory authorities outside the United States on a timely basis, if at all. Approval by the FDA does not ensure approval by regulatory authorities in other countries or jurisdictions, and approval by one regulatory authority outside the

United States does not ensure approval by regulatory authorities in other countries or jurisdictions or by the FDA. However, failure to obtain approval in one jurisdiction may impact our ability to obtain approval elsewhere. We may not be able to file for marketing approvals and may not receive necessary approvals to commercialize our products in any market.

Obtaining and maintaining regulatory approval of our product candidates in one jurisdiction does not mean that we will be successful in obtaining regulatory approval of our product candidates in other jurisdictions.

Obtaining and maintaining regulatory approval of our product candidates in one jurisdiction does not guarantee that we will be able to obtain or maintain regulatory approval in any other jurisdiction, but a failure or delay in obtaining regulatory approval in one jurisdiction may have a negative effect on the regulatory approval process in others. For example, even if the FDA grants marketing approval of a product candidate, comparable regulatory authorities in other jurisdictions must also approve the manufacturing, marketing and promotion of the product candidate in those countries. Approval procedures vary among jurisdictions and can involve requirements and administrative review periods different from those in the United States, including additional preclinical studies or clinical trials as clinical studies conducted in one jurisdiction may not be accepted by regulatory authorities in other jurisdictions. In many jurisdictions outside the United States, a product candidate must be approved for reimbursement before it can be approved for sale in that jurisdiction. In some cases, the price that we intend to charge for our products is also subject to approval.

Obtaining foreign regulatory approvals and compliance with foreign regulatory requirements could result in significant delays, difficulties and costs for us and could delay or prevent the introduction of our products in certain countries. If we fail to comply with the regulatory requirements in international markets and/or to receive applicable marketing approvals, our target market will be reduced and our ability to realize the full market potential of our product candidates will be harmed.

The expected withdrawal of the United Kingdom from the European Union, commonly referred to as “Brexit,” may adversely impact our ability to obtain regulatory approvals of our product candidates in the European Union, result in restrictions or imposition of taxes and duties for importing our product candidates into the European Union, and may require us to incur additional expenses in order to develop, manufacture and commercialize our product candidates in the European Union.

In June 2016, a majority of the eligible members of the electorate in the United Kingdom voted to withdraw from the European Union in a national referendum, commonly referred to as “Brexit.” The withdrawal of the United Kingdom from the European Union will take effect either on the effective date of the withdrawal agreement or, in the absence of agreement, two years after the United Kingdom provides a notice of withdrawal pursuant to Article 50 of the Treaty on European Union, unless the European Council, in agreement with the United Kingdom, unanimously decides to extend this period. On March 29, 2017, the United Kingdom formally delivered the notice of withdrawal to the European Union. It appears likely that this withdrawal will involve a process of lengthy negotiations between the United Kingdom and EU Member States to determine the future terms of the United Kingdom's relationship with the European Union. Since a significant proportion of the regulatory framework in the United Kingdom applicable to our business and our product candidates is derived from EU directives and regulations, the withdrawal could materially impact the regulatory regime with respect to the development, manufacture, importation, approval and commercialization of our product candidates in the United Kingdom or the European Union. Any delay in obtaining, or an inability to obtain, any marketing approvals, as a result of Brexit or otherwise, would prevent us from commercializing our product candidates in the United Kingdom or the European Union and restrict our ability to generate revenue and achieve and sustain profitability. In addition, we may be required to pay taxes or duties or

be subjected to other hurdles in connection with the importation of our product candidates into the European Union, or we may incur expenses in establishing a manufacturing facility in the European Union in order to circumvent such hurdles. If any of these outcomes occur, we may be forced to restrict or delay efforts to seek regulatory approval in the United Kingdom or the European Union for our product candidates, or incur significant additional expenses to operate our business, which could significantly and materially harm or delay our ability to generate revenues or achieve profitability of our business.

Even if we obtain marketing approvals for our product candidates, the terms of approvals and ongoing regulation of our products may limit how we manufacture and market our products and compliance with such requirements may involve substantial resources, which could materially impair our ability to generate revenue.

Even if marketing approval of a product candidate is granted, an approved product and its manufacturer and marketer are subject to ongoing review and extensive regulatory requirements for manufacturing processes, labeling, packaging, distribution, adverse event reporting, storage, advertising, promotion, sampling, and recordkeeping, including the potential requirements to implement a risk evaluation and mitigation strategy, or REMS, program or to conduct costly post-marketing studies or clinical trials and surveillance to monitor the safety or efficacy of the product. We must also comply with requirements concerning advertising and promotion for any of our product candidates for which we obtain marketing approval. Promotional communications with respect to prescription drugs are subject to a variety of legal and regulatory restrictions and must be consistent with the information in the product's approved labeling. Thus, we will not be able to promote any products we develop for indications or uses for which they are not approved. In addition, manufacturers of approved products and those manufacturers' facilities are required to comply with extensive regulatory requirements of the FDA, the EMA and other regulatory authorities, including ensuring that quality control and manufacturing procedures conform to cGMP and other comparable regulations and standards, which include requirements relating to quality control and quality assurance as well as the corresponding maintenance of records and documentation and reporting requirements. We or our suppliers could be subject to periodic unannounced inspections by the FDA, the EMA, or other regulatory authorities to monitor and ensure compliance with cGMP.

Accordingly, assuming we receive marketing approval for one or more of our product candidates, we and suppliers will continue to expend time, money and effort in all areas of regulatory compliance, including manufacturing, production, product surveillance and quality control. If we are not able to comply with post-approval regulatory requirements, we could have the marketing approvals for our products withdrawn by regulatory authorities and our ability to market any future products could be limited, which could adversely affect our ability to achieve or sustain profitability.

Thus, the cost of compliance with post-approval regulations may have a negative effect on our operating results and financial condition.

Any product candidate for which we obtain marketing approval could be subject to post-marketing restrictions or recall or withdrawal from the market, and we may be subject to penalties if we fail to comply with regulatory requirements or if we experience unanticipated problems with our product candidates, when and if any of them are approved.

The FDA and other federal and state agencies, including the U.S. Department of Justice, or DOJ, closely regulate compliance with all requirements governing prescription drug products, including requirements pertaining to marketing and promotion of products in accordance with the provisions of the approved labeling and manufacturing of products in accordance with cGMP requirements. The FDA and DOJ impose stringent restrictions on manufacturers' communications regarding off-label use

and if we do not market our products for their approved indications, or if other of our marketing claims are deemed false or misleading, we may be subject to enforcement action. Violations of such requirements may lead to investigations alleging violations of the Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act and other statutes, including the False Claims Act and other federal and state health care fraud and abuse laws as well as state consumer protection laws.

Our failure to comply with all regulatory requirements, and later discovery of previously unknown adverse events or other problems with our products, manufacturers or manufacturing processes, may yield various results, including:

- litigation involving patients taking our products;
- restrictions on such products, manufacturers or manufacturing processes;
- restrictions on the labeling or marketing of a product;
- restrictions on product distribution or use;
- requirements to conduct post-marketing studies or clinical trials;
- warning or untitled letters;
- withdrawal of the products from the market;
- refusal to approve pending applications or supplements to approved applications that we submit;
- recall of products;
- fines, restitution or disgorgement of profits or revenues;
- suspension or withdrawal of marketing approvals;
- suspension of any ongoing clinical trials;
- damage to relationships with any potential collaborators;
- unfavorable press coverage and damage to our reputation;
- refusal to permit the import or export of our products;
- product seizure; or
- injunctions or the imposition of civil or criminal penalties.

Non-compliance by us or any future collaborator with regulatory requirements regarding safety monitoring or pharmacovigilance, and with requirements related to the development of products for the pediatric population, can also result in significant financial penalties. Similarly, failure to comply with regulatory requirements regarding the protection of personal information can also lead to significant penalties and sanctions.

Non-compliance with EU requirements regarding safety monitoring or pharmacovigilance, and with requirements related to the development of products for the pediatric population, also can result in significant financial penalties. Similarly, failure to comply with the European Union's requirements regarding the protection of personal information can also lead to significant penalties and sanctions.

If any of these events occurs, our ability to sell such product may be impaired, and we may incur substantial additional expense to comply with regulatory requirements, which could adversely affect our business, financial condition and results of operations.

Our employees, independent contractors, principal investigators, consultants, commercial partners and vendors may engage in misconduct or other improper activities, including non-compliance with regulatory standards and requirements.

We are exposed to the risk of employee fraud or other misconduct or failure to comply with applicable regulatory requirements. Misconduct by employees and independent contractors, such as principal investigators, consultants, commercial partners, and vendors, could include failures to comply with regulations of the FDA, the EMA and other comparable regulatory authorities, to provide accurate information to such regulators, to comply with manufacturing standards we have established, to comply with healthcare fraud and abuse laws, to report financial information or data accurately or to disclose unauthorized activities to us. In particular, sales, marketing and other business arrangements in the healthcare industry are subject to extensive laws and regulations intended to prevent fraud, misconduct, kickbacks, self-dealing and other abusive practices. These laws and regulations may restrict or prohibit a wide range of business activities, including, but not limited to, research, manufacturing, distribution, pricing, discounting, marketing and promotion, sales commission, customer incentive programs and other business arrangements. Employee and independent contractor misconduct could also involve the improper use of individually identifiable information, including, without limitation, information obtained in the course of clinical trials, which could result in regulatory sanctions and serious harm to our reputation.

In addition, federal procurement laws impose substantial penalties for misconduct in connection with government contracts and require certain contractors to maintain a code of business ethics and conduct. It is not always possible to identify and deter employee and independent contractor misconduct, and any precautions we take to detect and prevent improper activities may not be effective in controlling unknown or unmanaged risks or losses or in protecting us from governmental investigations or other actions or lawsuits stemming from a failure to be in compliance with such laws. If any such actions are instituted against us, those actions could have a significant impact on our business, including the imposition of civil, criminal and administrative penalties, damages, monetary fines, disgorgement of profits, possible exclusion from participation in Medicare, Medicaid and other federal healthcare programs, National Health Service in the United Kingdom, or other government supported healthcare in other jurisdictions, contractual damages, reputational harm, diminished profits and future earnings, additional reporting or oversight obligations if we become subject to a corporate integrity agreement or other agreement to resolve allegations of non-compliance with the law and curtailment or restructuring of our operations, any of which could adversely affect our ability to operate.

Our business operations and current and future relationships with healthcare professionals, principal investigators, consultants, customers and third-party payors in the United States and elsewhere may be subject, directly or indirectly, to applicable anti-kickback, fraud and abuse, false claims, physician payment transparency, health information privacy and security and other healthcare laws and regulations, which could expose us to substantial penalties.

Healthcare providers, physicians and third-party payors in the United States and elsewhere will play a primary role in the recommendation and prescription of any product candidates for which we obtain marketing approval. Our current and future arrangements with healthcare professionals, principal investigators, consultants, customers and third-party payors may expose us to broadly applicable fraud and abuse and other healthcare laws, including, without limitation, the U.S. federal Anti-Kickback Statute and the U.S. federal False Claims Act, that may constrain the business or financial arrangements and relationships through which we sell, market and distribute any product candidates for which we obtain marketing approval. In addition, we may be subject to physician payment transparency laws and patient privacy and security regulation by the U.S. federal government

and by the states and foreign jurisdictions in which we conduct our business. The applicable federal, state and foreign healthcare laws that may affect our ability to operate include the following:

- the U.S. federal Anti-Kickback Statute, which prohibits, among other things, persons from knowingly and willfully soliciting, offering, receiving or providing remuneration, directly or indirectly, in cash or in kind, to induce or reward, or in return for, either the referral of an individual for, or the purchase, lease, order or recommendation of, any good, facility, item or service, for which payment may be made, in whole or in part, under federal and state healthcare programs such as Medicare and Medicaid. The term "remuneration" has been broadly interpreted to include anything of value. This statute has been interpreted to apply to arrangements between pharmaceutical manufacturers on the one hand and prescribers, purchasers and formulary managers on the other hand. Although there are a number of statutory exceptions and regulatory safe harbors protecting certain common activities from prosecution or other regulatory sanctions, the exceptions and safe harbors are drawn narrowly, and practices that involve remuneration that are alleged to be intended to induce prescribing, purchases or recommendations may be subject to scrutiny if they do not qualify for an exception or safe harbor. Failure to meet all of the requirements of a particular applicable statutory exception or regulatory safe harbor does not make the conduct per se illegal under the federal Anti-Kickback Statute. Instead, the legality of the arrangement will be evaluated on a case-by-case basis based on a cumulative review of all its facts and circumstances. Several courts have interpreted the statute's intent requirement to mean that if any one purpose of an arrangement involving remuneration is to induce referrals of federal healthcare covered business, the federal Anti-Kickback Statute has been violated;
- U.S. federal civil and criminal false claims laws and civil monetary penalty laws, including the federal False Claims Act, which, among other things, impose criminal and civil penalties, including through civil whistleblower or qui tam actions, against individuals or entities for, among other things, knowingly presenting, or causing to be presented, to the federal government, including the Medicare and Medicaid programs, claims for payment that are false or fraudulent or making a false statement to avoid, decrease or conceal an obligation to pay money to the federal government. Pharmaceutical and other healthcare companies have been prosecuted under these laws for, among other things, allegedly inflating drug prices they report to pricing services, which in turn were used by the government to set Medicare and Medicaid reimbursement rates, and for allegedly providing free product to customers with the expectation that the customers would bill federal programs for the product. In addition, certain marketing practices, including off-label promotion, may also violate false claims laws. Further, pharmaceutical manufacturers can be held liable under the False Claims Act even when they do not submit claims directly to government payors if they are deemed to "cause" the submission of false or fraudulent claims. Criminal prosecution is also possible for making or presenting a false, fictitious or fraudulent claim to the federal government;
- the U.S. federal Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996, or HIPAA, which created new federal criminal statutes that prohibit knowingly and willfully executing, or attempting to execute, a scheme to defraud any healthcare benefit program or obtain, by means of false or fraudulent pretenses, representations or promises, any of the money or property owned by, or under the custody or control of, any healthcare benefit program, regardless of whether the payor is public or private, knowingly and willfully embezzling or stealing from a health care benefit program, willfully obstructing a criminal investigation of a health care offense and knowingly and willfully falsifying, concealing or covering up by any trick or device a material fact or making any materially false statements in connection with the delivery of, or payment for, healthcare benefits, items or services relating to healthcare matters;
- HIPAA, as amended by the Health Information Technology for Economic and Clinical Health Act of 2009, or HITECH, and their respective implementing regulations, which impose

obligations on "covered entities," including certain healthcare providers, health plans, and healthcare clearinghouses, as well as their respective "business associates" that create, receive, maintain or transmit individually identifiable health information for or on behalf of a covered entity, with respect to safeguarding the privacy, security and transmission of individually identifiable health information. Additionally, HITECH also created four new tiers of civil monetary penalties, amended HIPAA to make civil and criminal penalties directly applicable to business associates, and gave state attorneys general new authority to file civil actions for damages or injunctions in U.S. federal courts to enforce the federal HIPAA laws and seek attorneys' fees and costs associated with pursuing federal civil actions;

- the U.S. federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act, which prohibits, among other things, the adulteration or misbranding of drugs, biologics and medical devices;
- the U.S. federal Physician Payments Sunshine Act, created under Section 6002 of Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act, as amended by the Health Care and Education Reconciliation Act, or collectively, the ACA, and its implementing regulations, created annual reporting requirements for certain manufacturers of drugs, devices, biologicals and medical supplies for which payment is available under Medicare, Medicaid or the Children's Health Insurance Program (with certain exceptions), to report information related for certain payments and "transfers of value" provided to physicians (defined to include doctors, dentists, optometrists, podiatrists and chiropractors) and teaching hospitals, as well as ownership and investment interests held by physicians and their immediate family members; and
- analogous state laws and regulations and foreign laws, such as state anti-kickback and false claims laws, which may apply to sales or marketing arrangements and claims involving healthcare items or services reimbursed by non-governmental third-party payors, including private insurers; state and foreign laws that require pharmaceutical companies to comply with the pharmaceutical industry's voluntary compliance guidelines and the relevant compliance guidance promulgated by the federal government or to adopt compliance programs as prescribed by state laws and regulations, or that otherwise restrict payments that may be made to healthcare providers; state and foreign laws that require drug manufacturers to report information related to payments and other transfers of value to physicians and other healthcare providers or marketing expenditures; state and local laws that require the registration of pharmaceutical sales representatives; and state and foreign laws governing the privacy and security of health information in certain circumstances, many of which differ from each other in significant ways and often are not preempted by HIPAA, thus complicating compliance efforts.

Further, the ACA, among other things, amended the intent requirement of the federal Anti-Kickback Statute and certain criminal statutes governing healthcare fraud. A person or entity no longer needs to have actual knowledge of the statute or specific intent to violate it. In addition, the ACA provided that the government may assert that a claim including items or services resulting from a violation of the federal Anti-Kickback Statute constitutes a false or fraudulent claim for purposes of the False Claims Act.

Because of the breadth of these laws and the narrowness of their exceptions and safe harbors, it is possible that our business activities can be subject to challenge under one or more of such laws. The scope and enforcement of each of these laws is uncertain and subject to rapid change in the current environment of healthcare reform. Federal and state enforcement bodies have recently increased their scrutiny of interactions between healthcare companies and healthcare providers, which has led to a number of investigations, prosecutions, convictions and settlements in the healthcare industry.

Efforts to ensure that our internal operations and future business arrangements with third parties will comply with applicable healthcare laws and regulations will involve substantial costs. If our

operations are found to be in violation of any of these laws or any other governmental regulations that may apply to us, we may be subject to significant civil, criminal and administrative penalties, including, without limitation, damages, monetary fines, individual imprisonment, disgorgement of profits, possible exclusion from participation in Medicare, Medicaid and other federal healthcare programs, contractual damages, reputational harm, diminished profits and future earnings, additional reporting or oversight obligations if we become subject to a corporate integrity agreement or other agreement to resolve allegations of non-compliance with the law and curtailment or restructuring of our operations, any of which could adversely affect our ability to operate our business and pursue our strategy. If any of the physicians or other healthcare providers or entities with whom we expect to do business, including future collaborators, are found not to be in compliance with applicable laws, they may be subject to criminal, civil or administrative sanctions, including exclusions from participation in government healthcare programs, which could also affect our business.

Our product candidates are subject to government price controls in certain jurisdictions that may affect our revenue.

There has been heightened governmental scrutiny in the United Kingdom, United States, European Union and other jurisdictions of pharmaceutical pricing practices in light of the rising cost of prescription drugs. In the United States, such scrutiny has resulted in several recent Congressional inquiries and proposed and enacted federal legislation designed to, among other things, bring more transparency to product pricing, review the relationship between pricing and manufacturer patient programs, and reform government program reimbursement methodologies for products. At the federal level, Congressional leadership and the Trump administration have each indicated that they will continue to seek new legislative and/or administrative measures to control drug costs. At the state level, legislatures have increasingly enacted legislation and implemented regulations designed to control pharmaceutical and biological product pricing, including price or patient reimbursement constraints, discounts, restrictions on certain product access and marketing cost disclosure and transparency measures, and, in some cases, designed to encourage importation from other countries and bulk purchasing. Outside of the United States, particularly in the European Union, the pricing of prescription pharmaceuticals is subject to governmental control. In these countries, pricing negotiations with governmental authorities can take considerable time after the receipt of marketing approval for a product. To obtain coverage and reimbursement or pricing approval in some countries, we may be required to conduct a clinical trial that compares the cost-effectiveness of our product candidate to other available therapies. If reimbursement of our products is unavailable or limited in scope or amount, or if pricing is set at unsatisfactory levels, our business could be harmed.

Recently enacted and future legislation in the United States and other countries may affect the prices we may obtain for our product candidates and increase the difficulty and cost for us to commercialize our product candidates.

In the United States and many other countries, rising healthcare costs have been a concern for governments, patients and the health insurance sector, which resulted a number of changes to laws and regulations, and may result in further legislative and regulatory action regarding the healthcare and health insurance systems that could affect our ability to profitably sell any product candidates for which we obtain marketing approval. For a detailed discussion of healthcare reform initiatives of importance to the pharmaceutical industry, see the section titled “Business—Government Regulation and Product Approval—Healthcare Reform Efforts.”

For example, the ACA was enacted in the United States in March 2010 with the stated goals of containing healthcare costs, improving quality and expanding access to healthcare, and includes measures to change health care delivery, increase the number of individuals with insurance, ensure access to certain basic health care services, and contain the rising cost of care. Since January 2017,

President Trump has signed two executive orders and other directives designed to delay, circumvent, or loosen certain requirements mandated by the ACA. Concurrently, Congress has considered legislation that would repeal or repeal and replace all or part of the ACA. While Congress has not passed repeal legislation, two bills affecting the implementation of certain taxes under the ACA have been signed into law. H.R. 1: An Act to provide for reconciliation pursuant to titles II and V of the concurrent resolution on the budget for fiscal year 2018, or the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act of 2017, includes a provision repealing, effective January 1, 2019, the tax-based shared responsibility payment imposed by the ACA on certain individuals who fail to maintain qualifying health coverage for all or part of a year that is commonly referred to as the “individual mandate”. Additionally, on January 22, 2018, President Trump signed a continuing resolution on appropriations for fiscal year 2018 that delayed the implementation of certain ACA-mandated fees, including the so-called “Cadillac” tax on certain high cost employer-sponsored insurance plans, the annual fee imposed on certain health insurance providers based on market share, and the medical device excise tax on non-exempt medical devices. Further, the Bipartisan Budget Act of 2018, among other things, amends the ACA, effective January 1, 2019, to increase from 50% to 70% the point-of-sale discount that is owed by pharmaceutical manufacturers who participate in Medicare Part D and to close the coverage gap in most Medicare drug plans, commonly referred to as the “donut hole”. Congress may consider other legislation to repeal or replace elements of the ACA. These executive orders and legislative actions are expected to result in increased health insurance premiums and reduce the number of people with health insurance in the United States, and have other effects that adversely affect U.S. health insurance markets and the ability of patients to have access to therapies that our product candidates can provide.

In addition, other federal health reform measures have been proposed and adopted in the United States. For example, as a result of the Budget Control Act of 2011, providers are subject to Medicare payment reductions of 2% per fiscal year through 2027 unless additional Congressional action is taken. Further, the American Taxpayer Relief Act of 2012 reduced Medicare payments to several providers and increased the statute of limitations period for the government to recover overpayments from providers from three to five years. The Medicare Access and CHIP Reauthorization Act of 2015 also introduced a quality payment program under which certain individual Medicare providers will be subject to certain incentives or penalties based on new program quality standards. Payment adjustments for the Medicare quality payment program will begin in 2019. At this time, it is unclear how the introduction of the quality payment program will impact overall physician reimbursement under the Medicare program. Any reduction in reimbursement from Medicare or other government programs may result in a similar reduction in payments from private payors. Further, there has been heightened governmental scrutiny in the United States of pharmaceutical pricing practices in light of the rising cost of prescription drugs and biologics.

The combination of healthcare cost containment measures, increased health insurance costs, reduction of the number of people with health insurance coverage, as well as future legislation and regulations focused on reducing healthcare costs by reducing the cost of or reimbursement and access to pharmaceutical products, may limit or delay our ability to generate revenue, attain profitability, or commercialize our products.

We are subject to the U.K. Bribery Act, the U.S. Foreign Corrupt Practices Act and other anti-corruption laws, as well as export control laws, import and customs laws, trade and economic sanctions laws and other laws governing our operations.

Our operations are subject to anti-corruption laws, including the U.K. Bribery Act 2010, or the Bribery Act, the U.S. Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977, as amended, or the FCPA, the U.S. domestic bribery statute contained in 18 U.S.C. §201, the U.S. Travel Act, and other anti-corruption laws that apply in countries where we do business. The Bribery Act, the FCPA and these other laws generally prohibit us and our employees and intermediaries from authorizing, promising, offering, or providing,

directly or indirectly, improper or prohibited payments, or anything else of value, to government officials or other persons to obtain or retain business or gain some other business advantage.

Under the Bribery Act, we may also be liable for failing to prevent a person associated with us from committing a bribery offense. We and those acting on our behalf operate in a number of jurisdictions that pose a high risk of potential Bribery Act or FCPA violations, and we participate in collaborations and relationships with third parties whose corrupt or illegal activities could potentially subject us to liability under the Bribery Act, FCPA or local anticorruption laws, even if we do not explicitly authorize or have actual knowledge of such activities. In addition, we cannot predict the nature, scope or effect of future regulatory requirements to which our international operations might be subject or the manner in which existing laws might be administered or interpreted.

Compliance with the Bribery Act, the FCPA and these other laws is expensive and difficult, particularly in countries in which corruption is a recognized problem. In addition, anti-corruption laws present particular challenges in the pharmaceutical industry, because, in many countries, hospitals are operated by the government, and doctors and other hospital employees are considered foreign officials. Certain payments to hospitals in connection with clinical trials and other work have been deemed to be improper payments to government officials and have led to enforcement actions.

We are also subject to other laws and regulations governing our international operations, including regulations administered by the governments of the United States and the United Kingdom, and authorities in the European Union, including applicable export control regulations, economic sanctions and embargoes on certain countries and persons, anti-money laundering laws, import and customs requirements and currency exchange regulations, collectively referred to as the Trade Control laws.

There is no assurance that we will be completely effective in ensuring our compliance with all applicable anti-corruption laws, including the Bribery Act, the FCPA or other legal requirements, including Trade Control laws. If we are not in compliance with the Bribery Act, the FCPA and other anti-corruption laws or Trade Control laws, we may be subject to criminal and civil penalties, disgorgement and other sanctions and remedial measures, and legal expenses, which could have an adverse impact on our business, financial condition, results of operations and liquidity. Likewise, any investigation of any potential violations of the Bribery Act, the FCPA, other anti-corruption laws or Trade Control laws by United States, United Kingdom or other authorities could also have an adverse impact on our reputation, our business, results of operations and financial condition. Further, the failure to comply with laws governing international business practices may result in substantial civil and criminal penalties and suspension or debarment from government contracting.

If we fail to comply with environmental, health and safety laws and regulations, we could become subject to fines or penalties or incur costs that could harm our business.

We are subject to numerous environmental, health and safety laws and regulations, including those governing laboratory procedures and the handling, use, storage, treatment and disposal of hazardous materials and wastes. Our operations involve the use of hazardous materials, including chemicals and biological materials. Our operations also produce hazardous waste products. We generally contract with third parties for the disposal of these materials and wastes. We cannot eliminate the risk of contamination or injury from these materials. In the event of contamination or injury resulting from our use of hazardous materials, we could be held liable for any resulting damages, and any liability could exceed our resources. We also could incur significant costs associated with civil or criminal fines and penalties for failure to comply with such laws and regulations.

Although we maintain insurance to cover us for costs and expenses we may incur due to injuries to our employees resulting from the use of hazardous materials, this insurance may not provide

adequate coverage against potential liabilities. We do not maintain insurance for environmental liability or toxic tort claims that may be asserted against us in connection with our storage or disposal of biological or hazardous materials.

In addition, we may incur substantial costs in order to comply with current or future environmental, health and safety laws and regulations. These current or future laws and regulations may impair our research, development or production efforts. Our failure to comply with these laws and regulations also may result in substantial fines, penalties or other sanctions.

Risks Related to the Commercialization of Our Product Candidates

If we are unable to establish sales, marketing and distribution capabilities for our product candidates, or enter into sales, marketing and distribution agreements with third parties, we may not be successful in commercializing our product candidates, if and when they are approved.

We currently plan to work to build our global commercialization capabilities internally over time such that we are able to commercialize any product candidate for which we may obtain regulatory approval. However, we currently have no sales, marketing or distribution capabilities and have no experience in marketing or distributing pharmaceutical products. To achieve commercial success for any product candidate for which we may obtain marketing approval, we will need to establish a sales and marketing organization and establish logistics and distribution processes to commercialize and deliver our product candidates to patients and healthcare providers. The development of sales, marketing and distribution capabilities will require substantial resources, will be time-consuming and could delay any product launch.

If we are unable or decide not to establish internal sales, marketing and distribution capabilities, we would have to pursue collaborative arrangements regarding the sales and marketing of our products. However, we may not be successful in entering into arrangements with third parties to sell, market and distribute our product candidates or may be unable to do so on terms that are favorable to us, or if we are able to do so, that they would be effective and successful in commercializing our products. Our product revenues and our profitability, if any, would likely to be lower than if we were to sell, market and distribute any product candidates that we develop ourselves. In addition, we would have limited control over such third parties, and any of them may fail to devote the necessary resources and attention to sell and market our product candidates effectively.

If we do not establish sales, marketing and distribution capabilities successfully, either on our own or in collaboration with third parties, we will not be successful in commercializing our product candidates in the United States or overseas.

We operate in a rapidly changing industry and face significant competition, which may result in others discovering, developing or commercializing products before or more successfully than we do.

The development and commercialization of new biopharmaceutical products is highly competitive and subject to rapid and significant technological advancements. We face competition from major multi-national pharmaceutical companies, biotechnology companies and specialty pharmaceutical companies with respect to our current and future product candidates that we may develop and commercialize in the future. There are a number of large pharmaceutical and biotechnology companies that currently market and sell products or are pursuing the development of product candidates for the treatment of cancer. Smaller or early-stage companies may also prove to be significant competitors, particularly through collaborative arrangements with large, established companies. Potential

competitors also include academic institutions, government agencies and other public and private research organizations. Due to their promising clinical therapeutic effect in clinical exploratory trials, engineered T cell therapies, redirected T cell therapies in general and antibody-drug conjugates are being pursued by multiple biotechnology and pharmaceutical companies, including Novartis AG, Gilead Sciences, Inc., or Gilead, Celgene, Janssen Biotech Inc., bluebird bio, Roche Holding AG, Seattle Genetics, Amgen Inc. and Juno Therapeutics, Inc. Our competitors may succeed in developing, acquiring or licensing technologies and products that are more effective, more effectively marketed and sold or less costly than any product candidates that we may develop, which could render our product candidates non-competitive and obsolete.

We are developing AUTO2, our dual-targeting BCMA/TACI programmed T cell product candidate, for the treatment of relapsed or refractory multiple myeloma. bluebird bio, in collaboration with Celgene, is developing a BCMA CAR T cell therapy for the treatment of multiple myeloma. Nanjing Legend Biotech is also developing a similar therapy. Nanjing Legend Biotech and Janssen Biotech, Inc., a subsidiary of Johnson & Johnson, are collaborating on the development of a similar therapy. AUTO2 is expected to compete directly with both of these therapies. We are developing AUTO3, our dual-targeting CD19/CD22 programmed T cell product candidate for the treatment of relapsed or refractory DLBCL and pediatric ALL. Novartis and Gilead have received marketing approval for their anti-CD19 CAR T cell therapy, and Juno is in the process of developing another anti-CD19 CAR T cell therapy. AUTO3 is expected to compete directly with all of these therapies. In addition, some companies, such as Cellectis, Inc., are pursuing allogeneic T cell products that could compete with our programmed T cell product candidates.

Novartis and Gilead may be successful in establishing a strong market position for their CD19-targeted CAR T cell products, and we may not be able to compete effectively against these therapies once they have been established. In addition, our competitors with development-stage programs may obtain marketing approval from the FDA, the EMA or other comparable regulatory authorities for their product candidates more rapidly than we do, and they could establish a strong market position before we are able to enter the market.

Many of our competitors, either alone or with their strategic collaborators, have substantially greater financial, technical and human resources than we do. Accordingly, our competitors may be more successful than we are in obtaining approval for treatments and achieving widespread market acceptance, which may render our treatments obsolete or non-competitive. Mergers and acquisitions in the biotechnology and pharmaceutical industries may result in even more resources being concentrated among a smaller number of our competitors. These competitors also compete with us in recruiting and retaining qualified scientific and management personnel and establishing clinical study sites and patient registration for clinical studies, as well as in acquiring technologies complementary to, or necessary for, our programs. Smaller or early-stage companies may also prove to be significant competitors, particularly through collaborative arrangements with large and established companies.

Our commercial opportunity could be reduced or eliminated if our competitors develop and commercialize products that are safer, more effective, have fewer or less severe side effects, are more convenient or are less expensive or better reimbursed than any products that we may commercialize. Our competitors also may obtain FDA, EMA or other regulatory approval for their products more rapidly than we may obtain approval for ours, which could result in our competitors establishing a strong market position for either the product or a specific indication before we are able to enter the market.

Even if any of our product candidates receives marketing approval, it may fail to achieve the degree of market acceptance by physicians, patients, third-party payors and others in the medical community necessary for commercial success.

Even if we obtain approvals from the FDA, the EMA or other comparable regulatory agencies and are able to initiate commercialization of our clinical-stage product candidates or any other product candidates we develop, the product candidate may not achieve market acceptance among physicians, patients, hospitals, including pharmacy directors, and third-party payors and, ultimately, may not be commercially successful. The degree of market acceptance of our product candidates, if approved for commercial sale, will depend on a number of factors, including:

- the clinical indications for which our product candidates are approved;
- physicians, hospitals, cancer treatment centers, and patients considering our product candidates as a safe and effective treatment;
- hospitals and cancer treatment centers establishing the infrastructure required for the administration of redirected T cell therapies;
- the potential and perceived advantages of our product candidates over alternative treatments;
- the prevalence and severity of any side effects;
- product labeling or product insert requirements of the FDA, the EMA or other regulatory authorities;
- limitations or warnings contained in the labeling approved by the FDA or the EMA;
- the timing of market introduction of our product candidates as well as competitive products;
- the cost of treatment in relation to alternative treatments;
- the amount of upfront costs or training required for physicians to administer our product candidates;
- the availability of coverage, adequate reimbursement, and pricing by third-party payors and government authorities;
- the willingness of patients to pay out-of-pocket in the absence of comprehensive coverage and reimbursement by third-party payors and government authorities;
- relative convenience and ease of administration, including as compared to alternative treatments and competitive therapies; and
- the effectiveness of our sales and marketing efforts and distribution support.

Our efforts to educate physicians, patients, third-party payors and others in the medical community on the benefits of our products, if approved, may require significant resources and may never be successful. Such efforts may require more resources than are typically required due to the complexity and uniqueness of our product candidates. Because we expect sales of our product candidates, if approved, to generate substantially all of our product revenue for the foreseeable future, the failure of our product candidates to find market acceptance would harm our business and could require us to seek additional financing.

In addition, although we are not utilizing embryonic stem cells or replication competent vectors, adverse publicity due to the ethical and social controversies surrounding the therapeutic use of such technologies, and reported side effects from any clinical trials using these technologies or the failure of such trials to demonstrate that these therapies are safe and effective, may limit market acceptance of our product candidates. If our product candidates are approved but fail to achieve market acceptance among physicians, patients, hospitals, cancer treatment centers or others in the medical community, we will not be able to generate significant revenue.

Even if our products achieve market acceptance, we may not be able to maintain that market acceptance over time if new products or technologies are introduced that are more favorably received than our products, are more cost effective or render our products obsolete.

Coverage and adequate reimbursement may not be available for our current or any future product candidates, which could make it difficult for us to sell profitably, if approved.

Market acceptance and sales of any product candidates that we commercialize, if approved, will depend in part on the extent to which reimbursement for these products and related treatments will be available from third-party payors, including government health administration authorities, managed care organizations and private health insurers. Third-party payors decide which therapies they will pay for and establish reimbursement levels. Third-party payors in the United States often rely upon Medicare coverage policy and payment limitations in setting their own coverage and reimbursement policies. However, decisions regarding the extent of coverage and amount of reimbursement to be provided for any product candidates that we develop will be made on a payor-by-payor basis. One payor's determination to provide coverage for a drug does not assure that other payors will also provide coverage and adequate reimbursement for the drug. Additionally, a third-party payor's decision to provide coverage for a therapy does not imply that an adequate reimbursement rate will be approved. Third-party payors are increasingly challenging the price, examining the medical necessity and reviewing the cost-effectiveness of medical products, therapies and services, in addition to questioning their safety and efficacy. We may incur significant costs to conduct expensive pharmacoeconomic studies in order to demonstrate the medical necessity and cost-effectiveness of our product candidates, in addition to the costs required to obtain FDA approvals. Our product candidates may not be considered medically necessary or cost-effective.

Each payor determines whether or not it will provide coverage for a therapy, what amount it will pay the manufacturer for the therapy, and on what tier of its list of covered drugs, or formulary, it will be placed. The position on a payor's formulary, generally determines the co-payment that a patient will need to make to obtain the therapy and can strongly influence the adoption of such therapy by patients and physicians. Patients who are prescribed treatments for their conditions and providers prescribing such services generally rely on third-party payors to reimburse all or part of the associated healthcare costs. Patients are unlikely to use our products, and providers are unlikely to prescribe our products, unless coverage is provided and reimbursement is adequate to cover a significant portion of the cost of our products and their administration. Therefore, coverage and adequate reimbursement is critical to new medical product acceptance.

A primary trend in the U.S. healthcare industry and elsewhere is cost containment. Third-party payors have attempted to control costs by limiting coverage and the amount of reimbursement for particular medications. We cannot be sure that coverage and reimbursement will be available for any drug that we commercialize and, if reimbursement is available, what the level of reimbursement will be. Even if favorable coverage and reimbursement status is attained for one or more product candidates for which we receive regulatory approval, less favorable coverage policies and reimbursement rates may be implemented in the future. Inadequate coverage and reimbursement may impact the demand for, or the price of, any drug for which we obtain marketing approval. If coverage and adequate reimbursement are not available, or are available only to limited levels, we may not be able to successfully commercialize our current and any future product candidates that we develop.

We cannot be sure that coverage and reimbursement in the United States, the European Union or elsewhere will be available for any product that we may develop, and any reimbursement that may become available may be decreased or eliminated in the future.

Product liability lawsuits against us could cause us to incur substantial liabilities and to limit commercialization of any products that we may develop.

We face an inherent risk of product liability exposure related to the testing of our product candidates in human clinical trials and will face an even greater risk if we commercially sell any products that we may develop. If we cannot successfully defend ourselves against claims that our product candidates or products caused injuries, we will incur substantial liabilities. Regardless of merit or eventual outcome, liability claims may result in:

- reduced resources of our management to pursue our business strategy;
- decreased demand for any product candidates or products that we may develop;
- injury to our reputation and significant negative media attention;
- withdrawal of clinical trial participants;
- initiation of investigations by regulators;
- product recalls, withdrawals or labeling, marketing or promotional restrictions;
- significant costs to defend the resulting litigation;
- substantial monetary awards paid to clinical trial participants or patients;
- loss of revenue; and
- the inability to commercialize any products that we may develop.

We currently hold £1.0 million in product liability insurance coverage in the aggregate, with a per incident limit of £1.0 million, which may not be adequate to cover all liabilities that we may incur. We may need to increase our insurance coverage as we expand our clinical trials or if we commence commercialization of our product candidates. Insurance coverage is increasingly expensive. We may not be able to maintain insurance coverage at a reasonable cost or in an amount adequate to satisfy any liability that may arise.

Risks Related to Our Intellectual Property

If we are unable to obtain and maintain patent protection for our T cell programming technologies and product candidates, or if the scope of the patent protection obtained is not sufficiently broad, our competitors could develop and commercialize technology and biologics similar or identical to ours, and our ability to successfully commercialize our technology and product candidates may be impaired.

Our success depends, in large part, on our ability to obtain and maintain patent protection in the United States, the European Union and other countries with respect to our product candidates. We seek to protect our proprietary position by filing patent applications related to our technology and product candidates in the major pharmaceutical markets, including the United States, major countries in Europe and Japan. If we do not adequately protect our intellectual property, competitors may be able to use our technologies and erode or negate any competitive advantage that we may have, which could harm our business and ability to achieve profitability.

To protect our proprietary positions, we file patent applications in the United States and other countries related to our novel technologies and product candidates that are important to our business. The patent application and prosecution process is expensive and time-consuming. We may not be able to file and prosecute all necessary or desirable patent applications at a reasonable cost or in a timely manner. We may also fail to identify patentable aspects of our research and development before it is

too late to obtain patent protection. It is possible that defects of form in the preparation or filing of our patents or patent applications may exist, or may arise in the future, such as with respect to proper priority claims, inventorship, claim scope or patent term adjustments. If any current or future licensors or licensees are not fully cooperative or disagree with us as to the prosecution, maintenance or enforcement of any patent rights, such patent rights could be compromised and we might not be able to prevent third parties from making, using and selling competing products. If there are material defects in the form or preparation of our patents or patent applications, such patents or applications may be invalid and unenforceable. Moreover, our competitors may independently develop equivalent knowledge, methods and know-how. Any of these outcomes could impair our ability to prevent competition from third parties.

Prosecution of our owned and in-licensed patent portfolio is at a very early stage. No patents have issued from our pending applications in the United States, and only two patents have issued from our pending applications in Europe. Much of our patent portfolio consists of pending priority applications that are not examined and pending applications under the Patent Cooperation Treaty, or PCT. Neither priority applications nor PCT applications can themselves give rise to issued patents. Rather, protection for the inventions disclosed in these applications must be further pursued by applicable deadlines via applications that are subject to examination. As applicable deadlines for the priority and PCT applications become due, we will need to decide whether and in which countries or jurisdictions to pursue patent protection for the various inventions claimed in these applications, and we will only have the opportunity to pursue and obtain patents in those jurisdictions where we pursue protection.

It is also possible that we will fail to identify patentable aspects of our research and development output before it is too late to obtain patent protection. The patent applications that we own or in-license may fail to result in issued patents with claims that cover our current and future product candidates in the United States or in other foreign countries. Our patent applications cannot be enforced against third parties practicing the technology claimed in such applications unless, and until, a patent issues from such applications, and then only to the extent the issued claims cover the technology.

If the patent applications we hold or have in-licensed with respect to our development programs and product candidates fail to issue, if their breadth or strength of protection is threatened, or if they fail to provide meaningful exclusivity for our current and future product candidates, it could threaten our ability to commercialize our product candidates. Any such outcome could have a negative effect on our business.

The patent position of biotechnology and pharmaceutical companies generally is highly uncertain. Changes in either the patent laws or interpretation of the patent laws in the United States and other countries may diminish the value of our patents or narrow the scope of our patent protection. In addition, the protections offered by laws of different countries vary. No consistent policy regarding the breadth of claims allowed in biotechnology and pharmaceutical patents has emerged to date in the United States or in many foreign jurisdictions. In addition, the determination of patent rights with respect to pharmaceutical compounds and technologies commonly involves complex legal and factual questions, which has in recent years been the subject of much litigation. As a result, the issuance, scope, validity, enforceability and commercial value of our patent rights, whether owned or in-licensed, are highly uncertain. Furthermore, recent changes in patent laws in the United States, may affect the scope, strength and enforceability of our patent rights or the nature of proceedings that may be brought by or against us related to our patent rights. Additionally, the U.S. Supreme Court has ruled on several patent cases in recent years either narrowing the scope of patent protection available in certain circumstances or weakening the rights of patent owners in certain situations. In addition to increasing uncertainty with regard to our ability to obtain patents in the future, this combination of events has created uncertainty with respect to the value of patents, once obtained. Depending on decisions by the

U.S. Congress, the U.S. federal courts, and the USPTO, the laws and regulations governing patents could change in unpredictable ways that could weaken our ability to obtain patents or to enforce any patents that we might obtain in the future.

We may not be aware of all third-party intellectual property rights potentially relating to our current and future our product candidates. Publications of discoveries in the scientific literature often lag behind the actual discoveries, and patent applications in the United States and other jurisdictions are typically not published until 18 months after filing, or in some cases not at all. Therefore, we cannot be certain that we or our licensors were the first to make the inventions claimed in our patents or pending patent applications, or that we or our licensors were the first to file for patent protection of such inventions. Similarly, should we own or in-license any patents or patent applications in the future, we may not be certain that we or the applicable licensor were the first to file for patent protection for the inventions claimed in such patents or patent applications. As a result, the issuance, scope, validity and commercial value of our patent rights cannot be predicted with any certainty. Moreover, we may be subject to a third-party pre-issuance submission of prior art to the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, or USPTO, or become involved in opposition, derivation, reexamination, *inter partes* review or interference proceedings, in the United States or elsewhere, challenging our patent rights or the patent rights of others. An adverse determination in any such submission, proceeding or litigation could reduce the scope of, or invalidate, our patent rights, allow third parties to commercialize our technology or product candidates and compete directly with us, without payment to us, or result in our inability to manufacture or commercialize products without infringing third-party patent rights, which could significantly harm our business and results of operations.

Our pending and future patent applications, whether owned or in-licensed, may not result in patents being issued that protect our technology or product candidates, in whole or in part, or which effectively prevent others from commercializing competitive technologies and products. Even if our patent applications issue as patents, they may not issue in a form that will provide us with any meaningful protection against competing products or processes sufficient to achieve our business objectives, prevent competitors from competing with us or otherwise provide us with any competitive advantage. Our competitors may be able to circumvent our owned or licensed patents, should they issue, by developing similar or alternative technologies or products in a non-infringing manner. Our competitors may seek approval to market their own products similar to or otherwise competitive with our products. In these circumstances, we may need to defend and/or assert our patents, including by filing lawsuits alleging patent infringement. In any of these types of proceedings, a court or other agency with jurisdiction may find our patents invalid and/or unenforceable.

The issuance of a patent is not conclusive as to its inventorship, scope, validity or enforceability, and our owned and licensed patents may be challenged in the courts or patent offices in the United States and abroad. Such challenges may result in loss of exclusivity or freedom to operate or in patent claims being narrowed, invalidated or held unenforceable, in whole or in part, which could limit our ability to stop others from using or commercializing similar or identical technology and products, or limit the duration of the patent protection of our technology and products. In addition, given the amount of time required for the development, testing and regulatory review of new product candidates, patents protecting such candidates might expire before or shortly after such candidates are commercialized.

Third parties may initiate legal proceedings alleging that we are infringing their intellectual property rights, the outcome of which would be uncertain and could significantly harm our business.

Our commercial success depends, in part, on our ability to develop, manufacture, market and sell our product candidates and use our proprietary and modular T cell programming technology without infringing the intellectual property and other proprietary rights of third parties. Numerous third-party

U.S. and non-U.S. issued patents exist in the area of biotechnology, including in the area of programmed T cell therapies and including patents held by our competitors. If any third-party patents cover our product candidates or technologies, we may not be free to manufacture or commercialize our product candidates as planned.

There is a substantial amount of intellectual property litigation in the biotechnology and pharmaceutical industries, and we may become party to, or threatened with, litigation or other adversarial proceedings regarding intellectual property rights with respect to our technology or product candidates, including interference proceedings before the USPTO. Intellectual property disputes arise in a number of areas including with respect to patents, use of other proprietary rights and the contractual terms of license arrangements. Third parties may assert claims against us based on existing or future intellectual property rights and claims may also come from competitors against whom our own patent portfolio may have no deterrent effect. The outcome of intellectual property litigation is subject to uncertainties that cannot be adequately quantified in advance. Other parties may allege that our product candidates or the use of our technologies infringes patent claims or other intellectual property rights held by them or that we are employing their proprietary technology without authorization. As we continue to develop and, if approved, commercialize our current and future product candidates, competitors may claim that our technology infringes their intellectual property rights as part of business strategies designed to impede our successful commercialization. There are and may in the future be additional third-party patents or patent applications with claims to, for example, materials, compositions, formulations, methods of manufacture or methods for treatment related to the use or manufacture of any one or more of our product candidates. For example, we are aware of third-party U.S. patents that claim technology related to AUTO1. These U.S. patents will expire in 2023 and late 2024, and there are no counterpart patents in Europe or the rest of the world that extend beyond the earliest expected regulatory approval date of AUTO1. If regulatory approval is received for AUTO1, unless we are able to obtain a license or licenses to the third-party U.S. patent or patents on commercially reasonable terms or any applicable patent or patents are invalidated, held to be unenforceable, or deemed un infringed by our activities, we currently intend to launch AUTO1 outside the United States first, and delay the commercial launch of AUTO1 in the United States until the expiration of any applicable third-party patent or patents covering AUTO1. As a result, the future commercial opportunity of AUTO1 in the United States could be adversely impacted. Moreover, we may fail to identify relevant third party patents or patent applications, or we may incorrectly conclude that the claims of an issued patent are invalid or are not infringed by our activities. Because patent applications can take many years to issue, third parties may have currently pending patent applications which may later result in issued patents that any of our product candidates may infringe, or which such third parties claim are infringed by our technologies.

If we are found to infringe a third party's intellectual property rights, we could be forced, including by court order, to cease developing, manufacturing or commercializing the infringing product candidate or product. Alternatively, we may be required or may choose to obtain a license from such third party in order to use the infringing technology and continue developing, manufacturing or marketing the infringing product candidate. However, we may not be able to obtain any required license on commercially reasonable terms or at all. Even if we were able to obtain a license, it could be non-exclusive, thereby giving our competitors access to the same technologies licensed to us. In addition, we could be found liable for monetary damages, including treble damages and attorneys' fees if we are found to have willfully infringed a patent. A finding of infringement could prevent us from commercializing our product candidates or force us to cease some of our business operations. Claims that we have misappropriated the confidential information or trade secrets of third parties could have a similar negative effect on our business. Even if successful, the defense of any claim of infringement or misappropriation is time-consuming, expensive and diverts the attention of our management from our ongoing business operations.

We may need to license intellectual property from third parties, and such licenses may not be available or may not be available on commercially reasonable terms.

A third party may hold intellectual property rights, including patent rights, that are important or necessary to the development or manufacture of our product candidates. It may be necessary for us to use the patented or proprietary technology of third parties to commercialize our product candidates, in which case we would be required to obtain a license from these third parties. Such a license may not be available on commercially reasonable terms, or at all, and we could be forced to accept unfavorable contractual terms. If we are unable to obtain such licenses on commercially reasonable terms, our business could be harmed.

We may become involved in lawsuits to protect or enforce our intellectual property, which could be expensive, time-consuming and unsuccessful.

Competitors may infringe our patents, if issued, trademarks, copyrights or other intellectual property. To counter infringement or unauthorized use, we may be required to file infringement claims, which can be expensive and time-consuming and divert the time and attention of our management and scientific personnel. Any claims we assert against perceived infringers could provoke these parties to assert counterclaims against us alleging that we infringe their patents, trademarks, copyrights or other intellectual property. In addition, in a patent infringement proceeding, there is a risk that a court will decide that a patent of ours is invalid or unenforceable, in whole or in part, and that we do not have the right to stop the other party from using the invention at issue. There is also a risk that, even if the validity of such patents is upheld, the court will construe the patent's claims narrowly or decide that we do not have the right to stop the other party from using the invention at issue on the grounds that our patents do not cover the invention. An adverse outcome in a litigation or proceeding involving our patents could limit our ability to assert our patents against those parties or other competitors, and may curtail or preclude our ability to exclude third parties from making and selling similar or competitive products. Similarly, if we assert trademark infringement claims, a court may determine that the marks we have asserted are invalid or unenforceable, or that the party against whom we have asserted trademark infringement has superior rights to the marks in question. In this case, we could ultimately be forced to cease use of such trademarks.

In any infringement litigation, any award of monetary damages we receive may not be commercially valuable. Furthermore, because of the substantial amount of discovery required in connection with intellectual property litigation, there is a risk that some of our confidential information could be compromised by disclosure during litigation. In addition, there could be public announcements of the results of hearings, motions or other interim proceedings or developments and if securities analysts or investors perceive these results to be negative, it could have a substantial adverse effect on the price of our ADSs. Moreover, there can be no assurance that we will have sufficient financial or other resources to file and pursue such infringement claims, which typically last for years before they are concluded. Some of our competitors may be able to sustain the costs of such litigation or proceedings more effectively than we can because of their greater financial resources and more mature and developed intellectual property portfolios. Even if we ultimately prevail in such claims, the monetary cost of such litigation and the diversion of the attention of our management and scientific personnel could outweigh any benefit we receive as a result of the proceedings. Accordingly, despite our efforts, we may not be able to prevent third parties from infringing, misappropriating or successfully challenging our intellectual property rights. Uncertainties resulting from the initiation and continuation of patent litigation or other proceedings could have a negative impact on our ability to compete in the marketplace.

We may be subject to claims by third parties asserting that we or our employees have misappropriated their intellectual property, or claiming ownership of what we regard as our own intellectual property.

Many of our employees were previously employed at universities or other biotechnology or pharmaceutical companies, and our founder and Chief Scientific Officer, Dr. Martin Pulé, is currently employed both by us and the University College London. Although we try to ensure that our employees do not use the proprietary information or know-how of third parties in their work for us, we may be subject to claims that these employees or we have inadvertently or otherwise used intellectual property, including trade secrets or other proprietary information, of any such employee's former employer. We may also in the future be subject to claims that we have caused an employee to breach the terms of his or her non-competition or non-solicitation agreement. Litigation may be necessary to defend against these potential claims.

In addition, while it is our policy to require our employees and contractors who may be involved in the development of intellectual property to execute agreements assigning such intellectual property to us, such employees and contractors may breach the agreement and claim the developed intellectual property as their own.

Our business was founded as a spin-out from University College London. As of March 31, 2018, our current patent portfolio is comprised of 61 patent families, of which 25 patent families are in-licensed from UCLB, the technology-transfer company of University College London, and 36 patent families we own and have originated from our own research. Because we license certain of our patents from UCLB, we must rely on their prior practices with regard to the assignment of such intellectual property. Our and their assignment agreements may not be self-executing or may be breached, and we may be forced to bring claims against third parties or defend claims they may bring against us, to determine the ownership of what we regard as our intellectual property.

If we fail in prosecuting or defending any such claims, in addition to paying monetary damages, we may lose valuable intellectual property rights or personnel. A court could prohibit us from using technologies or features that are essential to our products if such technologies or features are found to incorporate or be derived from the trade secrets or other proprietary information of the former employers. Even if we are successful in prosecuting or defending against such claims, litigation could result in substantial costs and could be a distraction to management. In addition, any litigation or threat thereof may adversely affect our ability to hire employees or contract with independent service providers. Moreover, a loss of key personnel or their work product could hamper or prevent our ability to commercialize our products.

We may be subject to claims challenging the inventorship or ownership of our owned or in-licensed patent rights and other intellectual property.

We generally enter into confidentiality and intellectual property assignment agreements with our employees, consultants, outside scientific collaborators, sponsored researchers and other advisors. However, these agreements may not be honored and may not effectively assign intellectual property rights to us. For example, disputes may arise from conflicting obligations of consultants or others who are involved in developing our technology and product candidates. Litigation may be necessary to defend against these and other claims challenging inventorship or ownership. The owners of intellectual property in-licensed to us could also face such claims. If we or our licensors fail in defending any such claims, in addition to paying monetary damages, we may lose valuable intellectual property rights, such as exclusive ownership of, or right to use, valuable intellectual property. Such an outcome could have a material adverse effect on our business. Even if we or our licensors are successful in defending against such claims, litigation could result in substantial costs and be a distraction to management and other employees.

Any trademarks we may obtain may be infringed or successfully challenged, resulting in harm to our business.

We expect to rely on trademarks as one means to distinguish any of our product candidates that are approved for marketing from the products of our competitors. We have not yet selected trademarks for our product candidates and have not yet begun the process of applying to register trademarks for our product candidates. Once we select trademarks and apply to register them, our trademark applications may not be approved. Third parties may oppose our trademark applications, or otherwise challenge our use of the trademarks. In the event that our trademarks are successfully challenged, we could be forced to rebrand our products, which could result in loss of brand recognition and could require us to devote resources to advertising and marketing new brands. Our competitors may infringe our trademarks and we may not have adequate resources to enforce our trademarks.

In addition, any proprietary name we propose to use with our clinical-stage product candidates or any other product candidate in the United States must be approved by the FDA, regardless of whether we have registered it, or applied to register it, as a trademark. The FDA typically conducts a review of proposed product names, including an evaluation of the potential for confusion with other product names. If the FDA objects to any of our proposed proprietary product names, we may be required to expend significant additional resources in an effort to identify a suitable proprietary product name that would qualify under applicable trademark laws, not infringe the existing rights of third parties and be acceptable to the FDA.

If we are unable to protect the confidentiality of our trade secrets, our business and competitive position would be harmed.

In addition to seeking patent and trademark protection for our product candidates, we also rely on trade secrets, including unpatented know-how, technology and other proprietary information, to maintain our competitive position. We seek to protect our trade secrets, in part, by entering into non-disclosure and confidentiality agreements with parties who have access to them, such as our employees, consultants, advisors and other third parties. We also enter into confidentiality and invention or patent assignment agreements with our employees and consultants. Despite these efforts, any of these parties may breach the agreements and disclose our proprietary information, including our trade secrets. Monitoring unauthorized uses and disclosures of our intellectual property is difficult, and we do not know whether the steps we have taken to protect our intellectual property will be effective. In addition, we may not be able to obtain adequate remedies for any such breaches. Enforcing a claim that a party illegally disclosed or misappropriated a trade secret is difficult, expensive and time-consuming, and the outcome is unpredictable. In addition, some courts inside and outside the United States are less willing or unwilling to protect trade secrets.

Moreover, our competitors may independently develop knowledge, methods and know-how equivalent to our trade secrets. Competitors could purchase our products and replicate some or all of the competitive advantages we derive from our development efforts for technologies on which we do not have patent protection. If any of our trade secrets were to be lawfully obtained or independently developed by a competitor, we would have no right to prevent them, or those to whom they communicate it, from using that technology or information to compete with us. If any of our trade secrets were to be disclosed to or independently developed by a competitor, our competitive position would be harmed.

We may not be able to protect our intellectual property rights throughout the world.

Filing, prosecuting and defending patents on product candidates in all countries throughout the world would be prohibitively expensive, and our intellectual property rights in some countries outside

the United States could be less extensive than those in the United States. In some cases, we may not be able to obtain patent protection for certain technology outside the United States. In addition, the laws of some foreign countries do not protect intellectual property rights to the same extent as federal and state laws in the United States, even in jurisdictions where we do pursue patent protection. Consequently, we may not be able to prevent third parties from practicing our inventions in all countries outside the United States, even in jurisdictions where we do pursue patent protection or from selling or importing products made using our inventions in and into the United States or other jurisdictions.

Competitors may use our technologies in jurisdictions where we have not pursued and obtained patent protection to develop their own products and, further, may export otherwise infringing products to territories where we have patent protection, but enforcement is not as strong as that in the United States. These products may compete with our product candidates and preclinical programs and our patents or other intellectual property rights may not be effective or sufficient to prevent them from competing.

Many companies have encountered significant problems in protecting and defending intellectual property rights in foreign jurisdictions. The legal systems of certain countries, particularly certain developing countries, do not favor the enforcement of patents, trade secrets and other intellectual property protection, particularly those relating to biotechnology products, which could make it difficult for us to stop the infringement of our patents, if pursued and obtained, or marketing of competing products in violation of our proprietary rights generally. Proceedings to enforce our patent rights in foreign jurisdictions could result in substantial costs and divert our efforts and attention from other aspects of our business, could put our patents at risk of being invalidated or interpreted narrowly and our patent applications at risk of not issuing and could provoke third parties to assert claims against us. We may not prevail in any lawsuits that we initiate and the damages or other remedies awarded, if any, may not be commercially meaningful. Accordingly, our efforts to enforce our intellectual property rights around the world may be inadequate to obtain a significant commercial advantage from the intellectual property that we develop or license.

Obtaining and maintaining our patent protection depends on compliance with various procedural, document submission, fee payment and other requirements imposed by governmental patent agencies, and our patent protection could be reduced or eliminated for non-compliance with these requirements.

Periodic maintenance and annuity fees on any issued patent are due to be paid to the USPTO and patent agencies outside the United States in several stages over the lifetime of the patent. The USPTO and various foreign governmental patent agencies require compliance with a number of procedural, documentary, fee payment and other similar provisions during the patent application process. While an inadvertent lapse can in many cases be cured by payment of a late fee or by other means in accordance with the applicable rules, there are situations in which noncompliance can result in abandonment or lapse of the patent or patent application, resulting in partial or complete loss of patent rights in the relevant jurisdiction. Non-compliance events that could result in abandonment or lapse of a patent or patent application include failure to respond to official actions within prescribed time limits, non-payment of fees and failure to properly legalize and submit formal documents. If we or our licensors fail to maintain the patents and patent applications covering our products or product candidates, our competitors might be able to enter the market, which would harm our business. In addition, to the extent that we have responsibility for taking any action related to the prosecution or maintenance of patents or patent application in-licensed from a third party, any failure on our part to maintain the in-licensed rights could jeopardize our rights under the relevant license and may expose us to liability.

Risks Related to this Offering, Our Securities and Our Status as a Public Company

An active trading market for our ADSs may not develop and you may not be able to resell your ADSs at or above the initial offering price, if at all.

This offering constitutes the initial public offering of our ADSs, and no public market has previously existed for our ADSs. Our ADSs have been approved for listing on The Nasdaq Global Select Market. Any delay in the commencement of trading of our ADSs on The Nasdaq Global Select Market would impair the liquidity of the market for the ADSs and make it more difficult for holders to sell the ADSs. There can be no assurance that an active trading market for the ADSs will develop or be sustained after this offering is completed. The lack of an active trading market may also reduce the fair market value of the ADSs. The initial offering price will be determined by negotiations among the lead underwriters and us. Among the factors to be considered in determining the initial public offering price are our future prospects and the prospects of our industry in general, our revenue, net income and certain other financial and operating information in recent periods, and the market prices of securities and certain financial and operating information of companies engaged in activities similar to ours. However, there can be no assurance that, following the completion of this offering, the ADSs will trade at a price equal to or greater than the initial public offering price.

The trading price of our ADSs may be volatile, and you could lose all or part of your investment.

The trading price of our ADSs following this offering is likely to be highly volatile and could be subject to wide fluctuations in response to various factors, some of which are beyond our control, including limited trading volume. The stock market in general and the market for biopharmaceutical companies in particular have experienced extreme volatility that has often been unrelated to the operating performance of particular companies. As a result of this volatility, investors may not be able to sell their ADSs at or above the price paid for the ADSs. In addition to the factors discussed in this "Risk Factors" section and elsewhere in this prospectus, these factors include:

- the commencement, enrollment or results of our planned and future clinical trials;
- positive or negative results from, or delays in, testing and clinical trials by us, collaborators or competitors;
- the loss of any of our key scientific or management personnel;
- regulatory or legal developments in the United States, United Kingdom and other countries;
- the success of competitive products or technologies;
- adverse actions taken by regulatory agencies with respect to our clinical trials or manufacturers;
- changes or developments in laws or regulations applicable to our product candidates and preclinical program;
- changes to our relationships with collaborators, manufacturers or suppliers;
- concerns regarding the safety of our product candidates or programmed T cells in general;
- announcements concerning our competitors or the pharmaceutical industry in general;
- actual or anticipated fluctuations in our operating results;
- changes in financial estimates or recommendations by securities analysts;
- potential acquisitions, financing, collaborations or other corporate transactions;

- the results of our efforts to discover, develop, acquire or in-license additional product candidates;
- the trading volume of our ADSs on The Nasdaq Global Select Market;
- sales of our ADSs or ordinary shares by us, members of our senior management and directors or our shareholders or the anticipation that such sales may occur in the future;
- general economic, political, and market conditions and overall fluctuations in the financial markets in the United States or the United Kingdom;
- stock market price and volume fluctuations of comparable companies and, in particular, those that operate in the biopharmaceutical industry;
- investors' general perception of us and our business; and
- other events and factors, many of which are beyond our control.

These and other market and industry factors may cause the market price and demand for our ADSs to fluctuate substantially, regardless of our actual operating performance, which may limit or prevent investors from selling their ADSs at or above the price paid for the ADSs and may otherwise negatively affect the liquidity of our ADSs. In addition, the stock market in general, and biopharmaceutical companies in particular, have experienced extreme price and volume fluctuations that have often been unrelated or disproportionate to the operating performance of these companies.

Some companies that have experienced volatility in the trading price of their shares have been the subject of securities class action litigation. Any lawsuit to which we are a party, with or without merit, may result in an unfavorable judgment. We also may decide to settle lawsuits on unfavorable terms.

Any such negative outcome could result in payments of substantial damages or fines, damage to our reputation or adverse changes to our business practices. Defending against litigation is costly and time-consuming, and could divert our management's attention and our resources. Furthermore, during the course of litigation, there could be negative public announcements of the results of hearings, motions or other interim proceedings or developments, which could have a negative effect on the market price of our ADSs.

If you purchase ADSs in this offering, you will suffer immediate dilution of your investment.

The initial public offering price of our ADSs is substantially higher than the pro forma as adjusted net tangible book value per ADS. Therefore, if you purchase ADSs in this offering, you will pay a price per ADS that substantially exceeds our pro forma as adjusted net tangible book value per ADS after this offering. Based on an assumed initial public offering price of \$16.00 per ADS, which is the midpoint of the price range set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, you will experience immediate dilution of \$9.30 per ADS, representing the difference between our pro forma as adjusted net tangible book value per ADS after this offering and the initial public offering price per ADS. After this offering, we will also have outstanding options to purchase ordinary shares with exercise prices lower than the initial public offering price. To the extent these outstanding options are exercised, there will be further dilution to investors in this offering. For further information regarding the dilution resulting from this offering, see the section titled "Dilution" in this prospectus.

A significant portion of our total outstanding shares are restricted from immediate resale, but may be sold into the market in the near future. This could cause the market price of our ADSs to drop significantly, even if our business is doing well.

Sales of a substantial number of our ordinary shares or ADSs in the public market could occur at any time.

If our shareholders sell, or the market perceives that our shareholders intend to sell, substantial amounts of our ordinary shares or ADSs in the public market following this offering, the market price of our ADSs could decline significantly.

Upon completion of this offering, we will have outstanding 37,775,184 ordinary shares, including ordinary shares represented by ADSs, based on the number of shares outstanding as of September 30, 2017. Of these shares, the 7,812,500 ADSs sold in this offering and 364,420 currently outstanding ordinary shares will be freely tradable, and the remaining 29,598,264 ordinary shares will be available for sale in the public market beginning 180 days after the date of this prospectus following the expiration of lock-up agreements entered into by our shareholders in connection with the offering. The representatives of the underwriters may agree to release these shareholders from their lock-up agreements at any time and without notice, which would allow for earlier sales of shares in the public market. Sales of a substantial number of such shares upon expiration of the lock-up agreements, the perception that such sales may occur, or early release of restrictions in the lock-up agreements, could cause the market price of our ADSs to fall or make it more difficult for you to sell your ADSs at a time and price that you deem appropriate.

In addition, promptly following the completion of this offering, we intend to file one or more registration statements on Form S-8 registering the issuance of approximately 6.8 million ordinary shares subject to options or other equity awards issued or reserved for future issuance under our equity incentive plans. Shares registered under these registration statements on Form S-8 will be available for sale in the public market subject to vesting arrangements and exercise of options, the lock-up agreements described above and, in the case of our affiliates, the restrictions of Rule 144 under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended.

Additionally, after this offering, the holders of an aggregate of approximately 26.7 million of our ordinary shares, or their transferees, will have rights, subject to some conditions, to require us to file one or more registration statements covering their shares or to include their shares in registration statements that we may file for ourselves or other shareholders. If we were to register the resale of these shares, they could be freely sold in the public market. If these additional shares are sold, or if it is perceived that they will be sold, in the public market, the trading price of our ADSs could decline.

In connection with the audit of our financial statements as of and for the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2017 in preparation for this offering, our independent registered public accounting firm identified a material weakness in our internal control over financial reporting. If we are not able to remediate the material weakness or if we otherwise fail to maintain an effective system of internal control over financial reporting, we may not be able to accurately report our financial statements in a timely manner, which may adversely affect our business, investor confidence in our company and the market value of our ADSs.

Although we are not yet subject to the certification or attestation requirements of Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, in the course of auditing our financial statements as of and for the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2017 in preparation for this offering, our independent registered public accounting firm identified a material weakness related to our financial statement closing process. This material weakness primarily related to our lack of controls over the preparation and review of complex accounting issues involving significant judgment or estimates in the financial statement closing process resulting from our in-house accounting and finance team. Currently, our finance team lacks sufficient competencies related to U.S. GAAP and SEC reporting for the purposes of timely and reliable financial reporting and relies on third-party advisors to provide assistance with financial reporting. Under standards established by the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board, a material weakness is a deficiency, or combination of deficiencies, in internal control over financial reporting such that there is a reasonable possibility that a material misstatement of a company's annual or interim financial statements will not be prevented or detected and corrected on a timely basis. This finding relates to our

lack of sufficient accounting and finance personnel and our lack of appropriate procedures and controls over the preparation of our financial statements, including sufficient financial statement close process controls as well as overall review procedures of the financial statements and disclosures. We concur with these findings.

We have commenced measures to remediate this material weakness and we have hired a chief financial officer who will assume this role prior to the closing of this offering. In addition, we are actively searching for other finance and accounting personnel, and we plan to further develop and implement policies, processes, documentation and review control procedures relating to our financial reporting. The actions that we are taking are subject to ongoing executive management review, and will be subject to audit committee oversight. Although we intend to complete this remediation process as quickly as practicable, we cannot at this time estimate how long it will take, and our initiatives may not prove to be successful in remediating the material weakness.

If we are unable to successfully remediate our identified material weakness, if we discover additional material weaknesses, or if we otherwise are unable to report our financial statements accurately or in a timely manner, we would be required to continue disclosing such material weaknesses in future filings with the SEC, which could adversely affect our business, investor confidence in our company and the market price of our ADSs, and could subject us to litigation or regulatory enforcement actions. As a result, shareholders could lose confidence in our financial and other public reporting, which would harm our business and the market value of our ADSs.

If we fail to implement and maintain effective internal controls over financial reporting, our ability to produce accurate financial statements on a timely basis could be impaired.

Upon becoming a public company, we will be subject to reporting obligations under U.S. securities laws, including the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002. Section 404(a) of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, or Section 404(a), will require that, beginning with our second annual report following our initial public offering, management assess and report annually on the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting and identify any material weaknesses in our internal control over financial reporting. We expect our first Section 404(a) assessment will take place for our annual report for the fiscal year ending September 30, 2019. If we fail to remediate the material weakness identified above, our management may conclude that our internal control over financial reporting is not effective. Although Section 404(b) of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, or Section 404(b), requires our independent registered public accounting firm to issue an annual report that addresses the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting, we have opted to rely on the exemptions provided in the JOBS Act, and consequently will not be required to comply with SEC rules that implement Section 404(b) until such time as we are no longer an emerging growth company.

The presence of material weaknesses could result in financial statement errors which, in turn, could lead to errors in our financial reports or delays in our financial reporting, which could require us to restate our operating results or result in our auditors issuing a qualified audit report. In order to establish, maintain and improve effective disclosure controls and procedures and internal control over financial reporting, we will need to expend significant resources and provide significant management oversight. Developing, implementing and testing changes to our internal control may require specific compliance training of our directors and employees, entail substantial costs in order to modify our existing accounting systems, take a significant period of time to complete and divert management's attention from other business concerns. These changes may not, however, be effective in establishing and maintaining adequate internal controls.

If either we are unable to conclude that we have effective internal control over financial reporting or, at the appropriate time, our independent auditors are unwilling or unable to provide us with an

unqualified report on the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting as required by Section 404(b), investors may lose confidence in our operating results, the price of our ADSs could decline and we may be subject to litigation or regulatory enforcement actions. In addition, if we are unable to meet the requirements of Section 404, we may not be able to remain listed on Nasdaq.

We will have broad discretion in the use of proceeds from this offering and may invest or spend the proceeds in ways with which you do not agree and in ways that may not increase the value of your investment.

Our management will have broad discretion in the application of our cash and cash equivalents, including the net proceeds from this offering, and could spend the proceeds in ways that do not improve our results of operations or enhance the value of our ADSs. The failure by our management to apply these funds effectively could result in financial losses that could have a negative impact on our business, cause the price of our ADSs to decline and delay the development of our product candidates and preclinical program. Pending their use, we may invest our cash and cash equivalents, including the net proceeds from this offering, in a manner that does not produce income or that loses value. See the section titled "Use of Proceeds" for additional information.

Raising additional capital may cause dilution to our holders, including purchasers of our ADSs in this offering, restrict our operations or require us to relinquish rights to our technologies or product candidates.

We expect that significant additional capital may be needed in the future to continue our planned operations, including conducting clinical trials, commercialization efforts, expanded research and development activities and costs associated with operating a public company. Until such time, if ever, as we can generate substantial product revenues, we expect to finance our cash needs through any or a combination of securities offerings, debt financings, license and collaboration agreements and research grants. If we raise capital through securities offerings, such sales may also result in material dilution to our existing shareholders, and new investors could gain rights, preferences and privileges senior to the holders of our ADSs or ordinary shares, including ADSs sold in this offering.

To the extent that we raise additional capital through the sale of equity or convertible debt securities, your ownership interest will be diluted, and the terms of these securities may include liquidation or other preferences that adversely affect your rights as a shareholder. Debt financing and preferred equity financing, if available, could result in fixed payment obligations, and we may be required to accept terms that restrict our ability to incur additional indebtedness, force us to maintain specified liquidity or other ratios or restrict our ability to pay dividends or make acquisitions.

If we raise additional funds through collaborations, strategic alliances or marketing, distribution or licensing arrangements with third parties, we may be required to relinquish valuable rights to our technologies, future revenue streams, research programs or product candidates or to grant licenses on terms that may not be favorable to us. In addition, we could also be required to seek funds through arrangements with collaborators or others at an earlier stage than otherwise would be desirable. If we raise funds through research grants, we may be subject to certain requirements, which may limit our ability to use the funds or require us to share information from our research and development. If we are unable to raise additional funds through equity or debt financings when needed, we may be required to delay, limit, reduce or terminate our product development or future commercialization efforts or grant rights to a third party to develop and market product candidates that we would otherwise prefer to develop and market ourselves. Raising additional capital through any of these or other means could adversely affect our business and the holdings or rights of our shareholders, and may cause the market price of our ADSs to decline.

The rights of our shareholders may differ from the rights typically offered to shareholders of a U.S. corporation.

We are incorporated under English law. The rights of holders of ordinary shares and, therefore, certain of the rights of holders of our ADSs, are governed by English law, including the provisions of the U.K. Companies Act 2006, or the Companies Act, and by our Articles of Association. These rights differ in certain respects from the rights of shareholders in typical U.S. corporations. See the section titled "Description of Share Capital and Articles of Association—Differences in Corporate Law" in this prospectus for a description of the principal differences between the provisions of the Companies Act applicable to us and, for example, the Delaware General Corporation Law relating to shareholders' rights and protections.

Holders of our ADSs have fewer rights than our shareholders and must act through the depositary to exercise their rights.

Holders of our ADSs do not have the same rights as our shareholders and may only exercise their voting rights with respect to the underlying ordinary shares in accordance with the provisions of the deposit agreement. Holders of the ADSs will appoint the depositary or its nominee as their representative to exercise the voting rights attaching to the ordinary shares represented by the ADSs. When a general meeting is convened, if you hold ADSs, you may not receive sufficient notice of a shareholders' meeting to permit you to withdraw the ordinary shares underlying your ADSs to allow you to vote with respect to any specific matter. We will make all commercially reasonable efforts to cause the depositary to extend voting rights to you in a timely manner, but we cannot assure you that you will receive voting materials in time to instruct the depositary to vote, and it is possible that you, or persons who hold their ADSs through brokers, dealers or other third parties, will not have the opportunity to exercise a right to vote. Furthermore, the depositary will not be liable for any failure to carry out any instructions to vote, for the manner in which any vote is cast or for the effect of any such vote. As a result, you may not be able to exercise your right to vote and you may lack recourse if your ADSs are not voted as you request. In addition, in your capacity as an ADS holder, you will not be able to call a shareholders' meeting.

Concentration of ownership of our ordinary shares among our existing senior management, directors and principal shareholders may prevent new investors from influencing significant corporate decisions and matters submitted to shareholders for approval.

Upon completion of this offering, members of our senior management, directors and current beneficial owners of 5% or more of our ordinary shares and their respective affiliates will, in the aggregate, beneficially own approximately 66.7% of our outstanding ordinary shares, based on the number of ordinary shares outstanding as of April 30, 2018 and assuming the issuance of 7,812,500 ADSs in this offering. In addition, certain of our principal shareholders and their affiliated entities have indicated an interest in purchasing ADSs in this offering, which would increase the aggregate beneficial ownership percentage of our senior management, directors and current beneficial owners of 5% or more of our ordinary shares. As a result, these persons, acting together, would be able to significantly influence all matters requiring shareholder approval, including the election and removal of directors, any merger, consolidation or sale of all or substantially all of our assets, or other significant corporate transactions. In addition, these persons, acting together, may have the ability to control the management and affairs of our company. Accordingly, this concentration of ownership may harm the market price of our ADSs by:

- delaying, deferring, or preventing a change in control;
- entrenching our management and/or the board of directors;
- impeding a merger, consolidation, takeover, or other business combination involving us; or

- discouraging a potential acquirer from making a tender offer or otherwise attempting to obtain control of us.

In addition, some of these persons or entities may have interests different than yours. For example, because many of these shareholders purchased their shares at prices substantially below the price at which shares are being sold in this offering and have held their shares for a longer period, they may be more interested in selling our company to an acquirer than other investors, or they may want us to pursue strategies that deviate from the interests of other shareholders.

You may not receive distributions on our ordinary shares represented by the ADSs or any value for them if it is illegal or impractical to make them available to holders of ADSs.

Although we do not have any present plans to declare or pay any dividends, in the event we declare and pay any dividend, the depository for the ADSs has agreed to pay to you the cash dividends or other distributions it or the custodian receives on our ordinary shares or other deposited securities after deducting its fees and expenses. You will receive these distributions in proportion to the number of our ordinary shares your ADSs represent. However, in accordance with the limitations set forth in the deposit agreement, it may be unlawful or impractical to make a distribution available to holders of ADSs. We have no obligation to register under U.S. securities laws any offering of ADSs, ordinary shares or other securities received through such distributions. We also have no obligation to take any other action to permit distribution on the ADSs, ordinary shares, rights or anything else to holders of the ADSs. This means that you may not receive the distributions we make on our ordinary shares or any value from them if it is unlawful or impractical to make them available to you. These restrictions may have an adverse effect on the value of your ADSs.

Your right to participate in any future rights offerings may be limited, which may cause dilution to your holdings.

We may from time to time distribute rights to our shareholders, including rights to acquire our securities. However, we cannot make rights available to you in the United States unless we register the rights and the securities to which the rights relate under the Securities Act or an exemption from the registration requirements is available. Also, under the deposit agreement, the depository bank will not make rights available to you unless either both the rights and any related securities are registered under the Securities Act, or the distribution of them to ADS holders is exempted from registration under the Securities Act. We are under no obligation to file a registration statement with respect to any such rights or securities or to endeavor to cause such a registration statement to be declared effective. Moreover, we may not be able to establish an exemption from registration under the Securities Act. If the depository does not distribute the rights, it may, under the deposit agreement, either sell them, if possible, or allow them to lapse. Accordingly, you may be unable to participate in our rights offerings and may experience dilution in your holdings.

Because we do not anticipate paying any cash dividends on our ADSs in the foreseeable future, capital appreciation, if any, will be your sole source of gains and you may never receive a return on your investment.

You should not rely on an investment in our ADSs to provide dividend income. Under current English law, a company's accumulated realized profits must exceed its accumulated realized losses (on a non-consolidated basis) before dividends can be paid. Therefore, we must have distributable profits before issuing a dividend. We have never declared or paid a dividend on our ordinary shares in the past, and we currently intend to retain our future earnings, if any, to fund the development and growth of our business. As a result, capital appreciation, if any, on our ADSs will be your sole source of gains for the foreseeable future. Investors seeking cash dividends should not purchase our ADSs in this offering.

As a holding company, our only material assets will be our equity interests in our operating subsidiaries, and our principal source of cash flow will be distributions from such subsidiaries, which may be limited by law and/or contract in making such distributions.

We are holding company that does not conduct any business operations of our own. While we have the ability to raise additional capital through the issuance of equity securities, such as in this offering or in future equity financings, our principal source of cash flow will be distributions from our subsidiaries. Therefore, our ability to carry out our business plan, to fund and conduct our business and to pay dividends, if any, in the future will depend on the ability of our subsidiaries to generate sufficient net income and cash flow to make upstream cash distributions to us. Our subsidiaries are separate legal entities, and although we wholly own and control them, they have no obligation to make any funds available to us, whether in the form of loans, dividends or otherwise. The ability of our subsidiaries to distribute cash to us will also be subject to, among other things, restrictions that may be contained in our subsidiaries' agreements, as entered into from time to time, availability of sufficient funds in such subsidiaries and applicable laws and regulatory restrictions. Claims of any creditors of our subsidiaries generally will have priority as to the assets of such subsidiaries over our claims and claims of our shareholders. To the extent the ability of our subsidiaries to distribute dividends or other payments to us is limited in any way, this could materially limit our ability to fund and conduct our business and pay dividends, if any.

If we are a passive foreign investment company following this offering, there could be adverse U.S. federal income tax consequences to U.S. Holders.

Under the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, or the Code, we will be a passive foreign investment company, or PFIC, for any taxable year in which (1) 75% or more of our gross income consists of passive income or (2) 50% or more of the average quarterly value of our assets consists of assets that produce, or are held for the production of, passive income. For purposes of these tests, passive income includes dividends, interest, gains from the sale or exchange of investment property and certain rents and royalties. In addition, for purposes of the above calculations, a non-U.S. corporation that directly or indirectly owns at least 25% by value of the shares of another corporation is treated as if it held its proportionate share of the assets and received directly its proportionate share of the income of such other corporation. If we are a PFIC for any taxable year during which a U.S. Holder (as defined below under "Material Income Tax Considerations—Material U.S. Federal Income Tax Considerations for U.S. Holders") holds our ADSs, the U.S. Holder may be subject to adverse tax consequences regardless of whether we continue to qualify as a PFIC, including ineligibility for any preferred tax rates on capital gains or on actual or deemed dividends, interest charges on certain taxes treated as deferred, and additional reporting requirements.

We do not believe we were a PFIC for our taxable year ended September 30, 2017. Based on our current estimates of expected gross assets and income, we do not believe we will be a PFIC for our taxable year ending September 30, 2018. However, no assurances regarding our PFIC status can be provided for any past, current or future taxable years. The determination of whether we are a PFIC is a fact-intensive determination made on an annual basis and the applicable law is subject to varying interpretation. In particular, the characterization of our assets as active or passive may depend in part on our current and intended future business plans, which are subject to change. In addition, for our current and future taxable years, the total value of our assets for PFIC testing purposes may be determined in part by reference to the market price of our ordinary shares or ADSs from time to time, which may fluctuate considerably. Under the income test, our status as a PFIC depends on the composition of our income which will depend on the transactions we enter into in the future and our corporate structure. The composition of our income and assets is also affected by how, and how quickly, we spend the cash we raise in any offering, including this offering. Accordingly, in its legal opinion issued in connection with this offering, our U.S. counsel expresses no opinion with respect to

our PFIC status for our taxable year ended September 30, 2017, and also expresses no opinion with regard to our expectations regarding our PFIC status in the future.

If we are a PFIC, U.S. holders of our ADSs would be subject to adverse U.S. federal income tax consequences, such as ineligibility for any preferred tax rates on capital gains or on actual or deemed dividends, interest charges on certain taxes treated as deferred, and additional reporting requirements under U.S. federal income tax laws and regulations. For further discussion of the PFIC rules and the adverse U.S. federal income tax consequences in the event we are classified as a PFIC, see the section titled "Material Income Tax Considerations—Material U.S. Federal Income Considerations for U.S. Holders" in this prospectus.

If a United States person is treated as owning at least 10% of our ordinary shares, including ordinary shares represented by ADSs, such holder may be subject to adverse U.S. federal income tax consequences.

If a U.S. Holder (as defined below under "Material Income Tax Considerations—Material U.S. Federal Income Tax Considerations for U.S. Holders") is treated as owning (directly, indirectly or constructively) at least 10% of the value or voting power of our ordinary shares, including ordinary shares represented by ADSs, such U.S. Holder may be treated as a "United States shareholder" with respect to each "controlled foreign corporation" in our group (if any). Because our group includes at least one U.S. subsidiary (Autolus Inc.), certain of our non-U.S. subsidiaries may be treated as controlled foreign corporations (regardless of whether Autolus Therapeutics plc is treated as a controlled foreign corporation). A United States shareholder of a controlled foreign corporation may be required to annually report and include in its U.S. taxable income its pro rata share of "Subpart F income," "global intangible low-taxed income" and investments in U.S. property by controlled foreign corporations, regardless of whether we make any distributions. An individual that is a United States shareholder with respect to a controlled foreign corporation generally would not be allowed certain tax deductions or foreign tax credits that would be allowed to a United States shareholder that is a U.S. corporation. We cannot provide any assurances that we will assist investors in determining whether any of our non-U.S. subsidiaries, if any, are treated as a controlled foreign corporation or whether such investor is treated as a United States shareholder with respect to any of such controlled foreign corporations. Further, we cannot provide any assurances that we will furnish to any U.S. shareholder information that may be necessary to comply with the reporting and tax paying obligations discussed above. Failure to comply with these reporting obligations may subject you to significant monetary penalties and may prevent the statute of limitations with respect to your U.S. federal income tax return for the year for which reporting was due from starting. U.S. Holders should consult their tax advisors regarding the potential application of these rules to their investment in our ADSs.

We may be unable to use U.K. carryforward tax losses to reduce future tax payments or benefit from favorable U.K. tax legislation.

As a U.K. resident trading entity, we are subject to U.K. corporate taxation. Due to the nature of our business, we have generated losses since inception. As of September 30, 2017, we had cumulative carryforward tax losses of \$22.8 million. Subject to any relevant restrictions (including those that limit the percentage of profits that can be reduced by carried forward losses and those that can restrict the use of carried forward losses where there is a change of ownership of more than half the ordinary shares of the company and a major change in the nature, conduct or scale of the trade), we expect these to be available to carry forward and offset against future operating profits. As a company that carries out extensive research and development activities, we benefit from the U.K. research and development tax credit regime under the scheme for small and medium-sized enterprises, or SMEs, and also claim a Research and Development Expenditure Credit, or RDEC, to the extent that our projects are grant funded. Under the SME scheme, we are able to surrender some of our trading

losses that arise from our qualifying research and development activities for a cash rebate of up to 33.35% of such qualifying research and development expenditures. The net tax benefit of the RDEC is expected to be 8.9% (increasing to 9.13% in financial year 2020). Qualifying expenditures largely are comprised of employment costs for research staff, consumables, outsourced CRO costs and utilities costs incurred as part of research projects. Specified subcontracted qualifying research expenditures are eligible for a cash rebate of up to 21.67%.

In the event we generate revenues in the future, we may benefit from the U.K. "patent box" regime that allows profits attributable to revenues from patents or patented products to be taxed at an effective rate of 10%. We are the exclusive licensee or owner of one patent and several patent applications which, if issued, would cover our product candidates, and accordingly, future upfront fees, milestone fees, product revenues and royalties could be taxed at this tax rate. When taken in combination with the enhanced relief available on our research and development expenditures, we expect a long-term lower effective rate of corporation tax to apply to us. If, however, there are unexpected adverse changes to the U.K. research and development tax credit regime or the "patent box" regime, or for any reason we are unable to qualify for such advantageous tax legislation, or we are unable to use net operating loss and tax credit carryforwards and certain built-in losses to reduce future tax payments, our business, results of operations, and financial condition may be adversely affected.

Future changes to tax laws could materially adversely affect our company and reduce net returns to our shareholders.

The tax treatment of the company is subject to changes in tax laws, regulations and treaties, or the interpretation thereof, tax policy initiatives and reforms under consideration and the practices of tax authorities in jurisdictions in which we operate, as well as tax policy initiatives and reforms related to the Organisation for Economic Co-Operation and Development's, or OECD, Base Erosion and Profit Shifting, or BEPS, Project, the European Commission's state aid investigations and other initiatives. Such changes may include (but are not limited to) the taxation of operating income, investment income, dividends received or (in the specific context of withholding tax) dividends paid. We are unable to predict what tax reform may be proposed or enacted in the future or what effect such changes would have on our business, but such changes, to the extent they are brought into tax legislation, regulations, policies or practices, could affect our financial position and overall or effective tax rates in the future in countries where we have operations, reduce post-tax returns to our shareholders, and increase the complexity, burden and cost of tax compliance.

In addition, on December 22, 2017, President Trump signed into law new legislation that significantly revises the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended. The newly enacted U.S. federal income tax law, among other things, contains significant changes to corporate taxation, including reduction of the corporate tax rate from a top marginal rate of 35% to a flat rate of 21%, limitation of the tax deduction for interest expense to 30% of adjusted earnings (except for certain small businesses), limitation of the deduction for net operating losses to 80% of current year taxable income and elimination of net operating loss carrybacks, one time taxation of offshore earnings at reduced rates regardless of whether they are repatriated, elimination of U.S. tax on foreign earnings (subject to certain important exceptions), immediate deductions for certain new investments instead of deductions for depreciation expense over time, and modifying or repealing many business deductions and credits. Notwithstanding the reduction in the corporate income tax rate, the overall impact of the new federal tax law is uncertain and our business and financial condition could be adversely affected. In addition, it is uncertain if and to what extent various states will conform to the newly enacted federal tax law. The impact of this tax reform on holders of our ADSs is also uncertain and could be adverse. We urge you to consult with your legal and tax advisors with respect to this legislation and the potential tax consequences of investing in or holding our ADSs.

Tax authorities may disagree with our positions and conclusions regarding certain tax positions, resulting in unanticipated costs, taxes or non-realization of expected benefits.

A tax authority may disagree with tax positions that we have taken, which could result in increased tax liabilities. For example, Her Majesty's Revenue & Customs, or HMRC, the U.S. Internal Revenue Service or another tax authority could challenge our allocation of income by tax jurisdiction and the amounts paid between our affiliated companies pursuant to our intercompany arrangements and transfer pricing policies, including amounts paid with respect to our intellectual property development. Similarly, a tax authority could assert that we are subject to tax in a jurisdiction where we believe we have not established a taxable connection, often referred to as a "permanent establishment" under international tax treaties, and such an assertion, if successful, could increase our expected tax liability in one or more jurisdictions. A tax authority may take the position that material income tax liabilities, interest and penalties are payable by us, in which case, we expect that we might contest such assessment. Contesting such an assessment may be lengthy and costly and if we were unsuccessful in disputing the assessment, the implications could increase our anticipated effective tax rate, where applicable.

We will incur significantly increased costs as a result of operating as a company whose ADSs are publicly traded in the United States, and our management will be required to devote substantial time to new compliance initiatives.

As a public company in the United States, we will incur significant legal, accounting and other expenses that we did not incur previously. These expenses will likely be even more significant after we no longer qualify as an emerging growth company. The Sarbanes-Oxley Act, the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act, the listing requirements of Nasdaq and other applicable securities rules and regulations impose various requirements on public companies in the United States, including the establishment and maintenance of effective disclosure and financial controls and corporate governance practices. Our senior management and other personnel will need to devote a substantial amount of time to these compliance initiatives. Moreover, these rules and regulations will increase our legal and financial compliance costs and will make some activities more time-consuming and costly. For example, we expect that these rules and regulations may make it more difficult and more expensive for us to obtain director and officer liability insurance, which in turn could make it more difficult for us to attract and retain qualified senior management personnel or members for our board of directors.

However, these rules and regulations are often subject to varying interpretations, in many cases due to their lack of specificity, and, as a result, their application in practice may evolve over time as new guidance is provided by regulatory and governing bodies. This could result in continuing uncertainty regarding compliance matters and higher costs necessitated by ongoing revisions to disclosure and governance practices.

Pursuant to Section 404, we will be required to furnish a report by our senior management on our internal control over financial reporting. However, while we remain an emerging growth company, we will not be required to include an attestation report on internal control over financial reporting issued by our independent registered public accounting firm. To prepare for eventual compliance with Section 404, we will be engaged in a process to document and evaluate our internal control over financial reporting, which is both costly and challenging. In this regard, we will need to continue to dedicate internal resources, potentially engage outside consultants and adopt a detailed work plan to assess and document the adequacy of internal control over financial reporting, continue steps to improve control processes as appropriate, validate through testing that controls are functioning as documented and implement a continuous reporting and improvement process for internal control over financial reporting. Despite our efforts, there is a risk that we will not be able to conclude, within the

prescribed timeframe or at all, that our internal control over financial reporting is effective as required by Section 404. As described elsewhere in this Risk Factors section, our independent registered public accounting firm has identified a material weakness over our internal control over financial reporting. If we are unable to successfully remediate that identified material weakness, or if we identify other material weaknesses, it could result in an adverse reaction in the financial markets due to a loss of confidence in the reliability of our financial statements.

We are an “emerging growth company” and as a result of the reduced disclosure and governance requirements applicable to emerging growth companies, our ADSs may be less attractive to investors.

We are an “emerging growth company” as defined in the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012, or the JOBS Act. For as long as we continue to be an emerging growth company, we may take advantage of exemptions from various reporting requirements that are applicable to other public companies that are not emerging growth companies, including not being required to comply with the auditor attestation requirements of Section 404, exemptions from the requirements of holding a nonbinding advisory vote on executive compensation and shareholder approval of any golden parachute payments not previously approved. As an emerging growth company, we are able to report only two years of financial results and selected financial data compared to three and five years, respectively, for comparable data reported by other public companies. We may take advantage of these exemptions until we are no longer an emerging growth company. We could be an emerging growth company for up to five years, although circumstances could cause us to lose that status earlier, including if the aggregate market value of our ordinary shares, including ordinary shares represented by ADSs, held by non-affiliates exceeds \$700 million as of the end of our second fiscal quarter before that time, in which case we would no longer be an emerging growth company as of the following September 30th (the last day of our fiscal year). We cannot predict if investors will find our ADSs less attractive because we may rely on these exemptions. If some investors find our ADSs less attractive as a result, there may be a less active trading market for our ADSs and the price of our ADSs may be more volatile.

Under Section 107(b) of the JOBS Act, emerging growth companies can delay adopting new or revised accounting standards until such time as those standards apply to private companies. We have irrevocably elected not to avail ourselves of this exemption from new or revised accounting standards and, therefore, we will be subject to the same new or revised accounting standards as other public companies that are not emerging growth companies.

We qualify as a foreign private issuer and, as a result, we will not be subject to U.S. proxy rules and will be subject to Exchange Act reporting obligations that permit less detailed and frequent reporting than that of a U.S. domestic public company.

Upon the closing of this offering, we will report under the Exchange Act as a non-U.S. company with foreign private issuer status. Because we qualify as a foreign private issuer under the Exchange Act, we are exempt from certain provisions of the Exchange Act that are applicable to U.S. domestic public companies, including (i) the sections of the Exchange Act regulating the solicitation of proxies, consents or authorizations in respect of a security registered under the Exchange Act; (ii) the sections of the Exchange Act requiring insiders to file public reports of their stock ownership and trading activities and liability for insiders who profit from trades made in a short period of time; and (iii) the rules under the Exchange Act requiring the filing with the SEC of quarterly reports on Form 10-Q containing unaudited financial and other specified information, or current reports on Form 8-K upon the occurrence of specified significant events. In addition, foreign private issuers are not required to file their annual report on Form 20-F until 120 days after the end of each fiscal year, while U.S. domestic issuers that are accelerated filers are required to file their annual report on Form 10-K within 75 days after the end of each fiscal year.

Foreign private issuers also are exempt from Regulation FD, aimed at preventing issuers from making selective disclosures of material information. As a result of the above, you may not have the same protections afforded to shareholders of companies that are not foreign private issuers.

If we lose our status as a foreign private issuer, we would be required to comply with the Exchange Act reporting and other requirements applicable to U.S. domestic issuers, which are more detailed and extensive than the requirements for foreign private issuers. We may also be required to make changes in our corporate governance practices in accordance with various SEC and Nasdaq rules. The regulatory and compliance costs to us under U.S. securities laws if we are required to comply with the reporting requirements applicable to a U.S. domestic issuer may be significantly higher than the cost we would incur as a foreign private issuer. As a result, we expect that a loss of foreign private issuer status would increase our legal and financial compliance costs and would make some activities highly time consuming and costly. We also expect that if we were required to comply with the rules and regulations applicable to U.S. domestic issuers, it would make it more difficult and expensive for us to obtain director and officer liability insurance, and we may be required to accept reduced coverage or incur substantially higher costs to obtain coverage. These rules and regulations could also make it more difficult for us to attract and retain qualified members of our board of directors.

As a foreign private issuer, we are permitted to adopt certain home country practices in relation to corporate governance matters that differ significantly from Nasdaq corporate governance listing standards. These practices may afford less protection to shareholders than they would enjoy if we complied fully with Nasdaq corporate governance listing standards.

We are entitled to rely on a provision in Nasdaq's corporate governance rules that allows us to follow English corporate law and the Companies Act with regard to certain corporate governance matters. This allows us to follow certain corporate governance practices that differ in significant respects from the corporate governance requirements applicable to U.S. companies listed on Nasdaq.

We intend to continue to follow English corporate governance practices in lieu of the following corporate governance requirements of Nasdaq: (i) disclosure requirement within four business days of any determination to grant a waiver of the code of business conduct and ethics to directors and officers and (ii) requirement to obtain shareholder approval for certain issuances of securities, including shareholder approval of option plans. Therefore, our shareholders may be afforded less protection than they otherwise would have under corporate governance listing standards applicable to U.S. domestic issuers.

Shareholder protections found in provisions under the U.K. City Code on Takeovers and Mergers, or the Takeover Code, will apply if our place of management and control remains in the United Kingdom.

We believe that as of the date of this prospectus our place of central management and control is in the United Kingdom for the purposes of the jurisdictional criteria of the Takeover Code. Accordingly, we believe that we are currently subject to the Takeover Code and, as a result, our shareholders are currently entitled to the benefit of certain takeover offer protections provided under the Takeover Code, including the rules regarding mandatory takeover bids.

The Takeover Code provides a framework within which takeovers of companies are regulated and conducted. The Takeover Panel may, at any relevant time, review our place of central management and control based on the jurisdictional criteria of the Takeover Code, and their assessment as to jurisdiction may or may not change. Absent a relevant event occurring under the Takeover Code, it is unlikely that the Takeover Panel would reassess jurisdiction in the interim. It is feasible that, in the future, due to the board's composition, location of board meetings, changes in the

Takeover Panel's interpretation of the Takeover Code or other events, the Takeover Panel's assessment of its jurisdiction regarding and applicability of the Takeover Code to the company may change.

The following is a brief summary of some of the most important rules of the Takeover Code:

- When either (i) a person, together with persons acting in concert with him, acquires, whether by a series of transactions over a period of time or not, an interest in shares which (when taken together with shares in which persons acting in concert with him are interested) carry 30% or more of the voting rights of a company (which percentage is treated by the Takeover Code as the level at which effective control is obtained); or (ii) any person who, together with persons acting in concert with him, is interested in shares which in the aggregate carry not less than 30% of the voting rights of a company but does not hold shares carrying more than 50% of such voting rights and such person, or any person acting in concert with him, acquires an interest in any other shares which increases the percentage of shares carrying voting rights in which he is interested, such person must make a cash offer to all other shareholders at not less than the highest price paid by the person required to make an offer or any person acting in concert with him during the 12 months before the offer was announced.
- If an offer has been made for a company and interests in shares carrying 10% or more of the voting rights of a class have been acquired by the offeror (i.e., a bidder) in the offer period and the previous 12 months, the offer must include a cash alternative for all shareholders of that class at the highest price paid by the offeror in that period. Further, if an offeror acquires for cash any interest in shares during the offer period, a cash alternative must be made available at a price at least equal to the price paid for such shares.
- If, after making an offer for a company, the offeror acquires an interest in shares in an offeree company (i.e., a target) at a price higher than the value of the offer, the offer must be increased accordingly.
- An offeree company must appoint a competent independent adviser whose advice on the financial terms of the offer must be made known to all the shareholders, together with the opinion of the board of directors of the offeree company.
- Favorable deals for selected shareholders are banned.
- All shareholders must be given the same information.
- Those issuing takeover circulars must include statements taking responsibility for the contents thereof.
- Profit forecasts, quantified financial benefits statements and asset valuations must be made to specified standards and must be reported on by professional advisers.
- Misleading, inaccurate or unsubstantiated statements made in documents or to the media must be publicly corrected immediately.
- Actions during the course of an offer by the offeree company, which might frustrate the offer are generally prohibited unless shareholders approve these plans. Stringent requirements are laid down for the disclosure of dealings in relevant securities during an offer.

Employees of both the offeror and the offeree company and the trustees of the offeree company's pension scheme must be informed about an offer. In addition, the offeree company's employee representatives and pension scheme trustees have the right to have a separate opinion on the effects of the offer on employment appended to the offeree board of directors' circular or published on a website.

You may face difficulties in protecting your interests, and your ability to protect your rights through the U.S. federal courts may be limited, because we are incorporated under the laws of England and Wales, conduct most of our operations outside the United States and most of our directors and senior management reside outside the United States.

We are incorporated and have our registered office in, and are currently existing under the laws of, England and Wales. In addition, most of our tangible assets are located, and most of our senior management and directors reside, outside of the United States. As a result, it may not be possible to serve process within the United States on certain directors or us or to enforce judgments obtained in U.S. courts against such directors or us based on civil liability provisions of the securities laws of the United States. As a result, it may not be possible for investors to effect service of process within the United States upon such persons or to enforce judgments obtained in U.S. courts against them or us, including judgments predicated upon the civil liability provisions of the U.S. federal securities laws.

The United States and the United Kingdom do not currently have a treaty providing for recognition and enforcement of judgments (other than arbitration awards) in civil and commercial matters. Consequently, a final judgment for payment given by a court in the United States, whether or not predicated solely upon U.S. securities laws, would not automatically be recognized or enforceable in the United Kingdom. In addition, uncertainty exists as to whether English courts would entertain original actions brought in the United Kingdom against us or our directors or senior management predicated upon the securities laws of the United States or any state in the United States. Any final and conclusive monetary judgment for a definite sum obtained against us in U.S. courts would be treated by English courts as a cause of action in itself and sued upon as a debt at common law so that no retrial of the issues would be necessary, provided that certain requirements are met.

Whether these requirements are met in respect of a judgment based upon the civil liability provisions of the U.S. securities laws, including whether the award of monetary damages under such laws would constitute a penalty, is subject to determination by the court making such decision. If an English court gives judgment for the sum payable under a U.S. judgment, the English judgment will be enforceable by methods generally available for this purpose. These methods generally permit the English court discretion to prescribe the manner of enforcement.

As a result, U.S. investors may not be able to enforce against us or certain of our directors any judgments obtained in U.S. courts in civil and commercial matters, including judgments under the U.S. federal securities laws.

As an English public limited company, certain capital structure decisions will require shareholder approval, which may limit our flexibility to manage our capital structure.

On June 18, 2018, we altered the legal status of our company under English law from a private limited company by re-registering as a public limited company and changing our name from Autolus Therapeutics Limited to Autolus Therapeutics plc. English law provides that a board of directors may only allot shares (or rights to subscribe for or convertible into shares) with the prior authorization of shareholders, such authorization stating the aggregate nominal amount of shares that it covers and valid for a maximum period of five years, each as specified in the articles of association or relevant shareholder resolution. We have obtained authority from our shareholders to allot additional shares for a period of five years from June 2018 (being the date on which we adopted our articles of association containing the relevant authorization), which authorization will need to be renewed upon expiration (i.e., at least every five years) but may be sought more frequently for additional five-year terms (or any shorter period).

English law also generally provides shareholders with preemptive rights when new shares are issued for cash. However, it is possible for the articles of association, or for shareholders to pass a

special resolution at a general meeting, being a resolution passed by at least 75% of the votes cast, to disapply preemptive rights. Such a disapplication of preemptive rights may be for a maximum period of up to five years from the date of adoption of the articles of association, if the disapplication is contained in the articles of association, or from the date of the shareholder special resolution, if the disapplication is by shareholder special resolution. In either case, this disapplication would need to be renewed by our shareholders upon its expiration (i.e., at least every five years). We have obtained authority from our shareholders to disapply preemptive rights for a period of five years from June 2018, which disapplication will need to be renewed upon expiration (i.e., at least every five years) to remain effective, but may be sought more frequently for additional five-year terms (or any shorter period).

English law also generally prohibits a public company from repurchasing its own shares without the prior approval of shareholders by ordinary resolution, being a resolution passed by a simple majority of votes cast, and other formalities. Such approval may be for a maximum period of up to five years. See the section titled "Description of Share Capital and Articles of Association."

Our articles of association to be effective in connection with the closing of this offering will provide that the U.S. federal district courts will be the exclusive forum for the resolution of any complaint asserting a cause of action arising under the Securities Act.

Our articles of association to be effective in connection with the closing of this offering will provide that the U.S. federal district courts will be the exclusive forum for resolving any complaint asserting a cause of action arising under the Securities Act. This choice of forum provision may limit a shareholder's ability to bring a claim in a judicial forum that it finds favorable for disputes with us or our directors, officers or other employees, which may discourage such lawsuits. If a court were to find either choice of forum provision contained in our articles of association to be inapplicable or unenforceable in an action, we may incur additional costs associated with resolving such action in other jurisdictions, which could adversely affect our results of operations and financial condition.

If equity research analysts do not publish research or reports, or publish unfavorable research or reports, about us, our business or our market, the price and trading volume of our ADSs could decline.

The trading market for our ADSs will be influenced by the research and reports that equity research analysts publish about us and our business. We do not currently have and may never obtain research coverage by equity research analysts. Equity research analysts may elect not to provide research coverage of our ADSs after the completion of this offering, and such lack of research coverage may adversely affect the market price of our ADSs. In the event we do have equity research analyst coverage, we will not have any control over the analysts or the content and opinions included in their reports. The price of our ADSs could decline if one or more equity research analysts downgrade our ADSs or issue other unfavorable commentary or research about us. If one or more equity research analysts ceases coverage of us or fails to publish reports on us regularly, demand for our ADSs could decrease, which in turn could cause the trading price or trading volume of our ADSs to decline.

You may be subject to limitations on transfers of your ADSs.

Your ADSs are transferable on the books of the depository. However, the depository may close its transfer books at any time or from time to time when deemed necessary or advisable by it in good faith in connection with the performance of its duties or at our reasonable written request, subject in all cases to compliance with applicable U.S. securities laws. In addition, the depository may refuse to deliver, transfer or register transfers of ADSs generally when our books or the books of the depository are closed, or at any time if we or the depository deems it advisable to do so because of any requirement of law or of any government or governmental body, or under any provision of the deposit agreement, or for any other reason.

SPECIAL NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

This prospectus contains forward-looking statements that involve substantial risks and uncertainties. In some cases, you can identify forward-looking statements by the words “may,” “might,” “will,” “could,” “would,” “should,” “expect,” “intend,” “plan,” “objective,” “anticipate,” “believe,” “estimate,” “predict,” “potential,” “continue” and “ongoing,” or the negative of these terms, or other comparable terminology intended to identify statements about the future. These statements involve known and unknown risks, uncertainties and other important factors that may cause our actual results, levels of activity, performance or achievements to be materially different from the information expressed or implied by these forward-looking statements. The forward-looking statements and opinions contained in this prospectus are based upon information available to us as of the date of this prospectus and, while we believe such information forms a reasonable basis for such statements, such information may be limited or incomplete, and our statements should not be read to indicate that we have conducted an exhaustive inquiry into, or review of, all potentially available relevant information. Forward-looking statements contained in this prospectus include, but are not limited to, statements about:

- the development of our product candidates, including statements regarding the timing of initiation, completion and the outcome of clinical studies or trials and related preparatory work, the period during which the results of the trials will become available and our research and development programs;
- our ability to obtain and maintain regulatory approval of our product candidates in the indications for which we plan to develop them, and any related restrictions, limitations or warnings in the label of an approved drug or therapy;
- our ability to license additional intellectual property relating to our product candidates from third parties and to comply with our existing license agreement;
- our plans to research, develop, manufacture and commercialize our product candidates;
- the timing of our regulatory filings for our product candidates;
- the size and growth potential of the markets for our product candidates;
- our ability to raise additional capital;
- our commercialization, marketing and manufacturing capabilities and strategy;
- our expectations regarding our ability to obtain and maintain intellectual property protection;
- our ability to commercialize our products in light of the intellectual property rights of others;
- our ability to attract and retain qualified employees and key personnel;
- our ability to contract with third-party suppliers and manufacturers and their ability to perform adequately;
- the scalability and commercial viability of our manufacturing methods and processes;
- the success of competing therapies that are or may become available;
- whether we are classified as a PFIC for current and future periods;
- our estimates regarding future revenue, expenses and needs for additional financing;
- our expected use of proceeds from this offering; and
- the potential purchases by certain of our principal shareholders of ADSs in this offering.

You should refer to the section titled “Risk Factors” for a discussion of important factors that may cause our actual results to differ materially from those expressed or implied by our forward-looking statements. As a result of these factors, we cannot assure you that the forward-looking statements in

this prospectus will prove to be accurate. Furthermore, if our forward-looking statements prove to be inaccurate, the inaccuracy may be material. In light of the significant uncertainties in these forward-looking statements, you should not regard these statements as a representation or warranty by us or any other person that we will achieve our objectives and plans in any specified time frame, or at all. We undertake no obligation to publicly update any forward-looking statements, whether as a result of new information, future events or otherwise, except as required by law.

You should read this prospectus and the documents that we reference in this prospectus and have filed as exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part completely and with the understanding that our actual future results may be materially different from what we expect.

This prospectus also contains estimates, projections and other information concerning our industry, our business, and the markets for our product candidates. Information that is based on estimates, forecasts, projections, market research or similar methodologies is inherently subject to uncertainties, and actual events or circumstances may differ materially from events and circumstances that are assumed in this information. Unless otherwise expressly stated, we obtained this industry, business, market and other data from our own internal estimates and research as well as from reports, research surveys, studies and similar data prepared by market research firms and other third parties, industry, medical and general publications, government data and similar sources.

In addition, assumptions and estimates of our and our industry's future performance are necessarily subject to a high degree of uncertainty and risk due to a variety of factors, including those described in the section titled "Risk Factors." These and other factors could cause our future performance to differ materially from our assumptions and estimates.

USE OF PROCEEDS

We estimate that the net proceeds from the sale of ADSs in this offering will be approximately \$110.7 million, or \$128.1 million if the underwriters exercise their option to purchase additional ADSs in full, based on an assumed initial public offering price of \$16.00 per ADS, which is the midpoint of the price range set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, and after deducting the estimated underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us.

A \$1.00 increase (decrease) in the assumed initial public offering price of \$16.00 per ADS, which is the midpoint of the range listed on the cover page of this prospectus, would increase (decrease) the net proceeds to us from this offering by \$7.3 million, assuming that the number of ADSs offered by us, as set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, remains the same. An increase (decrease) of 1,000,000 in the number of ADSs we are offering would increase (decrease) the net proceeds to us from this offering by \$14.9 million, assuming the assumed initial public offering price remains the same, after deducting estimated underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us.

As of March 31, 2018, we had cash of \$120.7 million. We currently expect to use the net proceeds from this offering, together with our existing cash, to advance our clinical pipeline, including, specifically:

- approximately \$85.0 million to complete the proof-of-concept phases of our Phase 1/2 clinical trials of AUTO2 in multiple myeloma, AUTO3 in pediatric ALL and DLBCL, and AUTO4 in peripheral T-cell lymphoma, support the clinical trial conducted by UCL for AUTO1 in adult ALL through proof-of-concept, and advance three of these product candidates through later phases of clinical development and, potentially, registration;
- approximately \$14.0 million to conduct non-clinical development to IND filing of AUTO2 NG, AUTO3 NG and AUTO5, our earlier stage hematological programs, and AUTO6 NG and AUTO7, our product candidates targeting solid tumor indications;
- approximately \$17.0 million to fund our research and development activities to further expand our T cell programming technologies and develop future product candidates and follow-on versions of our more advanced product candidates;
- approximately \$50.0 million to fund our manufacturing activities to support our ongoing and future clinical trials and potential commercial launch; and
- the balance for other general corporate purposes, including general and administrative expenses, development of our commercial infrastructure and working capital.

Based on our current operational plans and assumptions, we expect that the net proceeds from this offering, combined with our current cash, will be sufficient to fund operations through December 2020, but that we will need to raise additional capital in order to develop and commercialize our product candidates, including any potential future trials that may be required by regulatory authorities. Our expected use of net proceeds from this offering represents our current intentions based upon our present plans and business condition. As of the date of this prospectus, we cannot predict with certainty all of the particular uses for the net proceeds to be received upon the completion of this offering or the actual amounts that we will spend on the uses set forth above. We believe opportunities may exist from time to time to expand our current business through the acquisition or in-license of complementary product candidates or programming technologies. While we have no current agreements for any specific acquisitions or in-licenses at this time, we may use a portion of the net proceeds for these purposes.

The amounts and timing of our actual expenditures will depend on numerous factors, including the progress of our clinical trials, the potential for achieving accelerated regulatory approval and the amount of cash used in our operations. We therefore cannot estimate with certainty the amount of net

proceeds to be used for the purposes described above. We may find it necessary or advisable to use the net proceeds for other purposes, and we will have broad discretion in the application of the net proceeds.

Pending these uses, we plan to invest these net proceeds in short-term, interest bearing obligations, investment-grade instruments, certificates of deposit or direct or guaranteed obligations of the United States. The goal with respect to the investment of these net proceeds is capital preservation and liquidity so that such funds are readily available to fund our operations.

DIVIDEND POLICY

We have never declared or paid a dividend, and we do not anticipate declaring or paying dividends in the foreseeable future. We intend to retain all available funds and any future earnings to fund the development and expansion of our business. See the section titled “Risk Factors—Risks Related to this Offering, Our Securities and Our Status as a Public Company—Because we do not anticipate paying any cash dividends on our ADSs in the foreseeable future, capital appreciation, if any, will be your sole source of gains and you may never receive a return on your investment.”

Under current English law, among other things, a company's accumulated realized profits must exceed its accumulated realized losses (on a non-consolidated basis) before dividends can be paid. Accordingly, we may only pay dividends if we have sufficient distributable reserves (on a non-consolidated basis), which are our accumulated realized profits that have not been previously distributed or capitalized less our accumulated realized losses, so far as such losses have not been previously written off in a reduction or reorganization of capital.

CORPORATE REORGANIZATION

Autolus Therapeutics plc is a public limited company, originally incorporated pursuant to the laws of England and Wales in February 2018 as a private company with limited liability called Autolus Therapeutics Limited. We were incorporated with nominal assets and liabilities for the purpose of becoming the ultimate holding company for Autolus Limited and for the purpose of consummating the corporate reorganization described herein. Autolus Limited was formed as a separate company in July 2014. On June 15, 2018, another holding company, Autolus Holdings (UK) Limited, incorporated for that purpose in May 2018, became a wholly owned subsidiary of Autolus Therapeutics Limited and the direct holding company of Autolus Limited. Autolus Therapeutics Limited and Autolus Holdings (UK) Limited are holding companies which have not conducted any operations prior to this offering other than activities incidental to their formation, the corporate reorganization and this offering. On June 18, 2018, Autolus Therapeutics Limited re-registered as a public limited company and was renamed Autolus Therapeutics plc.

Therefore, investors in this offering will only acquire, and this prospectus only describes, the offering of ADSs of Autolus Therapeutics plc.

The corporate reorganization will take place in several steps, all of which will be completed prior to the completion of this offering and several of which have already been completed. We refer to the following steps, which are discussed in more detail below, as our “corporate reorganization”:

- **Exchange of Autolus Limited Shares for Autolus Therapeutics Limited Shares:** All shareholders of Autolus Limited have exchanged each of the shares held by them for the same number and class of newly issued shares of Autolus Therapeutics Limited and, as a result, Autolus Limited became a wholly owned subsidiary of Autolus Therapeutics Limited. Following the share exchange, holders of options over shares in Autolus Limited will agree to swap their existing options for new options granted by Autolus Therapeutics Limited over shares in Autolus Therapeutics Limited.
- **Transfer of Autolus Limited Shares to Autolus Holdings (UK) Limited:** Immediately after this share exchange, Autolus Therapeutics Limited transferred the entire issued share capital of Autolus Limited to Autolus Holdings (UK) Limited and, as a result, Autolus Limited became a wholly owned subsidiary of Autolus Holdings (UK) Limited, which, in turn, became a wholly owned subsidiary of Autolus Therapeutics Limited.
- **Reduction of Capital of Autolus Therapeutics Limited, Autolus Holdings (UK) Limited and Autolus Limited:** Autolus Therapeutics Limited, Autolus Holdings (UK) Limited and Autolus Limited reduced their issued share capital pursuant to Part 17 of the Companies Act.
- **Re-registration of Autolus Therapeutics Limited as a Public Limited Company and Change of Name to Autolus Therapeutics plc.**
- **Reorganization of Separate Classes of Shares of Autolus Therapeutics plc into a Single Class of Ordinary Shares:** The different classes of issued share capital of Autolus Therapeutics plc will be reorganized into a single class of ordinary shares and various classes of deferred shares.
- Autolus Therapeutics plc will redenominate its existing ordinary shares from British Pounds to U.S. dollars.

Exchange of Autolus Limited Shares for Autolus Therapeutics Limited Shares

Prior to our corporate reorganization, the share capital of Autolus Limited was divided into the following classes: series A preferred shares, B ordinary shares, C ordinary shares and deferred shares. On June 15, 2018, the shareholders of Autolus Limited exchanged each of these classes of shares of Autolus Limited for the same number and class of shares in Autolus Therapeutics Limited. As a result, Autolus Therapeutics Limited became the sole shareholder of Autolus Limited. Following the share exchange, holders of options over shares in Autolus Limited will exchange their options for options over shares in Autolus Therapeutics Limited.

Transfer of Autolus Limited Shares to Autolus Holdings (UK) Limited

Following Autolus Limited becoming a wholly owned subsidiary of Autolus Therapeutics Limited, Autolus Therapeutics Limited transferred the entire issued share capital of Autolus Limited to Autolus Holdings (UK) Limited. As a result, Autolus Limited became a wholly owned subsidiary of Autolus Holdings (UK) Limited, which, in turn, became a wholly owned subsidiary of Autolus Therapeutics Limited.

Reduction of Capital of Autolus Therapeutics Limited and Autolus Holdings (UK) Limited

Pursuant to Part 17 of the Companies Act:

- Autolus Therapeutics Limited reduced its issued share capital by way of the reduction of the nominal value of each of its series A preferred shares and B ordinary shares from £2.50 to £0.001; and
- Autolus Holdings (UK) Limited reduced its issued share capital by way of the cancellation of all amounts standing to the credit of its share premium account.

The amount of the reduction for each of Autolus Therapeutics Limited and Autolus Holdings (UK) Limited has been credited to their respective reserves available for distribution.

Re-registration of Autolus Therapeutics Limited as a Public Limited Company and Change of Name to Autolus Therapeutics plc

On June 18, 2018, Autolus Therapeutics Limited re-registered as a public limited company and changed its name to Autolus Therapeutics plc. Such re-registration and change of name required certain special resolutions to be passed by the shareholders of Autolus Therapeutics Limited to approve the re-registration as a public limited company, the name change to Autolus Therapeutics plc and the adoption, conditional upon the completion of this offering, of new articles of association for Autolus Therapeutics plc appropriate for a public company.

Reduction of Capital and Reorganisation of Share Capital of Autolus Limited

Following the re-registration of Autolus Therapeutics Limited as a public limited company, Autolus Limited will reduce its issued share capital pursuant to Part 17 of the Companies Act by way of the cancellation of all issued series A preferred shares, C ordinary shares, deferred shares and all but 100 B ordinary shares. The amount of the reduction will be credited to the company's reserves that are available for distribution. Immediately following the capital reduction, Autolus Limited will re-designate its entire issued share capital, comprising 100 B ordinary shares, as ordinary shares.

Reorganisation of Separate Classes of Shares of Autolus Therapeutics plc into a Single Class of Ordinary Shares and Three Classes of Deferred Shares

Conditional upon and effective immediately prior to the completion of this offering, each class of shares in the issued share capital of Autolus Therapeutics plc will be organised into a single class of ordinary shares and three classes of deferred shares as follows:

- each series A preferred share will be sub-divided and re-designated into one ordinary share and one new B deferred share;
- each B ordinary share will be sub-divided and re-designated into one ordinary share and one new B deferred share;
- each C ordinary share will be re-designated as an ordinary share and one new B deferred share; and
- following completion of the above steps, each ordinary share will be sub-divided into 200 ordinary shares and every 637 ordinary shares resulting from such sub-division will subsequently be consolidated into 1 ordinary share.

Redenomination of Ordinary Shares in Autolus Therapeutics plc from GBP to USD

Following the share capital reorganisation of Autolus Therapeutics plc described above, each ordinary share with a nominal value of £0.000032 will be redenominated as an ordinary share with a nominal value of \$0.000042.

Certain further resolutions will be required to be passed by the shareholders of Autolus Therapeutics plc prior to the completion of this offering, details of which are set out in the section titled "Description of Share Capital and Articles of Association."

Therefore, upon completion of the corporate reorganization and prior to the completion of this offering, the then-current shareholders of Autolus Limited will hold an aggregate of 29,962,684 ordinary shares of Autolus Therapeutics plc, based on the number of shares outstanding as of September 30, 2017.

Post-Completion of Corporate Reorganization and this Offering

After the completion of our corporate reorganization and this offering, Autolus Limited will transfer, by way of a dividend in specie, the entire issued share capital of its wholly owned subsidiary, Autolus Inc., our U.S. subsidiary which was incorporated under the laws of the State of Delaware in October 2017, to its immediate parent, Autolus Holdings (UK) Limited. Following the dividend in specie, each of Autolus Limited and Autolus Inc. will be repositioned as direct wholly owned subsidiaries of Autolus Holdings (UK) Limited.

CAPITALIZATION

The following table sets forth our cash and capitalization as of September 30, 2017 on:

- an actual basis;
- a pro forma basis to give effect to our proposed corporate reorganization; and
- a pro forma as adjusted basis to give effect to the sale of 7,812,500 ADSs in this offering.

The pro forma as adjusted calculations assume an initial public offering price of \$16.00 per ADS, which is the midpoint of the price range set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, after deducting the estimated underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us.

You should read this information together with our unaudited financial statements, audited financial statements and related notes appearing elsewhere in this prospectus and the information set forth under the sections titled "Selected Financial Data," "Use of Proceeds" and "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations."

	As of September 30, 2017		
	Actual	Pro Forma	Pro Forma As Adjusted ⁽¹⁾
	(in thousands, except share and per share data)		
Cash	\$137,070	\$ 137,070	\$ 247,720
Shareholders' equity:			
Preferred shares, £0.00001 par value; 78,143,548 shares authorized, 78,002,897 shares issued and outstanding, actual; no shares authorized, issued and outstanding, pro forma; no shares authorized, issued and outstanding, pro forma as adjusted	1	—	—
Ordinary shares, £0.00001 par value; 119,203,434 shares authorized, 17,428,434 shares issued and outstanding, actual; \$0.000042 nominal value, 119,203,434 shares authorized, 29,962,684 shares issued and outstanding, pro forma; 200,000,000 shares authorized, 37,775,184 shares issued and outstanding, pro forma as adjusted	—	1	338
Deferred shares, £0.00099 par value; no shares issued or outstanding, actual; 88,893,548 shares issued and outstanding, pro forma and pro forma as adjusted	—	118	118
Additional paid-in capital	194,351	194,233	304,546
Accumulated other comprehensive loss	(3,849)	(3,849)	(3,849)
Accumulated deficit	(47,902)	(47,902)	(47,902)
Total shareholders' equity	142,601	142,601	253,251
Total capitalization	\$142,601	\$ 142,601	\$ 253,251

- (1) A \$1.00 increase (decrease) in the assumed initial public offering price of \$16.00 per ADS, which is the midpoint of the price range set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, would increase (decrease) pro forma as adjusted amount of each of cash, total shareholders' equity and total capitalization by \$7.3 million, assuming that the number of ADSs offered by us, as set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, remains the same and after deducting estimated underwriting discounts and commissions. An increase (decrease) of 1,000,000 ADSs in the number of ADSs

offered by us, as set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, would increase (decrease) the pro forma as adjusted amount of each of cash, total shareholders' equity and total capitalization by \$14.9 million, assuming no change in the assumed initial public offering price per ADS and after deducting estimated underwriting discounts and commissions.

The number of ordinary shares outstanding on a pro forma as adjusted basis in the table above does not include:

- 570,927 ordinary shares issuable upon the exercise of share options outstanding under our 2017 Plan as of September 30, 2017, at a weighted average exercise price of \$0.50 per share and an additional 889,612 ordinary shares issuable upon the exercise of share options outstanding under the 2017 Plan that were granted subsequent to September 30, 2017, at a weighted average exercise price of \$8.71 per share (after giving effect to the conversion of all issued shares into ordinary shares on a 3.185-for-1 basis); and
- 3,281,622 ordinary shares authorized for future issuance under our 2018 Plan, as well as any automatic increases in the number of ordinary shares reserved for future issuance under the 2018 Plan.

DILUTION

If you invest in our ADSs in this offering, your ownership interest will be immediately diluted to the extent of the difference between the initial public offering price per ADS in this offering and the pro forma as adjusted net tangible book value per ADS after this offering. Dilution results from the fact that the initial public offering price per ADS is substantially in excess of the net tangible book value per ADS. As of September 30, 2017, we had a historical net tangible book value of \$142.6 million, or \$8.18 per ordinary share (equivalent to \$8.18 per ADS). Our net tangible book value per share represents total tangible assets less total liabilities, divided by the number of ordinary shares outstanding on September 30, 2017.

After giving effect to our corporate reorganization, in which all of our outstanding preferred and ordinary shares will be converted into a single class of ordinary shares on a 3.185-for-1 basis, our pro forma net tangible book value at September 30, 2017 would have been \$4.76 per ordinary share (equivalent to \$4.76 per ADS). After giving further effect to the sale of 7,812,500 ADSs in this offering at an assumed initial public offering price of \$16.00 per ADS, which is the midpoint of the price range set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, and after deducting the estimated underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us, our pro forma as adjusted net tangible book value at September 30, 2017 would have been \$6.70 per ordinary share (equivalent to \$6.70 per ADS). This represents an immediate increase in pro forma as adjusted net tangible book value of \$1.94 per ADS to existing investors and immediate dilution of \$9.30 per ADS to new investors attributable to this offering. The following table illustrates this dilution to new investors purchasing ADSs in this offering on a per ADS basis:

Assumed initial public offering price per ADS	\$16.00
Historical net tangible book value per ADS as of September 30, 2017	\$8.18
Decrease in net tangible book value per ADS attributable to our corporate reorganization	3.42
Pro forma net tangible book value per ADS as of September 30, 2017	4.76
Increase in net tangible book value per ADS attributable to this offering	1.94
Pro forma as adjusted net tangible book value per ADS as of September 30, 2017	6.70
Dilution per ADS to new investors purchasing ADSs in this offering	<u>\$ 9.30</u>

The dilution information discussed above is illustrative only and will change based on the actual initial public offering price and other terms of this offering determined at pricing. A \$1.00 increase (decrease) in the assumed initial public offering price of \$16.00 per ADS, which is the midpoint of the price range set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, would increase (decrease) our pro forma as adjusted net tangible book value as of September 30, 2017 after this offering by \$0.20 per ADS, and would increase (decrease) dilution to new investors by \$0.81 per ADS, assuming that the number of ADSs offered by us, as set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, remains the same. An increase of 1,000,000 in the number of ADSs we are offering would increase our pro forma as adjusted net tangible book value as of September 30, 2017 after this offering by \$0.22 per ADS, and would decrease dilution to new investors by \$0.21 per ADS, assuming the assumed initial public offering price per ADS remains the same. A decrease of 1,000,000 in the number of ADSs we are offering would decrease our pro forma as adjusted net tangible book value as of September 30, 2017 after this offering by \$0.22 per ADS, and would increase dilution to new investors by \$0.22 per ADS, assuming the assumed initial public offering price per ADS remains the same.

If the underwriters exercise their option to purchase additional ADSs in full, the pro forma as adjusted net tangible book value per ADS after the offering would be \$6.95, the increase in net tangible book value per ADS to existing shareholders would be \$2.19 and the immediate dilution in net tangible book value per ADS to new investors in this offering would be \$9.05.

The following table summarizes, on the pro forma as adjusted basis described above as of September 30, 2017, the differences between the existing shareholders and the new investors in this offering with respect to the number of ordinary shares, including ordinary shares represented by ADSs purchased from us, the total consideration paid to us and the average price per share, including ordinary shares represented by ADSs, based on an assumed initial public offering price of \$16.00 per ADS, which is the midpoint of the price range set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, before deducting estimated underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us.

	SHARES PURCHASED ⁽¹⁾		TOTAL CONSIDERATION		AVERAGE PRICE PER SHARE
	NUMBER	PERCENT	AMOUNT	PERCENT	
Existing shareholders	29,962,684	79%	\$187,039,071	59.9	\$ 6.24
New investors	7,812,500	21%	125,000,000	40.1	\$ 16.00
Total	37,775,184	100%	\$312,039,071	100%	

(1) Including ordinary shares represented by ADSs.

A \$1.00 increase (decrease) in the assumed initial public offering price of \$16.00 per ADS, which is the midpoint of the price range on the cover page of this prospectus, would increase or decrease the total consideration paid by new investors by approximately \$7.8 million and, in the case of an increase, would increase the percentage of total consideration paid by new investors by 1.5 percentage points and, in the case of a decrease, would decrease the percentage of total consideration paid by new investors by 1.5 percentage points, assuming that the number of ADSs offered by us, as set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, remains the same. An increase (decrease) of 1,000,000 in the number of ADSs offered by us, as set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, would increase or decrease the total consideration paid by new investors by \$16.0 million and, in the case of an increase, would increase the percentage of total consideration paid by new investors by 2.9 percentage points and, in the case of a decrease, would decrease the percentage of total consideration paid by new investors by 3.2 percentage points, assuming no change in the assumed initial public offering price per ADS.

If the underwriters exercise their option to purchase additional ADSs in full, the percentage of ordinary shares held by existing shareholders will decrease to approximately 77% of the total number of ordinary shares outstanding after the offering, and the number of shares held by new investors will be increased to 8,984,375, or approximately 23% of the total number of ordinary shares outstanding after this offering.

The table and discussion above exclude:

- 570,927 ordinary shares issuable upon the exercise of share options outstanding under our 2017 Plan as of September 30, 2017, at a weighted average exercise price of \$0.50 per share and an additional 889,612 ordinary shares issuable upon the exercise of share options outstanding under the 2017 Plan that were granted subsequent to September 30, 2017, at a weighted average exercise price of \$8.71 per share (after giving effect to the conversion of all issued shares into ordinary shares on a 3.185-for-1 basis); and
- 3,281,622 ordinary shares authorized for future issuance under our 2018 Plan, as well as any automatic increases in the number of ordinary shares reserved for future issuance under the 2018 Plan.

To the extent that outstanding options are exercised, new options are issued under our 2018 Plan, or we issue additional ordinary shares or ADSs in the future, there will be further dilution to investors participating in this offering.

SELECTED FINANCIAL DATA

The following tables present our selected financial data as of the dates and for the periods indicated. We derived the selected statement of operations and comprehensive loss data for the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2017 and the selected balance sheet data as of September 30, 2016 and 2017 from our audited financial statements included elsewhere in this prospectus. We prepare our financial statements in accordance with U.S. GAAP.

Our historical results are not necessarily indicative of our future results. You should read this data together with our financial statements and related notes appearing elsewhere in this prospectus and the information under the sections titled "Capitalization" and "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations."

Our functional currency is the pound sterling. However, for financial reporting purposes, our financial statements, which are prepared using the functional currency, have been translated into U.S. dollars. Our assets and liabilities are translated at the exchange rates at the balance sheet date, our revenue and expenses are translated at average exchange rates and shareholders' equity is translated based on historical exchange rates. Translation adjustments are not included in determining net income (loss) but are included in foreign exchange translation adjustment to other comprehensive loss, a component of shareholders' equity.

Foreign currency transactions in currencies different from the functional currency are translated into the functional currency using the exchange rates prevailing at the dates of the transactions. Foreign exchange differences resulting from the settlement of such transactions and from the translation at period-end exchange rates of monetary assets and liabilities denominated in foreign currencies are recorded in general and administrative expense in the statement of operations and comprehensive loss.

As of September 29, 2017, the last business day of the year ended September 30, 2017, the representative exchange rate was £1.00 = \$1.3392.

	Year Ended September 30,	
	2016	2017
	(in thousands, except share and per share data)	
Statement of Operations and Comprehensive Loss Data:		
Grant income	\$ 1,212	\$ 1,693
Operating expenses:		
Research and development	(10,436)	(16,012)
General and administrative	(5,152)	(9,099)
Total operating expenses, net	(14,376)	(23,418)
Other income, net	49	38
Net loss before income taxes	(14,327)	(23,380)
Income tax benefit	1,777	3,653
Net loss	\$ (12,550)	\$ (19,727)
Other comprehensive income (loss):		
Foreign currency translation adjustment	(2,942)	802
Total comprehensive loss	\$ (15,492)	\$ (18,925)
Basic and diluted net loss per ordinary share	\$ (1.16)	\$ (1.61)
Weighted-average basic and diluted ordinary shares	10,794,798	12,226,019
Pro forma basic and diluted net loss per share to ordinary shareholders (unaudited)		\$ (0.45)
Pro forma weighted-average basic and diluted ordinary shares (unaudited)(1)		43,889,562
Adjusted pro forma basic and diluted net loss per share to ordinary shareholders (unaudited)(2)	\$ (1.26)	\$ (1.43)
Adjusted pro forma weighted-average basic and diluted ordinary shares (unaudited)(2)	9,933,399	13,783,222

	As of September 30,	
	2016	2017
	(in thousands)	
Balance Sheet Data:		
Cash	\$28,059	\$137,070
Working capital(3)	28,191	137,449
Total assets	34,180	148,662
Preferred shares	—	1
Ordinary shares	—	—
Additional paid-in capital	63,513	194,351
Total shareholders' equity	30,687	142,601

- (1) As described in Note 2 to our audited financial statements included in this prospectus, the unaudited pro forma basic and diluted net loss per share to ordinary shareholders and unaudited weighted-average number of basic and diluted ordinary shares for the year ended September 30, 2017 give effect to the automatic conversion of all outstanding series A preferred shares of Autolus Limited into B ordinary shares, as if the offering contemplated by this prospectus had occurred as of October 1, 2016; further, the shares to be sold in the proposed offering are excluded from the unaudited pro forma basic and diluted loss per share to ordinary shareholders and unaudited weighted-average number of basic and diluted ordinary shares for the year ended September 30, 2017. See page F-16 of this prospectus for further details on the calculation of unaudited pro forma basic and diluted net loss per share to ordinary shareholders. The unaudited

pro forma basic and diluted net loss per share to ordinary shareholders and unaudited weighted-average number of basic and diluted ordinary shares for the year ended September 30, 2017 do not give effect to the corporate reorganization completed in June 2018, the effect of which is described in footnote (2) below.

- (2) The unaudited adjusted pro forma basic and diluted net loss per share to the ordinary shareholders and unaudited weighted-average number of basic and diluted ordinary shares for the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2017 have been prepared to give effect to our corporate reorganization, including (i) the exchange by the shareholders of Autolus Limited of the shares held by them in Autolus Limited for the same number and class of newly issued shares of Autolus Therapeutics Limited, (ii) the re-registration of Autolus Therapeutics Limited as Autolus Therapeutics plc and (iii) the conversion of all resulting series A preferred shares, B ordinary shares and C ordinary shares of Autolus Therapeutics plc into a single class of ordinary shares of Autolus Therapeutics plc on a 3.185-for-1 basis, but excluding the shares to be sold in the proposed offering. See “Prospectus Summary—Corporate Reorganization” on page 11 and “Corporate Reorganization” on page 86 of this prospectus for more details on the steps involved.

- (3) We define working capital as current assets less current liabilities.

MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

You should read the following discussion and analysis of our financial condition and results of operations together with section titled "Selected Financial Data" and our financial statements and related notes appearing elsewhere in this prospectus. Some of the information contained in this discussion and analysis or set forth elsewhere in this prospectus, including information with respect to our plans and strategy for our business and related financing, includes forward-looking statements that involve risks and uncertainties. As a result of many factors, including those set forth in the "Risk Factors" section of this prospectus, our actual results could differ materially from the results described in or implied by these forward-looking statements. Please also see the section titled "Special Note Regarding Forward-Looking Statements."

In February 2018, Autolus Therapeutics Limited was incorporated under the laws of England and Wales to become the holding company for Autolus Limited pursuant to our corporate reorganization. See "Corporate Reorganization." Prior to this offering, Autolus Therapeutics Limited has only engaged in activities incidental to its formation, the corporate reorganization and this offering. Accordingly, a discussion and analysis of the results of operations and financial condition of Autolus Therapeutics Limited for the period of its operations prior to the corporate reorganization would not be meaningful and are not presented. Following the corporate reorganization, the historical consolidated financial statements of Autolus Therapeutics plc will be retrospectively adjusted to include the historical financial results of Autolus Limited for all periods presented.

Overview

We are a biopharmaceutical company developing next-generation programmed T cell therapies for the treatment of cancer. Using our broad suite of proprietary and modular T cell programming technologies, we are engineering precisely targeted, controlled and highly active T cell therapies that are designed to better recognize cancer cells, break down their defense mechanisms and attack and kill these cells. We believe our programmed T cell therapies have the potential to be best-in-class and offer cancer patients substantial benefits over the existing standard of care, including the potential for cure in some patients.

Since our inception in July 2014, we have devoted substantially all of our resources to conducting preclinical studies and clinical trials, organizing and staffing our company, business planning, raising capital and establishing our intellectual property portfolio. We do not have any products approved for sale and have not generated any revenue from product sales. We have funded our operations to date primarily with sales of our equity securities. Through September 30, 2017, we have received net proceeds of \$176.4 million from sales of our equity securities. We do not expect to generate significant revenue unless and until we obtain marketing approval for and commercialize one of our product candidates.

Since our inception, we have incurred operating losses. Our net loss was \$12.6 million and \$19.7 million for the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2017, respectively. As of September 30, 2017, we had an accumulated deficit of \$47.9 million.

We expect to continue to incur significant expenses for the foreseeable future as we advance our product candidates through preclinical and clinical development, seek regulatory approval and pursue commercialization of any approved product candidates. In addition, if we obtain marketing approval for any of our product candidates, we expect to incur significant commercialization expenses related to product manufacturing, marketing, sales and distribution. In addition, we may incur expenses in

connection with the in-license or acquisition of additional product candidates. Furthermore, following the closing of this offering, we expect to incur additional costs associated with operating as a public company, including significant legal, accounting, investor relations and other expenses that we did not incur as a private company.

As a result, we will need substantial additional funding to support our continuing operations and pursue our growth strategy. Until such time as we can generate significant revenue from product sales, if ever, we expect to finance our operations through the sale of equity, debt financings or other capital sources, including potential collaborations with other companies or other strategic transactions. We may be unable to raise additional funds or enter into such other agreements or arrangements when needed on favorable terms, or at all. If we fail to raise capital or enter into such agreements as, and when, needed, we may have to significantly delay, scale back or discontinue the development and commercialization of one or more of our drug candidates or delay our pursuit of potential in-licenses or acquisitions.

As of September 30, 2017, we had cash on hand of \$137.1 million. We believe that the anticipated net proceeds from this offering, together with our existing cash, will enable us to fund our operating expenses and capital expenditure requirements through December 2020. We have based this estimate on assumptions that may prove to be wrong, and we could deplete our available capital resources sooner than we expect. See “—Liquidity and Capital Resources.”

Recent Developments

Cash as of March 31, 2018

As of March 31, 2018, our cash and cash equivalents were \$120.7 million.

Components of Our Results of Operations

Grant Income

Grant income consists of proceeds from government research grants used to perform specific research and development activities. We recognize grant income over the period in which we recognize the related costs covered under the terms and conditions of the grant. We have received grants from the U.K. government, which are repayable under certain circumstances, including breach or noncompliance with the terms of the grant. For grants with refund provisions, we review the grant to determine the likelihood of repayment. If the likelihood of repayment of the grant is determined to be remote, then the grant is recognized as grant income.

Operating Expenses

Research and Development Expenses

Research and development expenses consist of costs incurred in connection with the research and development of our product candidates, which are partially offset by research and development expenditure tax credits provided by Her Majesty's Revenue & Customs, or HMRC. We expense research and development costs as incurred. These expenses include:

- expenses incurred under agreements with contract research organizations, or CROs, as well as investigative sites and consultants that conduct our clinical trials, preclinical studies and other scientific development services;
- manufacturing scale-up expenses and the cost of acquiring and manufacturing preclinical and clinical trial materials;

- employee-related expenses, including salaries, related benefits, travel and share-based compensation expense for employees engaged in research and development functions;
- expenses incurred for outsourced professional scientific development services;
- costs for laboratory materials and supplies used to support our research activities;
- allocated facilities costs, depreciation and other expenses, which include rent and utilities; and
- upfront, milestone and management fees for maintaining licenses under our third-party licensing agreements.

We recognize external development costs based on an evaluation of the progress to completion of specific tasks using information provided to us by our service providers.

Our direct research and development expenses are tracked on a program-by-program basis for our product candidates and consist primarily of external costs, such as fees paid to outside consultants and CROs in connection with our preclinical development, manufacturing and clinical development activities. Our direct research and development expenses by program also include fees incurred under license agreements. We do not allocate employee costs or facility expenses, including depreciation or other indirect costs, to specific programs because these costs are deployed across multiple programs and, as such, are not separately classified. We use internal resources primarily to oversee research and development as well as for managing our preclinical development, process development, manufacturing and clinical development activities.

The table below summarizes our research and development expenses incurred by program:

	Year Ended September 30,		
	2016	2017	Change
	(in thousands)		
Direct research and development expenses by program:			
AUTO2	\$ 1,379	\$ 1,782	\$ 403
AUTO3	446	1,733	1,287
AUTO4	102	1,153	1,051
AUTO5	—	317	317
Total direct research and development expense	1,927	4,985	3,058
Research and discovery and unallocated costs:			
Personnel related (including share-based compensation)	4,638	6,984	2,346
License fees	1,481	38	(1,443)
Indirect research and development expense	2,390	4,005	1,615
Total research and development expenses	<u>\$10,436</u>	<u>\$16,012</u>	<u>\$ 5,576</u>

Research and development activities are central to our business model. Product candidates in later stages of clinical development generally have higher development costs than those in earlier stages of clinical development, primarily due to the increased size and duration of later-stage clinical trials. As a result, we expect that our research and development expenses will increase substantially over the next few years as we increase personnel costs, initiate and conduct additional clinical trials and prepare regulatory filings related to our product candidates. We also expect to incur additional expenses related to milestone, royalty payments and maintenance fees payable to third parties with whom we have entered into license agreements to acquire the rights related to our product candidates.

The successful development and commercialization of our product candidates is highly uncertain. At this time, we cannot reasonably estimate or know the nature, timing and costs of the efforts that will

be necessary to complete the clinical development of any of our product candidates or when, if ever, material net cash inflows may commence from sales of any of our product candidates. This uncertainty is due to the numerous risks and uncertainties associated with development and commercialization activities, including the uncertainty of:

- the scope, progress, outcome and costs of our clinical trials and other research and development activities, including establishing an appropriate safety profile with IND-directed studies;
- successful patient enrollment in, and the initiation and completion of, clinical trials;
- the timing, receipt and terms of any marketing approvals from applicable regulatory authorities;
- establishing commercial manufacturing capabilities or making arrangements with third-party manufacturers;
- development and timely delivery of commercial-grade drug formulations that can be used in our clinical trials and for commercial manufacturing;
- obtaining, maintaining, defending and enforcing patent claims and other intellectual property rights;
- significant and changing government regulation;
- launching commercial sales of our product candidates, if and when approved, whether alone or in collaboration with others;
- maintaining a continued acceptable safety profile of the product candidates following approval; and
- significant competition and rapidly changing technologies within the biopharmaceutical industry.

We may never succeed in achieving regulatory approval for any of our product candidates. We may obtain unexpected results from our clinical trials. We may elect to discontinue, delay or modify clinical trials of some product candidates or focus on others. Any changes in the outcome of any of these variables with respect to the development of our product candidates in clinical development could mean a significant change in the costs and timing associated with the development of these product candidates. For example, if the European Medicines Agency, or EMA, or the U.S. Food and Drug Administration, or FDA, or another regulatory authority were to delay our planned start of clinical trials or require us to conduct clinical trials or other testing beyond those that we currently expect or if we experience significant delays in enrollment in any of our planned clinical trials, we could be required to expend significant additional financial resources and time on the completion of clinical development of that product candidate. Commercialization of our product candidates will take several years and millions of dollars in development costs.

General and Administrative Expenses

General and administrative expenses consist primarily of salaries, related benefits, travel and share-based compensation expense for personnel in executive, finance, legal and administrative functions. General and administrative expenses also include allocated facility-related costs, patent filing and prosecution costs and professional fees for marketing, insurance, legal, consulting, accounting and audit services.

We anticipate that our general and administrative expenses will increase in the future as we increase our headcount to support the planned development of our product candidates. We also anticipate that we will incur increased accounting, audit, legal, regulatory and compliance costs and director and officer insurance premiums, as well as higher investor and public relations expenses, associated with being a public company. Additionally, if we believe a regulatory approval of one of our

product candidates appears likely, we would anticipate an increase in payroll and expense as a result of our preparation for commercial operations, especially as it relates to the sales and marketing of our product candidate.

Other Income (Expense)

Other income consists primarily of interest earned on our cash balances held at a commercial bank. Other expense consists primarily of foreign currency transaction losses.

Income Tax Benefit

We are subject to corporate taxation in the United Kingdom. Due to the nature of our business, we have generated losses since inception. Our income tax credit recognized represents the sum of the research and development tax credits recoverable in the United Kingdom and income tax payable in the United States.

As a company that carries out extensive research and development activities, we benefit from the U.K. research and development tax credit regime under the scheme for small or medium-sized enterprises, or SMEs, and also claim a Research and Development Expenditure Credit, or RDEC, to the extent that our projects are grant funded. Under the SME regime, we are able to surrender some of our trading losses that arise from our qualifying research and development activities for a cash rebate of up to 33.35% of such qualifying research and development expenditure. The net tax benefit of the RDEC is expected to be 8.9% (increasing to 9.13% in financial year 2020). We meet the conditions of the SME regime, but also can make claims under the RDEC regime to the extent that our projects are grant funded. Qualifying expenditures largely comprise employment costs for research staff, consumables, outsourced CRO costs and utilities costs incurred as part of research projects. Certain subcontracted qualifying research and development expenditures are eligible for a cash rebate of up to 21.67%. A large portion of costs relating to our research and development, clinical trials and manufacturing activities are eligible for inclusion within these tax credit cash rebate claims.

We may not be able to continue to claim research and development tax credits under the SME regime in the future after we become a U.S. public company because we may no longer qualify as a small or medium-sized company. However, we should continue to be able to make claims under the RDEC regime.

Unsurrendered U.K. losses may be carried forward indefinitely to be offset against future taxable profits, subject to numerous utilization criteria and restrictions. The amount that can be offset each year is limited to £5.0 million plus an incremental 50% of U.K. taxable profits. After accounting for tax credits receivable, there were accumulated tax losses for carry forward in the United Kingdom of \$22.8 million as of September 30, 2017.

In the event we generate revenues in the future, we may benefit from the new U.K. "patent box" regime that allows profits attributable to revenues from patents or patented products to be taxed at effective rate of 10%.

Value Added Tax, or VAT, is broadly charged on all taxable supplies of goods and services by VAT-registered businesses. Under current rates, an amount of 20% of the value, as determined for VAT purposes, of the goods or services supplied is added to all sales invoices and is payable to HMRC. Similarly, VAT paid on purchase invoices is generally reclaimable from HMRC.

Results of Operations

Comparison of the Years Ended September 30, 2016 and 2017

The following table summarizes our results of operations for the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2017:

	Year Ended September 30,		Change
	2016	2017	
Grant income	\$ 1,212	\$ 1,693	\$ 481
Operating expenses:			
Research and development	(10,436)	(16,012)	(5,576)
General and administrative	(5,152)	(9,099)	(3,947)
Total operating expenses, net	(14,376)	(23,418)	(9,042)
Other income, net	49	38	(11)
Net loss before income tax	(14,327)	(23,380)	(9,053)
Income tax benefit	1,777	3,653	1,876
Net loss	<u>\$(12,550)</u>	<u>\$(19,727)</u>	<u>\$(7,177)</u>

Grant Income

Grant income increased from \$1.2 million for the year ended September 30, 2016 to \$1.7 million for the year ended September 30, 2017. The increase of \$0.5 million related to an increase in research grant income as we received an additional research grant from the U.K. government to fund additional projects in 2017.

Research and Development Expenses

Research and development expenses increased from \$10.4 million for the year ended September 30, 2016 to \$16.0 million for the year ended September 30, 2017. The increase of \$5.6 million consisted primarily of an increase in salaries, bonuses and benefits of \$2.3 million due to an overall increase in headcount as we advanced toward the commencement of clinical trials and manufacturing of our products candidates and additional share-based compensation expense, an increase of \$3.1 million primarily related to direct costs associated with the additional activities necessary to prepare and activate clinical trial sites and with our viral vector and cell manufacturing processes for patients enrolled in the clinical trials for each of our research programs AUTO2, AUTO3, AUTO4 and AUTO5. In addition, our indirect costs increased by \$1.6 million to support the functions of our research programs due to an increase in general laboratory use of \$0.5 million, an increase in overhead costs of \$0.3 million, an increase of \$0.3 million in rent fees related to our laboratory facilities, an increase of \$0.3 million in lab equipment depreciation and an increase of \$0.2 million related to other research and development costs. The overall increases were partially offset by higher license fees of \$1.4 million in the year ended September 30, 2016 resulting from the issuance of 1,000,000 B ordinary shares to UCL Business plc in March 2016; there were no such expenses recognized in 2017.

General and Administrative Expenses

General and administrative expenses increased from \$5.2 million for the year ended September 30, 2016 to \$9.1 million for the year ended September 30, 2017. The increase of \$3.9 million consisted primarily of an increase in salaries, bonuses and benefits of \$2.2 million due to an overall increase in headcount and the recognition of additional share-based compensation, an increase in legal and professional fees of \$0.8 million related to new equity incentive plans and activities related to preparations for becoming a public company, an increase of \$0.4 million related to other administrative expenses, an increase in corporate costs of \$0.3 million related to the overall growth of the business and an increase in depreciation of \$0.2 million.

Income Tax Benefits

Income tax benefits increased from \$1.8 million for the year ended September 30, 2016 to \$3.7 million for the year ended September 30, 2017 due to additional U.K. research and development tax credits receivable from HMRC. Research and development credits are obtained at a maximum rate of 33.35% of our qualifying research and development expenses, and the increase in the net credit was primarily attributable to an increase in our eligible research and development expenses.

Liquidity and Capital Resources

Since our inception, we have not generated any product revenue and have incurred operating losses and negative cash flows from our operations. We expect to incur significant expenses and operating losses for the foreseeable future as we advance our product candidates through preclinical and clinical development, seek regulatory approval and pursue commercialization of any approved product candidates. We expect that our research and development and general and administrative costs will increase in connection with our planned research activities. As a result, we will need additional capital to fund our operations until such time as we can generate significant revenue from product sales.

We do not currently have any approved products and have never generated any revenue from product sales or otherwise. We have funded our operations to date primarily with proceeds from government grants and sales of our preferred and ordinary shares. Through September 30, 2017, we have received aggregate net cash proceeds of \$176.4 million from sales of our equity securities. As of September 30, 2017, we had cash and cash equivalents of \$137.1 million.

We currently have no ongoing material financing commitments, such as lines of credit or guarantees, that are expected to affect our liquidity over the next five years, other than our lease obligations described below.

Cash Flows

The following table summarizes our cash flows for each of the periods presented:

	Year Ended September 30,	
	2016	2017
	(in thousands)	
Net cash used in operating activities	\$ (9,849)	\$ (16,360)
Net cash used in investing activities	(1,855)	(2,876)
Net cash provided by financing activities	32,222	127,686
Effect of exchange rate changes on cash	(2,662)	561
Net increase in cash	<u>\$17,856</u>	<u>\$109,011</u>

Net Cash Used in Operating Activities

During the year ended September 30, 2017, operating activities used \$16.4 million of cash, resulting from our net loss of \$19.7 million, net cash used in changes in our operating assets and liabilities of \$0.8 million, partially offset by non-cash charges of \$4.2 million. Net cash used in changes in our operating assets and liabilities for the year ended September 30, 2017 consisted primarily of a \$2.3 million increase in prepaid expenses and other assets, partially offset by a \$1.1 million increase in accrued expenses and a \$0.4 million increase in accounts payable.

During the year ended September 30, 2016, operating activities used \$9.8 million of cash, resulting from our net loss of \$12.6 million, net cash used in changes in our operating assets and

liabilities of \$1.2 million, partially offset by non-cash charges of \$3.9 million. Net cash used in changes in our operating assets and liabilities for the year ended September 30, 2016 consisted primarily of a \$2.0 million increase in prepaid expenses and other current assets, partially offset by \$0.3 million increase in accrued expenses and a \$0.5 million increase in accounts payable.

Net Cash Used in Investing Activities

During the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2017, we used \$1.9 million and \$2.9 million, respectively, of cash in investing activities, all of which consisted of purchases of property and equipment.

Net Cash Provided by Financing Activities

During the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2017, net cash provided by financing activities was \$32.2 million and \$127.7 million, respectively, in each case consisting of net cash proceeds from our sale and issuance of preferred shares.

Funding Requirements

We expect our expenses to increase substantially in connection with our ongoing activities, particularly as we advance the preclinical activities and clinical trials of our product candidates. Our expenses will increase as we:

- seek regulatory approvals for any product candidates that successfully complete preclinical and clinical trials;
- establish a sales, marketing and distribution infrastructure in anticipation of commercializing of any product candidates for which we may obtain marketing approval and intend to commercialize on our own or jointly;
- hire additional clinical, medical, and development personnel;
- expand our infrastructure and facilities to accommodate our growing employee base; and
- maintain, expand and protect our intellectual property portfolio.

Our primary uses of capital are, and we expect will continue to be, compensation and related expenses, clinical costs, external research and development services, laboratory and related supplies, legal and other regulatory expenses, and administrative and overhead costs. Our future funding requirements will be heavily determined by the resources needed to support development of our product candidates.

Following this offering, we will be a publicly traded company and will incur significant legal, accounting and other expenses that we were not required to incur as a private company. In addition, the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, as well as rules adopted by the SEC and The Nasdaq Stock Market, requires public companies to implement specified corporate governance practices that are currently inapplicable to us as a private company. We expect these rules and regulations will increase our legal and financial compliance costs and will make some activities more time-consuming and costly.

We expect that our existing cash resources will enable us to fund our current operating expenses and capital expenditure requirements for at least the next 12 months. We expect that these cash resources, together with anticipated net proceeds from this offering will enable us to fund our current and planned operating expenses and capital expenditure requirements for at least the next months. We have based these estimates on assumptions that may prove to be wrong, and we could

utilize our available capital resources sooner than we expect. If we receive regulatory approval for our other product candidates, we expect to incur significant commercialization expenses related to product manufacturing, sales, marketing and distribution, depending on where we choose to commercialize. We may also require additional capital to pursue in-licenses or acquisitions of other product candidates.

Because of the numerous risks and uncertainties associated with research, development and commercialization of pharmaceutical product candidates, we are unable to estimate the exact amount of our working capital requirements. Our future funding requirements will depend on and could increase significantly as a result of many factors, including:

- the scope, progress, outcome and costs of our clinical trials and other research and development activities;
- the costs, timing, receipt and terms of any marketing approvals from applicable regulatory authorities;
- the costs of future activities, including product sales, medical affairs, marketing, manufacturing and distribution, for any of our product candidates for which we receive marketing approval;
- the revenue, if any, received from commercial sale of our products, should any of our product candidates receive marketing approval;
- the costs and timing of hiring new employees to support our continued growth;
- the costs of preparing, filing and prosecuting patent applications, maintaining and enforcing our intellectual property rights and defending intellectual property-related claims; and
- the extent to which we in-license or acquire additional product candidates or technologies.

Until such time, if ever, that we can generate product revenue sufficient to achieve profitability, we expect to finance our cash needs through equity offerings. To the extent that we raise additional capital through the sale of equity, your ownership interest will be diluted. If we raise additional funds through other third-party funding, collaborations agreements, strategic alliances, licensing arrangements or marketing and distribution arrangements, we may have to relinquish valuable rights to our technologies, future revenue streams, research programs or product candidates or grant licenses on terms that may not be favorable to us. If we are unable to raise additional funds through equity financings when needed, we may be required to delay, limit, reduce or terminate our product development or future commercialization efforts or grant rights to develop and market products or product candidates that we would otherwise prefer to develop and market ourselves.

Contractual Obligations and Commitments

The following table summarizes our contractual obligations as of September 30, 2017 and the effects that such obligations are expected to have on our liquidity and cash flows in future periods:

	Payments Due by Period				
	Total	Less than 1 Year	1 to 3 Years	4 to 5 Years	More than 5 Years
			(in thousands)		
Operating Lease Obligations(1)	\$7,397	\$ 1,025	\$2,769	\$876	\$ 2,727

- (1) Amounts in the table reflect minimum payments due for our leases of office, laboratory and manufacturing space and payments required to reimburse the landlord for leasehold improvements related to operating leases.

Operating lease obligations relate to our leased corporate headquarters and manufacturing space. We entered into a lease for our corporate headquarters in September 2015 and, as part of this agreement, exercised an option to lease additional space in October 2016. Both leases expire in May 2025 with options to early terminate in September 2020. Prior to the lease commencement date of both leases, we, in conjunction with the landlord, made improvements to the leased space. The total cost of these improvements were funded by the landlord with a portion of the cost to be reimbursed by us over the term of the leases. In September 2017, we also entered into a lease for manufacturing space for a term through May 15, 2021, at which time we will have the option to renew or terminate the lease.

We enter into contracts in the normal course of business with CROs and other third parties for clinical trials and preclinical research studies and testing. These contracts are generally cancelable by us upon prior notice. Payments due upon cancellation consist only of payments for services provided or expenses incurred, including noncancelable obligations of our service providers, up to the date of cancellation. These payments are not included in the preceding table, as the amount and timing of such payments are not known.

We have not included any contingent payment obligations that we may incur upon achievement of clinical, regulatory and commercial milestones, as applicable, or royalty payments that we may be required to make under our license agreement with UCL Business plc, as the amount, timing and likelihood of such payments are not known.

Critical Accounting Policies and Significant Judgments and Estimates

Our financial statements are prepared in accordance with U.S. GAAP. The preparation of our financial statements and related disclosures requires us to make estimates and judgments that affect the reported amounts of assets, liabilities, costs and expenses, and the disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities in our financial statements. We base our estimates on historical experience, known trends and events and various other factors that we believe are reasonable under the circumstances, the results of which form the basis for making judgments about the carrying values of assets and liabilities that are not readily apparent from other sources. We evaluate our estimates and assumptions on an ongoing basis. Our actual results may differ from these estimates under different assumptions or conditions.

While our significant accounting policies are described in more detail in Note 2 to our financial statements appearing at the end of this prospectus, we believe that the following accounting policies are those most critical to the judgments and estimates used in the preparation of our financial statements.

Share-Based Compensation

Under the company's shareholder agreements, we are authorized to issue C ordinary shares, as well as options and other securities exercisable for or convertible into C ordinary shares, as incentives to our employees and directors. To the extent such incentives are in the form of share options, the options are granted pursuant to the terms of our 2017 Share Option Plan, or the 2017 Plan. Options granted under the 2017 Plan, as well as restricted C shares granted as employee incentives, typically vest over a four-year service period with 25% of the award vesting on the first anniversary of the commencement date and the balance vesting monthly over the remaining three years, unless the awards contain specific performance vesting provisions. For equity awards issued that have both a performance vesting condition and a services condition, or performance awards, once the performance criteria is achieved, the performance awards are then subject to a four-year service vesting with 25% of the performance award vesting on the first anniversary of the performance condition being achieved, with the balance vesting monthly over the remaining three years. For certain members of senior

management and directors, the board has approved an alternative vesting schedule for the equity awards. The options granted under the 2017 Plan generally expire 10 years from the date of grant. We expect our share-based compensation expense for awards granted to employees, directors and other service providers to increase in future periods due to the planned increases in our headcount.

Valuation of Share Options

We estimate the fair value of each share option grant using the Black-Scholes option pricing model, which requires the input of subjective assumptions, including assumptions about the expected life of share-based awards and share price volatility. In addition, as a privately held company, one of the most subjective inputs into the Black-Scholes option pricing model is the estimated fair value of our ordinary shares.

As a privately held company, our share price does not have sufficient historical volatility for us to adequately assess the fair value of the share option grants. As a result, our management considered the historical volatility of other comparable publicly traded companies and, based on this analysis, concluded that a volatility range of 68.61% to 68.93% was appropriate for the valuation of our share options. We intend to continue to consistently apply this methodology using the same comparable companies until a sufficient amount of historical information regarding the volatility of our own share price as a public company becomes available.

The expected life of the option, beginning with the option grant date, was used in valuing our share options. The expected life used in the calculation of share-based payment expense is the time from the grant date to the expected exercise date. The life of the options depends on the option expiration date, volatility of the underlying shares and vesting features.

The risk-free interest rate is determined by reference to the U.S. Treasury yield curve in effect at the time of grant of the award for time periods that are approximately equal to the expected term of the award.

The grant date fair value of restricted share awards is calculated based on the grant date fair value of the underlying ordinary shares. As there has been no public market for our ordinary shares or ADSs to date, the fair value of the underlying ordinary shares has historically been determined by our board of directors based upon information available to it at the time of grant. Our board of directors considered numerous objective and subjective factors in the assessment of fair value, including reviews of our business and financial condition, the conditions of the industry in which we operate and the markets that we serve and general economic, market and U.S. and global capital market conditions, the lack of marketability of our ordinary shares, the likelihood of achieving a liquidity event for the ordinary shares, the status of our clinical trials and preclinical studies relating to our product candidates and third-party valuations of our ordinary shares. Our board has generally considered the most persuasive evidence of fair value to be the prices at which our securities were sold in an arm's-length transaction.

Valuation of Ordinary Shares

There are significant judgments and estimates inherent in the determination of the fair value of our ordinary shares. These judgments and estimates include assumptions regarding our future operating performance, the likelihood and time to complete an initial public offering or other liquidity event, the related company valuations associated with such events, and the determinations of the appropriate valuation methods. If we had made different assumptions, our share-based payment expense, loss for the year and total comprehensive loss, on both an absolute and per-share basis, could have been significantly different.

We are a private company with no active public market for our ordinary shares. In the course of preparing for this offering, we performed valuations, with the help of a third-party valuation specialist, on a retrospective basis, of our ordinary shares as of various dates. These valuations were performed in accordance with the guidance outlined in the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants' Accounting and Valuation Guide, *Valuation of Privately-Held-Company Equity Securities Issued as Compensation*, or the Practice Aid. Upon the completion of this proposed offering, it will no longer be necessary to estimate the fair value of our ordinary shares in connection with our accounting for share-based payment expenses, as the fair value of our ordinary shares will be determinable by reference to the trading price of our ADSs on the Nasdaq Global Select Market.

Our valuations performed for dates between October 1, 2015 and September 30, 2017 resulted in fair values of our B and C ordinary shares as depicted in the table below:

Valuation Date	Fair Value per B Ordinary Share ⁽¹⁾	Fair Value per C Ordinary Share ⁽¹⁾
March 2, 2016	\$ 1.22	\$ 1.42
April 26, 2017	1.09	1.29
September 25, 2017	1.47	1.74

(1) The per share amounts were translated into U.S. dollars using the average exchange rate as of the valuation dates noted. In the planned corporate reorganization, each B ordinary share and C ordinary share will be exchanged for 0.314 ordinary shares of Autolus Therapeutics plc.

In conducting the valuations, we considered all objective and subjective factors that we believed to be relevant for each valuation conducted, including our best estimate of our business condition, prospects and operating performance at each valuation date. Within the valuations performed, a range of factors, assumptions and methodologies were used. The significant factors included:

- the lack of an active public market for our ordinary shares;
- our results of operations, financial position and the status of our research and preclinical development efforts;
- the material risks related to our business;
- our business strategy;
- the market performance of publicly traded companies in the life sciences and biotechnology sectors;
- the likelihood of achieving a liquidity event for the holders of our ordinary shares, such as an initial public offering, given prevailing market conditions; and
- any recent contemporaneous valuations of our ordinary shares prepared in accordance with methodologies outlined in the Practice Aid.

Our retrospective valuations were prepared in accordance with the guidelines in the Practice Aid, which prescribes several valuation approaches for determining the value of an enterprise, such as the cost, market and income approaches, and various methodologies for allocating the value of an enterprise to its capital structure and specifically the ordinary shares. After considering the market approach, the income approach and the asset-based approach, we utilized the market approach to determine the estimated fair value of our ordinary shares based on its determination that this approach was most appropriate for a clinical-stage biopharmaceutical company at this point in its development.

Valuations of ordinary shares performed as of the valuation dates referenced above were prepared using a market approach, based on precedent transactions in the shares, to estimate our total equity value. Our total equity value was estimated using an option-pricing backsolve method, or

OPM, which used a combination of market approaches and an income approach to estimate our enterprise value. An income approach is used to estimate value based on the present value of future economic benefits that are expected to be produced by the entity. A market approach is used to estimate value through the analysis of recent sales of comparable assets or business entities.

The OPM derives an equity value such that the value indicated for the C ordinary shares is consistent with the investment price, and it provides an allocation of this equity value to each class of our securities. The OPM treats the various classes of ordinary shares as call options on the total equity value of a company, with exercise prices based on the value thresholds at which the allocation among the various holders of a company's securities changes. Under this method, each class of shares has value only if the funds available for distribution to shareholders exceed the value of the share liquidation preferences of the class or classes of shares with senior preferences at the time of the liquidity event. Key inputs into the OPM calculation include the valuation of forward contracts, expected time to liquidity and volatility.

Options Granted

The following table sets forth by grant date the number of shares subject to options granted from October 1, 2015 through September 30, 2017, the per share exercise price of the options, the fair value per ordinary share on each grant date, and the per share estimated fair value of the options:

Grant Date	Number of Shares Subject to Options Granted	Per Share Exercise Price of Options	Fair Value per Ordinary Share on Grant Date ⁽¹⁾	Per Share Fair Value of Options ⁽¹⁾
April 21, 2017	686,848	\$ 0.00001	\$ 1.29	\$ 1.29
July 24, 2017	1,087,378	0.25	1.29	1.13
September 17, 2017	43,236	0.25	1.74	1.56

- (1) The per share amounts were translated into U.S. dollars using the average exchange rates of the valuation dates noted. In the planned corporate reorganization, each B ordinary share and C ordinary share will be exchanged for 0.314 ordinary shares of Autolus Therapeutics plc.

Restricted C Ordinary Shares Granted

The following table sets forth by grant date the number of restricted C ordinary shares granted from October 1, 2015 through September 30, 2017 and the fair value per ordinary share on each grant date:

Grant Date	Number of Restricted C Ordinary Shares Granted	Fair Value per Ordinary Share on Grant Date ⁽¹⁾
November 24, 2015	36,127	\$ 1.13
January 26, 2016	11,116	1.13
February 5, 2016	794	1.13
March 2, 2016	2,693,235	1.42
March 23, 2016	1,000	1.42
April 18, 2016	111,923	1.42
May 17, 2016	286,273	1.42
July 19, 2016	12,897	1.42
September 21, 2016	257,125	1.42
November 29, 2016	1,402	1.42
April 21, 2017	1,643,884	1.29
July 24, 2017	400,000	1.29

- (1) The per share amounts were translated into U.S. dollars using the average exchange rates of the valuation dates noted. In the planned corporate reorganization, each B ordinary share and C ordinary share will be exchanged for 0.314 ordinary shares of Autolus Therapeutics plc.

Share-based compensation expense totaled \$2.3 million and \$3.2 million for the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2017, respectively. As of September 30, 2017, we had \$5.1 million of unrecognized compensation cost related to unvested restricted employee and non-employee incentive shares and share options outstanding, which is expected to be recognized over a weighted-average period of 3.5 years.

Income Taxes

We account for income taxes under the asset and liability method which includes the recognition of deferred tax assets and liabilities for the expected future tax consequences of events that have been included in our financial statements. Under this approach, deferred taxes are recorded for the future tax consequences expected to occur when the reported amounts of assets and liabilities are recovered or paid. The provision for income taxes represents income taxes paid or payable for the current year plus deferred taxes. Deferred taxes result from differences between the financial statements and tax bases of our assets and liabilities, and are adjusted for changes in tax rates and tax laws when changes are enacted. The effects of future changes in income tax laws or rates are not anticipated.

We are subject to corporation taxes in the United Kingdom. The calculation of our tax provision involves the application of U.K. tax law and requires judgement and estimates.

We evaluate the realizability of our deferred tax assets at each reporting date, and we establish a valuation allowance when it is more likely than not that all or a portion of our deferred tax assets will not be realized.

The ultimate realization of deferred tax assets is dependent upon the generation of future taxable income of the same character and in the same jurisdiction. We consider all available positive and negative evidence in making this assessment, including, but not limited to, the scheduled reversal of deferred tax liabilities, projected future taxable income, and tax planning strategies. In circumstances where there is sufficient negative evidence indicating that our deferred tax assets are not more likely than not realizable, we establish a valuation allowance.

We use a two-step approach to recognizing and measuring uncertain tax positions. The first step is to evaluate tax positions taken or expected to be taken in a tax return by assessing whether they are more likely than not sustainable, based solely on their technical merits, upon examination, and including resolution of any related appeals or litigation process. The second step is to measure the associated tax benefit of each position as the largest amount that we believe is more likely than not realizable. Differences between the amount of tax benefits taken or expected to be taken in our income tax returns and the amount of tax benefits recognized in our financial statements represent our unrecognized income tax benefits, which we either record as a liability or as a reduction of deferred tax assets.

Deferred Tax and Current Tax Credits

Tax on the profit or loss for the year comprises current and deferred tax. Tax is recognized in the statement of operations, except to the extent that it relates to items recognized directly in equity, in which case it is recognized in equity. Current tax is the expected tax payable on the taxable income or loss for the year, using tax rates enacted or substantively enacted at the balance sheet date, and any adjustment to tax payable in respect of previous years. Tax credits are accrued for the year based on calculations that conform to the U.K. research and development tax credit regime, under both the SME and large company regimes. We meet the conditions of the SME regime, but also can make claims under the RDEC regime to the extent that our projects are grant funded.

We may not be able to continue to claim research and development tax credits under the SME regime in the future after we become a U.S. public company because we may no longer qualify as a small or medium-sized company. However, we should continue to be able to make claims under the RDEC regime.

Deferred tax is recognized on temporary differences between the carrying amounts of assets and liabilities for financial reporting purposes and the amounts used for taxation purposes. The amount of deferred tax is based on the expected manner of realization or settlement of the carrying amount of assets and liabilities, using tax rates enacted or substantively enacted at the balance sheet date. A deferred tax asset is recognized only to the extent that it is probable that future taxable profits will be available against which the asset can be utilized. No deferred tax assets are recognized on our losses carried forward and other attributes because there is currently no indication that we will make sufficient profits to utilize these attributes.

JOBS Act

On April 5, 2012, the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act, or the JOBS Act, was enacted. The JOBS Act provides that, among other things, an emerging growth company can take advantage of an extended transition period for complying with new or revised accounting standards. As an emerging growth company, we have irrevocably elected not to take advantage of the extended transition period afforded by the JOBS Act for implementation of new or revised accounting standards and, as a result, we will comply with new or revised accounting standards on the relevant dates on which adoption of such standards is required for non-emerging growth public companies.

In addition, we intend to rely on the other exemptions and reduced reporting requirements provided by the JOBS Act. Subject to certain conditions set forth in the JOBS Act, we are entitled to rely on certain exemptions as an “emerging growth company,” we are not required to, among other things, (i) provide an auditor’s attestation report on our system of internal controls over financial reporting pursuant to Section 404(b), (ii) provide all of the compensation disclosure that may be required of non-emerging growth public companies under the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act, (iii) comply with any requirement that may be adopted by the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board regarding mandatory audit firm rotation or a supplement to the auditor’s report providing additional information about the audit and the financial statements (auditor discussion and analysis), and (iv) disclose certain executive compensation-related items such as the correlation between executive compensation and performance and comparisons of the chief executive officer’s compensation to median employee compensation. These exemptions will apply for a period of five years following the completion of this offering or until we no longer meet the requirements of being an emerging growth company, whichever is earlier.

Off-Balance Sheet Arrangements

We did not have during the periods presented, and we do not currently have, any off-balance sheet arrangements, as defined in the rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission.

Recently Issued Accounting Pronouncements

A description of recently issued accounting pronouncements that may potentially impact our financial position and results of operations is disclosed in Note 2, “Summary of Significant Accounting Policies,” to our financial statements appearing at the end of this prospectus.

Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures about Market Risk

We are exposed to market risks in the ordinary course of our business, which are principally limited to interest rate fluctuations and foreign currency exchange rate fluctuations. We maintain significant amounts of cash and cash equivalents that are in excess of federally insured limits in various currencies, placed with one or more financial institutions for varying periods according to expected liquidity requirements.

Interest Rate Risk

As of September 30, 2017, we had cash of \$137.1 million. Our exposure to interest rate sensitivity is impacted by changes in the underlying U.K. bank interest rates. Our surplus cash has been invested in interest-bearing savings accounts from time to time. We have not entered into investments for trading or speculative purposes. Due to the conservative nature of our investment portfolio, which is predicated on capital preservation of investments with short-term maturities, we do not believe an immediate one percentage point change in interest rates would have a material effect on the fair market value of our portfolio, and therefore we do not expect our operating results or cash flows to be significantly affected by changes in market interest rates.

Foreign Currency Exchange Risk

We maintain our financial statements in our functional currency, which is pounds sterling. Monetary assets and liabilities denominated in currencies other than the functional currency are translated into the functional currency at rates of exchange prevailing at the balance sheet dates. Non-monetary assets and liabilities denominated in foreign currencies are translated into the functional currency at the exchange rates prevailing at the date of the transaction. Exchange gains or losses arising from foreign currency transactions are included in the determination of net income (loss) for the respective periods. We recorded exchange losses of \$10,000 and \$25,000 for the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2017, respectively.

For financial reporting purposes, our financial statements are prepared using the functional currency and translated into U.S. dollars. Assets and liabilities are translated at the exchange rates at the balance sheet dates, revenue and expenses are translated at the average exchange rates during the reporting period and shareholders' equity amounts are translated based on historical exchange rates on the date of the applicable transaction. Translation adjustments are not included in determining net income (loss) but are included in foreign exchange adjustment to accumulated other comprehensive loss, a component of shareholders' equity.

We do not currently engage in currency hedging activities in order to reduce our currency exposure, but we may begin to do so in the future. Instruments that may be used to hedge future risks include foreign currency forward and swap contracts. These instruments may be used to selectively manage risks, but there can be no assurance that we will be fully protected against material foreign currency fluctuations.

BUSINESS

Overview

We are a biopharmaceutical company developing next-generation programmed T cell therapies for the treatment of cancer. Using our broad suite of proprietary and modular T cell programming technologies, we are engineering precisely targeted, controlled and highly active T cell therapies that are designed to better recognize cancer cells, break down their defense mechanisms and eliminate these cells. We believe our programmed T cell therapies have the potential to be best-in-class and offer cancer patients substantial benefits over the existing standard of care, including the potential for cure in some patients.

Cancers thrive on their ability to fend off T cells by evading recognition by T cells and by establishing other defense mechanisms, such as checkpoint inhibition and creating a hostile microenvironment. Our next-generation T cell programming technologies allow us to tailor our therapies to address the specific cancer we are targeting and introduce new programming modules into a patient's T cells to give those T cells improved properties to better recognize cancer cells and overcome fundamental cancer defense mechanisms. We believe our leadership in T cell programming technologies will provide us with a competitive advantage as we look to develop future generations of T cell therapies targeting both hematological cancers and solid tumors.

Our clinical-stage pipeline comprises five programs being developed in six hematological and solid tumor indications. We expect to complete the proof-of-concept phases of four Phase 1/2 clinical trials in hematological cancer indications by early 2019. These clinical programs are adaptive and designed to allow collection of sufficient data in the expansion phase of the trials to potentially support registration. We have worldwide commercial rights to all of our programmed T cell therapies.

Our current clinical-stage programs are:

- AUTO1:** a CD19-targeting programmed T cell therapy designed to improve the safety profile of the CD19 binder while maintaining its anti-leukemia activity. AUTO1 has demonstrated this anti-leukemia activity in the absence of severe cytokine release syndrome, or CRS, in a Phase 1 trial of 11 patients with pediatric relapsed or refractory acute B lymphocytic leukemia, or pediatric ALL. A Phase 1 clinical trial in adult patients with ALL is ongoing.
- AUTO2:** the first dual-targeting programmed T cell therapy for the treatment of relapsed or refractory multiple myeloma targeting B-cell Maturation Antigen, or BCMA, and the transmembrane activator and CAML interactor, or TACI. We initiated a Phase 1/2 clinical trial in the third quarter of 2017.
- AUTO3:** the first dual-targeting programmed T cell therapy for the treatment of relapsed or refractory diffuse large B-cell lymphoma, or DLBCL, and pediatric ALL, independently targeting B-lymphocyte antigens CD19 and CD22. We initiated separate Phase 1/2 clinical trials of AUTO3 in DLBCL and in pediatric ALL in the third quarter of 2017.
- AUTO4:** a programmed T cell therapy for the treatment of peripheral T-cell lymphoma targeting TRBC1. We intend to initiate a Phase 1/2 clinical trial in the middle of 2018.

AUTO6: a programmed T cell therapy targeting GD2 in development for the treatment of neuroblastoma. A Phase 1 clinical trial with AUTO6 is being sponsored and conducted by Cancer Research UK, or CRUK, and preliminary data has shown initial anti-tumor activity in this solid tumor indication. We are developing a next-generation product candidate, which we refer to as AUTO6 NG, incorporating additional programming modules designed to improve the efficacy, safety and persistence of AUTO6. We expect to initiate a Phase 1/2 clinical trial of AUTO6 NG in 2020.

Our most advanced product candidate, AUTO1, has an optimized engagement of the CD19 target designed to reduce the risk of severe CRS without adversely impacting efficacy. We believe that these properties may make AUTO1 a suitable candidate for the treatment of adult patients with ALL, who tend to be less tolerant of severe toxicity than children with ALL. There are currently no programmed T cell therapies approved for the treatment of adult ALL. AUTO2 and AUTO3 are designed to address a key escape route used by hematological cancers in response to T cell therapies. Cancer cells often mutate and cease to express the antigen that current therapies were designed to recognize. This loss of the target antigen leads to patient relapse. Consequently, we have developed AUTO2 and AUTO3 to employ a dual-targeting mechanism because we believe it may improve durability of treatment response and reduce the frequency of cancer relapse when compared to other currently approved single-targeting T cell therapies, including other chimeric antigen receptor, or CAR, T cell therapies and T cell engager approaches. Our product candidate AUTO4, which we are developing for the treatment of peripheral T-cell lymphoma, employs a novel and differentiated treatment approach. AUTO4 is designed to kill cancerous T cells in a manner that we believe will preserve a portion of the patient's normal, healthy T cells to maintain immunity. AUTO2 and AUTO4 target antigens for which there is limited or no clinical data and also are programmed with a "safety switch" in order to allow us to manage toxicity by eliminating the programmed T cells if a patient experiences severe adverse side effects from the treatment. We are developing AUTO6 NG, which builds upon AUTO6 by incorporating programming modules intended to enhance efficacy and aiming to extend persistence and address the layers of defense that cancer cells deploy to evade T cell killing.

The manufacture and delivery of programmed T cell therapies to patients involves complex, integrated processes, including harvesting T cells from patients, programming the T cells *ex vivo*, or outside the body, multiplying the programmed T cells to obtain the desired dose, and ultimately infusing the programmed T cells back into a patient's body. Providing T cell therapies in a commercially successful manner requires a manufacturing process that is reliable, scalable and economical. We are using a semi-automated, fully enclosed system for cell manufacturing, which is designed to provide a common platform suitable for manufacturing all of our product candidates and to allow for rapid development of our product candidates through clinical trial phases and the regulatory approval processes. In addition, this platform allows for parallel processing and the ability to scale for commercial supply in a controlled environment and at an economical cost. We plan to build internal manufacturing and supply capabilities as well as to utilize the expertise of collaborators on some of the aspects of product delivery, logistics and capacity expansion. We believe having established manufacturing processes suitable for commercialization early in the development of our T cell therapies will allow us to focus on expanding manufacturing capacity during our clinical trials.

We anticipate that the market for T cell therapies will be characterized by rapid cycling of product improvements. We believe our modular approach to T cell programming and the common manufacturing platform used across all our T cell therapies will position us to more quickly develop follow-on, or next-generation, product candidates with enhanced characteristics, such as pharmacological control, insensitivity to checkpoint inhibition or other desirable features.

Our management team has a strong track record of accomplishment in redirected T cell therapies, gene therapy, transplantation and oncology. Their collective experience spans key areas of

expertise required of a fully integrated company delivering advanced programmed T cell therapies, including fundamental innovation in therapeutic design, translational medicine and clinical development, process sciences, manufacturing and commercialization. We are led by Dr. Christian Itin, our chairman and Chief Executive Officer. His prior experience includes serving as the Chief Executive Officer of Micromet, Inc., a public biotechnology company acquired by Amgen Inc. in 2012 for \$1.2 billion, where he led the development of blinatumomab, which in 2014 became the first redirected T cell therapy approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration, or FDA. Our proprietary and modular T cell programming technologies were invented by Dr. Martin Pulé, our scientific founder and Senior Vice President and Chief Scientific Officer. Dr. Pulé has been an innovator in the field of genetic engineering of T cells for cancer treatment for almost 20 years. We are backed by leading life sciences investors, including Syncona Limited, Woodford Investment Management, Aris Bioscience plc, Cormorant Asset Management, Google Ventures and Nextech Invest Ltd.

Our Pipeline

The following table summarizes key information about our programmed T cell therapy product candidates and other pipeline programs. We have retained worldwide commercial rights with respect to all of these product candidates.

Product	Indication	Target	Preclinical	Phase 1/2	Phase 2/3
B Cell Malignancies					
AUTO1	Pediatric ALL	CD19	UCL - CARPALL		
AUTO1	Adult ALL	CD19	UCL - ALLCAR19		
AUTO3	Pediatric ALL	CD19 & CD22			
AUTO3	DLBCL	CD19 & CD22			
AUTO3 NG	B-Cell Malignancies	Undisclosed			
Multiple Myeloma					
AUTO2	Multiple Myeloma	BCMA & TAC			
AUTO2 NG	Multiple Myeloma	Undisclosed			
T Cell Lymphoma					
AUTO4	TRBC1+ Peripheral TCL	TRBC1			
AUTO5	TRBC2+ Peripheral TCL	TRBC2			
GD2+ Tumors					
AUTO6	Neuroblastoma	GD2	CRUK		
AUTO6 NG	Neuroblastoma; Melanoma; Osteosarcoma; SCLC	GD2			
Prostate Cancer					
AUTO7	Prostate Cancer	Undisclosed			
Autolus				NG = Next Generation SCLC = Small Cell Lung Cancer	

Our Strategy

Our goal is to use our broad array of proprietary and modular T cell programming technologies to become a fully integrated biopharmaceutical company offering advanced, differentiated, best-in-class

programmed T cell therapies. In order to accomplish this goal, we plan to execute on the following key strategies:

- **Simultaneously develop our four current clinical-stage product candidates for the treatment of hematological cancers.** In March 2018, we licensed global rights to develop and commercialize AUTO1 from UCL Business plc, or UCLB, which we plan to develop for the treatment of adult ALL in collaboration with University College London, or UCL. We are co-funding a Phase 1 clinical trial of AUTO1 in adult ALL being conducted by UCL, which is designed to establish proof-of-concept in 2018. We will also consider further development of AUTO1 for the treatment of pediatric ALL based on emerging data generated from UCL's Phase 1 CARPALL trial of AUTO1. In 2017, we commenced a Phase 1/2 clinical trial for AUTO2 for the treatment of multiple myeloma and Phase 1/2 clinical trials for AUTO3 for the treatment of DLBCL and pediatric ALL. We expect to initiate a Phase 1/2 clinical trial of AUTO4 for the treatment of peripheral T-cell lymphoma in the middle of 2018. We intend to progress each of these product candidates in parallel through clinical trials. Depending on the results we observe in our clinical trials, we believe these product candidates may be eligible for accelerated regulatory approval pathways and we may seek to achieve breakthrough therapy designation from the FDA or Medicines, or PRIME, designation from the European Medicines Agency, or EMA.
- **Continue to innovate and develop our product pipeline using a modular approach to T cell programming.** We have a broad and expanding array of programming modules that can be used to bring improved properties to T cells. These modules may lead to improved product features such as an enhanced ability to recognize cancer cells, elements to overcome fundamental cancer defense mechanisms, improved safety through pharmacological control or improved survival or persistence of the programmed T cells. By continuing to develop and deploy new modules as our knowledge of cancer defense mechanisms advances, we believe we will be well positioned to design new programmed T cell product candidates with additional cancer-fighting properties or enhanced safety features tailored to specific indications or cancer sub-types.
- **Expand our product pipeline in solid tumor indications.** CRUK is conducting an exploratory Phase 1 clinical trial of AUTO6, a GD2-targeting programmed T cell therapy, which has shown initial signs of clinical activity in two pediatric patients with neuroblastoma. We have worldwide commercial rights to the Phase 1 clinical data and UCLB patent families covering this program, and are planning to initiate a Phase 1/2 clinical trial of AUTO6 NG, a next-generation product candidate building upon AUTO6, in 2020. In addition, we are planning to initiate a clinical trial of AUTO7 for the treatment of prostate cancer. Both AUTO6 NG and AUTO7 are being developed to incorporate multiple programming elements designed to address certain complexities of solid tumors.
- **Scale our economical manufacturing process.** We have developed our own proprietary viral vector and semi-automated cell manufacturing processes, which we are already using in our clinical-stage programs. We believe these processes are fit for commercial scale and we anticipate they will enable commercial supply at an attractive cost of goods. Manufacturing is currently conducted by, or under the supervision of, our own employees and we have established plans to increase manufacturing capacity to meet our anticipated future clinical and commercial needs.
- **Establish a focused commercial infrastructure.** Our current clinical-stage product candidates are being developed for the treatment of patients with late-stage or rare hematological cancers, most of whom will be treated in specialized treatment centers or hospitals. With our experience in gene therapy, transplantation and oncology, we aim to provide high levels of service and scientific engagement at these treatment centers, and to pilot and establish systems necessary for product delivery by the time of launch.

Background on T Cells and Cancer Treatment Approaches

Cancers originate from individual cells that have developed mutations in essential cellular programs, driving increased cell division and growth. A key control mechanism to detect and eliminate such cells is the patient's own T cells. T cells are a type of white blood cells used by the human immune system to defend the body against infectious pathogens and cancerous cells. Using their T cell receptor like a molecular scanner, T cells are able to discriminate between normal human cells and ones that contain a mutation that alters their function. If the T cell recognizes an altered cell, it becomes activated and kills that particular cell. For a cancer to grow to the detriment of the patient, cancer cells evolve mechanisms to evade recognition by, or establish other defenses against, T cells.

T Cell Activation- and Redirection-Based Therapies

Cancer immunotherapy treatment requires the activation and expansion of cancer-specific T cells, which kill cancer cells by recognizing antigen targets expressed on cancer cells. Studies have shown that tumors develop escape mechanisms that prevent T cell-mediated destruction through immune checkpoint proteins, which shut down anti-tumor immunity. Clinical trials have shown that treatment with immune checkpoint inhibitors can restore T cell activity and results in durable clinical responses. These observations have led to the FDA approval of several checkpoint inhibitors including ipilimumab (anti-CTLA-4), nivolumab (anti-PD-1), pembrolizumab (anti-PD-1), durvalumab (anti-PD-L1) and atezolizumab (anti-PD-L1). Treatment with checkpoint inhibitors has shown the ability to activate CD8+ T cells, shrink tumors, and improve patient survival. While these approaches collectively represented major advances in cancer treatment, they all lack active redirection of the patient's T cells to the cancer, eventually limiting clinical activity.

More recently, redirected T cell therapies that are designed to give the patient's T cells a new specificity to recognize cancer cells have been developed. The first approved product of this class is a bi-specific T cell engager called blinatumomab (Blinicyto®) from Amgen Inc. Blinatumomab targets the CD19 antigen on the surface of B cells and cancers derived from B cells. Blinatumomab received an accelerated approval for the treatment of patients with relapsed or refractory B cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia, or B-ALL, in 2014, followed by a full approval for all age groups in B-ALL in 2017. In 2017, the first two genetically programmed redirected T cell therapies were approved, both also targeting CD19, CAR-T therapy Kymriah® by Novartis AG for pediatric B-ALL and Yescarta® by Kite Pharma, Inc. (acquired by Gilead Sciences, Inc.) for DLBCL. All three of these therapies received breakthrough therapy designation and showed high response rates and, in a subset of patients, prolonged treatment effects. For those patients experiencing a relapse, the common causes for relapse are insufficient survival of the programmed T cells, loss of the CD19 target on the cancer cells and upregulation of checkpoint inhibitor PD-L1 on the cancer cells.

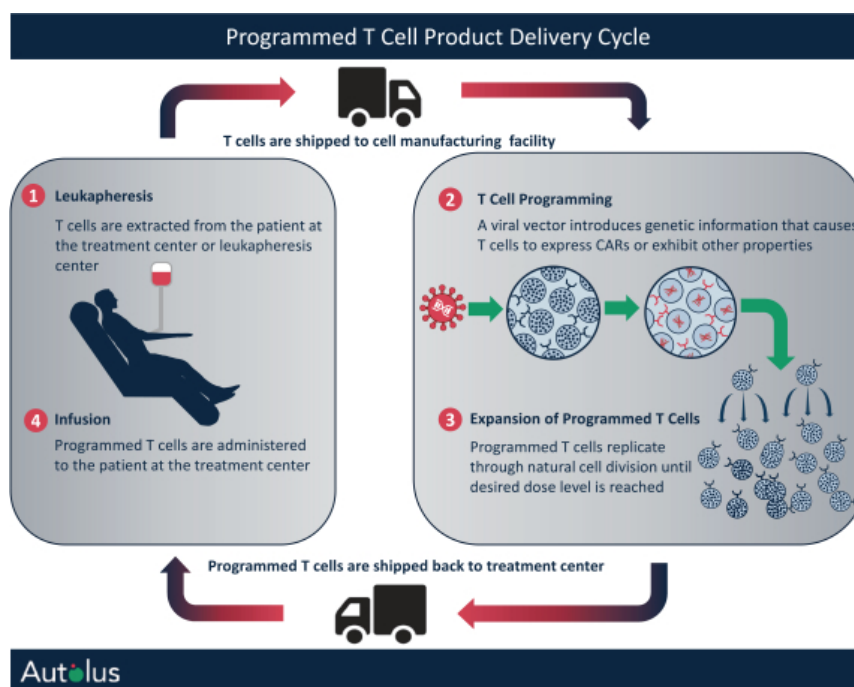
In view of the limitations of current therapies, there remains a critical unmet medical need for improved T cell therapies. We believe that improving efficacy and durability over the products currently on the market or in development for the treatment of cancers requires addressing target antigen loss, countering checkpoint inhibition and adding novel targets to expand the range of indications amenable to programmed T cell therapy. We believe our clinical-stage product candidates and our approach to T cell programming have the potential to address these limitations.

Programmed T Cell Therapies

Process of T Cell Programming

Existing programmed T cell therapies for oncology have focused on engineering CAR T cells. CARs are membrane-bound proteins, combining the tumor-recognition properties of an antibody with

the naturally occurring T cell activation mechanism. CARs are designed such that a portion on the outside of the T cell binds to a structure on the surface of a cancer cell and a portion on the inside of a T cell transmits an activating signal and leads the T cell to attack the cancer cell. The actual steps to create CAR T cells start with leukapheresis, a process in which white blood cells are collected from the patient and separated from the blood. The sample is then enriched by stimulating the T cells, which causes them to replicate. During that process, a viral gene vector is used to introduce the genetic information encoding the CAR into the DNA of the T cells. T cells then read this information and produce CARs on their cell surface. The programmed T cells are then infused back into the patient intravenously following a short course of chemotherapy to condition the bone marrow to accept the programmed T cells. This process is illustrated in the graphic below.



Limitations of Current T Cell Immunotherapies





Although existing T cell immunotherapies, including CAR T therapies, have shown significant efficacy in hematological malignancies, the extent and duration of the treatment effects and disease remission remain unknown. Optimizing the targeting module of a programmed T cell may enhance its effect and safety. Also, in response to targeted therapies, cancer cells often mutate and cease to express the antigen the therapy was designed to recognize. This loss of target antigen leads to patient relapse. Additionally, numerous challenges, including lack of T cell persistence and upregulation of checkpoint inhibitors, represent significant hurdles that need to be addressed by new therapies. T cell immunotherapies also have the capacity to elicit toxicities including CRS, neurologic toxicity and the elimination of normal cells via on-target off tumor recognition. Further, manufacturing T cells can be prohibitively costly if the manufacturing process is not appropriately designed to support parallel

processing and automation. Finally, realization of the potential of this approach across a broad range of solid tumor types will require multiple technology solutions in order to address limitations of the current generation of therapies. Our broad array of proprietary and modular T cell programming technologies are designed to address these limitations.

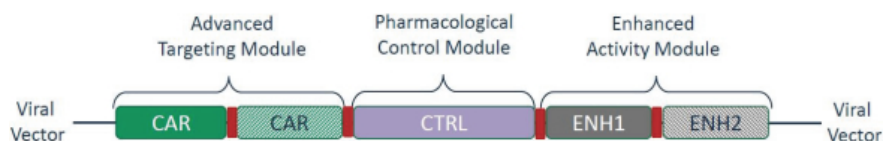
Our Solution: Advanced T Cell Programming using a Modular Approach

We are applying our broad array of T cell programming technologies and capabilities to engineer precisely targeted, controlled and highly active T cell therapies that are designed to better recognize cancer cells, break down their defense mechanisms and attack and kill these cells. The breadth of our technology platform allows us to select from a range of programming modules, and our modular approach is designed to enable us to tailor our therapies to address the specific cancer we are targeting, or to improve an already established therapy, such as by making it suitable for outpatient use. We believe this capability represents a competitive advantage in the field and will allow us to position our product candidates to have the potential to be best-in-class.

Our programming modules are designed to provide a host of key benefits as described in the table below:

Advanced Programming Modules			Key Intended Benefits
Advanced Targeting 	Innovative Binders	Fast-off rate binders Multimeric binders	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Improve activity and safety of programmed T cells Improve ability to bind to target antigen
	Dual Targeting	Eliminating cancer cells based on the recognition of either of two disease-specific antigens	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reduce the risk for antigen negative relapse Support a response in patients with low levels of target antigen
	Pattern Recognition	Elimination of cancer cells based on recognition of patterns of two or more antigens	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enhance selectivity for the tumor Spare healthy cells and avoids unwanted side effects
Pharmacological Control 	Safety Switches	Elimination of programmed T cells by administration of an antibody or small molecule	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Remove the therapy in the event the patient suffers a severe adverse event or chronic toxicity
	Tunable T cells	Reversible reduction in the activity of programmed T cells by administration of a small molecule	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Dampen activity of the therapy to manage the patient through periods of acute toxicities such as cytokine release syndrome or neurotoxicity
Enhanced T Cell Activity 	Immune Checkpoint Blockade	Expression of modified SHP2 adaptor protein to counteract immune checkpoint inhibition	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Prevent shutdown of T cell activity by tumor microenvironment Acting across a range of immune checkpoint pathways
	Enhanced T cell Persistence	Delivery of a cytokine signal directly into our programmed T cell to enhance persistence in response to tumor-secreted antigens	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Continued stimulation to help programmed T cells survive and persist for extended periods of time Enhance activity against solid tumors
			

After identifying a cancer target, we select the suite of programming modules that we believe is best suited to target that particular cancer based on our latest clinical data and the results of our cancer research. The particular modules selected may vary, and not every product candidate, including our current product candidates, contain all categories of modules. A viral vector is used to introduce combinations of these modules into the DNA of the T cells, as depicted in the graphic below. With the exception of AUTO1, all of our product candidates contain two or more programming modules.



Advanced Targeting Technologies Used in our Modular Approach

We have developed advanced antigen targeting technologies to improve the ability of our programmed T cell therapies to selectively identify, target and destroy cancer cells and overcome shortcomings of the current generation of T cell therapies. These targeting technologies include innovative binders, novel targets, dual-targeting and pattern recognition.

Innovative Binders and Novel Targets

Binding domains allow for selective targeting of cancer cells, and the properties of binders are crucial to the performance of T cell therapies. The binders of each of our programs have been optimized, are novel binders, or bind to novel targets.

The T cells of other CD19 CAR T cell therapies that have been approved or that are in clinical development are engineered to express high affinity binders that can engage their targets for an extended period of time. This can lead to excessive T cell activation and toxicities caused by cytokine release, as well as exhaustion of the CAR T cell. The programmed T cells of AUTO1 express a CD19 binder with a fast off-rate, which refers to the rate at which a T cell disengages from a target antigen. This is similar to the off-rate of naturally occurring T cells. AUTO1, with this enhanced kinetic profile, appears to result in reduced CRS and in increased T cell engraftment compared to data reported for other CAR T cell product candidates in clinical development for ALL that use high affinity binders.

The APRIL ligand is a human single domain protein that was selected as the targeting moiety in AUTO2 because it can bind with high affinity to BCMA and to TACI, two different antigens expressed on multiple myeloma cells. Using a single binder for two targets provides for efficiencies in the T cell programming process and leaves additional capacity in the viral vector to include further programming modules.

AUTO3 includes an optimized CD22 binder. It is challenging to target CD22 for immunotherapy because of its large size and extensive posttranslational modifications. Our optimized CD22 binder combines five CAR binding domains to allow for suitable orientation and efficient target engagement compared to a traditional CAR.

The TRBC1 binder used in AUTO4 is highly selective for one of two highly related variants of the constant domain in T cell receptor beta chains. The binder allows AUTO4 to target TRBC1-positive T cell lymphoma cells without affecting healthy TRBC2-positive T cells.

AUTO6 is designed to target GD2 with an optimized anti-GD2 binder which uses a humanized targeting domain. Initial clinical data from an ongoing Phase 1 clinical trial sponsored by CRUK indicates early signs of clinical activity in the absence of neurotoxicity.

Dual-Targeting Technology

Escape from T cell recognition by losing the antigen, the very structure the programmed T cell is designed to recognize, is a fundamental defense mechanism of hematological cancers. All clinical programs targeting CD19, CD22 or BCMA in a single-target approach have reported patients relapsing with cells that no longer have detectable levels of the target antigen. The most profound impact of this defense mechanism of cancer cells was reported for children relapsing under CD19-targeting Kymriah treatment, with more than half the children at time of relapse showing a loss of the CD19 antigen on the recurring cancer cells.

We believe that directly targeting two antigens on a cancer cell will reduce the chances for relapse and may also improve a response in those patients with low levels of expression of a target antigen on their cancer cells. AUTO2, the first dual-targeting programmed T cell therapy for the treatment of multiple myeloma, binds to two receptors, BCMA and TACI, both of which are expressed in varying levels on the surface of multiple myeloma cancer cells. AUTO3, the first dual-targeting programmed T cell therapy for the treatment of pediatric ALL and DLBCL, targets both the CD19 and CD22 antigens, both of which are B-cell antigens with similar patterns of expression.

Pattern Recognition Technology

Programmed T cells are very powerful and must be highly selective for the cancer cells in order to avoid unwanted side effects. Particularly for the treatment of solid tumors, which have greater complexity, achieving a sufficient level of selectivity based on a single target to avoid toxicity can be challenging. For such cancers, we have developed a programming module designed to make a kill decision based on the presence of two or more targets on the cancer cell. This technology is designed to allow us to program T cells to eliminate tumor cells only if two different targets are both present on the surface of the cell, thereby sparing healthy cells that express only one of these targets in isolation. We are also developing technology that we believe will allow us to program T cells to eliminate a tumor if only the tumor target, but not a target only found on healthy cells, is present on the cancer cell.

Pharmacological Control of T Cell Activity

Management of toxicity is a critical step in the successful application of programmed T cell therapies. We have developed multiple technologies designed to pharmacologically control T cell activity. These technologies fall into two distinct categories: safety switches and tunable T cells.

Safety Switches

Also referred to as "off switches" or "suicide switches," safety switches selectively eliminate the programmed T cells and are intended to be triggered in the event a patient suffers certain serious adverse events related to the T cell therapy, such as CRS or neurotoxicity. We incorporate the RQR8 safety switch into some of our programmed T cell product candidates, which allows us to selectively eliminate the programmed T cells by the administration of the commercially available monoclonal antibody rituximab, or Rituxan®, which binds to the surface of the T cell and thereby triggers cell death. We use the RQR8 safety switch in our AUTO2, AUTO4 and AUTO6 programs. The next generation of our safety switches, which we plan to incorporate in our solid tumor programs, utilizes rapamycin activated Caspase 9 (rapaCasp9), a cell therapy safety switch that allows for selective elimination of programmed T cells using a single therapeutic dose of the commercially available product rapamycin, such as sirolimus or Rapamune®. Rapamycin is a small molecule drug, which we expect will have the benefit of better tissue penetration and may require less time to take effect as compared to a monoclonal antibody-activated safety switch.

Tunable T Cells

Eliminating programmed T cells with a safety switch like RQR8 has the potential to allow the patient to recover from treatment-related side effects but also to preclude the anti-tumor activity following elimination of the programmed T cells, which could lead to relapse. To avoid this undesirable consequence of the safety switch, we are developing several programming modules that are designed to allow tunable programmed T cell responses by reducing programmed T cell activity if a patient experiences severe toxicity, while also allowing for the subsequent reactivation of programmed T cells, thereby allowing for the possibility of persistence and sustained anti-tumor activity. One such system we have developed is designed to reversibly dampen the activity of the programmed T cells by temporarily dislocating the signaling domain on the inside of the T cell from the cancer cell recognition domain with two commercially available antibiotics, tetracycline and minocycline.

Enhanced T Cell Activity Technologies

We have also developed a wide range of technologies designed to inhibit the immunosuppressive effects of the tumor microenvironment and enhance T cell persistence.

Evading Hostile Tumor Microenvironments Including Checkpoint Inhibition

Proteins expressed on tumor cells can trigger inhibitory receptors on T cells to block their ability to eliminate the tumor, such as PD-L1/PD-1 immune checkpoints. These inhibitory receptors act through a common signaling pathway inside the T cell that prevents normal T cell activation. We have developed a programming module designed to cause T cells to express a modified version of an adaptor protein, SHP2, that in preclinical studies has been shown to efficiently counteracts the inhibition of T cells resulting from the PD-L1/PD-1 checkpoint interaction. Unlike methods that rely on blocking one inhibitory receptor using antibodies that are separately administered to the patient and are known to have significant side effects on their own, we have designed this programming module to be engineered into the T cells and not to require the administration of a separate pharmaceutical agent. In addition, it is designed to simultaneously disarm multiple inhibitory receptors on the cancer cell.

Enhanced T Cell Persistence

Programmed T cell therapies that target hematological malignancies are regularly stimulated by engaging tumor and normal cells in the bone marrow and lymph tissue. This continued stimulation helps the programmed T cell survive and persist, allowing them to attack the tumor for an extended period of time. One of the challenges of targeting some solid tumors is the lack of such easily accessible stimulation for programmed T cells, leading to poor persistence and a weak anti-tumor activity. Programmed T cell therapies have been co-administered with cytokines that boost T cell activity and persistence in an attempt to enhance their effect on solid tumors. However, systemic or local administration of cytokines can be toxic. Therefore, we have developed a technology that is designed to deliver a cytokine signal directly inside our programmed T cells without administration of cytokines themselves. Depending on the tumor microenvironment, the cytokine persistence signal may be further enhanced by antigens secreted by the tumor. We believe our approach will be more potent and will have the potential to be less toxic, when compared to approaches that rely on systemic or local delivery of cytokines.

Advanced T Cell Programming is Key for Solid Tumor Programs

Achieving a meaningful and durable response with programmed T cell therapies in the treatment of solid tumors is more challenging than in hematological cancers for a variety of reasons. Solid tumors have fewer suitably selective, single antigen targets that can be used as a basis for tumor recognition, and solid tumors employ multiple sophisticated lines of defense to evade T cell killing.

Consequently, in order to be able to tackle the more complex biology of solid tumors, we anticipate that programmed T cell products will need to employ multiple modules of technology to overcome these challenges. With our broad array of proprietary programming modules and our ability to incorporate multiple elements into our programmed T cell product candidates, we believe we are well positioned to design these types of product candidates and expand our pipeline into solid tumor indications, including with our development of AUTO6 NG.

Our Pipeline

The following table summarizes key information about our clinical-stage programmed T cell product candidates and other pipeline programs.

Product	Indication	Target	Preclinical	Phase 1/2	Phase 2/3
B Cell Malignancies					
AUTO1	Pediatric ALL	CD19	UCL - CARPALL		
AUTO1	Adult ALL	CD19	UCL - ALLCAR19		
AUTO3	Pediatric ALL	CD19 & CD22			
AUTO3	DLBCL	CD19 & CD22			
AUTO3 NG	B-Cell Malignancies	Undisclosed			
Multiple Myeloma					
AUTO2	Multiple Myeloma	BCMA & TAC			
AUTO2 NG	Multiple Myeloma	Undisclosed			
T Cell Lymphoma					
AUTO4	TRBC1+ Peripheral TCL	TRBC1			
AUTO5	TRBC2+ Peripheral TCL	TRBC2			
GD2+ Tumors					
AUTO6	Neuroblastoma	GD2	CRUK		
AUTO6 NG	Neuroblastoma; Melanoma; Osteosarcoma; SCLC	GD2			
Prostate Cancer					
AUTO7	Prostate Cancer	Undisclosed			
Autolus				NG = Next Generation SCLC = Small Cell Lung Cancer	

Our Product Candidates for the Treatment of Hematological Cancers

Our four clinical-stage product candidates targeting hematological cancers are AUTO1, AUTO2, AUTO3 and AUTO4. We have an additional product candidate, AUTO5, in preclinical development.

AUTO1: Our Programmed T Cell Therapy for the Treatment of ALL

Introduction to AUTO1

CD19 is a protein expressed by B cell lymphomas and leukemia. CD19 CAR T cell therapies have proven effective in treating leukemia and lymphoma, with efficacy dependent on engraftment and

expansion of the CAR T cells. However, rapid activation and expansion of CAR T cells can result in CRS, which in some cases can be life-threatening, particularly for elderly patients and patients with higher tumor burden that have a poor tolerance for toxicity. Furthermore, excessive activation of CAR T cells can lead to cell exhaustion and limit their persistence, which may impact the durability of therapeutic effect. AUTO1 is an investigational therapy in which a patient's T cells are genetically modified to express a novel CD19-specific binder designed to reduce cytokine release-related side effects.

AUTO1, currently the subject of separate Phase 1 trials in pediatric ALL and adult ALL, has been designed to recognize CD19 and interact with the target with a fast off-rate. This property allows the AUTO1 cells to efficiently recognize cancer cells, inject cytotoxic proteins to initiate the natural self-destruction process present in all human cells and then rapidly disengage from them in order to engage the next cancer cell, a process also known as serial killing. Rapid disengagement from the target antigen is expected to minimize excessive activation of the programmed T cells, reduce toxicity and may also reduce T cell exhaustion. Our academic partner, UCL, is conducting a Phase 1 clinical trial in pediatric ALL patients, named the CARPALL trial, evaluating the safety and efficacy of AUTO1. Preliminary results from the CARPALL trial observed to date suggest high levels of therapeutic activity without Grade 3 or 4 CRS, which are considered to be severe CRS, and without needing to administer tocilizumab to neutralize IL-6, a prominent cytokine causing CRS.

Clinical Experience in Phase 1 Clinical Trial in Pediatric ALL

Most of the clinical experience with AUTO1 to date has been in the Phase 1 CARPALL trial that was initiated by UCL in the second quarter of 2016. The CARPALL trial is a single-arm, open label, multi-center trial enrolling patients aged 24 years or younger with high-risk relapsed or refractory CD19 positive B-lineage ALL. Currently, the clinical trial is being conducted at sites in the United Kingdom. UCL expects to enroll approximately 15 patients in this trial and complete patient enrollment in the second half of 2018. The main objective of the trial is to evaluate the safety (the incidence of Grade 3 or higher toxicities following administration) and efficacy of AUTO1 when administered at a single dose of 1 million cells/kg. The trial will also evaluate efficacy (proportion of patients achieving a molecular remission) endpoints, such as overall response rate, complete response rate and relapse rate, disease-free survival and overall survival at 1 and 2 years after administration of AUTO1.

As of October 3, 2017, 11 patients were treated in the CARPALL trial. The clinical data shows substantial engraftment and expansion with a high percentage of AUTO1 cells detected in peripheral blood. Furthermore, we observed persistence of AUTO1 cells in peripheral blood, based on a polymerase chain reaction, or PCR, assay, at comparable levels as those reported for Kymriah at the 12-month time point.

Preliminary data from the CARPALL trial suggests AUTO1 may be well tolerated and it may have the potential to offer safety advantages. In the CARPALL trial, Grade 1 or 2 CRS has been observed in all patients, but no Grade 3 or higher CRS has been observed as of October 3, 2017. In addition, in the CARPALL trial, no patient has needed or received tocilizumab or admission to an intensive care unit for the management of CRS. Additionally, the severe neurotoxicity rate (Grade 3 or higher) in AUTO1 is currently 9%. There has been only one case of severe neurotoxicity in the CARPALL trial which occurred subsequent to the last data cut-off date of October 3, 2017 and was determined by the trial investigator to be primarily attributed to fludarabine, a chemotherapy agent that was administered to the patient in a prior course of treatment and as part of intrathecal therapy for central nervous system, or CNS, disease and during the conditioning in advance of the administration of AUTO1. This patient subsequently died due to sepsis. In the CARPALL trial, 45% of patients experienced cytopenias (Grade 3 or higher) persisting beyond 30 days. In the ELIANA trial, the pivotal trial supporting the approval of Kymriah, 47% of patients treated with Kymriah experienced Grade 3 or higher CRS and the severe neurotoxicity rate (Grade 3 or higher) was 13%. Cytopenias (Grade 3 or higher) lasting longer than one month were 32% for Kymriah.

We have observed clinical activity of AUTO1 with an overall minimal residual disease-negative complete response, or MRD-negative CR, rate at the one month assessment of 91%. In the CARPALL trial, event free survival, or EFS, at six months was 53%. EFS for Kymriah was reported to be 73% at six months.

However, the interpretation of safety and efficacy of AUTO1 is limited by the small number of patients in this Phase 1 CARPALL trial (n=11) and is not designed to show statistical significance as compared to a control group. Although we believe these observations from the CARPALL trial are promising, no definitive conclusions regarding safety or effectiveness can be drawn between these two studies given the investigational stage of AUTO1, the small study size, differing study designs between the CARPALL and ELIANA trials, and other factors. We will consider further development of AUTO1 for the treatment of pediatric ALL based on emerging data generated from the CARPALL trial.

Clinical Development of AUTO1 in Adult ALL

Background of Adult ALL

AUTO1 is being tested in a Phase 1 clinical trial for the treatment of adult ALL, which according to the American Cancer Society is predicted to affect approximately 5,960 adults in the United States in 2018. Combination chemotherapy enables 90% of adult patients to experience CR. Despite this, and in contrast to pediatric ALL, the prognosis of adult ALL is still poor and has not changed significantly during the last two to three decades, with long-term remission rates limited to 30–40%. Approximately 50% of all adult ALL patients will relapse, and data from the Medical Research Council's UKALL12/ECOG 2993 study, published in 2007, found that five-year overall survival, or OS, rate in adults who relapse following standard multi-agent chemotherapy is 7%. The only curative option for relapsed or refractory ALL consists of achieving a second CR by salvage therapy followed by an allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplant, or allo-HSCT. Without allo-HSCT, a subsequent relapse occurs in nearly all patients. However, less than half of patients achieve a second CR, and therefore only a subset will be eligible for this procedure. Even then, less than one-third of patients receiving the transplant are expected to sustain long-term disease-free survival. Further, allo-HSCT is associated with severe morbidity and significant mortality. Many patients with relapsed or refractory ALL will have been maximally treated with chemotherapy, and often do not achieve a second CR with standard-of-care chemotherapy in order to be eligible for allo-HSCT.

Recently, two new targeted therapies have shown promise in the treatment of adult ALL: blinatumomab and inotuzumab ozogamicin. Both of these therapies achieve high complete response rates but durability is limited. In a randomized Phase 3 clinical trial of blinatumomab in heavily pretreated B-cell precursor ALL, the blinatumomab arm achieved a complete response rate of 44%, of which 76% also achieved MRD-negative CR, and the median duration of remission was 7.3 months. The median OS in those patients, though significantly improved compared to chemotherapy, was still only 7.7 months. Similarly, in a Phase 3 clinical trial of inotuzumab ozogamicin, a higher percentage of patients achieved MRD-negative CR when treated with inotuzumab compared to standard-of-care chemotherapy, but the median duration of remission was 4.6 months and median OS was 7.7 months.

CD19 CAR T cell therapies have been tested in pediatric ALL patients and have shown sustained responses without allo-HSCT. In adult ALL, however, one of the major challenges has been severe toxicity, including death due to CAR T cell-mediated toxicity observed in the clinical trials of these products. AUTO1 has been designed to reduce toxicity but still sustain durable CRs, and we believe it has the potential to become a standalone therapy for adult ALL.

Phase 1 Clinical Trial in Adult ALL

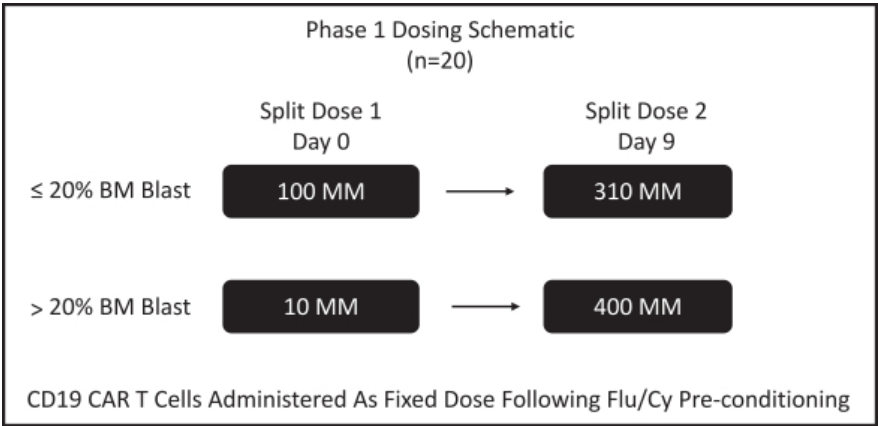
In the first quarter of 2018, our academic partner UCL initiated a single-arm, open label, multi-center Phase 1 clinical trial of AUTO1, named the ALLCAR19 trial, in patients aged 16 to 65 years of

age with high-risk, relapsed or refractory CD19 positive B-lineage ALL. The clinical trial is currently being conducted at sites in the United Kingdom. The ALLCAR19 trial is currently recruiting patients and is expected to enroll approximately 20 patients. The main objective of the trial is to evaluate the safety (the incidence of Grade 3 or higher toxicities following administration) of AUTO1 and the feasibility of manufacturing AUTO1 at the planned dose. The trial will also evaluate efficacy (proportion of patients achieving a molecular remission) endpoints, such as overall response rate, complete response rate and relapse rate, disease-free survival and overall survival at 1 and 2 years after administration of AUTO1.

The trial employs an intra-patient dose escalation design. The initial dose fraction is dependent on disease burden in the bone marrow. Patients with low levels of leukemia in the bone marrow, measured as less than or equal to 20% bone marrow infiltration at baseline ($\leq 20\%$ BM Blast) will receive a higher first dose of 100 million AUTO1 cells, while those with higher disease levels of greater than 20% bone marrow infiltration at baseline ($> 20\%$ BM Blast) will receive lower first dose of 10 million AUTO1 cells. If no severe toxicity occurs following the first dose, the remainder of the cells are administered on the ninth day. This approach is intended to reduce the risks of severe CRS and severe neurotoxicity without compromising on the promising results observed in the CARPALL trial.

Prior to receiving AUTO1, all enrolled patients will receive a course of chemotherapy with fludarabine for three days and cyclophosphamide for one day ending 3 days before the initial AUTO1 infusion. This pre-treatment is designed to reduce the number of normal T cells in the body and condition the patients for therapy.

The graphic below depicts the dosing schematic of the ALLCAR19 Phase 1 clinical trial:



Development Strategy for Adult ALL

Based on the anticipated enrollment rates, UCL expects to report preliminary results from the ALLCAR19 trial in late 2018 or first half of 2019. If the preliminary data is positive in terms of improved safety and efficacy, we intend to seek breakthrough therapy designation from the FDA for AUTO1 based on the significant medical unmet need among these patients.

We are currently transitioning cell manufacturing for AUTO1 from using an open manufacturing platform to manufacture AUTO1 to using our current closed and semi-automated manufacturing platform. This is the same manufacturing platform we use to manufacture all of our product candidates.

However, unlike our other hematological cancer product candidates, AUTO1 is based on a lentiviral vector. If the transition of the manufacturing process of AUTO1 is successful and if supported by positive clinical data from the ALLCAR19 trial, then we intend to initiate a multicenter, single-arm Phase 2 trial of AUTO1 in adult ALL. The final number of patients to be enrolled in the trial and the trial endpoints will be determined based on feedback from regulatory authorities.

AUTO2: Our Programmed T Cell Therapy for the Treatment of Multiple Myeloma

Introduction to AUTO2

We are developing AUTO2, the first dual-targeting programmed T cell product candidate binding to two targets on multiple myeloma cells. AUTO2 uses a human ligand, known as APRIL, which binds to two antigens, BCMA and TACI, both of which are expressed on the surface of multiple myeloma cancer cells.

Background of Multiple Myeloma

Multiple myeloma is a plasma cell cancer that is responsible for approximately 10% of all hematological malignancies. According to data from the Global Burden of Disease Study 2015, multiple myeloma affected 488,000 people globally and resulted in 101,100 deaths in 2015. The American Cancer Society estimates that in the United States in 2018, approximately 30,700 new cases will be diagnosed and approximately 12,770 deaths are expected to occur from multiple myeloma. Most people in the United States who are diagnosed with multiple myeloma are 65 years old or older, with less than 1% of cases diagnosed in people younger than 35 years old. Without treatment, typical survival is seven months. With currently available treatments, survival is usually four to five years, with a five-year survival rate of approximately 49%.

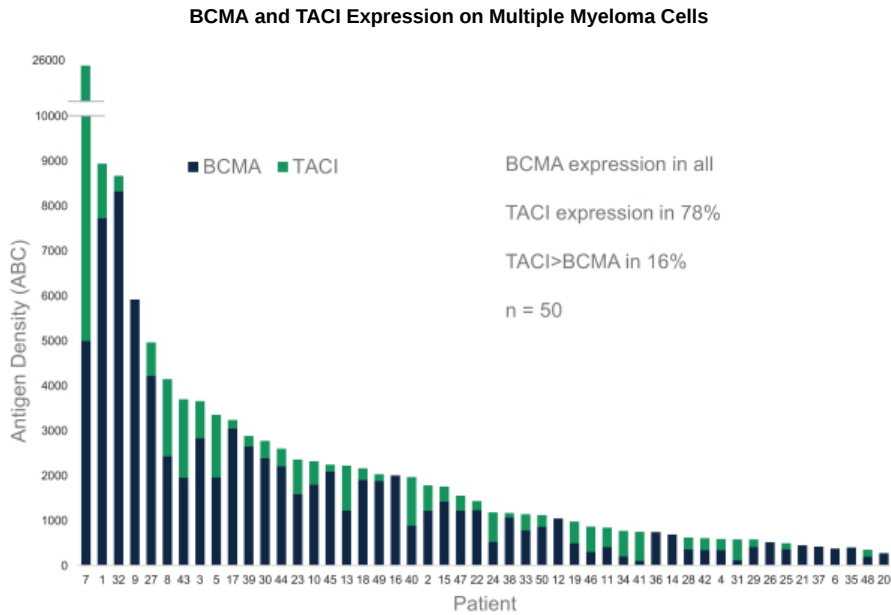
Treatment choices for multiple myeloma vary with the aggressiveness of the disease and related prognostic factors. Newly diagnosed patients in good physical health with active disease generally receive high-dose chemotherapy with autologous stem cell transplantation, or ASCT. Eligibility for ASCT is established primarily by age and comorbidities. When transplantation is not an option, treatment traditionally consists of systemic chemotherapy, with adjunctive use of radiation.

The therapeutic landscape of multiple myeloma has changed significantly in the past decade with the introduction of novel immunomodulatory agents, such as lenalidomide, as well as monoclonal antibodies, such as daratumumab, and proteasome inhibitors, including bortezomib and carfilzomib. The past decade has also seen major progress in the understanding of the molecular oncogenesis of plasma cell neoplasms, which has significantly influenced the clinical management of multiple myeloma. Despite these major advances, most cases of multiple myeloma have remained incurable. A considerable number of multiple myeloma patients ultimately experience a final tumor relapse without any additional, effective treatment option. Patients with relapsed or refractory disease typically have a poor prognosis.

Emerging therapeutic approaches include an array of product candidates that target BCMA on multiple myeloma cells, including an antibody drug conjugate and redirected T cell therapies such as T cell engagers and CAR T cell therapies. Despite recent progress, there remains significant unmet clinical need among patients with multiple myeloma, with approximately 11,240 deaths attributed to the disease in the United States in 2015. Our programmed T cell product candidate, AUTO2, is the first dual-targeting approach, which we believe has the potential to lead to higher levels of efficacy and durability of effect compared to other products and redirected T cell therapies that bind to BCMA alone.

Advantage of Dual Targeting

In a study we conducted in collaboration with UCL, multiple myeloma cells from 50 patients were evaluated for the presence of BCMA and TACI. As shown in the following graphic, BCMA was expressed on all of the multiple myeloma cells, while TACI was expressed on approximately 78% of the multiple myeloma cells. As the graph below illustrates, there is high variability in the degree of BCMA expression in multiple myeloma patients.



We believe that a therapeutic approach that targets TACI, in addition to BCMA, would be potentially more effective than current therapies that target BCMA alone, because of the increased target antigen expression. We believe that this dual-targeting approach could overcome limitations of current single-targeting BCMA-targeting therapies, which have been demonstrated to be less effective for patients whose BCMA levels are low. Academic literature has shown that remaining myeloma cells from patients who had a partial response to a single-targeting BCMA-targeting therapy showed low BCMA intensity on tumor cells that remained post-treatment as compared with baseline, indicating the inability to target and eradicate low BCMA expressing multiple myeloma cells. This may result in recurrence of the disease. Additionally, we believe that a programmed T cell therapy that targets BCMA and TACI may potentially overcome the challenges resulting from antigen loss, which is another evasion mechanism of multiple myeloma whereby the cancer cells cease expressing the target antigen and a reported shortcoming of current single-targeting BCMA-targeting therapies.

Clinical Development of AUTO2 for Multiple Myeloma

To capitalize on the possibility of better durability than existing therapies while aiming to maintain a similar safety profile, we conducted preclinical testing and subsequently initiated our clinical development program evaluating AUTO2 in patients with multiple myeloma who have failed multiple lines of prior therapy.

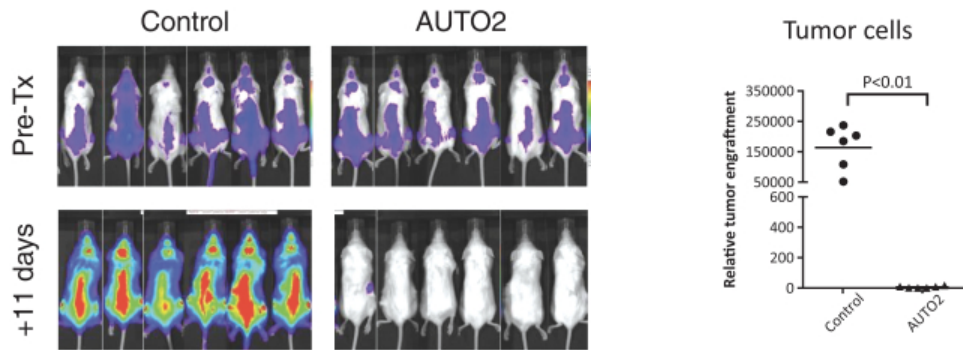
Preclinical Studies of AUTO2

We have studied AUTO2 in *in vitro* preclinical studies and in animal models of disease. In these studies, administration of AUTO2 resulted in selective and highly effective killing of a human multiple myeloma cell line that naturally expressed both BCMA and TACI. This selective activity was also observed with cell lines expressing either BCMA or TACI at physiological levels, even at conditions of a low ratio of targets to AUTO2 cells. Similar outcomes were observed with primary multiple myeloma cancer cells isolated directly from several multiple myeloma patients, including under conditions where access to BCMA was blocked.

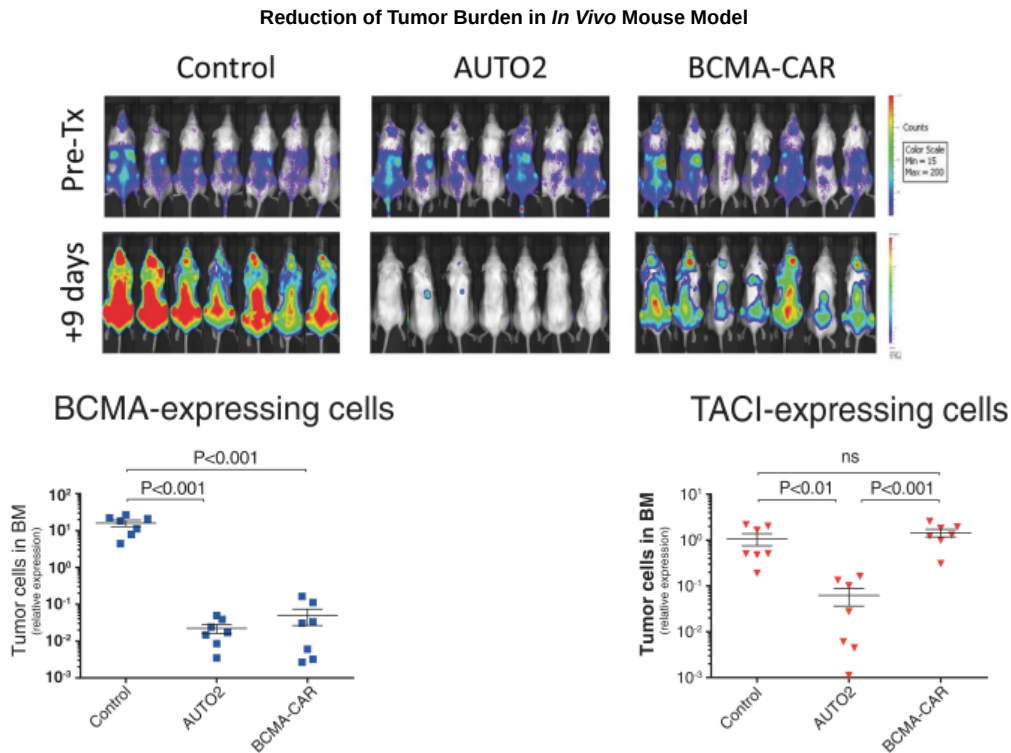
In mouse studies modeling multiple myeloma, a single dose of AUTO2 resulted in rapid tumor regression and disease clearance. Toxicological assessments and histological examination of tissues revealed that there were no treatment-related toxicities in treated animals, indicating that targeting TACI may not present a greater risk of off-tumor toxicities than targeting BCMA alone.

In one of our preclinical *in vivo* studies of AUTO2, 12 mice were injected with tumor cells expressing both BCMA and TACI and were monitored for tumor burden using two methods for quantifying specific cell populations: (i) biological luminescence imaging, or BLI, and (ii) flow cytometry, a technology that measures the number and percentage of cells in a blood sample as well as cell characteristics. Thirteen days after tumor injection, one cohort was treated with AUTO2 and the other cohort, which is referred to as the control, was left untreated. The mice images below show the tumor burden of the two cohorts of mice, both prior to treatment and at 11 days after treatment. The images show the significant reduction of tumor burden observed in the mice that received AUTO2.

Reduction of Tumor Burden in *In Vivo* Mouse Model



In another one of our preclinical *in vivo* studies of AUTO2, 21 mice were injected with a mixture of tumor cells that expressed either BCMA only or TACI only, and were monitored by BLI and flow cytometry for tumor burden. Of the three cohorts of mice, one cohort was treated with AUTO2, one cohort was treated with T cells engineered with a CAR targeting BCMA and one cohort, which is referred to as the control, was left untreated. The mice images below show the tumor burden of the three cohorts, both prior to treatment and at nine days after treatment. The images show that there was significant clearance of the tumor cells in the cohort treated with AUTO2, while the BCMA-targeting CAR T cell cohort was not able to achieve similar levels of clearance. While both AUTO2 and the BCMA-targeting CAR T cells reduced BCMA-expressing cells, only the mice that received AUTO2 showed a substantial reduction in TACI-expressing cells. The figures below the images show the clearance of BCMA-expressing cells and TACI-expressing cells in each cohort.



Phase 1/2 Clinical Trial

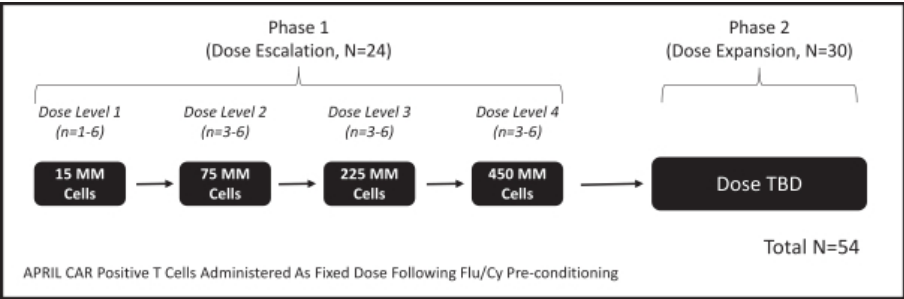
In the third quarter of 2017, we initiated a single-arm, open label, multi-center Phase 1/2 clinical trial of AUTO2 in patients with advanced multiple myeloma who have failed at least three prior therapies or are refractory to two of the major traditional classes of cancer treatments, such as chemotherapy, proteasome inhibitors, immunomodulatory agents and monoclonal antibodies. Additionally, the patients are not being selected based on BCMA or TACI antigen expression. We refer to this trial as the APRIL Trial. The trial is initially being conducted at three major hospitals in the United Kingdom. We expect to initiate additional clinical trial sites in the Netherlands and the United States during 2018. In order to initiate clinical trial sites located in the United States, we submitted an Investigational New Drug, or IND, application to the FDA in the second quarter of 2018. There can be no assurance that the FDA will permit the IND to go into effect in a timely manner or at all.

The main objective of the Phase 1 portion of the trial is to evaluate safety and to determine a recommended dose for the Phase 2 portion of the trial. The main objective of the Phase 2 portion will be to further evaluate the safety of the treatment and to evaluate efficacy endpoints, such as overall response rate and complete response rate. Efficacy will be measured based on consensus criteria developed by the International Myeloma Working Group, or IMWG. These criteria take into account the malignant myeloma protein, or M-protein, present in blood and urine, the presence of malignant plasma cells in bone marrow, and other parameters. Further, the efficacy endpoints in our trial have previously been used in clinical trials of other multiple myeloma products that have been approved by the FDA.

We have designed the trial to evaluate up to four dose levels of AUTO2, beginning with a low starting dose of 15 million cells. We elected to initiate testing of AUTO2 at this low level based in part upon this trial being the first in human administration of programmed T cells targeting TACI. Assuming that we do not observe any dose limiting toxicities, or DLT, the dose escalation phase of the trial will continue in cohorts of three to six patients, each receiving higher doses ranging from 75 million cells up to a maximum of 450 million cells. Once a recommended dose has been established, we intend to enroll 30 patients in the Phase 2 portion of the trial. If we obtain positive data and after consultation with regulatory authorities, we intend to enlarge the trial size.

Prior to receiving AUTO2, all enrolled patients will receive a three-day course of intravenous chemotherapy with fludarabine and cyclophosphamide ending three to four days before AUTO2 infusion. This pre-treatment is designed to reduce the number of normal T cells in the body and condition the patients for programmed T cell therapy.

The graphic below depicts the trial design of the Phase 1/2 clinical trial:



As of April 23, 2018, five patients were dosed in the trial. One patient received a dose of 15 million AUTO2 cells, three patients received 75 million AUTO2 cells and one patient received a dose of 225 million AUTO2 cells. No safety signals were observed in these patients and we have begun enrolling patients in the third cohort at the next higher dose level of 225 million AUTO2 cells. All of the evaluable patients had low BCMA expression. One patient had high TACI expression and the other patients had moderate to low TACI expression. Of the first four evaluable patients, three had a best response of stable disease, or SD, at the end of month one. One patient has an ongoing SD at the end of month six, and three patients progressed at months three, two and one, respectively. The fifth patient is not yet evaluable. The activity of AUTO2 observed at the dose levels up to 75 million cells is comparable to the data reported in other Phase 1 clinical trials of BCMA CAR T cell product candidates.

To date, AUTO2 has been well tolerated, with adverse events consistent with those observed with other CAR T cell therapies. To date, the most common adverse events have included cytopenias or a mild fever associated with CRS. Additionally, there has been one serious adverse event of Grade 4 neutropenia deemed by the trial investigator to be related to AUTO2. No DLT, neurotoxicity, liver, kidney or cardiac toxicities, or TACI-related unexpected toxicity incidents deemed by the trial investigator to be related to AUTO2 have been observed to date.

Development Strategy for AUTO2

We anticipate completing the Phase 1 dose escalation phase of the trial in the first half of 2019 and establish a recommended dose for the Phase 2 portion of the trial. Once a recommended dose has been established, we expect to commence the Phase 2 portion.

During the Phase 2 portion of the trial, we will evaluate preliminary efficacy endpoints, such as overall response rate and complete response rate, and depending on the preliminary efficacy results, we may consider expanding the trial into a single-arm trial that, subject to discussions with regulatory authorities, may be a registrational trial. The final number of patients to be enrolled in the trial, specific endpoints and other aspects of the design of the trial will be determined based on feedback from regulatory authorities. We will also consider conducting clinical trials to evaluate AUTO2 as a potential earlier line treatment for multiple myeloma based on emerging data.

Future Generations for AUTO2

We believe our modular approach to T cell programming and the common manufacturing platform used across all our T cell therapies will position us to more quickly develop next-generation product candidates with enhanced characteristics such as pharmacological control, insensitivity to checkpoint inhibition or other desirable features. Building on our prior clinical work and using our advanced T cell programming, we are developing next-generation product candidates of AUTO2 with the intent of providing an improved safety, efficacy and durability profile. One next-generation version of AUTO2 is being developed as a tunable version of the earlier-generation product candidate. Using a clinically approved small molecule, this system is designed to reversibly dampen the activity of the programmed T cells by temporarily dislocating the signaling domain on the inside of the T cell from the cancer cell recognition domain, in order to manage the patient through periods of acute toxicities such as CRS or neurotoxicity. Another next-generation version of AUTO2 is being developed to include a modified SHP2 adaptor protein designed to counteract immune checkpoint inhibition. A decision to advance such product candidates into clinical development will depend, in part, on the emerging safety and efficacy profile of AUTO2.

AUTO3: Our Programmed T Cell Therapy for the Treatment of Pediatric ALL and Adult DLBCL

Introduction to AUTO3

We are developing AUTO3, the first dual-targeting programmed T cell product candidate that targets B cell antigens CD19 and CD22, for the treatment of pediatric patients with relapsed or refractory ALL, as well as the treatment of adult patients with DLBCL.

To our knowledge, AUTO3 is the only programmed T cell product candidate in development that simultaneously targets both CD19 and CD22. By simultaneously targeting both B cell antigens, we believe the novel molecular design of AUTO3 addresses a major limitation of current CAR T cell products that target only CD19 or CD22 that is the loss of the target antigen on the surface of the cancer cell, which leads to relapse of the cancer.

Background of Pediatric ALL

Pediatric ALL is a type of cancer in which the bone marrow makes too many immature lymphocytes, which are a type of white blood cell. According to the American Cancer Society, ALL is most common in early childhood, peaking between two and four years of age. As per the National Cancer Institute Surveillance, Epidemiology and End Results statistics database, there are approximately 3,400 new cases of pediatric ALL diagnosed in the United States each year.

The current standard of care for both pediatric and adult ALL patients is a standard regimen of combination chemotherapy. Pediatric patients typically respond well to the complex first-line treatment. According to the American Cancer Society, the five-year survival rate for children with ALL is more than 85% overall. However, 10 to 20% of pediatric ALL patients relapse with chemotherapy-resistant disease. These patients are re-treated with intensive chemotherapy, and those that respond well

proceed to receiving an allogeneic stem cell transplant, or SCT. However, SCT is associated with significant long-term morbidity due to the risk of developing graft-versus-host disease, or GVHD, and treatment-related mortality, although the risk of death declines with better post-transplant management.

Patients with high-risk clinical or genetic features including gene abnormalities, as well as those who have an inadequate response to initial chemotherapy, typically do poorly and receive a more intensive therapy regimen, with a five-year OS rate of approximately 15%. Patients relapsing after SCT have a very poor prognosis. Long-term survival rates are only approximately 10 to 20% among patients receiving a second SCT and negligible in those unable to proceed to a second transplant.

There is a significant unmet need in pediatric patients with high-risk relapsed or refractory ALL. CD19 CAR T cell therapies have been developed for these patients, with an 80 to 90% complete response rate observed. However, at six months after treatment, approximately 40% of the patients relapse. In one study of CD19-targeting Kymriah treatment, approximately two-thirds of relapses were determined to have been due to loss of CD19 on the target cells.

Clinical Development of AUTO3 for Pediatric ALL

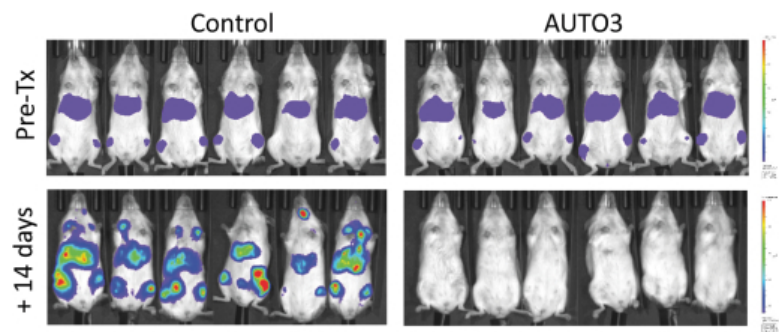
We conducted preclinical testing of AUTO3 and subsequently initiated our clinical development program of AUTO3 for pediatric ALL. Clinical trials of AUTO3 are designed to evaluate AUTO3 in pediatric patients with ALL that is refractory or in second or later relapse.

Preclinical Studies of AUTO3

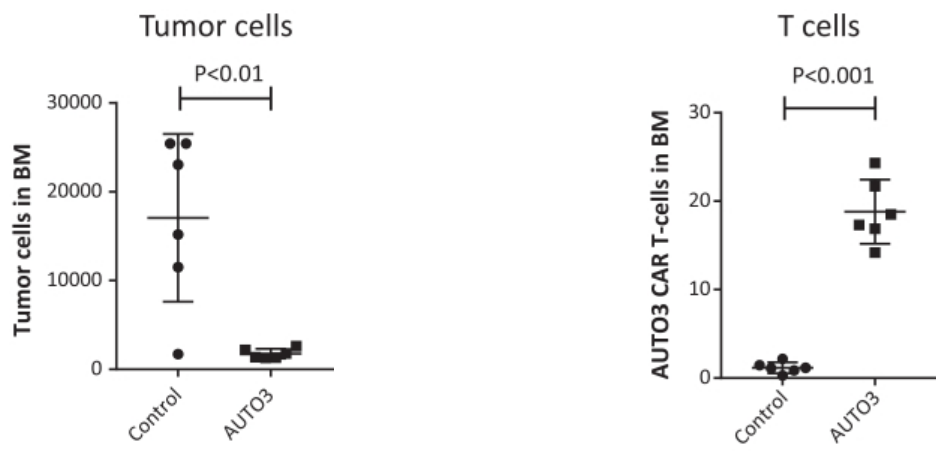
We have evaluated AUTO3 in preclinical *in vitro* and *in vivo* animal models of disease. In these studies, AUTO3 cells targeting both CD19 and CD22 were observed to eliminate tumor cells expressing these antigens. The specificity and functionality of the CD19/CD22 programmed T cells was established *in vitro* using the relevant human cell line. In addition, the dual targeting AUTO3 cells had similar functionality relative to the single CD19 and CD22 CAR T cells. Moreover, the ability of the dual targeting AUTO3 cells to efficiently kill CD19-negative variants was confirmed in an *in vitro* model of antigen-escape, a common mechanism of relapse in patients following treatment with a CD19 targeting CAR T cell therapy.

In an *in vivo* tumor xenograft mouse model using immune-compromised mice, we also observed that AUTO3 cells caused rapid tumor regression and disease clearance. The humanized CD19 and CD22 antigen-binding fragments do not cross the species barrier from human to mouse, which restricts the ability to assess off-tumor effects in mice. However, we conducted a standard human tissue cross-reactivity, or TCR, study to assess potential off-target activity and no unexpected cross-reactivity was observed.

The preclinical study design and the results of the *in vivo* efficacy studies are shown in the graphic below. In the study, two cohorts of six mice received injections of tumor cells expressing both target antigens and were monitored by BLI and flow cytometry for tumor burden. Of the two cohorts of mice, one cohort was treated with AUTO3 and the other cohort, which is referred to as the control, was treated with normal T cells. The images below show the tumor burden in the mice in each cohort, both prior to treatment and at 14 days after treatment. The images show the significant reduction in tumor burden in the cohort treated with AUTO3.



Individual data for each mouse is shown in the graphics below and the lines in the right and left graphics represent the mean value in each. In the graph on the left, the dot plots show a representative staining from the spleen or the bone marrow of the control cohort of mice compared to the cohort treated with AUTO3. The same tumor cells and T cells were used in the control cohort as for the AUTO3 cohort, except that the T cells were not transduced with the CAR construct. The graph on the right shows the typical expansion of the AUTO3 cells that would be expected to accompany the elimination of the tumor in humans based on comparable cells/kg.



Phase 1/2 Clinical Trial in Pediatric ALL

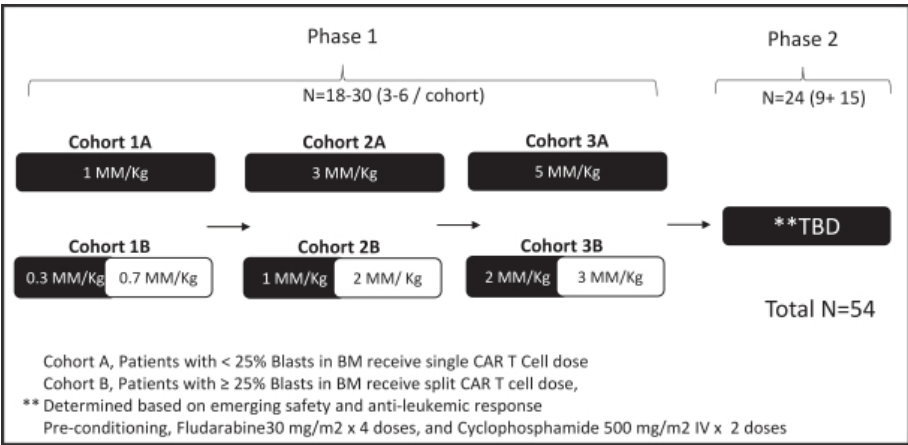
In the third quarter of 2017, we initiated a single-arm, open label, multi-center Phase 1/2 clinical trial of AUTO3 in patients up to 24 years of age with high-risk relapsed or refractory B-lineage ALL. We refer to this trial as the Amelia Trial and we expect to enroll up to 54 patients. If we observe positive data and after consultation with regulatory authorities, we intend to enlarge the trial size. Currently, the clinical trial is being conducted at sites in the United Kingdom, and we expect to submit an IND application to the FDA in the third quarter of 2018 in order to open additional trial sites in the United States. The trial is enrolling patients who have not previously received any CAR T cell therapy, as well as those who have received CD19-targeting CAR T cell therapy but have relapsed due to loss of the CD19 target protein.

The main objective of the Phase 1 portion of the trial is to evaluate the safety of AUTO3 and to determine a recommended dose for the Phase 2 portion. The main objective of the Phase 2 portion will be to further evaluate the safety of the treatment and to evaluate the efficacy endpoints, such as complete response rate and MRD-negative complete response rate, or MRD-negative CRR. Response rates will be as assessed by flow cytometry and polymerase chain reaction, or PCR.

In the Phase 1 portion, the trial is designed to test up to three dose levels, 1 million, 3 million and 5 million AUTO3 cells/kg. Within each dose level, patients will be enrolled in two different cohorts based on the level of leukemia in their bone marrow. Those with low levels of leukemia burden in the bone marrow will receive a single dose at the relevant dose level, while those with higher disease levels will receive a split dose divided into two infusions, administered five to ten days apart, to reduce the risks of toxicity associated with cytokine release. Once a recommended dose has been established, we intend to enroll at least 24 patients in the Phase 2 portion of the trial.

Prior to receiving AUTO3, all enrolled patients will receive a course of chemotherapy with fludarabine for four days and cyclophosphamide for two days ending three days before AUTO3 infusion. This pre-treatment is designed to reduce the number of normal T cells in the body and condition the patients for therapy.

The graphic below depicts the trial design of the Phase 1/2 clinical trial:



As of April 19, 2018, six patients have been dosed in the trial. The first dose cohort consisted of three patients at the dose level of 1 million AUTO3 cells/kg, with one of the three patients receiving a

split dose. The second dose cohort consisted of three patients at the dose level of 3 million AUTO3 cells/kg, with two of the three patients receiving a split dose and the third patient receiving a single dose.

To date, AUTO3 has generally been well tolerated and no DLT or severe CRS have been observed. The four evaluable patients at the first and second dose levels experienced transient cytopenias that mostly resolved by the end of month one. Two patients experienced mild CRS.

The patient in the first dose cohort of the trial received a split-dose schedule due to a high disease burden only received the first portion of the split dose totaling 300,000 AUTO3 cells/kg. The patient experienced a worsening of CNS symptoms following administration of AUTO3, but has since significantly improved. The adverse event was assessed by the treating physician as unrelated to AUTO3 treatment, arising from intrathecal chemotherapy treatment received by the patient prior to dosing with AUTO3. Following this event, the trial protocol was changed to add a four-week washout period after the last intrathecal chemotherapy, which is intended to reduce future recurrences of such events.

Two of the three evaluable patients treated at the 1 million cells/kg dose, including the patient who only received the first portion of the split dose totaling 300,000 AUTO3 cells/kg, developed MRD-negative CR at the end of month one. However, bone marrow molecular relapse was observed at month five and at month three, respectively. The third patient in the first dose cohort did not respond and had progressive CD19- and CD22-positive leukemia at week six. In the second dose cohort, the first of three patients dosed was evaluable as of April 19, 2018. This patient, who received a split dose, also achieved an MRD negative CR. The other two patients are not yet evaluable for response.

Development Strategy for Pediatric ALL

Based on our anticipated enrollment rates for the trial, we anticipate completing the Phase 1 dose escalation phase of the trial and to report preliminary results from the trial in late 2018 or early 2019. If the preliminary efficacy data are positive in both leukemia and CD19 or CD22 negative relapsed leukemia patients, we intend to seek breakthrough designation from the FDA for AUTO3 based on the significant medical unmet need among these patients.

If the preliminary efficacy data from the Phase 2 portion of the trial are positive, we intend to discuss with the FDA the possibility of converting the Phase 2 portion into a single-arm trial that, subject to discussions with regulatory authorities, may be a registrational trial, with separate cohorts for CD19 CAR-naïve and CD19-negative patients. The final number of patients to be enrolled in the trial, specific endpoints, and other aspects of the design of the trial will be determined based on feedback from regulatory authorities. If the response rate and relapse free survival is compelling, we intend to submit a biologics license application, or BLA, for accelerated approval in patients with high-risk relapsed or refractory ALL or in patients with second or later B-ALL relapse.

Background of DLBCL

Non-Hodgkin lymphoma, or NHL, consists of a diverse group of malignant neoplasms. According to the American Cancer Society, DLBCL is the most common subtype of NHL, accounting for approximately one-third of the approximately 72,000 adult NHL patients diagnosed in 2017 in the United States. DLBCL arises from a mature B cell that generally express CD19 and CD22 antigens on the surface. DLBCL is classified as an aggressive lymphoma, in which survival is measured in months rather than years.

First-line therapy usually consists of a chemotherapy regimen known as R-CHOP, which combines the monoclonal antibody rituximab with the drugs cytoxin, adriamycin, vincristine and

prednisone. Approximately 50% to 60% of DLBCL patients are cured with first-line therapy and do not have recurrence of their lymphoma.

For patients who relapse or are refractory to first-line therapy, the current standard of care for second-line therapy consists of a platinum-based chemotherapy regimen with rituximab. These second-line chemotherapy regimens are either R-ICE, consisting of rituximab, ifosfamide, carboplatin and etoposide, or R-DHAP, consisting of rituximab, dexamethasone, cytarabine and cisplatin. Patients who respond to second-line therapy may go on to receive autologous hematopoietic stem cell transplantation, or HSCT. Patients who are not candidates for HSCT or those who do not respond to second-line therapy or who relapse after HSCT are typically treated with a third-line salvage chemotherapy. These patients have a poor prognosis, and treatment is generally palliative to try to prevent further cancer growth without the intent to cure.

Indolent lymphomas account for 40% of all NHL cases. The subtypes of indolent lymphoma, including follicular lymphoma and others, initially respond well to chemotherapy or antibody therapy, or a combination of both. However, in patients with progressive disease or relapse after complete remission, there is no defined standard of care, and such patients are generally encouraged to participate in clinical trials whenever possible. Relapsed patients who are symptomatic or need treatment are usually treated with chemotherapy, which is unfortunately not curative. Additionally, a minority of these patients are eligible to receive HSCT, which provides long-term disease free survival in some cases.

Clinical Development of AUTO3 for Adult DLBCL

We have designed AUTO3 to address limitations of current therapies for DLBCL. Simultaneous targeting of both CD19 and CD22 antigens is designed to reduce CD19 antigen negative disease relapses as seen in a third of the patients relapsing after treatment with Yescarta. Our clinical trial design also includes the administration of three doses of an anti-checkpoint inhibitor, designed to address tumor relapse due to upregulation of checkpoints in DLBCL patients treated with CAR T cell therapy. We are initially developing AUTO3 as a third-line therapy for DLBCL.

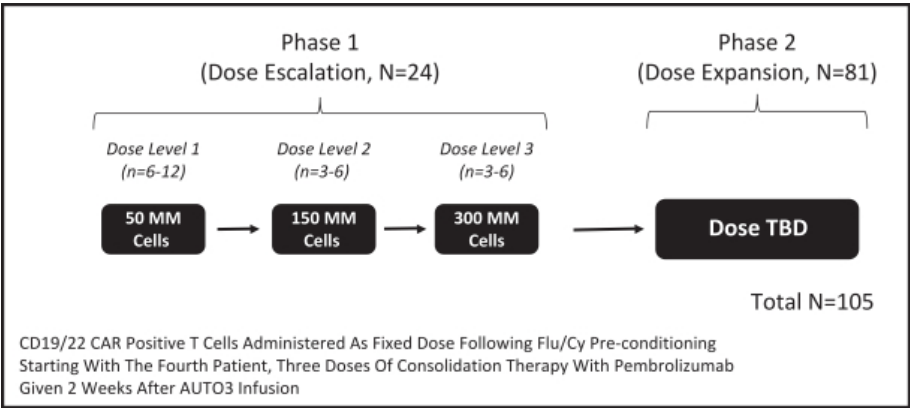
In September 2017, we initiated a single-arm, open label, multi-center Phase 1/2 clinical trial of AUTO3, followed by limited duration of consolidation with an anti-PD-1 antibody. The trial is enrolling adult DLBCL patients who have chemotherapy refractory disease or with relapsed disease after two lines of prior therapy. We refer to this trial as the Alexander Trial and we expect to enroll approximately 100 patients in the trial, which is initially conducted at sites in the United Kingdom. We plan to open additional trial sites in Europe and the United States in 2018. Additionally, we expect to submit an IND application to the FDA in 2018.

The primary objective of the Phase 1 portion of the trial is to evaluate the safety of AUTO3 in lymphoma patients and to determine a recommended dose for the Phase 2 portion. The primary objective of the Phase 2 portion will be to further evaluate the safety of the treatment and to evaluate the efficacy endpoints, such as overall response rate and complete response rate.

We have designed the trial to evaluate three dose levels, with patients enrolled at each dose level receiving a single infusion of AUTO3. The initial cohort of six to 12 patients will receive an infusion of 50 million cells of AUTO3/kg. Assuming that we do not observe any DLT, the dose escalation phase of the trial will continue to open cohorts of three to six patients, receiving higher doses of 150 million cells/kg and 300 million cells/kg. Prior to receiving AUTO3, enrolled patients will receive a three-day course of chemotherapy with fludarabine and cyclophosphamide ending three to four days before AUTO3 infusion. This pre-treatment is designed to reduce the number of normal inhibitory T cells in the body and to condition the patients for therapy. In addition to receiving AUTO3, all but the first three patients

at the lowest dose will also receive the anti-PD1 antibody pembrolizumab two weeks after AUTO3 infusion. The anti-PD1 antibody will be given every three weeks, for a total of three doses of 200 mg each. Once a recommended dose has been established, we intend to enroll 81 patients in the Phase 2 portion of the trial.

The graphic below depicts the trial design of the Phase 1/2 clinical trial:



As of April 19, 2018, three patients were dosed at the starting dose of 50 million AUTO3 cells. No DLTs have been observed and no severe CRS have been noted. One patient experienced mild grade CRS treated with tocilizumab, and another patient developed delayed Grade 3 neurotoxicity at week seven, who has since fully recovered. Additionally, since April 19, 2018, one patient developed severe anemia and has since recovered.

The three patients were evaluable for response. The first patient had a mixed response classified as progressive disease. This patient had weak CD19 expression and no CD22 expression on the tumor cells. The second patient, who had low CD19 expression and normal CD22 expression on the tumor cells, had a partial response at month one but progressed at month three. The third patient, who expressed only CD19 on the tumor cells and was negative for CD22 expression, had a complete response at the one month assessment.

Further enrollment into the trial's 50 million dose cohort is ongoing, with the additional patients receiving consolidation therapy with three doses of Keytruda®. Upon successful completion of this cohort, the next higher dose level of 150 million cells followed by Keytruda consolidation will be opened. Based on the three patients treated thus far in the first dose cohort of this clinical trial, AUTO3 has shown clinical responses in a patient whose tumor cells expressed CD22 but had low CD19 expression, and in a patient whose tumor cells expressed CD19, but not CD22. We believe this preliminary data supports our belief that the dual-targeting approach of AUTO3 may prove to be beneficial for a broader number of DLBCL patients than a single targeting CD19 CAR T cell therapy.

Development Strategy for Adult DLBCL

Based on our anticipated enrollment rates for the trial, we anticipate completing the Phase 1 dose escalation phase of the trial in the first quarter of 2019. Based on the observations from the Phase 1 portion of the trial, we plan to establish a recommended dose for the Phase 2 portion of the trial. Once a recommended dose has been established, we expect to commence the Phase 2 portion.

If the safety and efficacy data from the Phase 2 portion of our ongoing trial are positive, we plan to submit a BLA to the FDA and seek accelerated approval of AUTO3 as a third-line therapy for

DLBCL patients. If AUTO3 is approved as a third-line therapy for DLBCL, we would expect to initiate a trial to potentially position AUTO3 as a second-line therapy. Such a trial may include a randomized trial of AUTO3 followed by limited anti-PD1 consolidation versus standard of care followed by auto transplant. We may also pursue additional trials including a randomized trial of standard of care based upon advice from regulatory authorities or in order to move to an earlier line of therapy.

Other Potential Indications and Future Generations for AUTO3

In addition, we plan to investigate the activity of AUTO3 in other aggressive and indolent lymphomas, such as follicular lymphoma, primary mediastinal B-cell lymphoma, mantle cell lymphoma and chronic lymphocytic leukemia. We will also consider consolidation of AUTO3 with anti-PD1 antibodies and other agents in these indications.

We believe our modular approach to T cell programming and the common manufacturing platform used across all our T cell therapies will position us to more quickly develop next-generation product candidates with enhanced characteristics such as pharmacological control, insensitivity to checkpoint inhibition or other desirable features. Building on our prior clinical work and using our advanced T cell programming, we are developing next-generation product candidates of AUTO3 with the intent of providing an improved safety, efficacy and durability profile. One next-generation version of AUTO3 is being developed as a tunable version of the earlier-generation product candidate. Using a clinically approved small molecule, this system is designed to reversibly dampen the activity of the programmed T cells by temporarily dislocating the signaling domain on the inside of the T cell from the cancer cell recognition domain, in order to manage the patient through periods of acute toxicities such as CRS or neurotoxicity. Another next-generation version of AUTO3 is being developed to include a modified SHP2 adaptor protein in order to counteract immune checkpoint inhibition, which may eliminate the need for the separate administration of anti-PD1/PDL-1 antibodies. A decision to advance such products into clinical development will depend, in part, on the emerging safety and efficacy profile of AUTO3.

AUTO4 and AUTO5: Our Programmed T-Cell Lymphoma Program

Introduction to AUTO4 and AUTO5

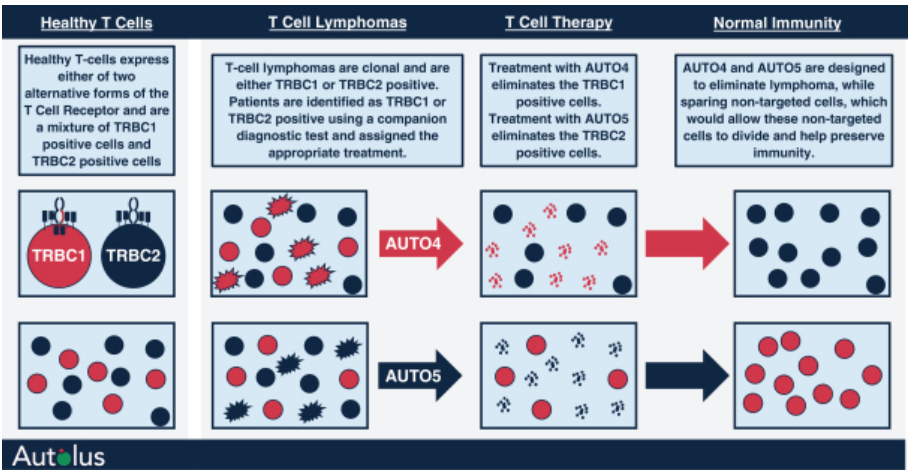
We are developing two programmed T cell product candidates, AUTO4 and AUTO5, as potential treatments for T-cell lymphomas. We are developing these product candidates with a unique targeting approach that is designed to avoid the severe immunosuppression typically associated with current treatment options for this disease.

T cells have one of two functionally identical genes, known as TRBC1 and TRBC2. A normal T cell population contains a mix of cells expressing either TRBC1 or TRBC2. Both forms are active and provide the body with natural immunity, including antiviral immunity. Because T-cell lymphomas are clonal tumors that develop from a single T cell, they are either entirely TRBC1-positive or entirely TRBC2-positive. Currently available products for the treatment of T-cell lymphoma indiscriminately target all T cells, leading to the severe immunosuppression associated with these treatments.

We have designed AUTO4 as a programmed T cell to specifically target and deplete cells expressing TRBC1, while preserving healthy T cells that express TRBC2, and we are designing AUTO5 to specifically target and deplete cells expressing TRBC2, while preserving healthy T cells that express TRBC1. A normal T cell population consists of varying amounts of TRBC1-positive and TRBC2-positive T cells. Based on the typical distribution of TRBC1-positive and TRBC2-positive T cells, we believe that patients treated with AUTO4 or AUTO5 should be left with a population of healthy, functional T cells, which provides the immune system of these patients the ability to respond

with these remaining healthy T cells to bacterial and viral infections and other pathogens. In addition, both product candidates will have a built-in safety switch designed to eliminate the programmed T cells in the event a patient suffers certain serious adverse events related to the T cell therapy, such as CRS or neurotoxicity.

The graphic below illustrates the targeting mechanism of action and intended therapeutic effect of AUTO4 and AUTO5.



Companion Diagnostic for AUTO4 and AUTO5

We are developing a proprietary diagnostic test to distinguish between TRBC1-positive T cells and TRBC2-positive T cells. When a patient presents with T-cell lymphoma, this diagnostic is designed to test the patient's tumor to assess whether the tumor is TRBC1-positive or TRBC2-positive, which will determine whether the patient is potentially a candidate to receive AUTO4 or AUTO5.

Background of T-Cell Lymphoma

T-cell lymphoma is a rare and heterogeneous form of NHL, representing approximately 10 to 20% of NHL cases and 3 to 4% of all hematological malignancies. While T-cell lymphoma is a smaller percentage of all lymphomas as compared to B cell lymphomas, T-cell lymphoma is an aggressive disease with a very poor prognosis for patients. Most T-cell lymphomas are peripheral T-cell lymphomas, or PTCL, the initial indication for which we are developing AUTO4. We estimate that PTCL affects approximately 2,900 patients in the United States each year. PTCL generally involves high-grade tumors and occurs at a similar age as aggressive B cell lymphomas, with a relatively high proportion of patients becoming rapidly unwell with malaise and fevers. The five-year survival rate ranges from 18% to 24%. The three most common subtypes of PTCL are peripheral T-cell lymphoma not otherwise specified, or PTCL-NOS, anaplastic large-cell lymphoma, or ALCL, and angioimmunoblastic T-cell lymphoma, or AITL, together accounting for approximately 70% of all PTCLs in the United States.

The first-line treatment for PTCL consists of the combination chemotherapy CHOP, consisting of cyclophosphamide, vincristine, doxorubicin and prednisolone. However, treatment with chemotherapy

introduces toxicity concerns, including low blood cell counts, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, hair loss, mouth sores, and increased risk of infections. Additionally, with CHOP chemotherapy, complete response rates are lower than in DLBCL and relapse is more common. In many treatment centers, CHOP chemotherapy is consolidated with high-dose chemotherapy and autologous or allogenic stem cell transplantation.

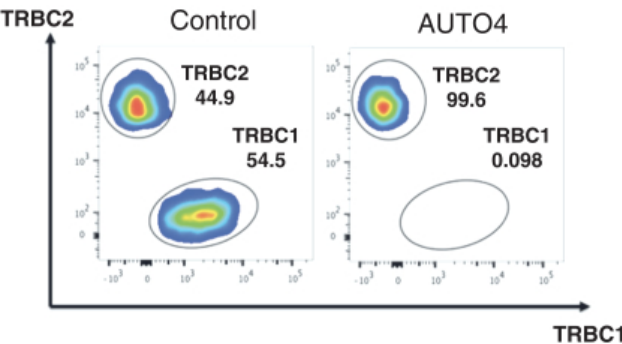
Little is understood in terms of treatment guidance for the other PTCL subtypes and these lymphomas lack clear treatment guidelines. A large proportion of T-cell lymphoma patients are refractory to or relapse following treatment with standard therapies and there remains a need to develop an effective therapy for this currently unmet need.

Unlike B cell lymphomas, T-cell lymphomas have not benefited from advances in immunotherapeutic approaches. This is mainly due to the lack of therapeutic development in T-cell lymphomas to identify suitable target antigens to distinguish malignant T cells from normal T cells. While a similar problem exists with B cell lymphomas, targeting a pan B cell antigen is an acceptable strategy, as the concomitant depletion of the normal B cell compartment is well tolerated, and some targeted approaches may be ameliorated by the administration of immunoglobulin. In contrast, targeting a pan T cell antigen would result in severe immunosuppression, where there is currently no available rescue medication. Some competitors that are pursuing this approach are planning to include an allogenic SCT as a rescue following removal of all T cells. There is currently no programmed T cell therapy that is being developed as a standalone treatment.

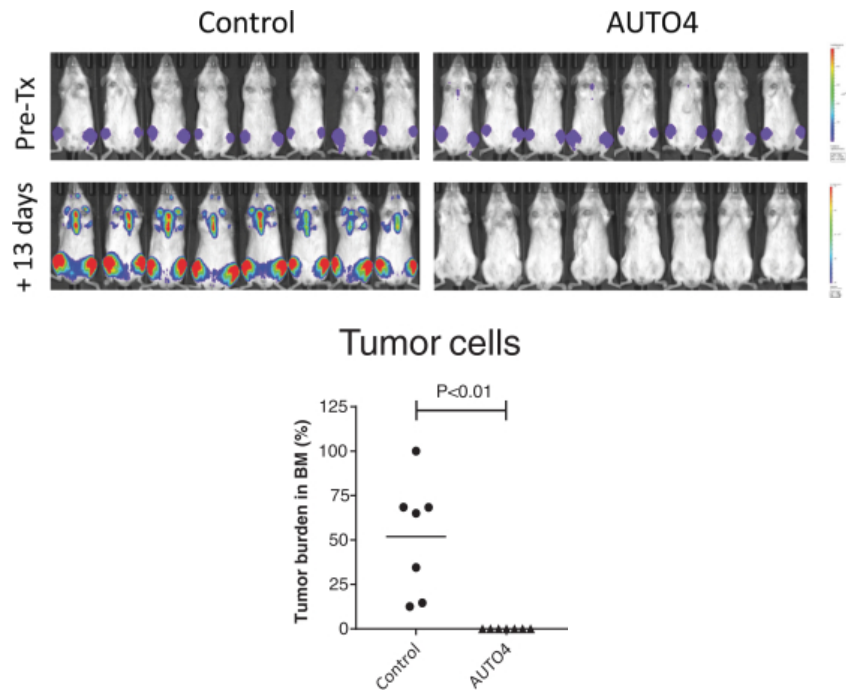
Preclinical Studies

We have evaluated AUTO4 in pre-clinical *in vitro* studies and in animal models of disease. The specificity and functionality of AUTO4 was established *in vitro* using the relevant cell line and primary human cells. In these studies, the AUTO4 cells selectively and effectively eliminated TRBC1-expressing tumor cells. The activity of AUTO4 was also established *in vivo* in a tumor xenograft mouse model using immune-compromised mice where the AUTO4 cells caused tumor regression and disease clearance by selectively and effectively killing target cancer cells.

In one *in vivo* mouse study, 16 mice were injected with a mixture of fluorescently labelled cells that expressed either TRBC1 only or TRBC2 only, and were monitored by flow cytometry for tumor burden. Of the two cohorts of mice, one cohort was treated with AUTO4 and the other cohort was treated with mock-transduced treatment cells, which is referred to as the control. The graphic below shows the depletion of TRBC1 and TRBC2 in each cohort at the termination of the study, six days after treatment. These results showed that AUTO4 was able to deplete TRBC1-expressing cells but not TRBC2-expressing cells, which confirmed the TRBC1 specificity of AUTO4.



In another *in vivo* mouse study, 16 mice were injected with tumor cells expressing TRBC1 and were monitored by BLI and flow cytometry for tumor burden. Of the two cohorts of mice, one cohort was treated with AUTO4 and the other cohort was treated with normal T cells, which is referred to as the control. The mice images below show tumor burden in each cohort both prior to treatment and at 13 days after treatment. The images and the figures below the images show that the cohort treated with AUTO4 experienced significant reduction in tumor burden compared to the control cohort. The blue coloring in the mice scans below depict tumor burden at the time of injection, which is equal across the two cohorts. At 13 days following treatment, the control cohort showed increase in tumor burden, which is reflected by the red and green coloring in the images and correlates with tumor cell density. The AUTO4 cohort, however, showed disappearance of luminescence, which is represented by lack of blue coloring and correlates with a significant decrease of tumor burden.



Although these mouse models are restricted in their ability to show what off-tumor effects may be experienced in humans, a standard human TCR study was used to assess potential off-target activity, and no cross-reactivity was observed beyond the expected tissue distribution of T cells. Collectively, these findings suggest that no off-target toxicity is anticipated.

Clinical Development of AUTO4 and AUTO5

Because AUTO4 and AUTO5 represent a novel approach to treating T-cell lymphomas, our development strategy for these product candidates will be based on initially commencing a Phase 1/2

clinical trial of AUTO4 for the treatment of TRBC1-positive T-cell lymphoma. Prior to initiation of the Phase 1/2 trial, a diagnostic test for the identification of TRBC1 and TRBC2 may be required. If we are able to establish proof-of-concept in AUTO4, we plan to commence a similar Phase 1/2 clinical trial of AUTO5 for the treatment of TRBC2-positive T-cell lymphoma.

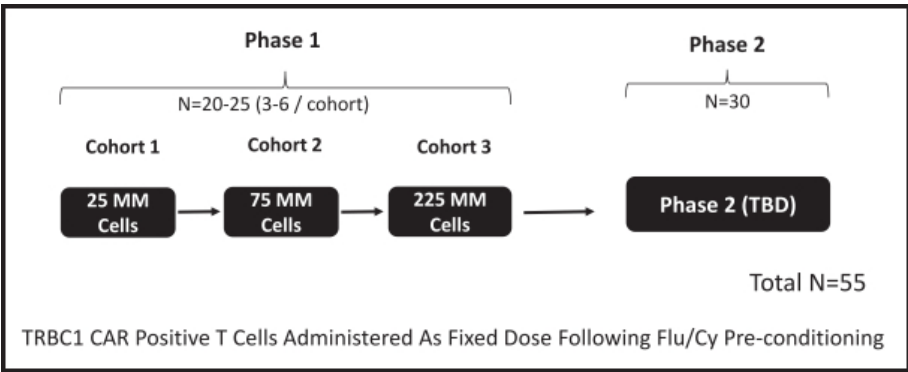
Planned Phase 1/2 Clinical Trial of AUTO4

We are planning to conduct a single-arm, open label, multi-center Phase 1/2 clinical trial in patients with PTCL-NOS, AITL and ALCL, the three most common subtypes of PTCL that express TRBC1, which patients have failed, or have relapsed disease following, at least one prior therapy. We have received approval from the Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency, or MHRA, and expect to commence a Phase 1/2 trial in the middle of 2018. The trial will initially be conducted at sites in the United Kingdom. Provided that safety and efficacy data is satisfactory in the initial patients in the trial, we intend to submit an IND and initiate additional sites in the United States.

The main objective of the Phase 1 portion of the trial is to evaluate the safety of AUTO4 and to determine a recommended dose for the Phase 2 portion of the trial. The main objective of the Phase 2 portion will be to further evaluate the safety of the treatment and evaluate efficacy endpoints, such as overall response rate and complete response rate.

We have designed the trial to evaluate up to three dose levels of AUTO4, beginning with a low dose of 25 million AUTO4 cells/kg in cohorts of three to six patients. Assuming that we do not observe any DLT, the dose escalation phase of the trial will continue to higher doses of 75 million AUTO4 cells/kg and 225 million AUTO4 cells/kg. Based on emerging data, we may also consider split dose regimens. We expect that we will enroll a total of up to 25 patients in the Phase 1 portion of the trial. Once a recommended dose has been identified in the Phase 1 portion of the trial, we intend to treat up to 30 patients in the Phase 2 portion of the trial.

The graphic below depicts the trial design of the Phase 1/2 clinical trial:



Development Strategy for AUTO4

Based on our expected enrollment rates for the trial, we anticipate completing the Phase 1 dose escalation phase of the trial in late 2019 or early 2020. If the preliminary efficacy data from the Phase 2 portion of the trial is positive, we intend to discuss with the FDA the possibility of converting the Phase 2 portion into a single-arm trial that, subject to discussions with regulatory authorities, may be a

registrational trial. The final number of patients to be enrolled in the trial, specific endpoints and other aspects of the design of the trial will be determined based on feedback from regulatory authorities. If the safety and efficacy data from the Phase 2 portion of the trial are positive, we plan to submit a BLA and seek accelerated approval of AUTO4 as a second-line therapy for TRBC1-positive T-cell lymphoma patients.

Development Strategy for AUTO5

If we are able to establish proof-of-concept of our programmed T cell therapeutic approach to treating T-cell lymphoma in our planned Phase 1/2 clinical trial of AUTO4, we plan to initiate a Phase 1/2 clinical trial of AUTO5 for the treatment of TRBC2-positive T-cell lymphoma. While we have not yet developed the protocol for the AUTO5 trial, we expect that the trial design would be similar to the AUTO4 trial.

Our Solid Tumor Programs

Solid tumors present a particular challenge to CAR T cell therapies, since solid tumors tend to fend off T cells with upregulation of checkpoint inhibition and a hostile microenvironment. In addition, contrary to hematological cancer cells that are readily accessible to programmed T cells in the circulating blood of a patient, solid tumors are more difficult for programmed T cells to track down in sufficient numbers to impact the disease. In addition, the persistence of programmed T cells tends to be limited, which also leads to a reduced effect on solid tumor cells. In addition to the programs we are currently pursuing described below, we intend to continue to evaluate other possible solid tumor indications.

AUTO6: Neuroblastoma Program

Introduction to AUTO6 and AUTO6 NG

We have been granted an exclusive, worldwide license under our license agreement with UCLB to AUTO6 (1RG-CART), a programmed T cell product candidate targeting the glycosphingolipid GD2. CRUK is conducting an exploratory Phase 1 clinical trial of AUTO6 in pediatric patients with neuroblastoma. We are developing a next-generation product candidate, which we refer to as AUTO6 NG, incorporating additional programming modules designed to improve efficacy, safety and persistence of AUTO6. We expect to initiate two Phase 1/2 clinical trials of AUTO6 NG, with the first clinical trial expected to commence in late 2019 and the second clinical trial expected to commence in 2020.

Background of Neuroblastoma

Neuroblastoma is a cancer that develops from immature nerve cells found in several areas of the body, and most commonly arises in and around the adrenal glands, which have similar origins to nerve cells and sit atop the kidneys. However, neuroblastoma can also develop in other areas of the abdomen and in the chest, neck and near the spine, where groups of nerve cells exist. Neuroblastoma most commonly affects children age five or younger, though it may rarely occur in older children. According to the American Cancer Society, there are approximately 700 new cases of neuroblastoma each year in the United States.

Preclinical Studies of AUTO6

In preclinical *in vitro* studies, AUTO6 selectively, effectively and efficiently killed GD2-expressing tumor cells while sparing cells that did not express GD2. In addition, the RQR8 safety switch activation

by rituximab was tested *in vitro*, where the addition of rituximab was shown to activate the safety switch and eliminate the programmed T cells from the culture, and residual cells did not possess any intrinsic anti-GD2 activity. This safety switch activation was also observed *in vivo* in a mouse model, where the murine analogue of rituximab was able to deplete the GD2-targeting programmed T cell product candidate from the bone marrow, blood, lymph node and spleen of animals that had previously been engrafted with programmed T cells.

Phase 1 Dose Escalation Trial of AUTO6 by CRUK in Relapsed or Refractory Neuroblastoma

In the first quarter of 2016, CRUK initiated a single-arm Phase 1 dose escalation trial of AUTO6 in relapsed or refractory neuroblastoma at two pediatric cancer centers in the United Kingdom. The trial will evaluate the safety profile of AUTO6 and will determine the recommended dose for a Phase 2 clinical trial. The Phase 1 trial is also evaluating escalating intensity of the pre-conditioning regimen along with AUTO6 dose escalation. CRUK plans to enroll 15 to 27 patients in this trial.

To date, twelve patients with relapsed or refractory neuroblastoma with measurable disease in bone (n=11), bone marrow (n=7) or soft tissue sites (n=9) have been enrolled. Ten patients have been treated, with the first six patients receiving a dose of 10 million AUTO6 cells/m², four without preconditioning, one with cyclophosphamide alone and one with a combination of cyclophosphamide and fludarabine, or cy/flu. A further three patients were treated with a dose of 100 million AUTO6 cells/m² with cy/flu preconditioning. In the next cohort, a further patient was treated with a dose of one billion AUTO6 cells/m² with cy/flu preconditioning. The trial is continuing to enroll patients at the dose of one billion AUTO6 cells/m².

No DLT has been observed so far. In patients treated at the first dose level, AUTO6 could not be detected in peripheral blood, and no clinical responses were seen. In contrast, expansion of AUTO6 cells was detected by flow cytometry and qPCR in the four patients treated at the 100 million AUTO6 cells/m² and one billion AUTO6 cells/m² dose levels. One patient at the 100 million AUTO6 cells/m² dose developed Grade 2 CRS at day five and biochemical evidence of tumor lysis at day 21. Disease reassessment on day 28 showed response in many sites of bone/bone marrow disease as measured by MIBG scintigraphy, commonly known as an MIBG Scan, and near complete tumor clearance in the bone marrow, which at baseline was heavily infiltrated with neuroblastoma cells. Disease progression occurred on day 45, at which time AUTO6 cells were no longer detectable by flow cytometry. A second patient, at the one billion AUTO6 cells/m² dose, also developed Grade 1 CRS accompanied by anti-tumor activity at the site of the tumor in the neck. The anti-tumor activity was accompanied by signs of inflammation on the skin overlying the tumor, consistent with immune activity.

Based on the current preliminary data from this Phase 1 trial, on-target anti-tumor activity of AUTO6 was observed in two pediatric patients, in bone, soft tissue and bone marrow disease sites at a ³ 100 million AUTO6 cells/m² dose. We believe this is the first anti-GD2 CAR T cell product candidate that has shown significant expansion, CRS and tumor lysis syndrome in a solid tumor indication. More importantly, anti-tumor activity was noted in the absence of neurotoxicity or pain syndrome.

Clinical Development Strategy of AUTO6 NG for Neuroblastoma

With achievement of proof-of-concept in CRUK's ongoing Phase 1 trial, we believe it is possible to safely target GD2-expressing cancers or tumors with a CAR. We are currently developing a next-generation T cell product candidate, which we refer to as AUTO6 NG, which builds on AUTO6 by incorporating additional programming modules intended to enhance the efficacy, safety and persistence of AUTO6.

Because GD2 is expressed in numerous pediatric and adult tumors including neuroblastoma, osteosarcoma, soft tissue sarcoma, melanoma, astrocytoma and small cell lung cancer, or SCLC, our clinical development strategy is to develop AUTO6 NG in parallel in neuroblastoma and in additional indications. To that end, we are planning to initiate two Phase 1/2 trials. The first trial will be in pediatric patients and is expected to commence in late 2019 and the second one will be in adult patients and is expected to commence in 2020.

In the first Phase 1/2 trial, we plan to enroll pediatric patients with relapsed or refractory neuroblastoma and osteosarcoma. Osteosarcoma is the most common type of bone cancer in children and teens, with approximately 800 to 900 new cases diagnosed each year in the United States, the majority of which will be GD2 positive. Following evaluation of safety and selection of the recommended Phase 2 dose, we plan to initiate the three-arm Phase 2 portion of the clinical trial, which will enroll patients with neuroblastoma, osteosarcoma and other GD2-positive tumors, respectively, in each individual arm of the trial. If the preliminary efficacy data from the Phase 2 portion of the trial based on appropriate criteria for individual tumor types is positive in one or more arms, we intend to discuss with the FDA the possibility of converting the Phase 2 portion into a registrational trial, with separate arms for each indication. The final number of patients to be enrolled in the trial and endpoints for each individual indication will be determined based on feedback from regulatory authorities.

The second Phase 1/2 trial, evaluating AUTO6 NG in adults, will be staggered with the first Phase 1/2 trial in order to incorporate learnings from the early dose cohorts of the first Phase 1/2 trial in pediatric patients. We anticipate that prior to initiation of this second Phase 1/2 trial, a diagnostic assay for GD2 assessment may be needed. This trial will enroll adult patients with metastatic melanoma, SCLC and other GD2-positive malignancies and who have received at least one prior therapy. Melanoma is one of the most common types of cancer, with approximately 90,000 new cases diagnosed each year in the United States. SCLC accounts for about 10-15% of all lung cancer cases, with 30,000 new cases diagnosed each year in the United States. It has been reported that approximately half of the patients are positive for the GD2 antigen. Following selection of the recommended Phase 2 dose, we plan to initiate the three-arm Phase 2 portion of the clinical trial, which will enroll patients with melanoma, SCLC and other GD2-positive tumors, respectively, in each individual arm of the trial. If the preliminary efficacy data such as overall response rate from the Phase 2 portion of the trial is promising in one or more arms, we intend to discuss with the FDA the possibility of converting the Phase 2 portion into a single-arm registration trial, with separate arms for each indication. The final number of patients to be enrolled in the trial and endpoints for each individual indication will be determined based on feedback from regulatory authorities.

AUTO7—Prostate Cancer Program

We are in preclinical development of AUTO7, a programmed T cell product candidate designed to target and treat prostate cancer. According to the American Cancer Society, other than skin cancer, prostate cancer is the most common cancer in American men, with approximately 165,000 new cases diagnosed each year. This program incorporates enhanced safety modules including our small molecule mediated safety switch and enhanced T cell activity modules that we are developing to overcome the immunosuppressive effects of the tumor microenvironment and enhance T cell persistence. We have incorporated a technology in AUTO7 that is designed to deliver a cytokine signal directly inside our programmed T cells. This cytokine persistence signal is further enhanced by engagement with antigens secreted by the tumor. We intend to initiate our clinical development of AUTO7 in 2020. We anticipate starting a Phase 1/2 trial in patients with metastatic castration-resistant prostate cancer to evaluate the safety and identify the optimum Phase 2 dose of AUTO7 in the Phase 1 part of the trial and preliminary efficacy in the Phase 2 portion of the trial.

Manufacture and Delivery of Programmed T Cell Therapies to Patients

We are devoting significant resources to process development and manufacturing in order to optimize the safety and efficacy of our product candidates, as well as to reduce our per unit manufacturing costs and time to market if we obtain regulatory approval for any of our programmed T cell product candidates.

The manufacture and delivery of programmed T cell therapies to patients involves complex, integrated processes, including harvesting T cells from patients, manufacturing viral vectors with nucleic acid content encoded with our programming modules, manufacturing programmed T cells using the viral vectors *ex vivo*, multiplying the T cells to obtain the desired dose, and ultimately infusing the T cells back into a patient's body.

Commercial success in T cell therapies requires a manufacturing process that is reliable, scalable and economical. We have established a manufacturing process that is scalable and serves as a manufacturing platform designed to support rapid development of our programmed T cell therapy product candidates through clinical trial phases and regulatory approval processes. We are using a semi-automated, fully enclosed system for cell manufacturing, which is designed to provide a common platform suitable for manufacturing all of our product candidates. This platform allows for parallel processing and the ability to scale for commercial supply in a controlled environment and at an economical cost. We have improved the viral transduction process to help eliminate processing inconsistencies.

Our manufacturing and logistics process is designed to ensure that product integrity is maintained during shipment along with accurate tracking and tracing of shipments. We plan to build internal manufacturing and supply capabilities as well as to utilize the expertise of collaborators on some of the aspects of product delivery, logistics and capacity expansion.

Our manufacturing and commercialization strategy requires a fully integrated vein-to-vein product delivery cycle. We believe having established manufacturing processes suitable for commercialization early in the development of our T cell therapies will allow us to focus on expanding manufacturing capacity during our clinical trials. Over time, we expect to establish regional manufacturing hubs to meet projected product requirements for commercialization. We believe that anticipated future commercial requirements can be met, although we cannot be certain that we will be successful in establishing manufacturing sites in a manner that would not result in significant delay or material additional costs.

We believe our scalable closed-system manufacturing process, along with our proprietary and modular T cell programming technologies, would be challenging and costly for potential competitors to replicate.

Manufacturing Agreements

We have entered into manufacturing agreements with Royal Free Hospital and King's College London for vector and cell manufacturing. Our employees currently perform or supervise the viral vector manufacturing and cell processing at manufacturing suites on-site at the Royal Free Hospital and King's College London, respectively, which have Current Good Manufacturing Practice, or cGMP, compliant manufacturing facilities. The manufacturing agreements governing these arrangements also provide for access to services including quality management systems, qualified persons for product release, office space, frozen storage and warehousing services.

We expect to expand our cell manufacturing capacity in 2018 by taking occupancy of a manufacturing suite at the Cell and Gene Therapy Catapult in Stevenage, United Kingdom. Our

agreement with the Cell and Gene Therapy Catapult provides for access to an architecturally and operationally segregated manufacturing suite to manufacture the programmed T cell product candidates for our clinical trials.

In March 2018, we entered into a strategic, long-term supply agreement with Miltenyi Biotec GmbH, or Miltenyi, for the supply and support to us of Miltenyi's CliniMACS Prodigy® instruments, reagents and disposables for the manufacture of our programmed T cell therapies for preclinical and clinical use and, if approved, for commercial use. Under the supply agreement, we will provide Miltenyi with regularly scheduled rolling forecasts of our anticipated purchase requirements on a product-by-product and country-by-country basis. Within our rolling forecasts, there is a period of time referred to as the "firm zone" in which we are obligated to purchase, and Miltenyi has agreed to provide, the number of products we have specified for that period, subject to specified conditions and limitations. We also are subject to specified annual de minimis purchase amounts. The supply agreement also sets forth procedures to ensure continuity of supply to us of Miltenyi's products, both during the clinical phase and any future commercial phase of our product candidates. After the initial ten year term of the agreement, we have two separate options to renew the agreement, each for an additional five year term. The supply agreement contains customary termination provisions, allowing for termination by a party upon the other party's uncured material breach, upon the other party's bankruptcy or insolvency or upon the other party being subject to an extended period of force majeure events. We may also terminate the supply agreement upon advance written notice, if we decide to suspend or discontinue the development or commercialization of our product candidates. The supply agreement is governed under the laws of Germany.

Commercialization

Given our stage of development, we have not yet established a commercial organization or distribution capabilities. We are developing our clinical-stage programs for the treatment of patients with late-stage or rare hematological cancers and solid tumors, most of whom are treated in specialized treatment centers or hospitals. With our experience in gene therapy, transplantation and oncology, we aim to provide high levels of service and scientific engagement at these treatment centers, and to pilot and establish systems necessary for product delivery by the time of launch. We believe this approach will require less investment in commercial infrastructure compared to the current standard of care. By focusing on these centers, we can begin to build our commercialization capabilities with limited resources.

We have retained worldwide commercial rights for our product candidates. We currently plan to build our global commercialization capabilities internally over time such that we are able to commercialize any product candidate for which we may obtain regulatory approval. We may selectively pursue strategic collaborations with third parties in order to maximize the commercial potential of our product candidates. We generally expect to launch any of our products that receive regulatory approval in the United States first, followed by the European Union and then in other major markets. For AUTO1, we expect to commercialize first in markets outside the United States where we receive regulatory approvals, with a launch following regulatory approval in the United States occurring after the earlier of either the expected expiration of any applicable third-party patents covering AUTO1 in 2023 and late 2024, the invalidation of such patents or the receipt of a license to such patents on commercially reasonable terms. See "Risk Factors—Risks Related to our Intellectual Property—Third parties may initiate legal proceedings alleging that we are infringing their intellectual property rights, the outcome of which would be uncertain and could significantly harm our business."

Intellectual Property

Intellectual property is of vital importance in our field and in biotechnology generally. We seek to protect and enhance proprietary technology, inventions and improvements that are commercially important to the development of our business by seeking, maintaining and defending patent rights, whether developed internally or licensed from third parties. We will also seek to rely on regulatory protection afforded through orphan drug designations, data exclusivity, market exclusivity and patent term extensions where available.

Our intellectual property estate, which includes in-licensed intellectual property and intellectual property that we own, is designed to provide multiple layers of protection. For example, we are pursuing patent protection for core constructs used in our product candidates, various methods of treatment for particular therapeutic indications using our approach, specific product candidates, innovative manufacturing processes, and constructs that may be used in future product candidates to improve the ability of our programmed T cells to better recognize and kill cancer cells. A portion of our patent portfolio is directed to certain current product candidates or technologies deployed in certain product candidates, and the remainder of the portfolio is directed to alternative approaches, technologies or modules that are not currently deployed in our current product candidates.

As of May 31, 2018, our current patent portfolio is comprised of 63 patent families, of which 25 patent families are in-licensed from UCLB and 38 patent families we own and have originated from our own research. Although our patent portfolio is, generally, at an early stage, and does not yet include any granted U.S. patents, and includes 34 patent families that consist solely of priority applications or PCT applications that are not yet subject to examination, we believe that our current patent portfolio, together with our ongoing efforts to develop and patent new technologies, will provide us with substantial intellectual property protection for our product candidates and other technologies that are not currently deployed in our product candidates.

As of May 31, 2018, we had two patents that have issued from our pending applications in Europe. Both patents are in-licensed from UCLB. The first patent covers the RQR8 safety switch and has a statutory expiration date in April 2033. This patent includes claims directed to the RQR8 composition of matter, as well as methods of making cells that include the RQR8 safety switch and certain methods of using the RQR8 safety switch. A corresponding Australian patent has also issued. The second patent relates to GD2 CARs and covers AUTO6. The patent has a statutory expiration date in March 2035. This patent includes claims directed to a GD2 CAR composition of matter together with associated, nucleic acid, vector and cell claims. The patent also includes claims to methods for making cells expressing GD2 CAR and uses of such cells in the treatment of cancer.

Commercially or strategically important non-U.S. jurisdictions in which certain patent applications that we have in-licensed are currently pending include: Europe, Australia, Canada, Japan, China, Brazil, Chile, Israel, India, Republic of Korea, Hong Kong, Mexico, New Zealand, Russian Federation, Singapore, South Africa, Colombia, Peru, Cuba, Indonesia, Malaysia and Philippines.

Our strategy is to develop and obtain additional intellectual property covering innovative manufacturing processes and methods for genetically engineering T cells expressing new constructs with properties that are designed to improve the ability of our programmed T cells to recognize and kill cancer cells. To support this effort, we have established expertise and development capabilities focused in the areas of T cell programming, preclinical and clinical research and development, and manufacturing and manufacturing process scale-up, and we expect that our ongoing research and development activities will yield additional patentable inventions and patent applications that will expand our intellectual property portfolio.

The term of individual patents depends upon the legal term of the patents in the countries in which they are obtained. In most countries in which we file, the patent term is 20 years from the date of filing of the first non-provisional application to which priority is claimed. In the United States, a patent's term may be lengthened by patent term adjustment, which compensates a patentee for administrative

delays by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office in granting a patent, or may be shortened if a patent is terminally disclaimed over an earlier-filed patent. The term of a patent that covers an FDA-approved drug may also be eligible for a patent term restoration of up to five years under the Hatch-Waxman Act, which is designed to compensate for the patent term lost during the FDA regulatory review process. The length of the patent term restoration is calculated based on the length of time the drug is under regulatory review. A patent term restoration under the Hatch-Waxman Act cannot extend the remaining term of a patent beyond a total of 14 years from the date of product approval and only one patent applicable to an approved drug may be restored. Moreover, a patent can only be restored once, and thus, if a single patent is applicable to multiple products, it can only be extended based on one product. Similar provisions are available in Europe and certain other foreign jurisdictions to extend the term of a patent that covers an approved drug. If and when possible, we expect to apply for patent term extensions for patents covering our product candidates or their methods of use.

Our commercial success may depend in part on our ability to obtain and maintain patent and other proprietary protection for commercially important technology, inventions and know-how related to our business, defend and enforce our patents, preserve the confidentiality of our trade secrets, and operate without infringing the valid enforceable patents and proprietary rights of third parties. Our ability to stop third parties from making, using, selling, offering to sell or importing our products may depend on the extent to which we have rights under valid and enforceable patents or trade secrets that cover these activities. With respect to both licensed and company-owned intellectual property, we cannot be sure that patents will be granted with respect to any of our pending patent applications or with respect to any patent applications filed by us in the future, nor can we be sure that any patents, if granted, will be commercially useful in protecting our commercial products and methods of manufacturing the same. Development and commercialization of products can be subject to substantial delays and it is possible that, at the time of commercialization, any patent covering the product has expired or will be in force for only a short period of time following commercialization. Numerous third-party U.S. and non-U.S. issued patents exist in the area of programmed T cell therapies, including patents held by our competitors. We cannot predict with any certainty if any third-party U.S. or foreign patent rights, or other proprietary rights, will be deemed infringed by the use of our technology. Nor can we predict with certainty which, if any, of these rights will or may be asserted against us by third parties. Should we need to defend ourselves against any such claims, substantial costs may be incurred. Furthermore, parties making such claims may be able to obtain injunctive or other equitable relief, which could effectively block our ability to develop or commercialize some or all our products in the United States, European Union and other major markets.

We may rely, in some circumstances, on trade secrets to protect our technology. However, trade secrets can be difficult to protect. We seek to protect our proprietary technology and processes, in part, by entering into confidentiality agreements with our employees, consultants, scientific advisors and contractors. We also seek to preserve the integrity and confidentiality of our data and trade secrets by maintaining physical security of our premises and physical and electronic security of our information technology systems. While we have confidence in these individuals, organizations and systems, agreements or security measures may be breached, and we may not have adequate remedies for any breach. In addition, our trade secrets may otherwise become known or be independently discovered by competitors. To the extent that our consultants, contractors or collaborators use intellectual property owned by others in their work for us, disputes may arise as to the rights in related or resulting know-how and inventions.

Our License Agreement with UCL Business plc

In September 2014, we entered into an exclusive license agreement with UCLB, the technology-transfer company of UCL, for the development and commercialization rights to certain T cell

programming modules. The license agreement was amended and restated in March 2016 to also include certain development and commercialization rights to improvements and new T cell programming modules. The license agreement was further amended and restated in March 2018 to include a license to AUTO1, for which UCL is conducting Phase 1 clinical trials in pediatric and adult ALL patients. Under the license agreement, subject to certain limitations, exceptions and retained rights of UCLB, we received an exclusive license of certain patent rights and know-how owned by UCLB covering T cell programming modules. The licensed rights cover our AUTO1, AUTO2, AUTO3, AUTO4/5 and AUTO6 targeting modules, as well as additional T cell programming modules and technologies, including dual-targeting technology, pattern recognition technology, safety switches (including RQR8), tunable T cells, manufacturing processes as well as certain technology for evading tumor microenvironments. We also have option rights and rights of first negotiation to obtain an exclusive license for development and commercialization rights to certain new T cell programming modules.

In exchange for the rights under the original license agreement, we granted UCLB 4,769,994 B ordinary shares. We also agreed to pay a management fee, milestone payments and royalties upon future net sales of any products that use the in-licensed rights. The management fee of £120,000 is payable in equal installments on the first four anniversaries of our entry into the original license agreement. In exchange for the additional rights we received in March 2016 when the license agreement was amended, we granted UCLB an additional 1,000,000 B ordinary shares and made a one-time payment of £150,000. In exchange for the additional rights we received in March 2018 when the license agreement was further amended, we made an initial payment of £1.5 million and we are obligated to pay an additional £0.5 million in connection with UCLB's transfer of clinical data to us.

Under the license agreement, we are obligated to pay UCLB milestone payments upon the receipt of specified regulatory approvals in an aggregate amount of £35.5 million, the start of commercialization in an aggregate amount of £18 million, and the achievement of net sales levels in an aggregate amount of £51 million. On a per-product basis, these milestone payments range from £1 million to £18.5 million, depending on which T cell programming modules are used in the product achieving the milestone. Under the terms of the license, we have the right to grant sublicenses to third parties, subject to certain restrictions. If we receive any income in connection with such sublicenses, we must pay UCLB a percentage of the income allocable to the value of the sublicensed intellectual property rights ranging from low twenties to mid-single digits, decreasing based on the development expenses incurred by us or the passage of time. UCLB has retained the right to use the licensed T cell programming modules for academic research purposes at UCL and with other academic institutions, subject to certain restrictions.

Upon commercialization of any of our products that use the in-licensed patent rights, we are obligated to pay UCLB a flat royalty for each licensed product ranging from the low- to mid-single digits, depending on which technologies are deployed in the licensed product, based on worldwide annual net sales of each licensed product, subject to certain reductions, including for the market entry of competing products and for loss of patent coverage of licensed products. We may deduct from the royalties payable to UCLB half of any payments made to a third party to obtain a license to such third party's intellectual property that is necessary to exploit any licensed products. Once net sales of a licensed product have reached a certain specified threshold, we may exercise an option to buy out UCLB's rights to the remaining milestone payments, royalty payments, and sublicensing revenue payments for such licensed product, on terms to be negotiated at the time.

We may acquire ownership of the licensed patent rights under the license agreement (with the exception of the RQR8 patent rights and certain other patent rights) at any time following our listing on a public stock exchange. Our payment and diligence obligations would remain unaffected by the assignment of the licensed patent rights to us.

Under the license agreement, we are solely responsible, at our expense, for developing the products that use the in-licensed patent rights and obtaining all regulatory approvals for such products worldwide. We are also solely responsible, at our expense, for commercializing the products worldwide after receiving regulatory approval. Further, we are obligated to use commercially reasonable efforts to develop certain products using the patent rights pertaining to the T cell programming modules we have licensed from UCLB. Failure to achieve diligence obligations may result in loss of exclusivity or termination of the license on a program-by-program basis.

The license agreement expires on a product-by-product and country-by-country basis upon the expiration of the royalty term with respect to each product in each country. We may unilaterally terminate the license agreement for any reason upon advance notice to UCLB. Either party may terminate the license agreement for the uncured material breach by the other party or for the insolvency of the other party. If UCLB terminates the license agreement following our insolvency or our material breach of the agreement, or if we terminate the agreement unilaterally, all rights and licenses granted to us will terminate, and all patent rights and know-how transferred to us pursuant to the agreement will revert back to UCLB, unless and to the extent we have exercised our option to acquire ownership of the licensed patent rights. In addition, UCLB has the right to negotiate with us for the grant of an exclusive license to our improvements to the T cell programming modules we have licensed on terms to be agreed upon at the time.

Competition

Presently, the biotechnology and pharmaceutical industries put significant resources in developing novel and proprietary therapies for the treatment of cancer. While we believe that our differentiated product candidates and scientific expertise in the field of cellular immunotherapy provide us with competitive advantages, we face potential competition from various sources, including larger and better-funded pharmaceutical, specialty pharmaceutical and biotechnology companies, as well as from academic institutions, governmental agencies and public and private research institutions. We anticipate that we will face intense and increasing competition as new drugs and therapies enter the market and advanced technologies become available. Due to their promising clinical therapeutic effect in clinical exploratory trials, advanced T cell therapies are being pursued by multiple biotechnology and pharmaceutical companies, including Novartis, Gilead, Celgene, Janssen Biotech Inc., bluebird bio, Roche Holding AG, Seattle Genetics, Amgen Inc. and Juno Therapeutics.

In particular, Novartis and Gilead have received marketing approval for their anti-CD19 CAR T cell therapy, and Juno is in the process of developing another anti-CD19 CAR T cell therapy. These companies and products will compete directly with AUTO3, our dual-targeting CD19/CD22 programmed T cell product candidate.

bluebird bio, in collaboration with Celgene, is developing a BCMA CAR T cell therapy for the treatment of multiple myeloma. Nanjing Legend Biotech and Janssen Biotech, Inc., a subsidiary of Johnson & Johnson, are collaborating on the development of a similar therapy. Both of these therapies will compete directly with AUTO2, our dual-targeting BCMA/TACI programmed T cell product candidate. In addition, some companies, such as Cellectis, Inc., are pursuing allogeneic T cell products that could compete with our programmed T cell product candidates.

While we believe that other known types of immunotherapies may potentially be used in conjunction with CAR T cell therapies, such as checkpoint inhibitors, to enhance efficacy, we do not currently expect substantial direct competition from these other types of immunotherapies. However, we cannot predict whether other types of immunotherapies may be enhanced and show greater efficacy, and we may have direct and substantial competition from such immunotherapies in the future.

In addition, more effective small molecules, cancer vaccines and other approaches may be developed and used as first line or second line treatments, which would reduce the opportunity for our programmed T cell therapies.

Many of our competitors, either alone or with their strategic collaborators, have substantially greater financial, technical and human resources than we do. Accordingly, our competitors may be more successful than we are in obtaining approval for treatments and achieving widespread market acceptance and may render our treatments obsolete or non-competitive. Mergers and acquisitions in the biotechnology and pharmaceutical industries may result in even more resources being concentrated among a smaller number of our competitors. These competitors also compete with us in recruiting and retaining qualified scientific and management personnel and establishing clinical study sites and patient registration for clinical studies, as well as in acquiring technologies complementary to, or necessary for, our programs. Smaller or early-stage companies may also prove to be significant competitors, particularly through collaborative arrangements with large and established companies.

We anticipate that we will face intense and increasing competition as new products and therapies enter the market and advanced technologies become available. We expect any treatments that we develop and commercialize to compete on the basis of, among other things, efficacy, safety, delivery, price and the availability of reimbursement from government and other third-party payers.

Our commercial opportunity could be reduced or eliminated if our competitors develop and commercialize products that are safer, more effective, have fewer or less severe side effects, are more convenient or are less expensive or better reimbursed than any products that we may commercialize. Our competitors also may obtain FDA, EMA or other regulatory approval for their products more rapidly than we may obtain approval for ours, which could result in our competitors establishing a strong market position for either the product or a specific indication before we are able to enter the market.

Government Regulation and Product Approval

As a biopharmaceutical company, we are subject to extensive regulation. Our programmed T cell product candidates, if approved, will be regulated as biologics. With this classification, commercial production of our products will need to occur in registered and licensed facilities in compliance with current Good Manufacturing Practices, or cGMPs, for biologics.

Human immunotherapy products are a new category of therapeutics. The FDA categorizes human cell- or tissue-based products as either minimally manipulated or more than minimally manipulated, and has determined that more than minimally manipulated products require clinical trials to demonstrate product safety and efficacy and the submission of a Biologics License Application, or BLA, for marketing authorization.

Government authorities in the United States (at the federal, state and local level) and in other countries and jurisdictions, including the European Union, extensively regulate, among other things, the research, development, preclinical and clinical testing, manufacturing, quality control, labeling, packaging, storage, record-keeping, promotion, advertising, sale, distribution, post-approval monitoring and reporting, marketing and export and import of biopharmaceutical products such as those we are developing. Our product candidates must be approved by the FDA before they may be legally marketed in the United States and by the appropriate foreign regulatory agency before they may be legally marketed in foreign countries. Generally, our activities in other countries will be subject to regulation that is similar in nature and scope as that imposed in the United States, although there can be important differences. Additionally, some significant aspects of regulation in Europe are addressed in a centralized way, but country-specific regulation remains essential in many respects. The process

for obtaining regulatory marketing approvals and the subsequent compliance with applicable federal, state, local and foreign statutes and regulations require the expenditure of substantial time and financial resources.

U.S. Product Development Process

In the United States, the FDA regulates biological products under the Public Health Service Act, or PHSA, and the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act, or FDCA, and implementing regulations. Products are also subject to other federal, state and local statutes and regulations. The process of obtaining regulatory approvals and the subsequent compliance with appropriate federal, state, local and foreign statutes and regulations require the expenditure of substantial time and financial resources. Failure to comply with the applicable U.S. requirements at any time during the product development process, approval process or after approval, may subject an applicant to administrative or judicial sanctions. FDA sanctions could include, among other actions, refusal to approve pending applications, withdrawal of an approval, a clinical hold, warning letters and similar public notice of alleged non-compliance with laws, product recalls or withdrawals from the market, product seizures, total or partial suspension of production or distribution, fines, refusals of government contracts, restitution, disgorgement of profits, or civil or criminal penalties. Any agency or judicial enforcement action could have a material adverse effect on us. The process required by the FDA before a biological product may be approved for marketing in the United States generally involves the following:

- completion of preclinical laboratory tests and animal studies according to Good Laboratory Practices, or GLPs, and applicable requirements for the humane use of laboratory animals or other applicable regulations;
- submission to the FDA of an Investigational New Drug Application, or IND, which must become effective before human clinical trials may begin;
- performance of adequate and well-controlled human clinical trials according to the FDA's regulations commonly referred to as Good Clinical Practices, or GCPs, and any additional requirements for the protection of human research subjects and their health information, to establish the safety and efficacy of the proposed biological product for its intended use;
- preparation and submission to the FDA of a Biologics License Application, or BLA, for marketing approval that includes substantive evidence of safety, purity, and potency from results of nonclinical testing and clinical trials;
- satisfactory completion of one or more FDA inspections of the manufacturing facility or facilities where the biological product is produced to assess compliance with cGMP to assure that the facilities, methods and controls used in product manufacture are adequate to preserve the biological product's identity, strength, quality and purity and, if applicable, the FDA's current Good Tissue Practices, or GTPs, for the use of human cellular and tissue products;
- potential FDA audit of the nonclinical study and clinical trial sites that generated the data in support of the BLA;
- payment of user fees for FDA review of the BLA; and
- FDA acceptance, review and approval, or licensure, of the BLA, which might include review by an advisory committee, a panel typically consisting of independent clinicians and other experts who provide recommendations as to whether the application should be approved and under what conditions.

Before testing any biological product candidate, including our product candidates, in humans, the product candidate must undergo rigorous the preclinical testing. Preclinical tests, also referred to as nonclinical studies, include laboratory evaluations as well as *in vitro* and animal studies to assess the

potential safety and efficacy of the product candidate. After sufficient preclinical testing has been conducted, the conduct of the preclinical tests must comply with federal regulations and requirements including GLPs. The clinical trial sponsor must submit an IND to the FDA before clinical testing can begin in the United States. An IND must contain the results of the preclinical tests, manufacturing information, analytical data, any available clinical data or literature, a proposed clinical protocol, an investigator's brochure, a sample informed consent form, and other materials. Clinical trial protocols detail, among other things, the objectives of the clinical trial, dosing procedures, subject selection and exclusion criteria, and the parameters to be used to monitor subject safety, including stopping rules that assure a clinical trial will be stopped if certain adverse events should occur. Each protocol and any amendments to the protocol must be submitted to the FDA as part of the IND. Some preclinical testing, such as toxicity studies, may continue even after the IND is submitted.

The IND automatically becomes effective 30 days after receipt by the FDA, unless the FDA raises concerns or questions regarding the proposed clinical trials or places the trial on a clinical hold within that 30-day time period. In such a case, the IND sponsor and the FDA must resolve any outstanding concerns before the clinical trial can begin. The FDA may also impose clinical holds on a biological product candidate at any time before or during clinical trials due to safety concerns or non-compliance. If the FDA imposes a clinical hold, trials may not recommence without FDA authorization and then only under terms authorized by the FDA. Accordingly, we cannot be sure that submission of an IND will result in the FDA allowing clinical trials to begin, or that, once begun, issues will not arise that suspend or terminate such trials.

Further, each clinical trial must be reviewed and approved by an independent institutional review board, or IRB, at or servicing each institution at which the clinical trial will be conducted. An IRB is charged with protecting the welfare and rights of trial participants and considers such items as whether the risks to individuals participating in the clinical trials are minimized and are reasonable in relation to anticipated benefits. The IRB also approves the form and content of the informed consent that must be signed by each clinical trial subject or his or her legal representative and must monitor the clinical trial until completed. Clinical trials involving recombinant or synthetic nucleic acid molecules also must be reviewed by an institutional biosafety committee, or IBC, a local institutional committee that reviews and oversees basic and clinical research conducted at that institution. The IBC assesses the safety of the research and identifies any potential risk to public health or the environment.

Clinical trials involve the administration of the biological product candidate to healthy volunteers or patients under the supervision of qualified investigators, generally physicians not employed by or under the trial sponsor's control. Clinical trials must be conducted and monitored in accordance with the FDA's regulations comprising the GCP requirements, including the requirement that all research patients provide informed consent.

Human clinical trials are typically conducted in three sequential phases that may overlap or be combined:

- *Phase 1.* The biological product is initially introduced into healthy human subjects and tested for safety. In the case of some products for severe or life-threatening diseases, especially when the product may be too inherently toxic to ethically administer to healthy volunteers, the initial human testing is often conducted in patients with the target disease or condition.
- *Phase 2.* The biological product is evaluated in a limited patient population to identify possible adverse effects and safety risks, to preliminarily evaluate the efficacy of the product for specific targeted diseases and to determine dosage tolerance, optimal dosage and dosing schedule.
- *Phase 3.* Clinical trials are undertaken to further evaluate dosage, clinical efficacy, potency, and safety in an expanded patient population, generally at geographically dispersed clinical trial

sites. These clinical trials are intended to generate enough data to statistically evaluate the efficacy and safety of the product for approval, to establish the overall risk to benefit profile of the product and to provide an adequate basis for product labeling.

Phase 1, Phase 2 and Phase 3 clinical trials may not be completed successfully within any specified period, if at all.

Post-approval clinical trials, sometimes referred to as Phase 4 clinical trials, may be conducted after initial marketing approval. These clinical trials are used to gain additional experience from the treatment of patients in the intended therapeutic indication, particularly for long-term safety follow-up.

During all phases of clinical development, regulatory agencies require extensive monitoring and auditing of all clinical activities, clinical data, and clinical trial investigators. Annual progress reports detailing the results of the clinical trials must be submitted to the FDA. Written IND safety reports must be promptly submitted to the FDA, the NIH and the investigators for serious and unexpected adverse events, any findings from other studies, tests in laboratory animals or *in vitro* testing that suggest a significant risk for human patients, or any clinically important increase in the rate of a serious suspected adverse reaction over that listed in the protocol or investigator brochure. The sponsor must submit an IND safety report within 15 calendar days after the sponsor determines that the information qualifies for reporting. The sponsor also must notify the FDA of any unexpected fatal or life-threatening suspected adverse reaction within seven calendar days after the sponsor's initial receipt of the information. The FDA or the sponsor or its data safety monitoring board, an independent group of experts that evaluates study data for safety and makes recommendations concerning continuation, modification, or termination of clinical trials, may suspend or terminate a clinical trial at any time on various grounds, including a finding that the research patients are being exposed to an unacceptable health risk, including risks inferred from other unrelated immunotherapy trials. Similarly, an IRB can suspend or terminate approval of a clinical trial at its institution if the clinical trial is not being conducted in accordance with the IRB's requirements or if the biological product has been associated with unexpected serious harm to patients.

Because this is a relatively new and expanding area of novel therapeutic interventions, there can be no assurance as to the length of the trial period, the number of patients the FDA will require to be enrolled in the trials in order to establish the safety, efficacy, purity and potency of immunotherapy products, or that the data generated in these trials will be acceptable to the FDA to support marketing approval.

Concurrently with clinical trials, companies usually complete additional nonclinical studies and must also develop additional information about the physical characteristics of the biological product as well as finalize a process for manufacturing the product in commercial quantities in accordance with cGMP requirements. To help reduce the risk of the introduction of adventitious agents with use of biological products, the PHSA emphasizes the importance of manufacturing control for products whose attributes cannot be precisely defined. The manufacturing process must be capable of consistently producing quality batches of the product candidate and, among other things, the sponsor must develop methods for testing the identity, strength, quality, potency and purity of the final biological product. Additionally, appropriate packaging must be selected and tested and stability studies must be conducted to demonstrate that the biological product candidate does not undergo unacceptable deterioration over its shelf life.

U.S. Review and Approval Processes

After the completion of clinical trials of a biological product, FDA approval of a BLA must be obtained before commercial marketing of the biological product. The BLA must include results of

product development, laboratory and animal studies, human trials, information on the manufacture and composition of the product, proposed labeling and other relevant information. The testing and approval processes require substantial time and effort and there can be no assurance that the FDA will accept the BLA for filing and, even if filed, that any approval will be granted on a timely basis, if at all as the FDA has significant discretion to approve or reject the BLA and to require additional preclinical or clinical studies.

Under the Prescription Drug User Fee Act, or PDUFA, as amended, each BLA must be accompanied by a significant user fee. The FDA adjusts the PDUFA user fees on an annual basis. PDUFA also imposes an annual program fee for approved biological products. Fee waivers or reductions are available in certain circumstances, including a waiver of the application fee for the first application filed by a small business. Additionally, no user fees are assessed on BLAs for products designated as orphan drugs, unless the product also includes a non-orphan indication.

Within 60 days following submission of the application, the FDA reviews a BLA submitted to determine if it is substantially complete before the agency accepts it for filing. The FDA may refuse to file any BLA that it deems incomplete or not properly reviewable at the time of submission and may request additional information. In this event, the BLA must be resubmitted with the additional information. The resubmitted application also is subject to review before the FDA accepts it for filing. Once the submission is accepted for filing, the FDA begins an in-depth substantive review of the BLA. The FDA reviews the BLA to determine, among other things, whether the proposed product is safe, potent, and/or effective for its intended use, and has an acceptable purity profile, and whether the product is being manufactured in accordance with cGMP to assure and preserve the product's identity, safety, strength, quality, potency and purity. The FDA may refer applications for novel biological products or biological products that present difficult questions of safety or efficacy to an advisory committee, typically a panel that includes clinicians and other experts, for review, evaluation and a recommendation as to whether the application should be approved and under what conditions. The FDA is not bound by the recommendations of an advisory committee, but it considers such recommendations carefully when making decisions. During the biological product approval process, the FDA also will determine whether a Risk Evaluation and Mitigation Strategy, or REMS, is necessary to ensure that the benefits of the product outweigh its risks and to assure the safe use of the biological product, which could include medication guides, physician communication plans, or elements to assure safe use, such as restricted distribution methods, patient registries and other risk minimization tools. FDA determines the requirement for a REMS, as well as the specific REMS provisions, on a case-by-case basis. If the FDA concludes a REMS is needed, the sponsor of the BLA must submit a proposed REMS. The FDA will not approve a BLA without a REMS, if required.

Before approving a BLA, the FDA will inspect the facilities at which the product is manufactured. The FDA will not approve the product unless it determines that the manufacturing processes and facilities are in compliance with cGMP requirements and adequate to assure consistent production of the product within required specifications. For immunotherapy products, the FDA also will not approve the product if the manufacturer is not in compliance with the GTPs, to the extent applicable. These are FDA regulations and guidance documents that govern the methods used in, and the facilities and controls used for, the manufacture of human cells, tissues, and cellular and tissue based products, or HCT/Ps, which are human cells or tissue intended for implantation, transplant, infusion, or transfer into a human recipient. The primary intent of the GTP requirements is to ensure that cell and tissue based products are manufactured in a manner designed to prevent the introduction, transmission and spread of communicable disease. FDA GTP regulations also require tissue establishments to register and list their HCT/Ps with the FDA and, when applicable, to evaluate donors through screening and testing. Additionally, before approving a BLA, the FDA will typically inspect one or more clinical sites to assure that the clinical trials were conducted in compliance with IND trial requirements and GCP requirements.

To assure cGMP, GTP and GCP compliance, an applicant must incur significant expenditure of time, money and effort in the areas of training, recordkeeping, production, and quality control.

Notwithstanding the submission of relevant data and information, the FDA may ultimately decide that the BLA does not satisfy its regulatory criteria for approval and deny approval. If the agency decides not to approve the BLA in its present form, the FDA will issue a Complete Response Letter, which generally outlines the specific deficiencies in the BLA identified by the FDA and may require additional clinical or other data or impose other conditions that must be met in order to secure final approval of the application. The deficiencies identified may be minor, for example, requiring labeling changes, or major, for example, requiring additional clinical trials. Even with the submission of additional information, the FDA may ultimately decide that the application does not satisfy the regulatory criteria for approval. If a Complete Response Letter is issued, the applicant may either resubmit the BLA, addressing all of the deficiencies identified in the letter, or withdraw the application.

If a product receives regulatory approval, the approval is limited to the conditions of use (*e.g.*, patient population, indication) described in the application.

Further, the FDA may require that certain contraindications, warnings or precautions be included in the product labeling, or otherwise limit the scope of any approval. In addition, the FDA may require post marketing clinical trials, sometimes referred to as Phase 4 clinical trials, designed to further assess a biological product's safety and effectiveness, and testing and surveillance programs to monitor the safety of approved products that have been commercialized. After approval, many types of changes to the approved product, such as adding new indications, manufacturing changes and additional labeling claims, are subject to further testing requirements and FDA review and approval.

In addition, under the Pediatric Research Equity Act, or PREA, a BLA or supplement to a BLA must contain data to assess the safety and effectiveness of the product for the claimed indications in all relevant pediatric subpopulations and to support dosing and administration for each pediatric subpopulation for which the product is safe and effective. The FDA may grant deferrals for submission of data or full or partial waivers.

Post-Approval Requirements

Any products for which we receive FDA approvals are subject to continuing regulation by the FDA, including, among other things, record-keeping requirements, reporting of adverse experiences with the product, providing the FDA with updated safety and efficacy information, product sampling and distribution requirements, and complying with FDA promotion and advertising requirements, which include, among others, standards for direct-to-consumer advertising, restrictions on promoting products for uses or in patient populations that are not described in the product's approved uses (known as "off-label use"), limitations on industry-sponsored scientific and educational activities, and requirements that important safety information and material facts related to the product be disclosed. Although physicians may prescribe legally available products for off-label uses, if the physicians deem to be appropriate in their professional medical judgment, manufacturers may not market or promote such off-label uses. The FDA and other agencies actively enforce the laws and regulations prohibiting the promotion of off-label uses, and a company that is found to have improperly promoted off-label uses may be subject to significant liability.

In addition, quality control and manufacturing procedures must continue to conform to applicable manufacturing requirements after approval to ensure the long-term stability of the product. We rely, and expect to continue to rely, on third parties for the production of clinical and commercial quantities of our products in accordance with cGMP regulations. cGMP regulations require among other things, quality control and quality assurance as well as the corresponding maintenance of records and

documentation and the obligation to investigate and correct any deviations from cGMP. Manufacturers and other entities involved in the manufacture and distribution of approved products are required to register their establishments with the FDA and certain state agencies, and are subject to periodic unannounced inspections by the FDA and certain state agencies for compliance with cGMP and other laws. Accordingly, manufacturers must continue to expend time, money, and effort in the area of production and quality control to maintain cGMP compliance. Discovery of problems with a product after approval may result in restrictions on a product, manufacturer, or holder of an approved BLA, including, among other things, recall or withdrawal of the product from the market.

The FDA also may require post-marketing testing, known as Phase 4 testing, and surveillance to monitor the effects of an approved product. Discovery of previously unknown problems with a product, including adverse events of unanticipated severity or frequency, with manufacturing processes, or the failure to comply with applicable FDA requirements can have negative consequences, including adverse publicity, judicial or administrative enforcement, complete withdrawal from the market, product recalls, warning letters from the FDA, mandated corrective advertising or communications with doctors, product seizure or detention, injunctions, and civil or criminal penalties, among others. Newly discovered or developed safety or effectiveness data may require changes to a product's approved labeling, including the addition of new warnings and contraindications, and also may require the implementation of other risk management measures. Also, new government requirements, including those resulting from new legislation, may be established, or the FDA's policies may change, which could delay or prevent regulatory approval of our products under development.

U.S. Marketing Exclusivity

The Biologics Price Competition and Innovation Act amended the PHSA to authorize the FDA to approve similar versions of innovative biologics, commonly known as biosimilars. Biosimilars are approved pursuant to an abbreviated pathway whereby applicants need not submit the full slate of preclinical and clinical data, and approval is based in part on the FDA's findings of safety, purity, and potency for the original biologic (i.e., the reference product). Original BLAs are eligible to receive 12 years of exclusivity from the time of first licensure of the product, which prevents the FDA from approving any biosimilars to the reference product through the abbreviated pathway, but does not prevent approval of BLAs that are accompanied by a full data package and that do not rely on the reference product. A biosimilar may be approved if the product is highly similar to the reference product notwithstanding minor differences in clinically inactive components and there are no clinically meaningful differences with the reference product in terms of the safety, purity, and potency.

Pediatric exclusivity is another type of regulatory market exclusivity in the United States. Pediatric exclusivity, if granted, adds six months to existing exclusivity periods and patent terms. This six-month exclusivity, which runs from the end of other exclusivity protection or patent term, may be granted based on the voluntary completion of a pediatric trial in accordance with an FDA-issued "Written Request" for such a trial.

Coverage, Pricing and Reimbursement

Significant uncertainty exists as to the coverage and reimbursement status of any product candidates for which we obtain regulatory approval. In the United States and markets in other countries, sales of any products for which we receive regulatory approval for commercial sale will depend, in significant part, on the extent to which third-party payors provide coverage, and establish adequate reimbursement levels for such products. In the United States, third-party payors include federal and state healthcare programs, private managed care providers, health insurers and other organizations. The process for determining whether a third-party payor will provide coverage for a product may be separate from the process for setting the price of a product or for establishing the

reimbursement rate that such a payor will pay for the product. Third-party payors may limit coverage to specific products on an approved list, also known as a formulary, which might not include all of the FDA-approved products for a particular indication. Third-party payors are increasingly challenging the price, examining the medical necessity of and reviewing the cost-effectiveness of medical products, therapies and services, in addition to questioning their safety and efficacy.

Reimbursement may impact the demand for, and/or the price of, any product candidate which obtains marketing approval. Even if coverage and reimbursement is obtained for a given product candidate by a third-party payor, the resulting reimbursement payment rates may not be adequate or may require co-payments that patients find unacceptably high. Patients who are prescribed medications for the treatment of their conditions, and their prescribing physicians, generally rely on third-party payors to reimburse all or part of the costs associated with those medications. Patients are unlikely to use a product, and physicians may be less likely to prescribe a product, unless coverage is provided and reimbursement is adequate to cover all or a significant portion of the cost of the product. Therefore, coverage and adequate reimbursement is critical to new drug product acceptance.

Different pricing and reimbursement schemes exist in other countries. In the EU, governments influence the price of pharmaceutical products through their pricing and reimbursement rules and control of national health care systems that fund a large part of the cost of those products to consumers. Some jurisdictions operate positive and negative list systems under which products may only be marketed once a reimbursement price has been agreed. To obtain reimbursement or pricing approval, some of these countries may require the completion of additional clinical trials that compare the cost-effectiveness of a particular product candidate to currently available therapies. Other member states allow companies to fix their own prices for medicines, but monitor and control company profits. In addition, in some countries, cross-border imports from low-priced markets exert a commercial pressure on pricing within a country.

The downward pressure on health care costs in general, particularly prescription drugs and biologics, has become very intense. Governments have shown significant interest in implementing cost-containment programs, including price controls, restrictions on reimbursement and requirements for substitution of generic products. As a result, increasingly high barriers are being erected to the entry of new products. The marketability of any product candidates for which we receive regulatory approval for commercial sale may suffer if the government and third-party payors fail to provide adequate coverage and reimbursement. In addition, emphasis on managed care in the United States has increased and we expect will continue to increase the pressure on healthcare pricing. Coverage policies and third-party reimbursement rates may change at any time. Even if favorable coverage and reimbursement status is attained for one or more products for which we receive regulatory approval, less favorable coverage policies and reimbursement rates may be implemented in the future.

Health Care Laws Governing Interactions with Healthcare Providers

In addition to FDA restrictions on marketing of pharmaceutical products, several other types of state and federal laws restrict our business activities, including certain marketing practices. These laws include, without limitation, anti-kickback laws, false claims laws, data privacy and security laws, as well as transparency laws regarding payments or other items of value provided to healthcare providers.

The federal healthcare program Anti-Kickback Statute prohibits, among other things, knowingly and willfully offering, paying, soliciting or receiving remuneration, directly or indirectly, in cash or in kind, to induce or reward, or in return for, purchasing, leasing, ordering or arranging for the purchase, lease or order of any healthcare item, good, facility or service reimbursable, in whole or in part, under Medicare, Medicaid or other federal healthcare programs. The term "remuneration" has been broadly interpreted to include anything of value. This statute has been interpreted to apply to arrangements

between pharmaceutical manufacturers on the one hand and prescribers, purchasers and formulary managers on the other hand. Although there are a number of statutory exceptions and regulatory safe harbors protecting certain common activities from prosecution or other regulatory sanctions, the exceptions and safe harbors are drawn narrowly, and practices that involve remuneration that are alleged to be intended to induce prescribing, purchases or recommendations may be subject to scrutiny if they do not qualify for an exception or safe harbor. Failure to meet all of the requirements of a particular applicable statutory exception or regulatory safe harbor does not make the conduct per se illegal under the federal healthcare program Anti-Kickback Statute. Instead, the legality of the arrangement will be evaluated on a case-by-case basis based on a cumulative review of all its facts and circumstances. Several courts have interpreted the statute's intent requirement to mean that if any one purpose of an arrangement involving remuneration is to induce referrals of federal healthcare covered business, the federal healthcare program Anti-Kickback Statute has been violated. Additionally, the intent standard under the federal healthcare program Anti-Kickback Statute was amended by the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act of 2010, as amended by the Health Care and Education Reconciliation Act of 2010, collectively the Affordable Care Act, or ACA, to a stricter standard such that a person or entity no longer needs to have actual knowledge of the statute or specific intent to violate it in order to have committed a violation. In addition, the ACA codified case law that a claim including items or services resulting from a violation of the federal healthcare program Anti-Kickback Statute constitutes a false or fraudulent claim for purposes of the federal civil False Claims Act.

Federal false claims laws, including the civil False Claims Act, and civil monetary penalties laws, prohibit any person or entity from, among other things, knowingly presenting, or causing to be presented, a false claim for payment to the federal government, or knowingly making, or causing to be made, a false statement to have a false claim paid. Pharmaceutical and other healthcare companies have been prosecuted under these laws for, among other things, allegedly inflating drug prices they report to pricing services, which in turn were used by the government to set Medicare and Medicaid reimbursement rates, and for allegedly providing free product to customers with the expectation that the customers would bill federal programs for the product. In addition, certain marketing practices, including off-label promotion, may also violate false claims laws. Further, pharmaceutical manufacturers can be held liable under the False Claims Act even when they do not submit claims directly to government payors if they are deemed to "cause" the submission of false or fraudulent claims. Criminal prosecution is also possible for making or presenting a false, fictitious or fraudulent claim to the federal government.

The federal Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996, or HIPAA, created new federal criminal statutes that prohibit among other actions, knowingly and willfully executing, or attempting to execute, a scheme to defraud any healthcare benefit program, including private third-party payors, knowingly and willfully embezzling or stealing from a healthcare benefit program, willfully obstructing a criminal investigation of a healthcare offense, and knowingly and willfully falsifying, concealing or covering up a material fact or making any materially false, fictitious or fraudulent statement in connection with the delivery of or payment for healthcare benefits, items or services. Like the federal healthcare program Anti-Kickback Statute, the ACA amended the intent standard for certain healthcare fraud under HIPAA such that a person or entity no longer needs to have actual knowledge of the statute or specific intent to violate it in order to have committed a violation.

In addition, we may be subject to data privacy and security regulation by both the federal government and the states in which we conduct our business. HIPAA, as amended by the Health Information Technology for Economic and Clinical Health Act, or HITECH, and its implementing regulations, imposes certain requirements on "covered entities," including certain healthcare providers, health plans and healthcare clearinghouses, as well as their respective "business associates" that create, receive, maintain or transmit individually identifiable health information for or on behalf of a

covered entity, relating to the privacy, security, transmission and breach of individually identifiable health information. Further, HITECH also created four new tiers of civil monetary penalties, amended HIPAA to make civil and criminal penalties directly applicable to business associates, and gave state attorneys general new authority to file civil actions for damages or injunctions in U.S. federal courts to enforce the federal HIPAA laws and seek attorneys' fees and costs associated with pursuing federal civil actions.

Additionally, the federal Physician Payments Sunshine Act, created under the ACA, and its implementing regulations, require certain manufacturers of drugs, devices, biologics and medical supplies for which payment is available under Medicare, Medicaid or the Children's Health Insurance Program (with certain exceptions) to report information related to certain payments or other transfers of value provided to physicians (defined to include doctors, dentists, optometrists, podiatrists and chiropractors) and teaching hospitals, or to entities or individuals at the request of, or designated on behalf of, the physicians and teaching hospitals and to report annually certain ownership and investment interests held by physicians and their immediate family members.

Finally, the majority of states also have statutes or regulations similar to the aforementioned federal laws, some of which are broader in scope and apply to items and services reimbursed under Medicaid and other state programs, or, in several states, apply regardless of the payor. Some state laws require pharmaceutical companies to comply with the pharmaceutical industry's voluntary compliance guidelines and the relevant compliance guidance promulgated by the federal government in addition to requiring drug manufacturers to report information related to payments to clinicians and other healthcare providers or marketing expenditures. Some states and local jurisdictions require the registration of pharmaceutical sales representatives. State and foreign laws also govern the privacy and security of health information in some circumstances, many of which differ from each other in significant ways and often are not preempted by HIPAA, thus complicating compliance efforts.

Because of the breadth of these laws and the narrowness of their exceptions and safe harbors, it is possible that business activities can be subject to challenge under one or more of such laws. The scope and enforcement of each of these laws is uncertain and subject to rapid change in the current environment of healthcare reform, especially in light of the lack of applicable precedent and regulations. Federal and state enforcement bodies have recently increased their scrutiny of interactions between healthcare companies and healthcare providers, which has led to a number of investigations, prosecutions, convictions and settlements in the healthcare industry.

Ensuring that business arrangements with third parties comply with applicable healthcare laws and regulations is costly and time consuming. If business operations are found to be in violation of any of the laws described above or any other applicable governmental regulations a pharmaceutical manufacturer may be subject to penalties, including civil, criminal and administrative penalties, damages, fines, disgorgement, individual imprisonment, exclusion from governmental funded healthcare programs, such as Medicare and Medicaid, contractual damages, reputational harm, diminished profits and future earnings, additional reporting obligations and oversight if subject to a corporate integrity agreement or other agreement to resolve allegations of non-compliance with these laws, and curtailment or restructuring of operations, any of which could adversely affect a pharmaceutical manufacturer's ability to operate its business and the results of its operations.

Healthcare Reform Efforts

A primary trend in the United States healthcare industry and elsewhere is cost containment. Over the last several years, there have been federal and state proposals and legislation enacted regarding the pricing of pharmaceutical and biopharmaceutical products, limiting coverage and reimbursement for drugs and other medical products, and making changes to healthcare financing and the delivery of care in the United States.

In March 2010, the ACA was enacted, which includes measures that have significantly changed health care financing by both governmental and private insurers. The provisions of the ACA of importance to the pharmaceutical and biotechnology industry are, among others, the following:

- an annual, nondeductible fee on any entity that manufactures or imports certain branded prescription drug agents or biologic agents, which is apportioned among these entities according to their market share in certain government healthcare programs;
- an increase in the rebates a manufacturer must pay under the Medicaid Drug Rebate Program to 23.1% and 13% of the average manufacturer price for branded and generic drugs, respectively;
- a new Medicare Part D coverage gap discount program, in which manufacturers must agree to offer 50% (70% commencing January 1, 2019) point-of-sale discounts to negotiated prices of applicable brand drugs to eligible beneficiaries during their coverage gap period, as a condition for the manufacturer's outpatient drugs to be covered under Medicare Part D;
- extension of manufacturers' Medicaid rebate liability to covered drugs dispensed to individuals who are enrolled in Medicaid managed care organizations, unless the drug is subject to discounts under the 340B drug discount program;
- a new methodology by which rebates owed by manufacturers under the Medicaid Drug Rebate Program are calculated for drugs that are inhaled, infused, instilled, implanted or injected;
- expansion of eligibility criteria for Medicaid programs by, among other things, allowing states to offer Medicaid coverage to additional individuals and by adding new mandatory eligibility categories for certain individuals with income at or below 133% of the federal poverty level, thereby potentially increasing manufacturers' Medicaid rebate liability;
- expansion of the entities eligible for discounts under the Public Health Service pharmaceutical pricing program;
- new requirements under the federal Physician Payments Sunshine Act for drug manufacturers to report information related to payments and other transfers of value made to physicians and teaching hospitals as well as ownership or investment interests held by physicians and their immediate family members;
- a new Patient-Centered Outcomes Research Institute to oversee, identify priorities in, and conduct comparative clinical effectiveness research, along with funding for such research;
- establishment of a Center for Medicare and Medicaid Innovation at CMS to test innovative payment and service delivery models to lower Medicare and Medicaid spending, potentially including prescription drug spending; and
- a licensure framework for follow on biologic products.

Some of the provisions of the ACA have yet to be implemented, and there have been legal and political challenges to certain aspects of the ACA. Since January 2017, President Trump has signed two executive orders and other directives designed to delay, circumvent or loosen certain requirements mandated by the ACA. Concurrently, Congress has considered legislation that would repeal or repeal and replace all or part of the ACA. While Congress has not passed repeal legislation, two bills affecting the implementation of certain taxes under the ACA have been signed into law. H.R. 1: An Act to provide for reconciliation pursuant to titles II and V of the concurrent resolution on the budget for fiscal year 2018, or the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act of 2017, includes a provision repealing, effective January 1, 2019, the tax-based shared responsibility payment imposed by the ACA on certain individuals who fail to maintain qualifying health coverage for all or part of a year that is commonly referred to as the "individual mandate". Additionally, on January 22, 2018, President Trump signed a continuing

resolution on appropriations for fiscal year 2018 that delayed the implementation of certain ACA-mandated fees, including the so-called “Cadillac” tax on certain high cost employer-sponsored insurance plans, the annual fee imposed on certain health insurance providers based on market share, and the medical device excise tax on non-exempt medical devices. Further, the Bipartisan Budget Act of 2018, among other things, amends the ACA, effective January 1, 2019, to increase from 50% to 70% the point-of-sale discount that is owed by pharmaceutical manufacturers who participate in Medicare Part D and to close the coverage gap in most Medicare drug plans, commonly referred to as the “donut hole”. Congress may consider other legislation to repeal or replace elements of the ACA.

In addition, other federal health reform measures have been proposed and adopted in the United States since the ACA was enacted. For example, as a result of the Budget Control Act of 2011, providers are subject to Medicare payment reductions of 2% per fiscal year through 2027 unless additional Congressional action is taken. Further, the American Taxpayer Relief Act of 2012 reduced Medicare payments to several providers and increased the statute of limitations period for the government to recover overpayments from providers from three to five years. The Medicare Access and CHIP Reauthorization Act of 2015 also introduced a quality payment program under which certain individual Medicare providers will be subject to certain incentives or penalties based on new program quality standards. Payment adjustments for the Medicare quality payment program will begin in 2019. At this time, it is unclear how the introduction of the quality payment program will impact overall physician reimbursement under the Medicare program.

Further, there has been heightened governmental scrutiny in the United States of pharmaceutical pricing practices in light of the rising cost of prescription drugs and biologics. Such scrutiny has resulted in several recent Congressional inquiries and proposed and enacted federal and state legislation designed to, among other things, bring more transparency to product pricing, review the relationship between pricing and manufacturer patient programs, and reform government program reimbursement methodologies for products. Congress and the Trump administration have each indicated that it will continue to seek new legislative and/or administrative measures to control drug costs. At the state level, legislatures have increasingly enacted legislation and implemented regulations designed to control pharmaceutical and biological product pricing, including price or patient reimbursement constraints, discounts, restrictions on certain product access and marketing cost disclosure and transparency measures, and, in some cases, designed to encourage importation from other countries and bulk purchasing. In addition, regional healthcare authorities and individual hospitals are increasingly using bidding procedures to determine what pharmaceutical products and which suppliers will be included in their prescription drug and other healthcare programs. These measures could reduce the ultimate demand for our products, once approved, or put pressure on our product pricing.

U.S. Foreign Corrupt Practices Act, U.K. Bribery Act and Other Laws

The Foreign Corrupt Practices Act, or the FCPA, prohibits any U.S. individual or business from paying, offering, or authorizing payment or offering of anything of value, directly or indirectly, to any foreign official, political party or candidate for the purpose of influencing any act or decision of the foreign entity in order to assist the individual or business in obtaining or retaining business. The FCPA also obligates companies whose securities are listed in the United States to comply with accounting provisions requiring the company to maintain books and records that accurately and fairly reflect all transactions of the corporation, including international subsidiaries, and to devise and maintain an adequate system of internal accounting controls for international operations. Activities that violate the FCPA, even if they occur wholly outside the United States, can result in criminal and civil fines, imprisonment, disgorgement, oversight, and debarment from government contracts.

Our operations are also subject to non-U.S. anti-corruption laws such as the U.K. Bribery Act 2010, or the Bribery Act. As with the FCPA, these laws generally prohibit us and our employees and

intermediaries from authorizing, promising, offering, or providing, directly or indirectly, improper or prohibited payments, or anything else of value, to government officials or other persons to obtain or retain business or gain some other business advantage. Under the Bribery Act, we may also be liable for failing to prevent a person associated with us from committing a bribery offense.

We are also subject to other laws and regulations governing our international operations, including regulations administered by the governments of the United Kingdom and the United States and authorities in the European Union, including applicable export control regulations, economic sanctions and embargoes on certain countries and persons, anti-money laundering laws, import and customs requirements and currency exchange regulations, collectively referred to as trade control laws.

Failure to comply with the Bribery Act, the FCPA and other anti-corruption laws and trade control laws could subject us to criminal and civil penalties, disgorgement and other sanctions and remedial measures, and legal expenses.

Review and Approval of New Drug Products in the European Union

In the European Union, medicinal products, including advanced therapy medicinal products, or ATMPs, are subject to extensive pre- and post-market regulation by regulatory authorities at both the European Union and national levels. ATMPs comprise gene therapy products, somatic-cell therapy products and tissue engineered products, which are cells or tissues that have undergone substantial manipulation and that are administered to human beings in order to regenerate, repair or replace a human tissue. We anticipate that our T cell therapy products will be regulated as ATMPs in the European Union. There is legislation at a European Union level relating to the standards of quality and safety for the collection and testing of human blood and blood components for use in cell based therapies, which could apply to our products. Additionally, there may be local legislation in various European Union Member States, which may be more restrictive than the European Union legislation, and we would need to comply with such legislation to the extent it applies.

Clinical Trials

Clinical trials of medicinal products in the European Union must be conducted in accordance with European Union and national regulations and the International Conference on Harmonization, or ICH, guidelines on Good Clinical Practices, or GCP. Additional GCP guidelines from the European Commission, focusing in particular on traceability, apply to clinical trials of ATMPs. The sponsor must take out a clinical trial insurance policy, and in most European Union countries, the sponsor is liable to provide “no fault” compensation to any study subject injured in the clinical trial.

Prior to commencing a clinical trial, the sponsor must obtain a clinical trial authorization from the competent authority, and a positive opinion from an independent ethics committee. The application for a clinical trial authorization must include, among other things, a copy of the trial protocol and an investigational medicinal product dossier containing information about the manufacture and quality of the medicinal product under investigation. Currently, clinical trial authorization applications must be submitted to the competent authority in each EU Member State in which the trial will be conducted. Under the new Regulation on Clinical Trials, which is currently expected to take effect in October 2018, there will be a centralized application procedure where one national authority takes the lead in reviewing the application and the other national authorities have only a limited involvement. Any substantial changes to the trial protocol or other information submitted with the clinical trial applications must be notified to or approved by the relevant competent authorities and ethics committees. Medicines used in clinical trials must be manufactured in accordance with cGMP. Other national and European Union-wide regulatory requirements also apply.

During the development of a medicinal product, the EMA and national medicines regulators within the European Union provide the opportunity for dialogue and guidance on the development program. At the EMA level, this is usually done in the form of scientific advice, which is given by the Scientific Advice Working Party of the Committee for Medicinal Products for Human Use, or CHMP. A fee is incurred with each scientific advice procedure. Advice from the EMA is typically provided based on questions concerning, for example, quality (chemistry, manufacturing and controls testing), nonclinical testing and clinical studies, and pharmacovigilance plans and risk-management programs. Given the current stage of the development of our product candidates, we have not yet sought any such advice from the EMA. However, to the extent that we do obtain such scientific advice in the future, such advice will, in accordance with the EMA's policy, be not legally binding with regard to any future marketing authorization application of the product concerned.

Marketing Authorizations

In order to market a new medicinal product in the European Union, a company must submit and obtain approval from regulators of a marketing authorization application, or MAA. The process for doing this depends, among other things, on the nature of the medicinal product.

The centralized procedure results in a single marketing authorization, or MA, granted by the European Commission that is valid across the EEA (i.e., the European Union as well as Iceland, Liechtenstein and Norway). The centralized procedure is compulsory for human drugs that are: (i) derived from biotechnology processes, such as genetic engineering, (ii) contain a new active substance indicated for the treatment of certain diseases, such as HIV/AIDS, cancer, diabetes, neurodegenerative diseases, autoimmune and other immune dysfunctions and viral diseases, (iii) officially designated orphan medicines and (iv) advanced-therapy medicines, such as gene therapy, somatic cell therapy or tissue-engineered medicines. The centralized procedure may at the request of the applicant also be used in certain other cases. Therefore, the centralized procedure would be mandatory for the products we are developing.

The Committee for Advanced Therapies, or CAT, is responsible in conjunction with the CHMP for the evaluation of ATMPs. The CAT is primarily responsible for the scientific evaluation of ATMPs and prepares a draft opinion on the quality, safety and efficacy of each ATMP for which a marketing authorization application is submitted. The CAT's opinion is then taken into account by the CHMP when giving its final recommendation regarding the authorization of a product in view of the balance of benefits and risks identified. Although the CAT's draft opinion is submitted to the CHMP for final approval, the CHMP may depart from the draft opinion, if it provides detailed scientific justification. The CHMP and CAT are also responsible for providing guidelines on ATMPs and have published numerous guidelines, including specific guidelines on gene therapies and cell therapies. These guidelines provide additional guidance on the factors that the EMA will consider in relation to the development and evaluation of ATMPs and include, among other things, the preclinical studies required to characterize ATMPs; the manufacturing and control information that should be submitted in a marketing authorization application; and post-approval measures required to monitor patients and evaluate the long term efficacy and potential adverse reactions of ATMPs. Although these guidelines are not legally binding, we believe that our compliance with them is likely necessary to gain and maintain approval for any of our product candidates.

Under the centralized procedure in the European Union, the maximum timeframe for the evaluation of an MAA by the EMA is 210 days. This excludes so-called clock stops, during which additional written or oral information is to be provided by the applicant in response to questions asked by the CHMP. At the end of the review period, the CHMP provides an opinion to the European Commission. If this is opinion favorable, the Commission may then adopt a decision to grant an MA. In exceptional cases, the CHMP might perform an accelerated review of an MAA in no more than 150

days. This is usually when the product is of major interest from the point of view of public health and, in particular, from the viewpoint of therapeutic innovation.

The European Commission may grant a so-called “marketing authorization under exceptional circumstances”. Such authorization is intended for products for which the applicant can demonstrate that it is unable to provide comprehensive data on the efficacy and safety under normal conditions of use, because the indications for which the product in question is intended are encountered so rarely that the applicant cannot reasonably be expected to provide comprehensive evidence, or in the present state of scientific knowledge, comprehensive information cannot be provided, or it would be contrary to generally accepted principles of medical ethics to collect such information. Consequently, marketing authorization under exceptional circumstances may be granted subject to certain specific obligations, which may include the following:

- the applicant must complete an identified program of studies within a time period specified by the competent authority, the results of which form the basis of a reassessment of the benefit/risk profile;
- the medicinal product in question may be supplied on medical prescription only and may in certain cases be administered only under strict medical supervision, possibly in a hospital and in the case of a radiopharmaceutical, by an authorized person; and
- the package leaflet and any medical information must draw the attention of the medical practitioner to the fact that the particulars available concerning the medicinal product in question are as yet inadequate in certain specified respects.

A marketing authorization under exceptional circumstances is subject to annual review to reassess the risk-benefit balance in an annual reassessment procedure. Continuation of the authorization is linked to the annual reassessment and a negative assessment could potentially result in the marketing authorization being suspended or revoked. The renewal of a marketing authorization of a medicinal product under exceptional circumstances, however, follows the same rules as a “normal” marketing authorization. Thus, a marketing authorization under exceptional circumstances is granted for an initial five years, after which the authorization will become valid indefinitely, unless the EMA decides that safety grounds merit one additional five-year renewal.

The European Commission may also grant a so-called “conditional marketing authorization” prior to obtaining the comprehensive clinical data required for an application for a full marketing authorization. Such conditional marketing authorizations may be granted for product candidates (including medicines designated as orphan medicinal products), if (i) the risk-benefit balance of the product candidate is positive, (ii) it is likely that the applicant will be in a position to provide the required comprehensive clinical trial data, (iii) the product fulfills an unmet medical need and (iv) the benefit to public health of the immediate availability on the market of the medicinal product concerned outweighs the risk inherent in the fact that additional data are still required. A conditional marketing authorization may contain specific obligations to be fulfilled by the marketing authorization holder, including obligations with respect to the completion of ongoing or new studies, and with respect to the collection of pharmacovigilance data. Conditional marketing authorizations are valid for one year, and may be renewed annually, if the risk-benefit balance remains positive, and after an assessment of the need for additional or modified conditions and/or specific obligations. The timelines for the centralized procedure described above also apply with respect to the review by the CHMP of applications for a conditional marketing authorization.

The European Union medicines rules expressly permit the EU Member States to adopt national legislation prohibiting or restricting the sale, supply or use of any medicinal product containing, consisting of or derived from a specific type of human or animal cell, such as embryonic stem cells.

While the products we have in development do not make use of embryonic stem cells, it is possible that the national laws in certain EU Member States may prohibit or restrict us from commercializing our products, even if they have been granted an EU marketing authorization.

Data Exclusivity

Marketing authorization applications for generic medicinal products do not need to include the results of preclinical and clinical trials, but instead can refer to the data included in the marketing authorization of a reference product for which regulatory data exclusivity has expired. If a marketing authorization is granted for a medicinal product containing a new active substance, that product benefits from eight years of data exclusivity, during which generic marketing authorization applications referring to the data of that product may not be accepted by the regulatory authorities, and a further two years of market exclusivity, during which such generic products may not be placed on the market. The two-year period may be extended to three years if during the first eight years a new therapeutic indication with significant clinical benefit over existing therapies is approved.

There is a special regime for biosimilars, or biological medicinal products that are similar to a reference medicinal product but that do not meet the definition of a generic medicinal product, for example, because of differences in raw materials or manufacturing processes. For such products, the results of appropriate preclinical or clinical trials must be provided, and guidelines from the EMA detail the type of quantity of supplementary data to be provided for different types of biological product. There are no such guidelines for complex biological products, such as gene or cell therapy medicinal products, and so it is unlikely that biosimilars of those products will currently be approved in the European Union. However, guidance from the EMA states that they will be considered in the future in light of the scientific knowledge and regulatory experience gained at the time.

Pediatric Development

In the European Union, companies developing a new medicinal product must agree to a Paediatric Investigation Plan, or PIP, with the EMA and must conduct pediatric clinical trials in accordance with that PIP, unless a deferral or waiver applies, (e.g., because the relevant disease or condition occurs only in adults). The marketing authorization application for the product must include the results of pediatric clinical trials conducted in accordance with the PIP, unless a waiver applies, or a deferral has been granted, in which case the pediatric clinical trials must be completed at a later date. Products that are granted a marketing authorization on the basis of the pediatric clinical trials conducted in accordance with the PIP are eligible for a six month extension of the protection under a supplementary protection certificate (if any is in effect at the time of approval) or, in the case of orphan medicinal products, a two year extension of the orphan market exclusivity. This pediatric reward is subject to specific conditions and is not automatically available when data in compliance with the PIP are developed and submitted.

Post-Approval Controls

The holder of a marketing authorization must establish and maintain a pharmacovigilance system and appoint an individual qualified person for pharmacovigilance, or QPPV, who is responsible for oversight of that system. Key obligations include expedited reporting of suspected serious adverse reactions and submission of periodic safety update reports, or PSURs.

All new marketing authorization applications must include a risk management plan, or RMP, describing the risk management system that the company will put in place and documenting measures to prevent or minimize the risks associated with the product. The regulatory authorities may also impose specific obligations as a condition of the marketing authorization. Such risk-minimization

measures or post-authorization obligations may include additional safety monitoring, more frequent submission of PSURs, or the conduct of additional clinical trials or post-authorization safety studies. RMPs and PSURs are routinely available to third parties requesting access, subject to limited redactions. All advertising and promotional activities for the product must be consistent with the approved summary of product characteristics, and therefore all off-label promotion is prohibited. Direct-to-consumer advertising of prescription medicines is also prohibited in the European Union. Although general requirements for advertising and promotion of medicinal products are established under EU directives, the details are governed by regulations in each EU Member State and can differ from one country to another.

Pricing and Reimbursement in the European Union

Governments influence the price of medicinal products in the European Union through their pricing and reimbursement rules and control of national healthcare systems that fund a large part of the cost of those products to consumers. Some jurisdictions operate positive and negative list systems under which products may only be marketed once a reimbursement price has been agreed. To obtain reimbursement or pricing approval, some of these countries may require the completion of clinical trials that compare the cost-effectiveness of a particular product candidate to currently available therapies. Other EU Member States allow companies to fix their own prices for medicines, but monitor and control company profits. The downward pressure on healthcare costs in general, particularly prescription medicines, has become very intense. As a result, increasingly high barriers are being erected to the entry of new products.

Brexit and the Regulatory Framework in the United Kingdom

On June 23, 2016, the electorate in the United Kingdom voted in favor of leaving the European Union (commonly referred to as "Brexit"). Thereafter, on March 29, 2017, the country formally notified the European Union of its intention to withdraw pursuant to Article 50 of the Lisbon Treaty. The withdrawal of the United Kingdom from the European Union is expected to take effect either on the effective date of the withdrawal agreement to be negotiated by the parties or, in the absence of agreement, two years after the United Kingdom provided the notice of withdrawal pursuant to the Treaty on European Union, or on March 29, 2019. Since the regulatory framework for pharmaceutical products in the United Kingdom covering quality, safety and efficacy of pharmaceutical products, clinical trials, marketing authorization, commercial sales and distribution of pharmaceutical products is derived from European Union directives and regulations, immediately following Brexit, it is expected that the United Kingdom's regulatory regime will remain aligned to European regulations. It remains to be seen how, if at all, Brexit will impact regulatory requirements for product candidates and products in the United Kingdom. In the longer term, Brexit could materially impact the future regulatory regime which applies to products and the approval of product candidates in the United Kingdom.

Employees

As of April 15, 2018, we had 126 employees, 59 of whom hold Ph.D. or M.D. degrees. Of these 126 employees, 107 are engaged in research and development activities and 19 are engaged in business development, finance, information systems, facilities, human resources or administrative support. None of our employees is subject to a collective bargaining agreement. We consider our relationship with our employees to be good.

At each date shown, we had the following number of employees engaged in either administrative or research and development functions, as indicated below.

	AT SEPTEMBER 30,			AT APRIL 15,
	2015	2016	2017	2018
Function:				
Administrative	4	9	14	19
Research and development	20	53	86	107
Total	24	62	100	126
Geography:				
United Kingdom	24	61	99	123
European Union	—	1	1	—
United States	—	—	—	3

Facilities

Our corporate headquarters are located in London, United Kingdom, where we lease approximately 700 square meters of office space. The lease commenced on September 11, 2015 and has a ten-year initial term expiring September 10, 2025. We believe that our existing facilities are adequate for our near-term needs, and we believe that suitable additional or alternative office and manufacturing space will be available as required in the future on commercially reasonable terms.

Legal Proceedings

From time to time, we may be involved in various claims and legal proceedings relating to claims arising out of our operations. We are not currently a party to any legal proceedings that, in the opinion of our management, are likely to have a material adverse effect on our business. Regardless of outcome, litigation can have an adverse impact on us because of defense and settlement costs, diversion of management resources and other factors.

MANAGEMENT

The following table sets forth information regarding our senior management and directors, including their ages as of April 30, 2018.

NAME	AGE	POSITION(S)
Senior Management:		
Christian Itin, Ph.D.	53	Chief Executive Officer and Chairman of the Board of Directors
Martin Pulé, MBBS ⁽¹⁾	45	Senior Vice President, Founder, Chief Scientific Officer and Director
Muhammad Al-Hajj, Ph.D.	47	Senior Vice President, Translational Sciences
Jim Faulkner, Ph.D.	52	Senior Vice President, Head of Product Delivery
Vijay Peddareddigari, M.D.	46	Senior Vice President, Chief Medical Officer
Christopher Vann	53	Senior Vice President, Chief Operating Officer
Matthias Alder	53	Senior Vice President, Chief Business Officer and General Counsel
Neil Bell	60	Senior Vice President, Head of Clinical Operations
Andrew Oakley ⁽²⁾	56	Senior Vice President, Chief Financial Officer (Nominee)
Non-Executive Directors:		
Joseph Anderson, Ph.D.	58	Director
Linda Bain	47	Director
John Berriman	70	Director
Cynthia Butitta	63	Director
Kapil Dhingra, M.D.	58	Director
Edward Hodgkin, D.Phil. ⁽¹⁾	54	Director
Martin Murphy, Ph.D.	49	Director

- (1) Drs. Pulé and Hodgkin will resign from the board of directors contingent upon, and effective immediately prior to, the effectiveness of the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part.
- (2) Mr. Oakley is nominated to serve as our Senior Vice President, Chief Financial Officer and will assume this role prior to the completion of this offering.

Senior Management

Christian Itin, Ph.D. has served as our Chief Executive Officer since March 2016 and as Chairman of our board of directors since October 2014. Prior to joining Autolus, Dr. Itin served as chief executive officer and chairman of the board of directors at Cytos Biotechnology Ltd, a biotechnology company, from November 2012 until it merged with Kuros Biosurgery Holding Ltd in January 2016, and he now serves as chairman of the board of directors of the merged entity, renamed Kuros Biosciences Ltd. Prior to that, Dr. Itin served as president, chief executive officer and director of Micromet, Inc., a biopharmaceutical company, from 2006 until it was acquired by Amgen Inc. in 2012. From 1999 until 2006, he served in a number of capacities with Micromet, Inc.'s subsidiary, Micromet AG, including head of IP and licensing, vice president of business and corporate development, chief business officer and ultimately as its chief executive officer. Before joining Micromet, Dr. Itin was a co-founder of Zyomyx, a protein chip company. Dr. Itin also serves as a non-executive director of Kymab Ltd., a privately held biopharmaceutical company. Dr. Itin received a Diploma in Biology and a Ph.D. in Cell Biology from the University of Basel, Switzerland. In addition, he also performed post-doctoral research at the Biocenter of University of Basel and at the Stanford University School of Medicine. We believe

that Dr. Itin is qualified to serve on our board of directors because of his deep knowledge of our company and his extensive experience serving in executive leadership positions at other public and private biotechnology companies.

Martin Pulé, MBBS has served as our Senior Vice President, Founder and Chief Scientific Officer and a member of our board of directors since August 2014. Dr. Pulé has served as a clinical senior lecturer in the Department of Haematology at University College London Cancer Institute since 2010 and as an Honorary Consultant in Haematology at University College London Hospital since 2010. He entered the T cell engineering field in 2001 as a travelling Fulbright Scholar at the Center for Cell and Gene Therapy at Baylor College of Medicine, Houston, Texas. Dr. Pulé holds a Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery (MBBS) from University College Dublin and is a Fellow of the Royal College of Pathologists. Dr. Pulé will resign from the board of directors contingent upon, and effective immediately prior to, the effectiveness of the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part.

Muhammad Al-Hajj, Ph.D. has served as our Senior Vice President, Translational Sciences since July 2017. Prior to this, he served as vice president, discovery and translational medicine at Sanford Burnham Medical Institute from July 2015 to July 2017. Prior to that, he served as senior director, biology and translational medicine in oncology research and development at GlaxoSmithKline plc from 2009 to June 2015. His other experience at large pharmaceutical companies includes serving as group leader in oncology research and development at AstraZeneca AB from 2007 to 2009 and as lab head and group leader in oncology research and development at Novartis from 2003 to 2007. Dr. Al-Hajj earned his B.S. in mathematics and biology from the American University of Beirut. He holds a Ph.D. in molecular genetics from the Wayne State University and completed a postdoctoral fellowship in cancer and stem cell biology at the University of Michigan Medical School.

Jim Faulkner, Ph.D. has served as our Senior Vice President, Head of Product Delivery since March 2015. Prior to this, he served in various roles of increasing responsibility in the biopharmaceutical research and development unit at GlaxoSmithKline plc from 1998 to February 2015, most recently as its vice president of manufacturing and supply in the Rare Diseases Unit, where his role focused on the *ex vivo* autologous gene therapy portfolio, therapeutic oligonucleotides and monoclonal antibodies. Dr. Faulkner holds a B.Sc. in biotechnology from the University of Leeds and a Ph.D. in molecular biology in association with the University of Kent.

Vijay Peddareddigari, M.D. has served as our Senior Vice President, Chief Medical Officer since March 2016. Prior to this, Dr. Peddareddigari served as senior director and clinical leader at Janssen Oncology (Johnson & Johnson) from August 2013 to February 2016, specializing in early and mid-stage clinical development. Prior to this, he worked at GlaxoSmithKline plc from October 2009 to July 2013, working and leading numerous programs in different areas of oncology such as signal transduction, cancer epigenetics and immune oncology from pre-candidate selection stage up to late development. At GlaxoSmithKline, as the lead early development physician on the MEK inhibitor (Trametinib) program, he was responsible for the transition to late stage development, leading to subsequent approval of the product candidate for treatment of metastatic melanoma. Dr. Peddareddigari served as an adjunct assistant professor of thoracic medical oncology, hematology-oncology division at the Hospital of the University of Pennsylvania from July 2010 until January 2016. Dr. Peddareddigari holds a Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery (MBBS) from Sri Venkateshwara Medical College in Tirupati, India and his M.D. in Biochemistry and Molecular Biology from All India Institute of Medical Sciences in New Delhi, India. He also completed a residency in internal medicine at Albert Einstein Medical Center and a fellowship in medical oncology at the University of Texas MD Anderson Cancer Center.

Christopher Vann has served as our Senior Vice President, Chief Operating Officer since October 2016. Prior to this, he worked at Hoffmann-La Roche's Swiss headquarters from February 1994 to

September 2016, most recently serving as its commercial director from December 2011 to September 2016 where he was primarily responsible for leading the lung cancer commercial team and general management of the Tarceva brand. Mr. Vann has significant experience of global lifecycle management of oncology products as well as implementing marketing strategy at a regional and national level. This includes launching several oncology, immunology and transplant products in the United States, United Kingdom, Romania, Russia, South Africa and countries in Asia, including Japan. Mr. Vann holds a B.S. in Toxicology and Pharmacology from the School of Pharmacy, University of London.

Matthias Alder has served as our Senior Vice President, Chief Business Officer and General Counsel since July 2017. Prior to this, he served as executive vice president for business development and licensing from October 2014 to March 2017 and as general counsel and corporate secretary from May 2015 to July 2017 at Sucampo Pharmaceuticals, Inc., a biopharmaceutical company which was subsequently acquired by Mallinckrodt Pharmaceuticals. Prior to this, Mr. Alder served as executive vice president of corporate development and legal affairs and corporate secretary at Cytos Biotechnology AG, a biopharmaceutical company focused on the development of targeted immunotherapies, from 2013 to October 2014. From 2006 to 2012, Mr. Alder held various executive management roles at Micromet, Inc., serving as senior vice president for administration, general counsel and secretary at the time of the acquisition of Micromet by Amgen Inc. in 2012. He was also a partner in the Life Sciences Transactions Practice at Cooley LLP from 1997 to 2006, where he represented biotech companies in strategic transactions with pharmaceutical companies. Earlier in his career, Mr. Alder was in-house counsel at Ciba-Geigy and Novartis. Mr. Alder holds law degrees from the University of Basel and the University of Miami and is qualified to practice law in Switzerland and the United States.

Neil Bell has served as our Senior Vice President, Head of Clinical Operations since December 2017 and prior to that, served as our Vice President and Head of Clinical Operations from April 2016 to December 2017. Prior to this, Mr. Bell served as executive director, head of clinical operations at Daiichi Sankyo Development from 2012 to April 2016. Prior to that, Mr. Bell spent eight years at Teva Pharmaceuticals Ltd. from 2004 to 2012, most recently as its head of global clinical operations and project management and director of clinical research. Mr. Bell holds a B.Sc. in genetics from the University of Liverpool and a M.Sc. in radiation biophysics from the University of St. Andrews.

Andrew Oakley is nominated to assume the role of Senior Vice President, Chief Financial Officer, prior to the completion of this offering. Mr. Oakley served as chief financial officer of Sosei Group Corporation from February 2017 to June 2018 and as its executive vice president from August 2017 to June 2018. He served as chief financial officer, company secretary and executive board member of Vectura Group plc from January 2015 to June 2016 and as chief financial officer of NovImmune SA from March 2014 to November 2014. Prior to that, he served as executive vice president and chief financial officer of Actelion Pharmaceuticals Ltd from January 2003 to August 2013. Mr. Oakley has also served in a senior finance capacity for the global holding companies of Accenture and held executive positions in major multinational building material companies and spent several years as an equity analyst with banks in Australia, the United Kingdom and the United States. Mr. Oakley is a chartered accountant. He earned his bachelor of economics degree from Macquarie University in Australia and his MBA from London Business School and has been a member of the Australian Institute of Chartered Accountants since 1987.

Non-Executive Directors

Joseph Anderson, Ph.D. has served on our board of directors since February 2016. He is the chief executive officer and a member of the board of directors of Aris Bioscience plc, a global life sciences company, where he has held such positions since January 2016. He has founded and

managed public equity funds and been a member of the following boards of directors: Algeta ASA (acquired by Bayer AG) from 2009 to 2013, Amarin plc from October 2009 to 2013, Cytos Biotechnology Ltd, a biotechnology company, from 2012 until it merged with Kuros Biosurgery Holding Ltd in January 2016 and Epigenomics AG from 2012 to 2014. He was a partner at Abingworth LLP, an international investment group dedicated to the life sciences and healthcare sectors, from January 2004 through December 2015. From October 1999 through December 2003, Dr. Anderson was previously at First State Investments in London, part of the Commonwealth Bank of Australia, where he was head of global healthcare equities and portfolio manager. Prior to this, he was a pharmaceuticals analyst at investment bank, Dresdner Kleinwort Benson from June 1998 through October 1999. From 1990 to 1998, Dr. Anderson established and was head of the strategy unit at The Wellcome Trust, one of the world's largest medical foundations. Dr. Anderson holds a Doctor of Philosophy in Biochemistry from the University of Aston and a Bachelor of Science in Biological Science from Queen Mary College, University of London. He was nominated to our board of directors by Aris Bioscience Holdings Limited pursuant to our March 2016 Subscription and Shareholders' Agreement, which granted Aris the right to appoint one individual as a director. We believe that Dr. Anderson is qualified to serve on our board of directors because of his extensive experience serving on boards of directors of life science companies.

Linda Bain was appointed to serve on our board of directors effective June 15, 2018. Ms. Bain has served as the chief financial officer of Codiak BioSciences, Inc. since January 2016. Prior to joining Codiak BioSciences, Inc., Ms. Bain served as the chief financial officer and treasurer of Avalanche Biotechnologies, Inc. from April 2014 until November 2015. Previously, Ms. Bain served at bluebird bio, Inc., a gene therapy biotechnology company, as chief accounting officer and vice president of finance and business operations from October 2011 to March 2014, and as treasurer from June 2013 to March 2014. From September 2008 to September 2011, Ms. Bain served as vice president of finance at Genzyme Corporation. From September 2007 to September 2008, she served as vice president at Fidelity Investments, and from May 2000 to September 2007, she held a number of positions at AstraZeneca plc. She received her B.S. degree in Accounting and Business Administration and an Honors Degree in Accounting and Business Administration from the University of the Free State in South Africa. Ms. Bain is a certified public accountant. We believe that Ms. Bain is qualified to serve on our board of directors because of her extensive experience in our industry, her background in accounting and finance and her leadership skills.

John Berriman has served on our board of directors since our inception in August 2014. He has served as chairman of the boards of directors of Confo Therapeutics NV since December 2016, Depixus SAS since December 2015, ReNeuron Group plc since April 2015 and Autifony Therapeutics Ltd since 2011. He previously served as chairman of the board of directors of Heptares Therapeutics Ltd from 2007 until it was sold to Sosei Group in February 2015; as chairman of the board of directors of Algeta ASA from 2004 through its listing on the Oslo Stock Exchange in 2007 and subsequently served as deputy chairman from 2008 until it was sold to Bayer AG in 2014; and as a director of Micromet, Inc. from May 2006 until it was sold to Amgen Inc. in 2012. Prior to this, from 1997 to 2004, he was a director of Abingworth Management, an international healthcare venture capital firm, where he was involved in founding, financing and serving as a director of several biotechnology companies in Europe and the United States, many of which obtained listings on public stock exchanges. Prior to that, Mr. Berriman spent 14 years with Celltech Group plc and was a member of its board when it listed on the London Stock Exchange in 1994. He holds a Master's degree in Chemical Engineering from the University of Cambridge and an M.B.A. from the London Business School. We believe that Mr. Berriman is qualified to serve on our board of directors because of his extensive experience in our industry, including his strategic management and operational experience, his experience serving on public company boards and his experience with public offerings, private investments and mergers.

Cynthia Butitta has served on our board of directors since March 2018. Ms. Butitta served as the executive vice president and chief financial officer of Kite Pharma Inc., a biopharmaceutical company, from January 2014 to May 2016 and as its chief operating officer from March 2014 to September 2017. From May 2011 to December 2012, she was senior vice president and chief financial officer at NextWave Pharmaceuticals, Inc., a specialty pharmaceutical company. Prior to that, Ms. Butitta served as chief operating officer of Telik, Inc., a biopharmaceutical company, from March 2001 to December 2010 and as its chief financial officer from August 1998 to December 2010. Ms. Butitta also served as principal accounting officer of Telik, Inc. until December 2010. She has served as a director of UroGen Pharma Ltd., a publicly held biopharmaceutical company, since October 2017. Ms. Butitta holds a B.S. degree with honors in Business and Accounting from Edgewood College in Madison, Wisconsin and an M.B.A. in Finance from the University of Wisconsin, Madison. We believe that Ms. Butitta is qualified to serve on our board of directors because of her extensive financial and operational experience within the biotechnology and high-technology industries, as well as her leadership skills.

Kapil Dhingra, M.D. has served on our board of directors since our inception in August 2014. Dr. Dhingra currently serves as the managing member of KAPital Consulting, LLC, a healthcare consulting firm that he founded in June 2008. Dr. Dhingra has over 25 years of experience in oncology clinical research and drug development. From 1999 to 2008, Dr. Dhingra worked at Hoffmann-La Roche, where he served in roles of increasing responsibility, most recently as vice president, head of the oncology disease biology leadership team and head of oncology clinical development. From 2000 to 2008, he held a clinical affiliate appointment at Memorial Sloan Kettering Cancer Center. From 1996 to 1999, Dr. Dhingra worked at Eli Lilly and Company where he served in roles of increasing responsibility, most recently as senior clinical research physician. Dr. Dhingra also served as a clinical associate professor of medicine at the Indiana University School of Medicine from 1997 to 1999. Prior to Eli Lilly and Company, Dr. Dhingra was a member of the faculty of the MD Anderson Cancer Center of the University of Texas from 1989 to 1996. Dr. Dhingra has served on the boards of directors of Replimune Limited, a biotechnology company, since July 2017, Median Technologies, a medical imaging software company, since June 2017, Advanced Accelerator Applications S.A., a pharmaceutical company, since April 2014, Five Prime Therapeutics, Inc., a biotechnology company, since December 2015 and Exosome Diagnostics Inc. since 2012. Dr. Dhingra previously served as a member of the boards of directors of BioVex from 2009 until its acquisition by Amgen Inc. in 2011, Micromet, Inc. from February 2009 until its acquisition by Amgen Inc. in 2012, YM Biosciences Inc. from 2012 until its acquisition by Gilead Sciences, Inc. in February 2013, Algeta ASA from 2010 until its acquisition by Bayer in March 2014 and EpiTherapeutics ApS from January 2014 until its acquisition by Gilead in May 2015. Dr. Dhingra holds an M.D. from the All India Institute of Medical Services in New Delhi, India and has performed postgraduate work at the All India Institute of Medical Services, the Lincoln Medical and Mental Health Center of New York Medical College and Emory University School of Medicine. We believe that Dr. Dhingra is qualified to serve on our board of directors because of his extensive experience in executive positions with several pharmaceutical companies and in the clinical development of pharmaceuticals in several therapeutic areas, including in oncology, and his experience serving on the boards of several publicly traded life science companies.

Edward Hodgkin, D.Phil. has served on our board of directors since September 2014 and previously served as our Chief Executive Officer from September 2014 until March 2016. He has been a partner of Syncona Investment Management Limited, part of the global life science company Syncona Ltd, since December 2016, and was a partner of Syncona Partners LLP from January 2013 to December 2016. Previously, he was chief executive officer of Biotica Technology Ltd. from 2007 to 2012. Prior to joining Biotica, Dr. Hodgkin served as president and chief business officer of BrainCells, Inc. from 2004 to 2006 and as vice president, business development and marketing at Tripos Inc. from 1999 to 2004. His early career was spent in scientific and management roles at Wyeth-Ayerst, Inc. and British Biotech Ltd. Dr. Hodgkin holds a Master's degree and D.Phil. in Chemistry from the University of Oxford. He was nominated to our board of directors by Syncona Portfolio Limited pursuant to our September 2014 Subscription and Shareholders' Agreement, which granted Syncona the right to

appoint two individuals as directors. Dr. Hodgkin will resign from the board of directors contingent upon, and effective immediately prior to, the effectiveness of the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part.

Martin Murphy, Ph.D. has served on our board of directors since September 2014. He has served as the chief executive officer of Syncona Investment Management Limited, part of the global life science company Syncona Ltd, since December 2016 and previously founded Syncona Partners LLP and served as its chief executive officer from May 2012 to December 2016. Previously, he was a partner at MVM Life Science Partners LLP, a venture capital company focused on life science and healthcare investments, from 2003 to 2012. During his time at MVM, Dr. Murphy was a member of the management and investment committees and led MVM's European operations. Before MVM, Dr. Murphy worked at 3i Group plc and McKinsey & Company. He has a Ph.D. in Biochemistry from the University of Cambridge. Dr. Murphy was nominated to our board of directors by Syncona Portfolio Limited pursuant to our September 2014 Subscription and Shareholders' Agreement, which granted Syncona the right to appoint two individuals as directors. We believe that Dr. Murphy is qualified to serve on our board of directors because of his extensive experience as an investor, particularly in the life sciences industry.

Family Relationships

There are no family relationships among any of the members of our senior management or board of directors.

Corporate Governance Practices

We are a "foreign private issuer," as defined by the SEC. As a result, in accordance with Nasdaq listing requirements, we will comply with on home country governance requirements and certain exemptions thereunder rather than complying with Nasdaq corporate governance standards. While we voluntarily follow most Nasdaq corporate governance rules, we may choose to take advantage of the following limited exemptions:

- Exemption from quorum requirements applicable to meetings of shareholders. In accordance with generally accepted business practice, our Articles of Association will provide alternative quorum requirements that are generally applicable to meetings of shareholders.
- Exemption from the Nasdaq rules applicable to domestic issuers requiring disclosure within four business days of any determination to grant a waiver of the code of business conduct and ethics to directors and officers. Although we will require board approval of any such waiver, we may choose not to disclose the waiver in the manner set forth in the Nasdaq rules, as permitted by the foreign private issuer exemption.
- Exemption from the requirement to obtain shareholder approval for certain issuances of securities, including shareholder approval of share option plans.
- Exemption from the requirement that our audit committee have review and oversight over all "related party transactions," as defined in Item 7.B of Form 20-F.

We intend to follow our home country, United Kingdom, practices in lieu of the foregoing requirements. Although we may rely on home country corporate governance practices in lieu of certain of the rules in the Nasdaq Rule 5600 Series and Rule 5250(d), we must comply with Nasdaq's Notification of Noncompliance requirement (Rule 5625) and the Voting Rights requirement (Rule 5640). Further, we must have an audit committee that satisfies Nasdaq Rule 5605(c)(3), which addresses audit committee responsibilities and authority and requires that the audit committee consist of members who meet the independence requirements of Nasdaq Rule 5605(c)(2)(A)(ii).

Although we currently intend to comply with the Nasdaq corporate governance rules applicable other than as noted above, we may in the future decide to use the foreign private issuer exemption with respect to some or all the other Nasdaq corporate governance rules.

In addition, as a foreign private issuer, we expect to take advantage of the following exemptions from SEC reporting obligations:

- Exemption from filing quarterly reports on Form 10-Q or provide current reports on Form 8-K disclosing significant events within four days of their occurrence.
- Exemption from Section 16 rules regarding sales of our securities by insiders, which will provide less data in this regard than shareholders of U.S. companies that are subject to the Exchange Act.

Accordingly, our shareholders will not have the same protections afforded to shareholders of companies that are subject to all of the corporate governance requirements of Nasdaq and the domestic reporting requirements of the SEC. We may utilize these exemptions for as long as we continue to qualify as a foreign private issuer. For an overview of our corporate governance principles, see the section titled “Description of Share Capital and Articles of Association—Differences in Corporate Law.”

Composition of Our Board of Directors

Our board of directors will be composed of seven members upon the closing of this offering. As a foreign private issuer, under the listing requirements and rules of Nasdaq, we are not required to have independent directors on our board of directors, except that our audit committee is required to consist fully of independent directors, subject to certain phase-in schedules. However, our board of directors has determined that Drs. Anderson, Dhingra and Murphy, Ms. Butitta, Ms. Bain and Mr. Berriman, representing six of the seven directors who will be serving upon the closing of this offering, do not have a relationship that would interfere with the exercise of independent judgment in carrying out the responsibilities of director and that each of these directors is “independent” as that term is defined under Nasdaq rules.

In accordance with our Articles of Association to be in effect upon the completion of this offering, our board of directors will be divided into three classes with staggered three-year terms. At each annual general meeting, the directors whose terms expire will retire and are eligible for re-appointment by ordinary resolution at such annual general meeting. At each annual general meeting, the successors to directors whose terms then expire or the directors who have been re-appointed will be elected to serve from the time of election and qualification until the third annual meeting following election. Our directors will be divided among the three classes as follows:

- Class I, which will consist of Joseph Anderson and Martin Murphy, whose terms will expire at our first annual general meeting to be held after the completion of this offering;
- Class II, which will consist of John Berriman and Kapil Dhingra, whose terms will expire at our second annual general meeting to be held after the completion of this offering; and
- Class III, which will consist of Christian Itin, Cynthia Butitta and Linda Bain, whose terms will expire at our third annual general meeting to be held after the completion of this offering.

Each director shall serve until his or her successor is duly elected and qualified or until his or her earlier death, resignation or removal. See “Description of Share Capital and Articles of Association—Post-IPO Articles of Association—Board of Directors.”

Committees of Our Board of Directors

Our board of directors has three standing committees: an audit committee, a compensation committee and a nominating and corporate governance committee.

Audit Committee

The audit committee, which as of the closing of this offering will consist of Ms. Bain (chair), Dr. Anderson and Ms. Butitta, assists the board of directors in overseeing our accounting and financial reporting processes. The audit committee consists exclusively of members of our board who are financially literate, and our board of directors has determined that Ms. Bain is an “audit committee financial expert” as defined by applicable SEC rules and has the requisite financial sophistication as defined under the applicable Nasdaq rules and regulations. Our board of directors has determined that each member of the audit committee is an independent director under Nasdaq listing rules and under Rule 10A-3 under the Exchange Act. Our audit committee will meet at least four times per year and oversee and review our internal controls, accounting policies and financial reporting, and provide a forum through which our independent registered public accounting firm reports. Our audit committee will meet regularly with our independent registered public accounting firm without management present. The audit committee will be governed by a charter that complies with Nasdaq rules.

The audit committee’s responsibilities will include:

- recommending the appointment of the independent auditor to shareholders for approval at the general meeting of shareholders;
- the appointment, compensation, retention and oversight of any accounting firm engaged for the purpose of preparing or issuing an audit report or performing other audit services;
- pre-approving the audit services and non-audit services to be provided by our independent auditor before the auditor is engaged to render such services;
- evaluating the independent auditor’s qualifications, performance and independence, and presenting its conclusions to the full board of directors on at least an annual basis;
- reviewing and discussing with management and our independent registered public accounting firm our financial statements and our financial reporting process; and
- reviewing, approving or ratifying any related party transactions.

Compensation Committee

As of the closing of this offering, the compensation committee will consist of Mr. Berriman (chairman), Ms. Butitta and Dr. Murphy. Under SEC and Nasdaq rules, there are heightened independence standards for members of the compensation committee, including a prohibition against the receipt of any compensation from us other than standard board member fees. Although foreign private issuers are not required to meet this heightened standard, all of our compensation committee members are expected to meet this heightened standard. The compensation committee will be governed by a charter that complies with Nasdaq rules.

The compensation committee’s responsibilities will include:

- identifying, reviewing, overseeing and proposing policies relevant to the compensation and benefits of our directors and senior management;
- evaluating the performance of senior management in light of such policies and reporting to the board; and

- overseeing and administering our share option plan, equity incentive plan and other benefit plans in operation from time to time.

Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee

As of the closing of this offering, the nominating and corporate governance committee will consist of Dr. Dhingra (chairman) and Dr. Anderson.

The nominating and corporate governance committee's responsibilities will include:

- drawing up selection criteria and appointment procedures for directors;
- recommending nominees for appointment to our board of directors and its corresponding committees; and
- assessing the functioning of individual members of our board of directors and management and reporting the results of such assessment to the full board of directors.

Code of Business Conduct and Ethics

In connection with this offering, we will adopt a Code of Business Conduct and Ethics, or Code of Ethics, applicable to our and our subsidiaries' employees, independent contractors, senior management and directors, including our principal executive officer, principal financial officer, principal accounting officer or controller, or persons performing similar functions. Following the effectiveness of the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part, a current copy of the Code of Ethics will be posted on our website, which is located at www.autolus.com. Information contained on, or that can be accessed through, our website does not constitute a part of this prospectus and is not incorporated by reference herein.

Compensation of Senior Management and Directors

For the year ended September 30, 2017, the aggregate compensation accrued or paid to the members of our board of directors and our senior management for services in all capacities, including share-based compensation, was \$5.0 million.

During the year ended September 30, 2017, we had one performance-based compensation program, which is described in further detail below under the section titled "Management Incentive Compensation Plan." The amount set aside or accrued by us to provide pension, retirement or similar benefits to members of our board of directors or senior management amounted to a total of \$44,000 in the year ended September 30, 2017.

Outstanding Equity Awards including Restricted C Ordinary Share Awards, Grants and Option Exercises

Under the company's shareholder agreements, we are authorized to issue C ordinary shares, as well as options and other securities exercisable for or convertible into C ordinary shares, as incentives to our employees and members of our board of directors. To the extent such incentives are in the form of share options, the options are granted pursuant to the terms of our 2017 Plan. As of September 30, 2017, we were authorized under the shareholder agreements to issue a total of 12,121,847 C ordinary shares, including shares underlying options granted pursuant to the 2017 Plan. Awards of restricted C ordinary shares, which we refer to herein as employee shares, are subject to vesting. Unvested employee shares are forfeited upon termination of employment. The forfeited shares are converted into deferred shares, with a repurchase right in favor of the company.

During the year ended September 30, 2017, we granted (i) an aggregate of 1,973,234 restricted C ordinary shares to members of our senior management and our directors and (ii) options to purchase an aggregate of 1,221,885 C ordinary shares to members of our senior management and our directors under the 2017 Plan.

As of September 30, 2017, members of our senior management and our directors held (i) 6,047,328 restricted C ordinary shares and (ii) options to purchase an aggregate of 1,221,885 C ordinary shares. No options were exercised by any members of our senior management or our directors during the year ended September 30, 2017.

Senior Management Employment Arrangements and Service Agreements

We have entered into arrangements with members of our senior management to grant restricted shares that are subject to vesting and a repurchase right in favor of the company in the event the individual terminates his or her employment prior to the vesting date. We intend to enter into new service agreements with the members of our senior management after the closing of this offering.

Non-Executive Director Appointment Letters

The compensation of our non-executive directors is determined by our board as a whole, based, in part, on a review of current practices in other companies and, after this offering, upon consideration of the recommendations of our compensation committee. We intend to enter into appointment letters with our non-executive directors and directors services agreement with our executive directors following the closing of this offering.

Management Incentive Compensation Plan

On May 17, 2016, the board of directors adopted the Management Incentive Compensation Plan. The Management Incentive Compensation Plan is designed to offer annual incentive compensation to our officers and managers by rewarding the achievement of corporate goals and specifically measured personal goals that are consistent with and support the achievement of the corporate goals. The key terms of the Management Incentive Compensation Plan are summarized below.

Administration and Eligibility

The Chief Executive Officer is responsible for the administration of the Management Incentive Compensation Plan; however, the compensation committee of the board of directors is responsible for approving any incentive awards to our Chief Executive Officer and other members of our senior management.

In order to be eligible to receive an incentive award under the Management Incentive Compensation Plan, an individual must have been employed with us for at least three consecutive months during a plan year, which runs from October 1 to September 30, and must achieve a rating of at least 75% of his or her personal goal.

Form and Determination of Incentive Awards

Incentive award payments may be made in cash, or, at the discretion of the compensation committee and subject to the approval of our board of directors, through the issuance of equity.

An individual's potential incentive award is calculated by multiplying his or her base salary as of September 30 of the plan year by the participant's "target award multiplier," which is a percentage ranging from 10% to 50%. The resulting amount is then divided between a corporate component and an individual component based on the weighting assigned for the individual's management level. After

the end of the plan year, the actual achievement of the corporate and individual goals is determined, each expressed as a percentage of complete achievement, resulting in the calculation of the individual's total incentive award.

Annual performance reviews for participants in the Management Incentive Compensation Plan are completed before December 31 following the end of the applicable plan year, with payment of incentive awards made as soon as practicable thereafter.

Termination of Employment

If a participant in the Management Incentive Compensation Plan gives or receives notice of termination or his or her employment is terminated prior to the payment of an incentive award under the Management Incentive Compensation Plan, our board of directors has discretion as to whether or not to pay an incentive award and whether to pay the full amount of the incentive award or a portion thereof.

Amendment

Our board of directors may abolish or alter the Management Incentive Compensation Plan at any time before, during or after a plan year is completed.

Equity Incentive Plans

2017 Share Option Plan

On February 22, 2017, our board of directors adopted the 2017 Share Option Plan, or the 2017 Plan. The 2017 Plan expires on February 21, 2027. The 2017 Plan provides for the grant of potentially tax-favored Enterprise Management Incentives, or EMI, options to our U.K. employees and for the grant of options to our U.S. employees.

Administration and Eligibility

The 2017 Plan is administered by our board of directors. The board of directors may grant options to acquire restricted C ordinary shares, which we refer to in this description as options, at any time to any of our employees or senior management. In the case of EMI options, an employee must work, on average, at least 25 hours per week or, if less, at least 75% of the employee's working time in order to be eligible. Employees who have a material interest in our company cannot be granted EMI options. A material interest is either beneficial ownership of, or the ability to control directly or indirectly, more than 30% of our ordinary share capital.

Share Reserve

The aggregate number of ordinary shares that may be issued under the 2017 Plan is set from time to time by our shareholders. Under the company's shareholder agreements in effect as of September 30, 2017, we were authorized to issue a total of 12,121,847 C ordinary shares, including shares underlying options granted pursuant to the 2017 Plan. As of September 30, 2017, there were 3,626,687 C ordinary shares available for issuance as incentives to our employees and directors, which amount includes shares underlying options that may be granted from time to time subsequent to September 30, 2017 under the terms of our 2017 Plan.

Exercise Price of Options

Our board of directors determines the exercise price of options.

Vesting, Exercise and Lapse of Options

Options vest on the date or dates specified in the option agreement accompanying an option grant.

Options cannot normally be exercised before an "Exit Event," which is defined as a sale of our shares or assets or an initial public offering of our shares, except that our board of directors may, in their discretion, accelerate the vesting of outstanding options.

If an option holder dies, his or her unvested option will lapse unless the board of directors determines otherwise. If the board of directors does so determine, then the board of directors shall also determine the proportion of the unvested option that shall be treated as vested. The option holder's personal representatives shall be entitled to exercise the vested portion of the option within such period as the board of directors shall determine, provided this is during the period ending on the first anniversary of death.

If an option holder ceases employment as a "Good Leaver," which means termination of employment other than in connection with summary dismissal under the contract of employment, any unvested options lapse unless the board of directors determines otherwise. If the board of directors does so determine, then the board of directors shall also determine, in its absolute discretion, the proportion of the unvested option that shall be treated as vested. In these circumstances, the option holder shall be entitled to exercise the vested portion of the option on or after an Exit Event within such period as the board of directors shall determine.

In the event of a change of control, scheme of arrangement or compulsory acquisition of shares of the company, which is also considered an Exit Event, or in the event of a voluntary winding up of the company, the board of directors may determine that a proportion of the option that has not already vested shall vest. The vested portion of the option will be exercisable for the appropriate period as specified in the 2017 Plan. There is also provision for the exchange of options on a change of control.

Each option is personal to the option holder and any transfer of, or the creation of any charge, pledge or other encumbrance over, the option will cause it to lapse.

Shares Underlying Option Awards

C ordinary shares issued or transferred on the exercise of an option will rank equally with the C ordinary shares then in issue, except in respect of entitlements arising prior to the date of the issue or transfer.

The aggregate number of C ordinary shares over which options may be granted is subject to such limit as may be agreed with our shareholders from time to time.

In the event of any variation of share capital, including a capitalization, rights issue, rights offer or bonus issue and subdivision, consolidation or reduction in the capital of the company, the number of C ordinary shares subject to an option and the exercise price shall be adjusted as the board of directors shall determine.

Amendment

The board of directors may from time to time amend the rules of the 2017 Plan. An amendment may not materially adversely affect the rights of an existing option holder except where the amendment is approved by the holders of options representing 75% of shares under options or where the amendment is made to take into account any matter or circumstance that the board of directors reasonably considers is a relevant legal or regulatory requirement, and the board of directors reasonably considers an amendment is required in order for the company or its subsidiaries, as such term is defined in the 2017 Plan, to comply with such requirement.

U.S. Taxpayers

Options may be granted under the 2017 Plan to U.S. taxpayers. The 2017 Plan is intended to be exempt from the requirements of Section 409A of the U.S. Internal Revenue Code.

2018 Equity Incentive Plan

The 2018 Equity Incentive Plan, or the 2018 Plan, which was approved by our board of directors in June 2018 and which will be approved by our shareholders prior to the completion of this offering, will become effective as of the date of the underwriting agreement in connection with this offering, allows for the grant of equity-based incentive awards to our employees and directors, including directors who are also our employees. Except where the context indicates otherwise, references hereunder to our ordinary shares shall be deemed to include a number of ADSs equal to the number of ordinary shares. The material terms of the 2018 Plan are summarized below:

Eligibility and Administration

Our employees and directors, and employees and consultants of our subsidiaries, referred to as service providers are eligible to receive awards under the 2018 Plan. The 2018 Plan is administered by our board of directors, which may delegate its duties and responsibilities to one or more committees of our directors and/or officers (referred to as the plan administrator below), subject to certain limitations imposed under the 2018 Plan, and other applicable laws and stock exchange rules. The plan administrator has the authority to take all actions and make all determinations under the 2018 Plan, to interpret the 2018 Plan and award agreements and to adopt, amend and repeal rules for the administration of the 2018 Plan as it deems advisable. The plan administrator also has the authority to determine which eligible service providers receive awards, grant awards, set the terms and conditions of all awards under the 2018 Plan, including any vesting and vesting acceleration provisions, and designate whether such awards will cover our ordinary shares or ADSs, subject to the conditions and limitations in the 2018 Plan.

Shares Available for Awards

The maximum number of ordinary shares that may be issued under our 2018 Plan as of the date of this prospectus is 3,281,622. This number consists of 3,025,548 new ordinary shares and 256,074 ordinary shares that would otherwise remain available for future grants under the 2017 Plan as the date of the underwriting agreement for this offering. Additionally, the number of ordinary shares reserved for issuance under the 2018 Plan will automatically increase on October 1st of each year, for a period of not more than ten years, commencing on October 1, 2018 and ending on (and including) October 1, 2027, by an amount equal to the lesser of (i) 4% of the total number of ordinary shares outstanding on September 30th of the same calendar year or (ii) such fewer number of ordinary shares as the board of directors may designate prior to the applicable October 1st date. No more than 14,000,000 shares may be issued under the 2018 Plan upon the exercise of incentive share options. Shares issued under the 2018 Plan may be authorized but unissued shares, shares purchased on the open market, treasury shares or ADSs.

If an award under the 2018 Plan, or any prior equity incentive plan, expires, lapses or is terminated, exchanged for cash, surrendered, repurchased, canceled without having been fully exercised or forfeited, any unused shares subject to the award will, as applicable, become or again be available for new grants under the 2018 Plan. Awards granted under the 2018 Plan in substitution for any options or other equity or equity-based awards granted by an entity before the entity's merger or consolidation with us or our acquisition of the entity's property or stock will not reduce the shares available for grant under the 2018 Plan, but will count against the maximum number of shares that may be issued upon the exercise of incentive options.

Awards

The 2018 Plan provides for the grant of options, share appreciation rights, or SARs, restricted shares, dividend equivalents, restricted share units, or RSUs, and other share-based awards. All awards under the 2018 Plan will be set forth in award agreements, which will detail the terms and conditions of awards, including any applicable vesting and payment terms, change of control provisions and post-termination exercise limitations. A brief description of each award type follows.

Options and SARs. Options provide for the purchase of our ordinary shares in the future at an exercise price set on the grant date. SARs entitle their holder, upon exercise, to receive from us an amount equal to the appreciation of the shares subject to the award between the grant date and the exercise date. The plan administrator will determine the number of shares covered by each option and SAR, the exercise price of each option and SAR and the conditions and limitations applicable to the exercise of each option and SAR.

Restricted Shares and RSUs. Restricted shares are an award of nontransferable ordinary shares that remain forfeitable unless and until specified conditions are met and which may be subject to a purchase price. RSUs are contractual promises to deliver our ordinary shares in the future, which may also remain forfeitable unless and until specified conditions are met and may be accompanied by the right to receive the equivalent value of dividends paid on our ordinary shares prior to the delivery of the underlying shares. The plan administrator may provide that the delivery of the shares underlying RSUs will be deferred on a mandatory basis or at the election of the participant. The terms and conditions applicable to restricted shares and RSUs will be determined by the plan administrator, subject to the conditions and limitations contained in the 2018 Plan.

Other Share-Based Awards. Other share-based awards are awards of fully vested ordinary shares and other awards valued wholly or partially by referring to, or otherwise based on, our ordinary shares or other property. Other share-based awards may be granted to participants and may also be available as a payment form in the settlement of other awards, as standalone payments and as payment in lieu of compensation to which a participant is otherwise entitled. The plan administrator will determine the terms and conditions of other share-based awards, which may include any purchase price, performance goal, transfer restrictions and vesting conditions.

Performance Criteria

The plan administrator may select performance criteria for an award to establish performance goals for a performance period.

Certain Transactions

In connection with certain corporate transactions and events affecting our ordinary shares, including a change of control, another similar corporate transaction or event, another unusual or nonrecurring transaction or event affecting us or our financial statements or a change in any applicable laws or accounting principles, the plan administrator has broad discretion to take action under the 2018 Plan to prevent the dilution or enlargement of intended benefits, facilitate the transaction or event or give effect to the change in applicable laws or accounting principles. This includes canceling awards for cash or property, accelerating the vesting of awards, providing for the assumption or substitution of awards by a successor entity, adjusting the number and type of shares subject to outstanding awards and/or with respect to which awards may be granted under the 2018 Plan and replacing or terminating awards under the 2018 Plan. In addition, in the event of certain non-reciprocal transactions with our shareholders, the plan administrator will make equitable adjustments to the 2018 Plan and outstanding awards as it deems appropriate to reflect the transaction.

Plan Amendment and Termination

Our board of directors may amend or terminate the 2018 Plan at any time; however, no amendment, other than an amendment that increases the number of shares available under the 2018 Plan, may materially and adversely affect an award outstanding under the 2018 Plan without the consent of the affected participant and shareholder approval will be obtained for any amendment to the extent necessary to comply with applicable laws. Further, the plan administrator cannot, without the approval of our shareholders, amend any outstanding option or SAR to reduce its price per share or cancel any outstanding option or SAR in exchange for cash or another award under the 2018 Plan with an exercise price per share that is less than the exercise price per share of the original option or SAR. The 2018 Plan will remain in effect until the tenth anniversary of its effective date unless earlier terminated by our board of directors. No awards may be granted under the 2018 Plan after its termination.

Transferability and Participant Payments

Except as the plan administrator may determine or provide in an award agreement, awards under the 2018 Plan are generally non-transferrable, except by will or the laws of descent and distribution, or, subject to the plan administrator's consent, pursuant to a domestic relations order, and are generally exercisable only by the participant. With regard to tax withholding obligations arising in connection with awards under the 2018 Plan, and exercise price obligations arising in connection with the exercise of options under the 2018 Plan, the plan administrator may, in its discretion, accept cash, wire transfer or cheque, our ordinary shares that meet specified conditions, a promissory note, a "market sell order," such other consideration as the plan administrator deems suitable or any combination of the foregoing.

Non-U.S. Participants

The plan administrator may modify awards granted to participants who are non-U.S. nationals or employed outside the United States or establish sub-plans or procedures to address differences in laws, rules, regulations or customs of such foreign jurisdictions.

2018 Non-Employee Sub Plan

The 2018 Non-Employee Sub Plan will govern equity awards granted to our non-executive directors and our service providers. The 2018 Non-Employee Sub Plan will be adopted under the 2018 Plan and provides for equity- and cash-based awards to be made on identical terms to awards made under our 2018 Plan. If all or any part of an award granted under the 2018 Non-Employee Sub Plan expires, lapses or is terminated, exchanged for cash, surrendered, repurchased, canceled without having been fully exercised or forfeited, any unused shares covered by the award will become or again be available for new grants under the 2018 Non-Employee Sub Plan.

Insurance and Indemnification

To the extent permitted by the Companies Act 2006, or the Companies Act, we are empowered to indemnify our directors against any liability they incur by reason of their directorship. We maintain directors' and officers' insurance to insure such persons against certain liabilities. We expect to enter into a deed of indemnity with each of our directors and members of our senior management prior to the completion of this offering.

Insofar as indemnification of liabilities arising under the Securities Act may be permitted to our board of directors, senior management, or persons controlling us pursuant to the foregoing provisions, we have been informed that, in the opinion of the SEC, such indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and is therefore unenforceable.

RELATED PARTY TRANSACTIONS

Since October 1, 2014, we have engaged in the following transactions or loans between us and (a) enterprises that directly or indirectly through one or more intermediaries, control or are controlled by, or are under common control with, our company; (b) associates; (c) individuals owning, directly or indirectly, an interest in the voting power of our company that gives them significant influence over our company, and close members of any such individual's family; (d) key management personnel, that is, those persons having authority and responsibility for planning, directing and controlling our activities, including directors and senior management and close members of such individuals' families; and (e) enterprises in which a substantial interest in the voting power is owned, directly or indirectly, by any person described in (c) or (d) or over which such a person is able to exercise significant influence. We refer to the entities and persons described in (a) through (e) above as "related parties."

Participation in this Offering

Certain of our existing principal shareholders and their affiliated entities have indicated an interest in purchasing up to an aggregate of \$60 million in ADSs in this offering at the initial public offering price per ADS. Based on an assumed initial public offering price of \$16.00 per ADS, which is the midpoint of the price range set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, these entities would purchase up to an aggregate of 3,750,000, or 48%, of the 7,812,500 ADSs in this offering based on these indications of interest. However, because indications of interest are not binding agreements or commitments to purchase, these entities may determine to purchase fewer ADSs than they indicate an interest in purchasing or not to purchase any ADSs in this offering. It is also possible that these entities could indicate an interest in purchasing more of our ADSs. In addition, the underwriters could determine to sell fewer ADSs to any of these entities than the entities indicate an interest in purchasing or not to sell any ADSs to these entities.

Subscriptions of our Series A Preferred Shares

In August 2014, we issued one ordinary share, par value £1.00 per share, to Syncona LLP. This share was subsequently subdivided into 100,000 series A preferred shares, par value £0.00001 per share, on September 24, 2014.

From September 2014 to September 2017, we entered into four separate subscription agreements with investors to purchase an aggregate of 78,043,548 additional series A preferred shares at purchase prices as follows:

September 25, 2014

On September 25, 2014, we issued and sold 9,900,000 series A preferred shares to Syncona LLP and 100,000 series A preferred shares to John Berriman, a member of our board of directors, at a purchase price of £0.00001 per share.

March 2, 2016 Subscription Agreement

On March 2, 2016, we entered into a subscription agreement with investors to purchase an aggregate of 18,547,008 series A preferred shares for aggregate proceeds of £23.3 million. Of these shares, 10,000,000 series A preferred shares were purchased at a price of £1.00 per share and the remaining 8,547,008 series A preferred shares were purchased at a price of £1.56 per share.

The following table sets forth the aggregate number of series A preferred shares issued to our related parties pursuant to these transactions:

PARTICIPANTS	SERIES A PREFERRED SHARES (#)
Syncona LLP(1)	10,000,000
Entities affiliated with Woodford(2)	6,410,256
Arix Bioscience Holdings Limited(3)	2,136,752

- (1) Syncona LLP purchased these shares in fulfillment of its prior obligation to purchase 10,000,000 series A preferred shares at the pre-determined price of £1.00 per share upon our completion of a milestone.
- (2) 4,487,179 of these shares were purchased by Nortrust Nominees Limited (as nominee under a/c WIX01 for Woodford Patient Capital Trust plc) and 1,923,077 of these shares were purchased by Nortrust Nominees Limited (as nominee under a/c WIZ01 for Woodford Patient Capital Trust plc).
- (3) These shares were purchased by Arix Bioscience Limited, a subsidiary of Arix Bioscience Holdings Limited, and subsequently transferred to Arix Bioscience Holdings Limited.

April 3, 2017 Subscription Agreement

On April 3, 2017, we entered into a subscription agreement with investors to purchase an aggregate of 23,504,275 series A preferred shares in two tranches at a purchase price of £1.56 per share for aggregate proceeds of £36.7 million. The following tables set forth the aggregate number of series A preferred shares issued to our related parties pursuant to these transactions:

Shares Purchased on July 17, 2017

PARTICIPANTS	SERIES A PREFERRED SHARES (#)
Syncona Portfolio Limited	3,205,130
Woodford Patient Capital Trust plc(1)	6,410,257
Arix Bioscience Holdings Limited	2,136,752

- (1) These shares were purchased by Nortrust Nominees Limited (as nominee under a/c WIZ01 for Woodford Patient Capital Trust plc).

Shares Purchased on September 22, 2017

PARTICIPANTS	SERIES A PREFERRED SHARES (#)
Syncona Portfolio Limited	3,205,128
Woodford Patient Capital Trust plc(1)	6,410,256
Arix Bioscience Holdings Limited	2,136,752

- (1) These shares were purchased by Nortrust Nominees Limited (as nominee under a/c WIZ01 for Woodford Patient Capital Trust plc).

September 25, 2017 Subscription Agreement

On September 25, 2017, we entered into a subscription agreement with investors to purchase an aggregate of 25,992,265 series A preferred shares for aggregate proceeds of \$80.0 million. The

following table sets forth the aggregate number of series A preferred shares issued to our related parties pursuant to these transactions:

PARTICIPANTS	SERIES A PREFERRED SHARES(#)
Syncona Portfolio Limited	9,499,110
Entities affiliated with Woodford(1)	5,964,963
Arix Bioscience Holdings Limited	2,305,609
John Berriman	100,000

- (1) 4,865,003 of these shares were purchased by Nortrust Nominees Limited (as nominee under a/c WIZ01 for Woodford Patient Capital Trust plc) and 1,099,960 of these shares were purchased by State Street Nominees Limited (as nominee under a/c 3426 for Omnis Income & Growth Fund).

September 2017 Subscription and Shareholders' Agreement

In addition to providing for the purchase and sale of series A preferred shares, the September 2017 Subscription and Shareholders' Agreement, or the September 2017 SSA, among other things:

- contemplates granting our preferred shareholders specified registration rights with respect to our shares held by them, which is to be memorialized in a registration rights agreement that we intend to enter into prior to the completion of this offering;
- obligates us to deliver periodic financial statements to some of the shareholders who are parties to the September 2017 SSA;
- provides for the voting of shares with respect to the constituency of our board of directors and the voting of shares in favor of specified transactions approved by our board of directors and the requisite majority of our shareholders;
- grants our shareholders a right of first refusal with respect to sales of our shares by us, subject to specified exclusions; and
- grants our shareholders rights of first refusal and tag-along rights with respect to proposed transfers of our securities by other shareholders.

The rights granted above will terminate upon the completion of this offering, except for the contemplated registration rights, which will be memorialized in a registration rights agreement that we intend to enter into prior to the completion of this offering. For more information regarding the registration rights provided in this agreement, please refer to the section titled "Description of Share Capital and Articles of Association—Registration Rights."

Management Rights

In connection with our September 2017 series A preferred share financing, we also granted certain investors the right to consult with and advise management on significant business issues, appoint an observer to our board and have access to our books and records. These rights will terminate upon the completion of this offering.

Director Fees to Syncona Portfolio Limited and Arix Bioscience Holdings Limited

Under the terms of the September 2017 SSA, we also agreed to pay (i) Syncona Portfolio Limited a fee of £15,000 per year per representative of Syncona Portfolio Limited who sits on our board of directors, and (ii) Arix Bioscience Holdings Limited a fee of £15,000 per year for its representative who

sits on our board of directors. We recorded expenses totaling £30,000 for each of the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2017 for the services of Martin Murphy and Edward Hodgkin, the representatives of Syncona Portfolio Limited. We recorded expenses totaling £9,000 and £15,000 for the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2017, respectively, for the services of Joseph Anderson, the representative of Arix Bioscience Holdings Limited. These rights to receive director fees will terminate upon the completion of this offering.

Entities Affiliated with Syncona

We receive accounting and professional services from Syncona Partners LLP, Syncona Limited and their affiliates, which we refer to as Syncona, from time to time. We recorded accounting, consulting and professional fees, including fees paid for the services of Edward Hodgkin, our current director who acted as our interim Chief Executive Officer from September 2014 to February 2016, totaling \$0.2 million and \$56,000 for the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2017, respectively. As of May 2016, we no longer receive consulting services from Syncona.

Agreements with Our Senior Management and Directors

We have entered into service agreements with the members of our senior management. See "Management—Compensation of Senior Management and Directors." These agreements contain customary provisions and representations, including confidentiality, non-competition, non-solicitation and inventions assignment undertakings by the members of our senior management. However, the enforceability of the non-competition provisions may be limited under applicable law.

Indemnification Agreements

We intend to enter into a deed of indemnity with each of our directors and members of our senior management prior to the completion of this offering. Our Articles of Association to be adopted in connection with this offering will also provide that we will indemnify our directors and members of our senior management to the fullest extent permitted by law. See "Management—Insurance and Indemnification" for further information.

Related Party Transactions Policy

Prior to this offering, we have not had a formal policy regarding approval of transactions with related parties. We have adopted a related person transaction policy that sets forth our procedures for the identification, review, consideration and approval or ratification of related person transactions. The policy will become effective immediately upon the execution of the underwriting agreement for this offering. For purposes of our policy only, a related person transaction is a transaction, arrangement or relationship, or any series of similar transactions, arrangements or relationships, in which we or any of our subsidiaries and any related person are, were or will be participants in which the amount involved exceeds \$120,000 or which is unusual in its nature or conditions. Transactions involving compensation for services provided to us as an employee or director are not covered by this policy. A related person is any executive officer, director or beneficial owner of more than 5% of any class of our voting securities, including any of their immediate family members and any entity owned or controlled by such persons.

PRINCIPAL SHAREHOLDERS

The following table sets forth information with respect to the beneficial ownership of our ordinary shares as of April 30, 2018, after giving effect to our corporate reorganization, for:

- each beneficial owner of 5% or more of our outstanding ordinary shares;
- each of our current directors;
- each member of our senior management and our Senior Vice President, Chief Financial Officer nominee; and
- all of our directors and senior management as a group.

Beneficial ownership is determined in accordance with the rules of the SEC. These rules generally attribute beneficial ownership of securities to persons who possess sole or shared voting power or investment power with respect to those securities and include ordinary shares that can be acquired within 60 days of April 30, 2018. Percentage ownership calculations are based on 30,006,844 ordinary shares outstanding as of April 30, 2018, after giving effect to the conversion of all of our outstanding shares into ordinary shares on a 3.185-for-1 basis, which will occur in connection with our corporate reorganization as described elsewhere in this prospectus. The percentage of shares beneficially owned after completion of this offering is based on 37,819,344 ordinary shares outstanding after this offering, including 7,812,500 ordinary shares in the form of ADSs issued in connection with this offering.

Certain of our existing principal shareholders and their affiliated entities have indicated an interest in purchasing up to an aggregate of \$60 million in ADSs in this offering at the initial public offering price per ADS. Based on an assumed initial public offering price of \$16.00 per ADS, which is the midpoint of the price range set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, these entities would purchase up to an aggregate of 3,750,000, or 48%, of the 7,812,500 ADSs in this offering based on these indications of interest. However, because indications of interest are not binding agreements or commitments to purchase, these entities may determine to purchase fewer ADSs than they indicate an interest in purchasing or not to purchase any ADSs in this offering. It is also possible that these entities could indicate an interest in purchasing more of our ADSs. In addition, the underwriters could determine to sell fewer ADSs to any of these entities than the entities indicate an interest in purchasing or not to sell any ADSs to these entities. The following table does not reflect any potential purchases by these entities in this offering.

Except as otherwise indicated, all of the shares reflected in the table are ordinary shares and all persons listed below have sole voting and investment power with respect to the shares beneficially owned by them, subject to applicable community property laws. The information is not necessarily indicative of beneficial ownership for any other purpose.

As of April 30, 2018, five U.S. shareholders of record held an aggregate of 1,103,895 ordinary shares, or 6.7% of our outstanding ordinary shares, after giving effect to the conversion of all of our outstanding shares into ordinary shares on a 3.185-for-1 basis in connection with our corporate reorganization.

Except as otherwise indicated below, the address for each person or entity listed in the table is c/o Autolus Therapeutics Limited, Forest House, 58 Wood Lane, White City, London W12 7RZ, United Kingdom.

NAME OF BENEFICIAL OWNER	NUMBER OF SHARES BENEFICIALLY OWNED	PERCENTAGE OF SHARES BENEFICIALLY OWNED	
		BEFORE OFFERING	AFTER OFFERING
5% or Greater Shareholders:			
Syncona Portfolio Limited(1)	12,180,332	40.6	32.2
Entities affiliated with Woodford(2)	7,910,745	26.4	20.9
Arix Bioscience Holdings Limited(3)	2,736,533	9.1	7.2
Senior Management and Directors:			
Christian Itin, Ph.D(4)	1,066,009	3.6	2.8
Martin Pulé, MBBS(5)	698,741	2.3	1.8
Muhammad Al-Hajj, Ph.D.	—	—	—
Jim Faulkner, Ph.D. (6)	116,295	*	*
Vijay Peddareddigari, M.D.(7)	45,435	*	*
Christopher Vann(8)	112,211	*	*
Matthias Alder(9)	125,588	*	*
Neil Bell(10)	35,140	*	*
Andrew Oakley	—	—	—
Joseph Anderson, Ph.D.(11)	2,736,533	9.1	7.2
Linda Bain	—	—	—
John Berriman(12)	136,331	*	*
Cynthia M. Butitta	—	—	—
Kapil Dhingra, M.D.(13)	73,537	*	*
Edward Hodgkin, D.Phil(14)	12,180,332	40.6	32.2
Martin Murphy, Ph.D.(15)	12,180,332	40.6	32.2
All current directors and senior management as a group (14 persons)(16)	17,326,152	57.7	45.8

* Represents beneficial ownership of less than one percent.

- (1) Consists of (i) 11,274,525 ordinary shares issuable upon conversion of series A preferred shares and (ii) 905,807 ordinary shares issuable upon conversion of B ordinary shares. Syncona Portfolio Limited is a controlled subsidiary of Syncona Holdings Limited, which in turn is a controlled subsidiary of Syncona Limited. Each of Syncona Holdings Limited and Syncona Limited may be deemed to have voting and dispositive power over the shares held by Syncona Portfolio Limited. Investment and voting decisions with respect to these shares are made by Syncona Portfolio Limited acting upon the recommendation of an investment committee of Syncona Investment Management Limited, also a subsidiary of Syncona Holdings Limited. The members of this investment committee consist of Nigel Keen, Martin Murphy, Chris Hollowood and Toby Sykes. The address for Syncona Portfolio Limited is PO Box 255, Trafalgar Court, Les Banques, St Peter Port, Guernsey, GY1 3QL, Channel Islands.
- (2) Consists of (i) 6,156,542 ordinary shares issuable upon conversion of series A preferred shares held by Nortrust Nominees Limited (as nominee under a/c WIZ01 for Woodford Patient Capital Trust plc) (ii) 1,408,847 ordinary shares issuable upon conversion of series A preferred shares held by Nortrust Nominees Limited (as nominee under a/c WIX01 for Woodford Equity Income Fund) and (iii) 345,356 ordinary shares issuable upon conversion of series A preferred shares held by State Street Nominees Limited (as nominee under a/c 34ZG for Omnis Income & Growth Fund). Woodford Investment Management Ltd is the investment manager of Woodford Equity Income Fund, Woodford Patient Capital Trust plc and Omnis Income & Growth Fund, which, for

the purposes of this filing, are collectively referred to as the Woodford Entities. Pursuant to investment management/advisory agreements between each of the Woodford Entities and Woodford Investment Management Ltd, Woodford Investment Management Ltd has investment discretion and voting power over the securities held of record by the Woodford Entities, including our securities. As a result, Woodford Investment Management Ltd may be deemed to be the beneficial owner of securities of our company held by the Woodford Entities. Neil Woodford is the Head of Investment for Woodford Investment Management Ltd, and as such, may be deemed to beneficially own such securities beneficially owned by Woodford Investment Management Ltd. The address for Woodford Investment Management Ltd, who is the acting agent and attorney for the Woodford Entities, is 9400 Garsington Road, Oxford Business Park, Oxford OX4 2HN, United Kingdom.

- (3) Consists of ordinary shares issuable upon conversion of series A preferred shares. Investment and voting decisions with respect to these shares are made by Aris Bioscience Holdings Limited acting upon the recommendation of an investment committee. The members of this investment committee consist of Joseph Anderson, Johnathan Peacock and Sir Christopher Evans. The address for Aris Bioscience Holdings Limited is 20 Berkeley Square, London, W1J 6EQ, United Kingdom.
- (4) Consists of ordinary shares issuable upon conversion of restricted C ordinary shares.
- (5) Consists of (i) 538,677 ordinary shares issuable upon conversion of B ordinary shares and (ii) 160,064 ordinary shares issuable upon conversion of restricted C ordinary shares.
- (6) Consists of 116,295 ordinary shares issuable upon conversion of restricted C ordinary shares.
- (7) Consists of 45,435 ordinary shares issuable upon conversion of restricted C ordinary shares.
- (8) Consists of ordinary shares issuable upon conversion of restricted C ordinary shares.
- (9) Consists of ordinary shares issuable upon conversion of restricted C ordinary shares.
- (10) Consists of 35,140 ordinary shares issuable upon conversion of restricted C ordinary shares.
- (11) Consists of shares set forth in footnote (3) above. Dr. Anderson is the chief executive officer of Aris Bioscience plc, the parent company of Aris Bioscience Holdings Limited.
- (12) Consists of (i) 62,794 ordinary shares issuable upon conversion of series A preferred shares and (ii) 73,537 ordinary shares issuable upon conversion of restricted C ordinary shares.
- (13) Consists of ordinary shares issuable upon conversion of B ordinary shares.
- (14) Consists of the shares set forth in footnote (1) above. Dr. Hodgkin is a partner of Syncona Investment Management Limited. Both Syncona Investment Management Limited and Syncona Portfolio Limited are subsidiaries of Syncona Limited.
- (15) Consists of the shares set forth in footnote (1) above. Dr. Murphy is the chief executive officer of Syncona Investment Management Limited. Both Syncona Investment Management Limited and Syncona Portfolio Limited are subsidiaries of Syncona Limited.
- (16) Consists of (i) 14,041,798 ordinary shares issuable upon conversion of series A preferred shares, (ii) 1,476,538 ordinary shares issuable upon conversion of B ordinary shares and (iii) 1,807,816 ordinary shares issuable upon conversion of restricted C ordinary shares.

DESCRIPTION OF SHARE CAPITAL AND ARTICLES OF ASSOCIATION

The following describes our issued share capital, summarizes the material provisions of our articles of association and highlights certain differences in corporate law in England and Delaware, in the United States. Please note that this summary is not intended to be exhaustive. For further information, please refer to the full version of our articles of association, which are included as an exhibit to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part.

Autolus Therapeutics plc is a public limited company, originally incorporated pursuant to the laws of England and Wales in February 2018 as a private company with limited liability called Autolus Therapeutics Limited. We were incorporated with nominal assets and liabilities for the purpose of becoming a holding company for Autolus Limited and for the purpose of consummating the corporate reorganization described herein. Autolus Limited was formed as a separate company in July 2014. In June 2018, we formed another holding company, Autolus Holdings (UK) Limited, with Autolus Holdings (UK) Limited becoming a wholly owned subsidiary of Autolus Therapeutics Limited. Autolus Therapeutics Limited and Autolus Holdings (UK) Limited are holding companies which have not conducted any operations prior to this offering other than activities incidental to their formation, the corporate reorganization and this offering.

Pursuant to the terms of our corporate reorganization, in June 2018, all of the issued share capital in Autolus Limited was exchanged for the same number and class of shares in Autolus Therapeutics Limited and, as a result, Autolus Limited became a wholly owned subsidiary of Autolus Therapeutics Limited. Following this share exchange, Autolus Holdings (UK) Limited (wholly owned by Autolus Therapeutics Limited) acquired the entire issued share capital of Autolus Limited in exchange for an issue of new shares in Autolus Holdings (UK) Limited and, as a result, Autolus Limited became a wholly owned subsidiary of Autolus Holdings (UK) Limited. Autolus Therapeutics Limited re-registered as a public limited company on June 18, 2018 and changed its name to Autolus Therapeutics plc. After the completion of this offering, Autolus Limited will distribute, by way of a dividend in specie, the entire issued share capital of Autolus Inc. to Autolus Holdings (UK) Limited and, as a result, will become a wholly owned subsidiary of Autolus Holdings (UK) Limited, which, in turn, will be a wholly owned subsidiary of Autolus Therapeutics Limited. See "Corporate Reorganization" for more information.

We are registered with the Registrar of Companies in England and Wales under number 11185179, and our registered office is at Forest House, 58 Wood Lane, White City, London W12 7RZ, United Kingdom.

As part of our corporate reorganization, certain ordinary and special resolutions were required to be passed by our shareholders. These included resolutions for the adoption of new articles of association that will become effective upon the completion of this offering. See "—Post-IPO Articles of Association" below.

Authorized and Issued Share Capital

As of September 30, 2017, the authorized share capital of Autolus Limited was 78,143,548 series A preferred shares, of which 78,002,897 shares were issued and outstanding, 10,750,000 B ordinary shares, all of which were issued and outstanding, 108,453,434 C ordinary shares, of which 6,678,434 C ordinary shares were issued and outstanding and 3,626,687 C ordinary shares were available for issuance and 20,935 deferred shares, all of which were issued and outstanding. The nominal value of each of our preferred, ordinary and deferred shares was £0.00001 per share and each issued share has been fully paid.

Following the recently completed share exchange between the shareholders of Autolus Limited and Autolus Therapeutics Limited as part of our corporate reorganization, the issued share capital of Autolus Therapeutics Limited initially mirrored the issued share capital of Autolus Limited, but was subsequently converted into ordinary shares on a 3.185-for-1 basis and three classes of deferred shares as part of our corporate reorganization. Following this offering, our issued share capital will be 37,775,184 ordinary shares with a nominal value of \$0.000042 each based on the number of ordinary shares outstanding as of September 30, 2017.

Ordinary Shares

In accordance with our Articles of Association to be in effect upon the completion of this offering, the following summarizes the rights of holders of our ordinary shares:

- each holder of our ordinary shares is entitled to one vote per ordinary share on all matters to be voted on by shareholders generally;
- the holders of the ordinary shares shall be entitled to receive notice of, attend, speak and vote at our general meetings; and
- holders of our ordinary shares are entitled to receive such dividends as are recommended by our directors and declared by our shareholders.

Registered Shares

We are required by the Companies Act to keep a register of our shareholders. Under English law, the ordinary shares are deemed to be issued when the name of the shareholder is entered in our register of members. The register of members therefore is prima facie evidence of the identity of our shareholders, and the shares that they hold. The register of members generally provides limited, or no, information regarding the ultimate beneficial owners of our ordinary shares. Our register of members is maintained by our registrar, Computershare Investor Services plc.

Holders of our ADSs will not be treated as our shareholders and their names will therefore not be entered in our share register. The depositary, the custodian or their nominees will be the holder of the ordinary shares underlying our ADSs. Holders of our ADSs have a right to receive the ordinary shares underlying their ADSs. For discussion on our ADSs and ADS holder rights, see "Description of American Depositary Shares" in this prospectus.

Under the Companies Act, we must enter an allotment of shares in our register of members as soon as practicable and in any event within two months of the allotment. We will perform all procedures necessary to update the register of members to reflect the ordinary shares being allotted and issued in this offering. We also are required by the Companies Act to register a transfer of shares (or give the transferee notice of and reasons for refusal as the transferee may reasonably request) as soon as practicable and in any event within two months of receiving notice of the transfer.

We, any of our shareholders or any other affected person may apply to the court for rectification of the register of members if:

- the name of any person, without sufficient cause, is wrongly entered in or omitted from our register of members; or
- there is a default or unnecessary delay in entering on the register the fact of any person having ceased to be a member or on which we have a lien, provided that such delay does not prevent dealings in the shares taking place on an open and proper basis.

Registration Rights

We and the holders of our series A preferred shares and UCLB entered into the September 2017 SSA which provided that, among other things, we would enter into a registration rights agreement with such holders prior to the completion of an initial public offering. We have agreed that in the registration rights agreement to be entered into prior to the completion of this offering, we will grant the following registration rights:

- *Demand Registration on Form F-1* – following this offering, each holder shall be entitled to consummated demand registrations on Form F-1, provided that these demand registration rights may only be exercised by holders who hold, in the aggregate, not less than 25% of the aggregate number of shares then outstanding and held by all holders who are party to the agreement, and provided further that the Company shall not be required to effect a demand registration statement after it has effected two demand registration statements, and such registration statements have been declared or ordered effective.
- *Demand Registration on Form F-3* – each holder shall be entitled to unlimited demand registrations on Form F-3, if we are eligible to register shares on Form F-3, provided that these demand registration rights may only be exercised by holders who hold, in the aggregate, not less than 10% of the aggregate number of shares then outstanding and held by all holders who are party to the agreement. These demand registration rights may not be exercised more than twice in any twelve-month period.
- *Piggyback Registration* – each holder shall be entitled to piggyback registration rights, subject, in the case of an underwritten offering, to customary reductions by the underwriter, provided that the aggregate number of securities of the holders included in the registration may not be reduced to less than 30% of the total number of securities registered.
- *Expenses* – We will pay all registration expenses relating to the exercise of the registration rights above, including the reasonable fees and expenses of legal counsel to the participating holders up to a maximum of \$50,000 in the aggregate per registration.

Preemptive Rights

English law generally provides shareholders with statutory preemptive rights when new shares are issued for cash; however, it is possible for the articles of association, or shareholders by way of a special resolution at a general meeting, to disapply preemptive rights. Such a disapplication of preemptive rights may be for a maximum period of up to five years from the date of adoption of the articles of association, if the disapplication is contained in the articles of association, or from the date of the shareholder special resolution, if the disapplication is by shareholder special resolution. In either case, this disapplication would need to be renewed by our shareholders upon its expiration (i.e., at least every five years). Our articles of association to be adopted upon completion of this offering disapply preemptive rights for a period of five years from the date of adoption, which disapplication will need to be renewed upon expiration (i.e., at least every five years) to remain effective, but may be sought more frequently for additional five-year terms (or any shorter period). Preemptive rights for the allotment of ordinary shares in connection with this offering have also been disappplied.

Purchase of Own Shares

English law permits a public limited company to purchase its own shares out of the distributable profits of the company or the proceeds of a fresh issue of shares made for the purpose of financing the purchase, subject to complying with procedural requirements under the Companies Act and provided that its articles of association do not prohibit it from doing so. Our Articles of Association, a summary of which is provided below, do not prohibit us from purchasing our own shares. A public limited company must not purchase its own shares if, as a result of the purchase, there would no longer be any issued shares of the company other than redeemable shares or shares held as treasury shares.

Any such purchase will be either a “market purchase” or “off market purchase,” each as defined in the Companies Act. A “market purchase” is a purchase made on a “recognized investment exchange” (other than an overseas exchange) as defined in the UK Financial Services and Markets Act 2000, or FSMA. An “off market purchase” is a purchase that is not made on a “recognized investment exchange.” Both “market purchases” and “off market purchases” require prior shareholder approval by way of an ordinary resolution. In the case of an “off market purchase,” a company’s shareholders, other than the shareholders from whom the company is purchasing shares, must approve the terms of the contract to purchase shares and in the case of a “market purchase,” the shareholders must approve the maximum number of shares that can be purchased and the maximum and minimum prices to be paid by the company.

The Nasdaq Global Select Market is an “overseas exchange” for the purposes of the Companies Act and does not fall within the definition of a “recognized investment exchange” for the purposes of FSMA and any purchase made by us would need to comply with the procedural requirements under the Companies Act that regulate “off market purchases.”

Distributions and Dividends

Under the Companies Act, before a company can lawfully make a distribution or dividend, it must ensure that it has sufficient distributable reserves, as determined on a non-consolidated basis. The basic rule is that a company’s profits available for the purpose of making a distribution are its accumulated, realized profits, so far as not previously utilized by distribution or capitalization, less its accumulated, realized losses, so far as not previously written off in a reduction or reorganization of capital duly made. The requirement to have sufficient distributable reserves before a distribution or dividend can be paid applies to us and to each of our subsidiaries that has been incorporated under English law.

Once we are a public company, it will not be sufficient that we have made a distributable profit for the purpose of making a distribution. An additional capital maintenance requirement will be imposed on us to ensure that the net worth of the company is at least equal to the amount of its capital. A public company can only make a distribution:

- if, at the time that the distribution is made, the amount of its net assets (that is, the total excess of assets over liabilities) is not less than the total of its called up share capital and undistributable reserves; and
- if, and to the extent that, the distribution itself, at the time that it is made, does not reduce the amount of its net assets to less than that total.

Disclosure of Interest in Shares

Pursuant to Part 22 of the Companies Act, we are empowered by notice in writing to any person whom we know or have reasonable cause to believe to be interested in our shares, or at any time during the three years immediately preceding the date on which the notice is issued has been so interested, within a reasonable time to disclose to us particulars of that person’s interest and, so far as is within his or her knowledge, particulars of any other interest that subsists or subsisted in those shares.

Under our Articles of Association, if a person defaults in supplying us with the required particulars in relation to the shares in question, or default shares within the prescribed period, our board of directors may by notice direct that:

- the relevant shareholder shall not be entitled in respect of the default shares to be present or vote, either in person or by proxy, at any general meeting or separate meeting of the holders of a class of shares or upon any poll or to exercise any other right conferred by the membership in relation to any such meeting;
- where the default shares represent at least 0.25% of their class, (a) any dividend or other money payable in respect of the default shares shall be retained by us without liability to pay interest, and/or (b) no transfers by the relevant shareholder of any default shares may be registered, unless the shareholder himself or herself is not in default and the shareholder proves to the satisfaction of the board of directors that no person in default as regards to supplying such information is interested in any of the default shares; and/or
- any shares held by the relevant shareholder in uncertificated form shall be converted into certificated form.

Post-IPO Articles of Association

Our Articles of Association were adopted by a special resolution of the founder shareholder passed in June 2018. A summary of the terms of the Articles of Association is set out below. The summary below is not a complete copy of the terms of the Articles of Association.

The Articles of Association contain no specific restrictions on our purpose and therefore, by virtue of section 31(1) of the Companies Act, our purpose is unrestricted.

The Articles of Association contain, among other things, provisions to the following effect:

Share Capital

Our share capital currently consists of ordinary shares and deferred shares. We may issue shares with such rights or restrictions as may be determined by ordinary resolution, including shares which are to be redeemed, or are liable to be redeemed at our option or the option of the holder of such shares.

Voting

Holders of ordinary shares have the right to receive notice of, and to vote at, our general meetings. Any resolution put to the vote of a general meeting must be decided exclusively on a poll. Each shareholder who is present in person (or, being a corporation, by representative) or by proxy has one vote in respect of every share held by him.

Variation of Rights

Whenever our share capital is divided into different classes of shares, the special rights attached to any class may be varied or abrogated either (i) with the consent in writing of the holders of three-quarters in nominal value of the issued shares of that class, (ii) with the authority of a special resolution passed at a separate meeting of the holders of the shares of that class or (iii) in any other way as expressly provided for in relation to such rights, and may be so varied and abrogated while the company is a going concern.

Dividends

We may, subject to the provisions of the Companies Act and the Articles of Association, by ordinary resolution from time to time declare dividends to be paid to shareholders not exceeding the

amount recommended by our board of directors. Subject to the provisions of the Companies Act, in the discretion of board of directors, on the basis that our profits justify such payments, the board of directors may pay interim dividends on any class of our shares.

Any dividend unclaimed after a period of 12 years from the date such dividend was declared or became payable shall, if the board of directors resolve, be forfeited, cease to remain owing and shall revert to us. No dividend or other moneys payable on or in respect of a share shall bear interest as against us.

Transfer of Ordinary Shares

Each member may transfer all or any of his shares which are in certificated form by means of an instrument of transfer in writing in any usual form or in any other form which the board of directors may approve.

The board of directors may, in its absolute discretion, refuse to register a transfer of certificated shares unless:

- (i) it is for a share which is fully paid up;
- (ii) it is for a share upon which the company has no lien;
- (iii) it is only for one class of share;
- (iv) it is in favor of a single transferee or no more than four joint transferees;
- (v) it is duly stamped or is duly certificated or otherwise shown to the satisfaction of the board of directors to be exempt from stamp duty; and
- (vi) it is delivered for registration to the registered office of the company (or such other place as the board of directors may determine), accompanied (except in the case of a transfer by a person to whom the company is not required by law to issue a certificate and to whom a certificate has not been issued or in the case of a renunciation) by the certificate for the shares to which it relates and such other evidence as the board of directors may reasonably require to prove the title of the transferor (or person renouncing) and the due execution of the transfer or renunciation by him or, if the transfer or renunciation is executed by some other person on his behalf, the authority of that person to do so.

Allotment of Shares and Preemption Rights

Subject to the Companies Act and to any rights attached to existing shares, any share may be issued with or have attached to it such rights and restrictions as the company may by ordinary resolution determine, or if no ordinary resolution has been passed or so far as the resolution does not make specific provision, as the board of directors may determine (including shares which are to be redeemed, or are liable to be redeemed at the option of the company or the holder of such shares).

In accordance with section 551 of the Companies Act, the board of directors may be generally and unconditionally authorized to exercise for each prescribed period all the powers of the company to allot shares up to an aggregate nominal amount equal to the amount stated in the relevant ordinary resolution authorizing such allotment. The authorities referred to above are included in our articles of association to be adopted prior to the completion of this offering and remain in force at the date of this prospectus.

The provisions of section 561 of the Companies Act (which confer on shareholders rights of preemption in respect of the allotment of equity securities which are paid up in cash) apply to the company except to the extent disappplied by special resolution of the shareholders of the company, or in the company's articles of association. Such preemption rights will be disappplied by our articles of association to be adopted prior to the completion of this offering.

Alteration of Share Capital

In accordance with the Companies Act, the company may by ordinary resolution consolidate its share capital into shares of larger nominal value than its existing shares, or sub-divide its shares into shares of a smaller amount than the existing shares, and may in each case determine that the shares resulting from such sub-division or share consolidation may have a preference or advantage or be subject to a particular restriction.

The company may, in accordance with the Companies Act, reduce or cancel its share capital or any capital redemption reserve or share premium account in any manner and with and subject to any conditions, authorities and consents required by law.

Board of Directors

Unless otherwise determined by the company by ordinary resolution, the number of directors (other than any alternate directors) shall not be less than two and not more than 15.

Subject to the Articles of Association and the Companies Act, the company may by ordinary resolution appoint a person who is willing to act as a director and the board of directors shall have power at any time to appoint any person who is willing to act as a director, in both cases either to fill a vacancy or as an addition to the existing board of directors, provided the total number of directors shall not exceed the maximum number of 15.

Our Articles of Association provide that upon completion of this offering, our board of directors will be divided into three classes, each of which will consist, as nearly as possible, of one-third of the total number of directors constituting our entire board and which will serve staggered three-year terms. At each annual general meeting, the successors to directors whose terms then expire will be elected to serve from the time of election and qualification until the third annual meeting following election.

At every subsequent annual general meeting, any director who either (i) has been appointed by the board of directors since the last annual general meeting or (ii) was not appointed or reappointed at one of the preceding two annual general meetings, must retire from office and may offer themselves for reappointment by the shareholders by ordinary resolution.

Subject to the provisions of the Articles of Association, the board of directors may regulate their proceedings as they deem appropriate. A director may, and the secretary at the request of a director shall, call a meeting of the directors.

The quorum for a meeting of the board of directors may be determined by the board and until otherwise determined, it is set at two directors.

Questions and matters requiring resolution arising at a meeting shall be decided by a majority of votes of the participating directors, with each director having one vote. In the case of an equality of votes, the chairman will have a casting vote or second vote, unless he or she is not entitled to vote on the resolution in question.

Directors shall be entitled to receive such compensation as the board shall determine for their services to the company as directors, and for any other service which they undertake for the company provided that the aggregate fees payable to the directors must not exceed \$2,500,000 per annum or such higher amount as may from time to time be decided by ordinary resolution. The directors shall also be entitled to be paid all reasonable expenses properly incurred by them in connection with their attendance at meetings of shareholders or class meetings, board of director or committee meetings or otherwise in connection with the exercise of their powers and the discharge of their responsibilities in relation to the company.

The board of directors may, in accordance with the requirements in the Articles of Association, authorize any matter proposed to them by any director which would, if not authorized, involve a director breaching their duty under the Companies Act, to avoid conflicts of interests.

A director seeking authorization in respect of such conflict shall declare to the board of directors the nature and extent of his interest in a conflict as soon as is reasonably practicable. The director shall provide the board with such details of the matter as are necessary for the board to decide how to address the conflict together with such additional information as may be requested by the board.

Any authorization by the board of directors will be effective only if:

- (i) to the extent permitted by the Companies Act, the matter in question shall have been proposed by any director for consideration in the same way that any other matter may be proposed to the directors under the provisions of the Articles;
- (ii) any requirement as to the quorum for consideration of the relevant matter is met without counting the conflicted director and any other conflicted director; and
- (iii) the matter is agreed to without the conflicted director voting or would be agreed to if the conflicted director's and any other interested director's vote is not counted.

Subject to the provisions of the Companies Act, every director, secretary or other officer of the company (other than an auditor) is entitled to be indemnified against all losses and liabilities incurred in connection with his or her duties and powers.

General Meetings

The company must convene and hold annual general meetings once a year in accordance with the Companies Act. Under the Companies Act, an annual general meeting must be called by notice of at least 21 days.

No business shall be transacted at any general meeting unless a quorum is present when the meeting proceeds to business, but the absence of a quorum shall not preclude the choice or appointment of a chairman of the meeting which shall not be treated as part of the business of the meeting. Unless otherwise provided by the Articles of Association, two shareholders present in person or by proxy and entitled to vote shall be a quorum for all purposes.

Borrowing Powers

Subject to the Articles of Association and the Companies Act, the board of directors may exercise all of the powers of the company to:

- (a) borrow money;
- (b) indemnify and guarantee;
- (c) mortgage or charge the assets of the company;
- (d) create and issue debentures and other securities; and
- (e) give security either outright or as collateral security for any debt, liability or obligation of the company or of any third party.

Capitalization of profits

The directors may, if they are so authorized by an ordinary resolution of the shareholders, decide to capitalize any undivided profits of the company not required for paying any preferential dividend (whether or not they are available for distribution), or any sum standing to the credit of the company's

share premium account, capital redemption reserve or any other reserve or fund of the company which is available for distribution. The directors may also, subject to the aforementioned ordinary resolution, appropriate any sum which they so decide to capitalize to the persons who would have been entitled to it if it were distributed by way of dividend and in the same proportions.

(iii) Uncertificated Shares

Subject to the Companies Act, the board of directors may permit title to shares of any class to be issued or held otherwise than by a certificate and to be transferred by means of a "relevant system" (e.g., DTC) without a certificate.

The board of directors may take such steps as it sees fit in relation to the evidencing of and transfer of title to uncertificated shares, any records relating to the holding of uncertificated shares and the conversion of uncertificated shares to certificated shares, or *vice versa*.

The company may by notice in writing to the holder of an uncertificated share, require that share to be converted into certificated form.

The board of directors may take such other action that the board considers appropriate to achieve the sale, transfer, disposal, forfeiture, re-allotment or surrender of an uncertificated share or otherwise to enforce a lien in respect of it.

Choice of Forum

Our articles of association will provide that the U.S. federal district courts will be the exclusive forum for resolving any complaint asserting a cause of action arising under the Securities Act.

Other Relevant United Kingdom Laws and Regulations

Mandatory Bid

- (i) The Takeover Code applies to the company. Under the Takeover Code, where:
 - a. any person, together with persons acting in concert with him, acquires, whether by a series of transactions over a period of time or not, an interest in shares which (taken together with shares in which he is already interested, and in which persons acting in concert with him are interested) carry 30% or more of the voting rights of a company; or
 - b. any person who, together with persons acting in concert with him, is interested in shares which in the aggregate carry not less than 30% of the voting rights of a company but does not hold shares carrying more than 50% of such voting rights and such person, or any person acting in concert with him, acquires an interest in any other shares which increases the percentage of shares carrying voting rights in which he is interested;

such person shall, except in limited circumstances, be obliged to extend offers, on the basis set out in Rules 9.3, 9.4 and 9.5 of the Takeover Code, to the holders of any class of equity share capital, whether voting or non-voting, and also to the holders of any other class of transferable securities carrying voting rights. Offers for different classes of equity share capital must be comparable; the Takeover Panel should be consulted in advance in such cases.

- (ii) An offer under Rule 9 of the Takeover Code must be in cash and at the highest price paid for any interest in the shares by the person required to make an offer or any person acting in concert with him during the 12 months prior to the announcement of the offer.
- (iii) Under the Takeover Code, a "concert party" arises where persons acting together pursuant to an agreement or understanding (whether formal or informal and whether or not in writing) actively cooperate, through the acquisition by them of an interest in shares in a company, to

obtain or consolidate control of the company. "Control" means holding, or aggregate holdings, of an interest in shares carrying 30% or more of the voting rights of the company, irrespective of whether the holding or holdings give *de facto* control.

Squeeze-out

- (i) Under sections 979 to 982 of the Companies Act, if an offeror were to acquire, or unconditionally contract to acquire, not less than 90% in value of the ordinary shares of the company and 90% of the voting rights carried by the ordinary shares of the company, it could then compulsorily acquire the remaining 10%. It would do so by sending a notice to outstanding shareholders telling them that it will compulsorily acquire their shares, provided that no such notice may be served after the end of: (a) the period of three months beginning with the day after the last day on which the offer can be accepted; or (b) if earlier, and the offer is not one to which section 943(1) of the Companies Act applies, the period of six months beginning with the date of the offer.
- (ii) Six weeks following service of the notice, the offeror must send a copy of it to the company together with the consideration for the ordinary shares to which the notice relates, and an instrument of transfer executed on behalf of the outstanding shareholder(s) by a person appointed by the offeror.
- (iii) The company will hold the consideration on trust for the outstanding shareholders.

Sell-out

- (i) Sections 983 to 985 of the Companies Act also give minority shareholders in the company a right to be bought out in certain circumstances by an offeror who has made a takeover offer. If a takeover offer relating to all the ordinary shares of the company is made at any time before the end of the period within which the offer could be accepted and the offeror held or had agreed to acquire not less than 90% of the ordinary shares, any holder of shares to which the offer related who had not accepted the offer could by a written communication to the offeror require it to acquire those shares. The offeror is required to give any shareholder notice of his right to be bought out within one month of that right arising. The offeror may impose a time limit on the rights of minority shareholders to be bought out, but that period cannot end less than three months after the end of the acceptance period, or, if longer a period of three months from the date of the notice.
- (ii) If a shareholder exercises his rights, the offeror is bound to acquire those shares on the terms of the offer or on such other terms as may be agreed.

Differences in Corporate Law

The applicable provisions of the Companies Act differ from laws applicable to U.S. corporations and their shareholders. Set forth below is a summary of certain differences between the provisions of the Companies Act applicable to us and the General Corporation Law of the State of Delaware relating to shareholders' rights and protections. This summary is not intended to be a complete discussion of the respective rights and it is qualified in its entirety by reference to Delaware law and English law.

	ENGLAND	DELAWARE
Number of Directors	Under the Companies Act, a public limited company must have at least two directors and	Under Delaware law, a corporation must have at least one director and the

	ENGLAND	DELAWARE
	the number of directors may be fixed by or in the manner provided in a company's articles of association.	number of directors shall be fixed by or in the manner provided in the bylaws.
Removal of Directors	<p>Under the Companies Act, shareholders may remove a director without cause by an ordinary resolution (which is passed by a simple majority of those voting in person or by proxy at a general meeting) irrespective of any provisions of any service contract the director has with the company, provided 28 clear days' notice of the resolution has been given to the company and its shareholders. On receipt of notice of an intended resolution to remove a director, the company must forthwith send a copy of the notice to the director concerned. Certain other procedural requirements under the Companies Act must also be followed, such as allowing the director to make representations against his or her removal either at the meeting or in writing.</p>	<p>Under Delaware law, any director or the entire board of directors may be removed, with or without cause, by the holders of a majority of the shares then entitled to vote at an election of directors, except (i) unless the certificate of incorporation provides otherwise, in the case of a corporation whose board of directors is classified, stockholders may effect such removal only for cause, or (ii) in the case of a corporation having cumulative voting, if less than the entire board of directors is to be removed, no director may be removed without cause if the votes cast against his removal would be sufficient to elect him if then cumulatively voted at an election of the entire board of directors, or, if there are classes of directors, at an election of the class of directors of which he is a part.</p>
Vacancies on the Board of Directors	<p>Under English law, the procedure by which directors, other than a company's initial directors, are appointed is generally set out in a company's articles of association, provided that where two or more persons are appointed as directors of a public limited company by resolution of the shareholders, resolutions appointing each director must be voted on individually.</p>	<p>Under Delaware law, vacancies and newly created directorships may be filled by a majority of the directors then in office (even though less than a quorum) or by a sole remaining director unless (i) otherwise provided in the certificate of incorporation or bylaws of the corporation or (ii) the certificate of incorporation directs that a particular class of stock is to elect such director, in which case a majority of the other directors</p>

	ENGLAND	DELAWARE
Annual General Meeting	Under the Companies Act, a public limited company must hold an annual general meeting in each six-month period following the company's annual accounting reference date.	elected by such class, or a sole remaining director elected by such class, will fill such vacancy. Under Delaware law, the annual meeting of stockholders shall be held at such place, on such date and at such time as may be designated from time to time by the board of directors or as provided in the certificate of incorporation or by the bylaws.
General Meeting	Under the Companies Act, a general meeting of the shareholders of a public limited company may be called by the directors. Shareholders holding at least 5% of the paid-up capital of the company carrying voting rights at general meetings (excluding any paid up capital held as treasury shares) can require the directors to call a general meeting and, if the directors fail to do so within a certain period, may themselves convene a general meeting.	Under Delaware law, special meetings of the stockholders may be called by the board of directors or by such person or persons as may be authorized by the certificate of incorporation or by the bylaws.
Notice of General Meetings	Under the Companies Act, at least 21 days' notice must be given for an annual general meeting and any resolutions to be proposed at the meeting. Subject to a company's articles of association providing for a longer period, at least 14 days' notice is required for any other general meeting of a public limited company. In addition, certain matters, such as the removal of directors or auditors, require special notice, which is 28 days' notice. The shareholders of a company may in all cases consent to a shorter notice period, the proportion of shareholders'	Under Delaware law, unless otherwise provided in the certificate of incorporation or bylaws, written notice of any meeting of the stockholders must be given to each stockholder entitled to vote at the meeting not less than ten nor more than 60 days before the date of the meeting and shall specify the place, date, hour and purpose or purposes of the meeting.

	ENGLAND	DELAWARE
	consent required being 100% of those entitled to attend and vote in the case of an annual general meeting and, in the case of any other general meeting, a majority in number of the members having a right to attend and vote at the meeting, being a majority who together hold not less than 95% in nominal value of the shares giving a right to attend and vote at the meeting.	
Proxy	Under the Companies Act, at any meeting of shareholders, a shareholder may designate another person to attend, speak and vote at the meeting on their behalf by proxy.	Under Delaware law, at any meeting of stockholders, a stockholder may designate another person to act for such stockholder by proxy, but no such proxy shall be voted or acted upon after three years from its date, unless the proxy provides for a longer period. A director of a Delaware corporation may not issue a proxy representing the director's voting rights as a director.
Preemptive Rights	Under the Companies Act, "equity securities," being (i) shares in the company other than shares that, with respect to dividends and capital, carry a right to participate only up to a specified amount in a distribution, referred to as "ordinary shares," or (ii) rights to subscribe for, or to convert securities into, ordinary shares, proposed to be allotted for cash must be offered first to the existing equity shareholders in the company in proportion to the respective nominal value of their holdings, unless an exception applies or a special resolution to the contrary has been passed by shareholders in a general meeting or the articles of association provide otherwise	Under Delaware law, shareholders have no preemptive rights to subscribe to additional issues of stock or to any security convertible into such stock unless, and except to the extent that, such rights are expressly provided for in the certificate of incorporation.

	ENGLAND	DELAWARE
Authority to Allot	<p>in each case in accordance with the provisions of the Companies Act.</p> <p>Under the Companies Act, the directors of a company must not allot shares or grant rights to subscribe for or convert any security into shares unless an exception applies or an ordinary resolution to the contrary has been passed by shareholders in a general meeting or the articles of association provide otherwise, in each case in accordance with the provisions of the Companies Act.</p>	<p>Under Delaware law, if the corporation's charter or certificate of incorporation so provides, the board of directors has the power to authorize the issuance of stock. The board may authorize capital stock to be issued for consideration consisting of cash, any tangible or intangible property or any benefit to the corporation or any combination thereof. It may determine the amount of such consideration by approving a formula. In the absence of actual fraud in the transaction, the judgment of the directors as to the value of such consideration is conclusive.</p>
Liability of Directors and Officers	<p>Under the Companies Act, any provision, whether contained in a company's articles of association or any contract or otherwise, that purports to exempt a director of a company, to any extent, from any liability that would otherwise attach to him in connection with any negligence, default, breach of duty or breach of trust in relation to the company, is void. Any provision by which a company directly or indirectly provides an indemnity, to any extent, for a director of the company or of an associated company against any liability attaching to him in connection with any negligence, default, breach of duty or breach of trust in relation to the company of which he is a director is also void except as permitted by the</p>	<p>Under Delaware law, a corporation's certificate of incorporation may include a provision eliminating or limiting the personal liability of a director to the corporation and its stockholders for damages arising from a breach of fiduciary duty as a director. However, no provision can limit the liability of a director for:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • any breach of the director's duty of loyalty to the corporation or its stockholders; • acts or omissions not in good faith or that involve intentional misconduct or a knowing violation of law; • intentional or negligent payment of unlawful

	ENGLAND	DELAWARE
	Companies Act, which provides exceptions for the company to (i) purchase and maintain insurance against such liability; (ii) provide a "qualifying third party indemnity," or an indemnity against liability incurred by the director to a person other than the company or an associated company or criminal proceedings in which he is convicted; and (iii) provide a "qualifying pension scheme indemnity," or an indemnity against liability incurred in connection with the company's activities as trustee of an occupational pension plan.	dividends or stock purchases or redemptions; or <ul style="list-style-type: none"> any transaction from which the director derives an improper personal benefit.
Voting Rights	Under English law, unless a poll is demanded by the shareholders of a company or is required by the chairman of the meeting or the company's articles of association, shareholders shall vote on all resolutions on a show of hands. Under the Companies Act, a poll may be demanded by (i) not fewer than five shareholders having the right to vote on the resolution; (ii) any shareholder(s) representing not less than 10% of the total voting rights of all the shareholders having the right to vote on the resolution (excluding any voting rights attaching to treasury shares); or (iii) any shareholder(s) holding shares in the company conferring a right to vote on the resolution (excluding any voting rights attaching to treasury shares) being shares on which an aggregate sum has been paid up equal to not less than 10% of the total sum paid up on all the shares conferring that right. A company's articles of association may provide	Delaware law provides that, unless otherwise provided in the certificate of incorporation, each stockholder is entitled to one vote for each share of capital stock held by such stockholder.

	ENGLAND	DELAWARE
	<p>more extensive rights for shareholders to call a poll.</p> <p>Under English law, an ordinary resolution is passed on a show of hands if it is approved by a simple majority (more than 50%) of the votes cast by shareholders present (in person or by proxy) and entitled to vote. If a poll is demanded, an ordinary resolution is passed if it is approved by holders representing a simple majority of the total voting rights of shareholders present, in person or by proxy, who, being entitled to vote, vote on the resolution. Special resolutions require the affirmative vote of not less than 75% of the votes cast by shareholders present, in person or by proxy, at the meeting.</p>	
Shareholder Vote on Certain Transactions	<p>The Companies Act provides for schemes of arrangement, which are arrangements or compromises between a company and any class of shareholders or creditors and used in certain types of reconstructions, amalgamations, capital reorganizations or takeovers. These arrangements require:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• the approval at a shareholders' or creditors' meeting convened by order of the court, of a majority in number of shareholders or creditors representing 75% in value of the capital held by, or debt owed to, the class of shareholders or creditors, or class thereof present and voting, either in person or by proxy; and• the approval of the court.	<p>Generally, under Delaware law, unless the certificate of incorporation provides for the vote of a larger portion of the stock, completion of a merger, consolidation, sale, lease or exchange of all or substantially all of a corporation's assets or dissolution requires:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• the approval of the board of directors; and• the approval by the vote of the holders of a majority of the outstanding stock or, if the certificate of incorporation provides for more or less than one vote per share, a majority of the votes of the outstanding stock of the corporation entitled to vote on the matter.

	ENGLAND	DELAWARE
Standard of Conduct for Directors	<p>Under English law, a director owes various statutory and fiduciary duties to the company, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • to act in the way he considers, in good faith, would be most likely to promote the success of the company for the benefit of its members as a whole; • to avoid a situation in which he has, or can have, a direct or indirect interest that conflicts, or possibly conflicts, with the interests of the company; • to act in accordance with the company's constitution and only exercise his powers for the purposes for which they are conferred; • to exercise independent judgment; • to exercise reasonable care, skill and diligence; • not to accept benefits from a third party conferred by reason of his being a director or doing, or not doing, anything as a director; and • to declare any interest that he has, whether directly or indirectly, in a proposed or existing transaction or arrangement with the company. 	<p>Delaware law does not contain specific provisions setting forth the standard of conduct of a director. The scope of the fiduciary duties of directors is generally determined by the courts of the State of Delaware. In general, directors have a duty to act without self-interest, on a well-informed basis and in a manner they reasonably believe to be in the best interest of the stockholders.</p> <p>Directors of a Delaware corporation owe fiduciary duties of care and loyalty to the corporation and to its shareholders. The duty of care generally requires that a director acts in good faith, with the care that an ordinarily prudent person would exercise under similar circumstances. Under this duty, a director must inform himself of all material information reasonably available regarding a significant transaction. The duty of loyalty requires that a director act in a manner he reasonably believes to be in the best interests of the corporation. He must not use his corporate position for personal gain or advantage. In general, but subject to certain exceptions, actions of a director are presumed to have been made on an informed basis, in good faith and in the honest belief that the action taken was in the best interests of the corporation. However, this presumption may be rebutted by evidence of a breach of one of the fiduciary duties. Delaware courts have also</p>

	ENGLAND	DELAWARE
Shareholder Litigation	<p>Under English law, generally, the company, rather than its shareholders, is the proper claimant in an action in respect of a wrong done to the company or where there is an irregularity in the company's internal management. Notwithstanding this general position, the Companies Act provides that (i) a court may allow a shareholder to bring a derivative claim (that is, an action in respect of and on behalf of the company) in respect of a cause of action arising from a director's negligence, default, breach of duty or breach of trust and (ii) a shareholder may bring a claim for a court order where the company's affairs have been or are being conducted in a manner that is unfairly prejudicial to some of its shareholders.</p>	<p>imposed a heightened standard of conduct upon directors of a Delaware corporation who take any action designed to defeat a threatened change in control of the corporation.</p> <p>In addition, under Delaware law, when the board of directors of a Delaware corporation approves the sale or break-up of a corporation, the board of directors may, in certain circumstances, have a duty to obtain the highest value reasonably available to the shareholders.</p> <p>Under Delaware law, a stockholder may initiate a derivative action to enforce a right of a corporation if the corporation fails to enforce the right itself. The complaint must:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• state that the plaintiff was a stockholder at the time of the transaction of which the plaintiff complains or that the plaintiff's shares thereafter devolved on the plaintiff by operation of law; and• allege with particularity the efforts made by the plaintiff to obtain the action the plaintiff desires from the directors and the reasons for the plaintiff's failure to obtain the action; or• state the reasons for not making the effort. <p>Additionally, the plaintiff must remain a stockholder through the duration of the derivative suit. The action will not be dismissed or compromised</p>

ENGLAND

DELAWARE

without the approval of the Delaware Court of Chancery.

Transfer Agent and Registrar of Shares

Our share register will be maintained by Computershare Investor Services plc upon the closing of this offering. The share register reflects only record owners of our ordinary shares. Holders of our ADSs will not be treated as our shareholders and their names will therefore not be entered in our share register. The depositary, the custodian or their nominees will be the holder of the ordinary shares underlying our ADSs. Holders of our ADSs have a right to receive the ordinary shares underlying their ADSs. For discussion on our ADSs and ADS holder rights, see "Description of American Depositary Shares" in this prospectus.

Nasdaq Global Select Market Listing

Our ADSs have been approved for listing on The Nasdaq Global Select Market under the trading symbol "AUTL."

DESCRIPTION OF AMERICAN DEPOSITARY SHARES

American Depositary Shares

Citibank, N.A., or Citibank, has agreed to act as the depositary for the ADSs. Citibank's depositary offices are located at 388 Greenwich Street, New York, New York 10013. ADSs represent ownership interests in securities that are on deposit with the depositary. ADSs may be represented by certificates that are commonly known as American Depositary Receipts, or ADRs. The depositary typically appoints a custodian to safekeep the securities on deposit. In this case, the custodian is Citibank, N.A., London Branch located at 25 Canada Square, Canary Wharf, London, E14 5LB, United Kingdom.

We have appointed Citibank as depositary pursuant to a deposit agreement. A copy of the deposit agreement is on file with the SEC under cover of a registration statement on Form F-6. You may obtain a copy of the deposit agreement from the SEC's Public Reference Room at 100 F Street, N.E., Washington, D.C. 20549 and from the SEC's website (www.sec.gov). Please refer to registration number 333-224837 when retrieving such copy.

We are providing you with a summary description of the material terms of the ADSs and of your material rights as an owner of ADSs. Please remember that summaries by their nature lack the precision of the information summarized and that the rights and obligations of an owner of ADSs will be determined by reference to the terms of the deposit agreement and not by this summary. We urge you to review the deposit agreement in its entirety.

Each ADS represents the right to receive, and to exercise the beneficial ownership interests in, one ordinary share that is on deposit with the depositary and/or custodian. An ADS also represents the right to receive, and to exercise the beneficial interests in, any other property received by the depositary or the custodian on behalf of the owner of the ADS but that has not been distributed to the owners of ADSs because of legal restrictions or practical considerations. We and the depositary may agree to change the ADS-to-ordinary share ratio by amending the deposit agreement. This amendment may give rise to, or change, the depositary fees payable by ADS owners. The custodian, the depositary and their respective nominees will hold all deposited property for the benefit of the holders and beneficial owners of ADSs. The deposited property does not constitute the proprietary assets of the depositary, the custodian or their nominees. Beneficial ownership in the deposited property will under the terms of the deposit agreement be vested in the beneficial owners of the ADSs. The depositary, the custodian and their respective nominees will be the record holders of the deposited property represented by the ADSs for the benefit of the holders and beneficial owners of the corresponding ADSs. A beneficial owner of ADSs may or may not be the holder of ADSs. Beneficial owners of ADSs will be able to receive, and to exercise beneficial ownership interests in, the deposited property only through the registered holders of the ADSs, the registered holders of the ADSs (on behalf of the applicable ADS owners) only through the depositary, and the depositary (on behalf of the owners of the corresponding ADSs) directly, or indirectly, through the custodian or their respective nominees, in each case upon the terms of the deposit agreement.

If you become an owner of ADSs, you will become a party to the deposit agreement and therefore will be bound to its terms and to the terms of any ADR that represents your ADSs. The deposit agreement and the ADR specify our rights and obligations as well as your rights and obligations as owner of ADSs and those of the depositary. As an ADS holder you appoint the depositary to act on your behalf in certain circumstances. The deposit agreement and the ADRs are governed by New York law. However, our obligations to the holders of ordinary shares will continue to be governed by the laws of England and Wales, which may be different from the laws in the United States.

In addition, applicable laws and regulations may require you to satisfy reporting requirements and obtain regulatory approvals in certain circumstances. You are solely responsible for complying with such reporting requirements and obtaining such approvals. Neither the depositary, the custodian, us or any of their or our respective agents or affiliates shall be required to take any actions whatsoever on your behalf to satisfy such reporting requirements or obtain such regulatory approvals under applicable laws and regulations.

As an owner of ADSs, we will not treat you as one of our shareholders and you will not have direct shareholder rights. The depositary will hold on your behalf the shareholder rights attached to the ordinary shares underlying your ADSs. As an owner of ADSs you will be able to exercise the shareholders rights for the ordinary shares represented by your ADSs through the depositary only to the extent contemplated in the deposit agreement. To exercise any shareholder rights not contemplated in the deposit agreement you will, as an ADS owner, need to arrange for the cancellation of your ADSs and become a direct shareholder. The manner in which you own ADSs (e.g., in brokerage account vs. as registered holder, or as holder of certificated vs. uncertificated) may affect your rights and obligations, and the manner in which the depositary's services are made available to you.

As an owner of ADSs, you may hold your ADSs either by means of an ADR registered in your name, through a brokerage or safekeeping account, or through an account established by the depositary in your name reflecting the registration of uncertificated ADSs directly on the books of the depositary (commonly referred to as the direct registration system or DRS). The direct registration system reflects the uncertificated (book-entry) registration of ownership of ADSs by the depositary. Under the direct registration system, ownership of ADSs is evidenced by periodic statements issued by the depositary to the holders of the ADSs. The direct registration system includes automated transfers between the depositary and The Depository Trust Company, or DTC, the central book-entry clearing and settlement system for equity securities in the United States. If you decide to hold your ADSs through your brokerage or safekeeping account, you must rely on the procedures of your broker or bank to assert your rights as ADS owner. Banks and brokers typically hold securities such as the ADSs through clearing and settlement systems such as DTC. The procedures of such clearing and settlement systems may limit your ability to exercise your rights as an owner of ADSs. Please consult with your broker or bank if you have any questions concerning these limitations and procedures. All ADSs held through DTC will be registered in the name of a nominee of DTC. This summary description assumes you have opted to own the ADSs directly by means of an ADS registered in your name and, as such, we will refer to you as the "holder." When we refer to "you," we assume the reader owns ADSs and will own ADSs at the relevant time.

The registration of the ordinary shares in the name of the depositary or the custodian shall, to the maximum extent permitted by applicable law, vest in the depositary or the custodian the record ownership in the applicable ordinary shares with the beneficial ownership rights and interests in such ordinary shares being at all times vested with the beneficial owners of the ADSs representing the ordinary shares. The depositary or the custodian shall at all times be entitled to exercise the beneficial ownership rights in all deposited property, in each case only on behalf of the holders and beneficial owners of the ADSs representing the deposited property.

Dividends and Other Distributions

As a holder of ADSs, you generally have the right to receive the distributions we make on the securities deposited with the custodian. Your receipt of these distributions may be limited, however, by practical considerations and legal limitations. Holders of ADSs will receive such distributions under the terms of the deposit agreement in proportion to the number of ADSs held as of the specified record date, after deduction the applicable fees, taxes and expenses.

Distributions of Cash

Whenever we make a cash distribution for the securities on deposit with the custodian, we will deposit the funds with the custodian. Upon receipt of confirmation of the deposit of the requisite funds, the depositary will arrange for the funds received in a currency other than U.S. dollars to be converted into U.S. dollars and for the distribution of the U.S. dollars to the holders, subject to the laws and regulations of England and Wales.

The conversion into U.S. dollars will take place only if practicable and if the U.S. dollars are transferable to the United States. The depositary will apply the same method for distributing the proceeds of the sale of any property (such as undistributed rights) held by the custodian in respect of securities on deposit.

The distribution of cash will be made net of the fees, expenses, taxes and governmental charges payable by holders under the terms of the deposit agreement. The depositary will hold any cash amounts it is unable to distribute in a non-interest bearing account for the benefit of the applicable holders and beneficial owners of ADSs until the distribution can be effected or the funds that the depositary holds must be escheated as unclaimed property in accordance with the laws of the relevant states of the United States.

Distributions of Shares

Whenever we make a free distribution of ordinary shares for the securities on deposit with the custodian, we will deposit the applicable number of ordinary shares with the custodian. Upon receipt of confirmation of such deposit, the depositary will either distribute to holders new ADSs representing the ordinary shares deposited or modify the ADS-to-ordinary shares ratio, in which case each ADS you hold will represent rights and interests in the additional ordinary shares so deposited. Only whole new ADSs will be distributed. Fractional entitlements will be sold and the proceeds of such sale will be distributed as in the case of a cash distribution.

The distribution of new ADSs or the modification of the ADS-to-ordinary share ratio upon a distribution of ordinary shares will be made net of the fees, expenses, taxes and governmental charges payable by holders under the terms of the deposit agreement. In order to pay such taxes or governmental charges, the depositary may sell all or a portion of the new ordinary shares so distributed.

No such distribution of new ADSs will be made if it would violate a law (e.g., the U.S. securities laws) or if it is not operationally practicable. If the depositary does not distribute new ADSs as described above, it may sell the ordinary shares received upon the terms described in the deposit agreement and will distribute the proceeds of the sale as in the case of a distribution of cash.

Distributions of Rights

Whenever we intend to distribute rights to purchase additional ordinary shares, we will give prior notice to the depositary and we will assist the depositary in determining whether it is lawful and reasonably practicable to distribute rights to purchase additional ADSs to holders.

The depositary will establish procedures to distribute rights to purchase additional ADSs to holders and to enable such holders to exercise such rights if it is lawful and reasonably practicable to make the rights available to holders of ADSs, and if we provide all of the documentation contemplated in the deposit agreement (such as opinions to address the lawfulness of the transaction). You may have to pay fees, expenses, taxes and other governmental charges to subscribe for the new ADSs upon the exercise of your rights. The depositary is not obligated to establish procedures to facilitate the distribution and exercise by holders of rights to purchase new ordinary shares other than in the form of ADSs.

The depositary will not distribute the rights to you if:

- we do not timely request that the rights be distributed to you or we request that the rights not be distributed to you;
- we fail to deliver satisfactory documents to the depositary; or
- it is not reasonably practicable to distribute the rights.

The depositary will sell the rights that are not exercised or not distributed if such sale is lawful and reasonably practicable. The proceeds of such sale will be distributed to holders as in the case of a cash distribution. If the depositary is unable to sell the rights, it will allow the rights to lapse.

Elective Distributions

Whenever we intend to distribute a dividend payable at the election of shareholders either in cash or in additional shares, we will give prior notice thereof to the depositary and will indicate whether we wish the elective distribution to be made available to you. In such case, we will assist the depositary in determining whether such distribution is lawful and reasonably practicable.

The depositary will make the election available to you only if it is reasonably practicable and if we have provided all of the documentation contemplated in the deposit agreement. In such case, the depositary will establish procedures to enable you to elect to receive either cash or additional ADSs, in each case as described in the deposit agreement.

If the election is not made available to you, you will receive either cash or additional ADSs, depending on what a shareholder in England and Wales would receive upon failing to make an election, as more fully described in the deposit agreement.

Other Distributions

Whenever we intend to distribute property other than cash, ordinary shares or rights to purchase additional ordinary shares, we will notify the depositary in advance and will indicate whether we wish such distribution to be made to you. If so, we will assist the depositary in determining whether such distribution to holders is lawful and reasonably practicable.

If it is reasonably practicable to distribute such property to you and if we provide all of the documentation contemplated in the deposit agreement, the depositary will distribute the property to the holders in a manner it deems practicable.

The distribution will be made net of fees, expenses, taxes and governmental charges payable by holders under the terms of the deposit agreement. In order to pay such taxes and governmental charges, the depositary may sell all or a portion of the property received.

The depositary will *not* distribute the property to you and will sell the property if:

- we do not request that the property be distributed to you or if we ask that the property not be distributed to you;
- we do not deliver satisfactory documents to the depositary; or
- the depositary determines that all or a portion of the distribution to you is not reasonably practicable.

The proceeds of such a sale will be distributed to holders as in the case of a cash distribution.

Redemption

Whenever we decide to redeem any of the securities on deposit with the custodian, we will notify the depositary in advance. If it is practicable and if we provide all of the documentation contemplated in the deposit agreement, the depositary will provide notice of the redemption to the holders.

The custodian will be instructed to surrender the shares being redeemed against payment of the applicable redemption price. The depositary will convert the redemption funds received into U.S. dollars upon the terms of the deposit agreement and will establish procedures to enable holders to receive the net proceeds from the redemption upon surrender of their ADSs to the depositary. You may have to pay fees, expenses, taxes and other governmental charges upon the redemption of your ADSs. If less than all ADSs are being redeemed, the ADSs to be retired will be selected by lot or on a pro rata basis, as the depositary may determine.

Changes Affecting Ordinary Shares

The ordinary shares held on deposit for your ADSs may change from time to time. For example, there may be a change in nominal or par value, split-up, cancellation, consolidation or any other reclassification of such ordinary shares or a recapitalization, reorganization, merger, consolidation or sale of assets of the company.

If any such change were to occur, your ADSs would, to the extent permitted by law and the deposit agreement, represent the right to receive the property received or exchanged in respect of the ordinary shares held on deposit. The depositary may in such circumstances deliver new ADSs to you, amend the deposit agreement, the ADRs and the applicable Registration Statement(s) on Form F-6, call for the exchange of your existing ADSs for new ADSs and take any other actions that are appropriate to reflect as to the ADSs the change affecting the ordinary shares. If the depositary may not lawfully distribute such property to you, the depositary may sell such property and distribute the net proceeds to you as in the case of a cash distribution.

Issuance of ADSs upon Deposit of Ordinary Shares

Upon completion of this offering, the ordinary shares being offered pursuant to this prospectus will be deposited by us with the custodian. Upon receipt of confirmation of such deposit, the depositary will issue ADSs to the underwriters named in this prospectus.

After the closing of this offering, the depositary may create ADSs on your behalf if you or your broker deposit ordinary shares with the custodian. The depositary will deliver these ADSs to the person you indicate only after you pay any applicable issuance fees and any charges and taxes payable for the transfer of the ordinary shares to the custodian. Your ability to deposit ordinary shares and receive ADSs may be limited by the legal considerations in the United States and in England and Wales applicable at the time of deposit.

The issuance of ADSs may be delayed until the depositary or the custodian receives confirmation that all required approvals have been given and that the ordinary shares have been duly transferred to the custodian. The depositary will only issue ADSs in whole numbers.

When you make a deposit of ordinary shares, you will be responsible for transferring good and valid title to the depositary. As such, you will be deemed to represent and warrant that:

- the ordinary shares are duly authorized, validly issued, fully paid, non-assessable and legally obtained;

- all preemptive (and similar) rights, if any, with respect to such ordinary shares have been validly waived, disappplied or exercised;
- you are duly authorized to deposit the ordinary shares;
- the ordinary shares presented for deposit are free and clear of any lien, encumbrance, security interest, charge, mortgage or adverse claim, and are not, and the ADSs issuable upon such deposit will not be, "restricted securities" (as defined in the deposit agreement);
- the ordinary shares presented for deposit have not been stripped of any rights or entitlements; and
- the deposit of shares does not violate any applicable provision of English law.

If any of the representations or warranties are incorrect in any way, we and the depositary may, at your cost and expense, take any and all actions necessary to correct the consequences of the misrepresentations.

Transfer, Combination and Split Up of ADRs

As an ADR holder, you will be entitled to transfer, combine or split up your ADRs and the ADSs evidenced thereby. For transfers of ADRs, you will have to surrender the ADRs to be transferred to the depositary and also must:

- ensure that the surrendered ADR is properly endorsed or otherwise in proper form for transfer;
- provide such proof of identity and genuineness of signatures as the depositary deems appropriate;
- provide any transfer stamps required by the State of New York or the United States; and
- pay all applicable fees, charges, expenses, taxes and other government charges payable by ADR holders pursuant to the terms of the deposit agreement, upon the transfer of ADRs.

To have your ADRs either combined or split up, you must surrender the ADRs in question to the depositary with your request to have them combined or split up, and you must pay all applicable fees, charges and expenses payable by ADR holders, pursuant to the terms of the deposit agreement, upon a combination or split up of ADRs.

Withdrawal of Ordinary Shares Upon Cancellation of ADSs

As a holder, you will be entitled to present your ADSs to the depositary for cancellation and then receive the corresponding number of underlying ordinary shares at the custodian's offices. Your ability to withdraw the ordinary shares held in respect of the ADSs may be limited by the legal considerations in the United States and in England and Wales applicable at the time of withdrawal. In order to withdraw the ordinary shares represented by your ADSs, you will be required to pay to the depositary the fees for cancellation of ADSs and any charges and taxes payable upon the transfer of the ordinary shares. You assume the risk for delivery of all funds and securities upon withdrawal. Once canceled, the ADSs will not have any rights under the deposit agreement.

If you hold ADSs registered in your name, the depositary may ask you to provide proof of identity and genuineness of any signature and such other documents as the depositary may deem appropriate before it will cancel your ADSs. The withdrawal of the ordinary shares represented by your ADSs may be delayed until the depositary receives satisfactory evidence of compliance with all applicable laws and regulations. Please keep in mind that the depositary will only accept ADSs for cancellation that represent a whole number of securities on deposit.

You will have the right to withdraw the securities represented by your ADSs at any time except as a result of:

- temporary delays that may arise because (i) the transfer books for the ordinary shares or ADSs are closed, or (ii) ordinary shares are immobilized on account of a shareholders' meeting or a payment of dividends;
- obligations to pay fees, taxes and similar charges;
- restrictions imposed because of laws or regulations applicable to ADSs or the withdrawal of securities on deposit; and/or
- other circumstances specifically contemplated by Section I.A.(I) of the General Instructions to Form F-6 (as such General Instructions may be amended from time to time).

The deposit agreement may not be modified to impair your right to withdraw the securities represented by your ADSs except to comply with mandatory provisions of law.

Voting Rights

As a holder, you generally have the right under the deposit agreement to instruct the depositary to exercise the voting rights for the ordinary shares represented by your ADSs. The voting rights of holders of ordinary shares are described in "Description of Share Capital and Articles of Association—Articles of Association" in this prospectus.

At our request, the depositary will distribute to you any notice of shareholders' meeting received from us together with information explaining how to instruct the depositary to exercise the voting rights of the securities represented by ADSs. In lieu of distributing such materials, the depositary may distribute to holders of ADSs instructions on how to retrieve such materials upon request. If the depositary timely receives voting instructions from a holder of ADSs, it will endeavor to vote (or cause the custodian to vote) the securities (in person or by proxy) represented by the holder's ADSs as follows: the depositary will vote (or cause the custodian to vote) the securities represented by ADSs in accordance with the voting instructions received from the holders of ADSs. If the depositary does not receive voting instructions from a holder of ADSs as of the applicable ADS record date on or before the date established by the depositary for such purpose, such holder will be deemed, and the depositary will deem such holder, to have instructed the depositary to give a discretionary proxy to a person designated by us to vote the securities represented by ADSs; provided, however, that no such discretionary proxy will be given by the depositary with respect to any matter to be voted upon as to which we inform the depositary that (a) we do not wish such proxy to be given, (b) substantial opposition exists or (c) the rights of holders of securities represented by ADSs may be adversely affected.

Securities for which no voting instructions have been received will not be voted (except as otherwise contemplated in the deposit agreement). Please note that the ability of the depositary to carry out voting instructions may be limited by practical and legal limitations and the terms of the securities on deposit. We cannot assure you that you will receive voting materials in time to enable you to return voting instructions to the depositary in a timely manner.

Fees and Charges

As an ADS holder, you will be required to pay the following fees under the terms of the deposit agreement:

SERVICE	FEE
Issuance of ADSs (e.g., an issuance of ADS upon a deposit of ordinary shares or upon a change in the ADS(s)-to-ordinary shares ratio), excluding ADS issuances as a result of distributions of ordinary shares	Up to \$0.05 per ADS issued
Cancellation of ADSs (e.g., a cancellation of ADSs for delivery of deposited property or upon a change in the ADS(s)-to-ordinary shares ratio, or for any other reason)	Up to \$0.05 per ADS cancelled
Distribution of cash dividends or other cash distributions (e.g., upon a sale of rights and other entitlements)	Up to \$0.05 per ADS held
Distribution of ADSs pursuant to (i) share dividends or other free share distributions, or (ii) exercise of rights to purchase additional ADSs	Up to \$0.05 per ADS held
Distribution of securities other than ADSs or rights to purchase additional ADSs (e.g., upon a spin-off)	Up to \$0.05 per ADS held
ADS Services	Up to \$0.05 per ADS held on the applicable record date(s) established by the depositary

As an ADS holder, you will also be responsible to pay certain charges such as:

- taxes (including applicable interest and penalties) and other governmental charges;
- the registration fees as may from time to time be in effect for the registration of ordinary shares on the share register and applicable to transfers of ordinary shares to or from the name of the custodian, the depositary or any nominees upon the making of deposits and withdrawals, respectively;
- certain cable, telex and facsimile transmission and delivery expenses;
- the expenses and charges incurred by the depositary in the conversion of foreign currency;
- the fees and expenses incurred by the depositary in connection with compliance with exchange control regulations and other regulatory requirements applicable to ordinary shares, ADSs and ADRs; and
- the fees and expenses incurred by the depositary, the custodian or any nominee in connection with the servicing or delivery of deposited property.

ADS fees and charges payable upon (i) the issuance of ADSs, and (ii) the cancellation of ADSs are charged to the person for whom the ADSs are issued (in the case of ADS issuances) and to the person for whom ADSs are cancelled (in the case of ADS cancellations). In the case of ADSs issued by the depositary into DTC, the ADS issuance and cancellation fees and charges may be deducted from distributions made through DTC, and may be charged to the DTC participant(s) receiving the ADSs being issued or the DTC participant(s) holding the ADSs being cancelled, as the case may be, on behalf of the beneficial owner(s) and will be charged by the DTC participant(s) to the account of the applicable beneficial owner(s) in accordance with the procedures and practices of the DTC participants

as in effect at the time. ADS fees and charges in respect of distributions and the ADS service fee are charged to the holders as of the applicable ADS record date. In the case of distributions of cash, the amount of the applicable ADS fees and charges is deducted from the funds being distributed. In the case of (i) distributions other than cash and (ii) the ADS service fee, holders as of the ADS record date will be invoiced for the amount of the ADS fees and charges and such ADS fees and charges may be deducted from distributions made to holders of ADSs. For ADSs held through DTC, the ADS fees and charges for distributions other than cash and the ADS service fee may be deducted from distributions made through DTC, and may be charged to the DTC participants in accordance with the procedures and practices prescribed by DTC and the DTC participants in turn charge the amount of such ADS fees and charges to the beneficial owners for whom they hold ADSs.

In the event of refusal to pay the depositary fees, the depositary may, under the terms of the deposit agreement, refuse the requested service until payment is received or may set off the amount of the depositary fees from any distribution to be made to the ADS holder. Certain of the depositary fees and charges (such as the ADS services fee) may become payable shortly after the closing of the ADS offering. Note that the fees and charges you may be required to pay may vary over time and may be changed by us and by the depositary. You will receive prior notice of such changes. The depositary may reimburse us for certain expenses incurred by us in respect of the ADR program, by making available a portion of the ADS fees charged in respect of the ADR program or otherwise, upon such terms and conditions as we and the depositary agree from time to time.

Amendments and Termination

We may agree with the depositary to modify the deposit agreement at any time without your consent. We undertake to give holders 30 days' prior notice of any modifications that would materially prejudice any of their substantial rights under the deposit agreement. We will not consider to be materially prejudicial to your substantial rights any modifications or supplements that are reasonably necessary for the ADSs to be registered under the Securities Act or to be eligible for book-entry settlement, in each case without imposing or increasing the fees and charges you are required to pay. In addition, we may not be able to provide you with prior notice of any modifications or supplements that are required to accommodate compliance with applicable provisions of law.

You will be bound by the modifications to the deposit agreement if you continue to hold your ADSs after the modifications to the deposit agreement become effective. The deposit agreement cannot be amended to prevent you from withdrawing the ordinary shares represented by your ADSs (except as permitted by law).

We have the right to direct the depositary to terminate the deposit agreement. Similarly, the depositary may in certain circumstances on its own initiative terminate the deposit agreement. In either case, the depositary must give notice to the holders at least 30 days before termination. Until termination, your rights under the deposit agreement will be unaffected.

Termination

After termination, the depositary will continue to collect distributions received (but will not distribute any such property until you request the cancellation of your ADSs) and may sell the securities held on deposit. After the sale, the depositary will hold the proceeds from such sale and any other funds then held for the holders of ADSs in a non-interest bearing account. At that point, the depositary will have no further obligations to holders other than to account for the funds then held for the holders of ADSs still outstanding (after deduction of applicable fees, taxes and expenses).

Books of Depositary

The depositary will maintain ADS holder records at its depositary office. You may inspect such records at such office during regular business hours but solely for the purpose of communicating with other holders in the interest of business matters relating to the ADSs and the deposit agreement.

The depositary will maintain in New York facilities to record and process the issuance, cancellation, combination, split-up and transfer of ADSs. These facilities may be closed from time to time, to the extent not prohibited by law.

Transmission of Notices, Reports and Proxy Soliciting Material

The depositary will make available for your inspection at its office all communications that it receives from us as a holder of deposited securities that we make generally available to holders of deposited securities. Subject to the terms of the deposit agreement, the depositary will send you copies of those communications or otherwise make those communications available to you if we ask it to.

Limitations on Obligations and Liabilities

The deposit agreement limits our obligations and the depositary's obligations to you. Please note the following:

- We and the depositary are obligated only to take the actions specifically stated in the deposit agreement without negligence or bad faith.
- The depositary disclaims any liability for any failure to carry out voting instructions, for any manner in which a vote is cast or for the effect of any vote, provided it acts in good faith and without negligence and in accordance with the terms of the deposit agreement.
- The depositary disclaims any liability for any failure to determine the lawfulness or practicality of any action, for the content of any document forwarded to you on our behalf or for the accuracy of any translation of such a document, for the investment risks associated with investing in ordinary shares, for the validity or worth of the ordinary shares, for any tax consequences that result from the ownership of ADSs, for the credit-worthiness of any third party, for allowing any rights to lapse under the terms of the deposit agreement, for the timeliness of any of our notices or for our failure to give notice.
- We and the depositary will not be obligated to perform any act that is inconsistent with the terms of the deposit agreement.
- We and the depositary disclaim any liability if we or the depositary are prevented or forbidden from or subject to any civil or criminal penalty or restraint on account of, or delayed in, doing or performing any act or thing required by the terms of the deposit agreement, by reason of any provision, present or future of any law or regulation, or by reason of present or future provision of any provision of our Articles of Association, or any provision of or governing the securities on deposit, or by reason of any act of God or war or other circumstances beyond our control.
- We and the depositary disclaim any liability by reason of any exercise of, or failure to exercise, any discretion provided for in the deposit agreement or in our Articles of Association or in any provisions of or governing the securities on deposit.
- We and the depositary further disclaim any liability for any action or inaction in reliance on the advice or information received from legal counsel, accountants, any person presenting ordinary shares for deposit, any holder of ADSs or authorized representatives thereof, or any other person believed by either of us in good faith to be competent to give such advice or information.

- We and the depositary also disclaim liability for the inability by a holder to benefit from any distribution, offering, right or other benefit that is made available to holders of ordinary shares but is not, under the terms of the deposit agreement, made available to you.
- We and the depositary may rely without any liability upon any written notice, request or other document believed to be genuine and to have been signed or presented by the proper parties.
- We and the depositary also disclaim liability for any consequential or punitive damages for any breach of the terms of the deposit agreement.
- No disclaimer of any Securities Act liability is intended by any provision of the deposit agreement.

Nothing in the deposit agreement gives rise to a partnership or joint venture, or establishes a fiduciary relationship, among us, the depositary bank and you as ADS holder.

Nothing in the deposit agreement precludes Citibank (or its affiliates) from engaging in transactions in which parties adverse to us or the ADS owners have interests, and nothing in the deposit agreement obligates Citibank to disclose those transactions, or any information obtained in the course of those transactions, to us or to the ADS owners, or to account for any payment received as part of those transactions.

Pre-Release Transactions

Subject to the terms and conditions of the deposit agreement, the depositary may issue to broker/dealers ADSs before receiving a deposit of ordinary shares or release ordinary shares to broker/dealers before receiving ADSs for cancellation. These transactions are commonly referred to as “pre-release transactions,” and are entered into between the depositary and the applicable broker/dealer. The deposit agreement limits the aggregate size of pre-release transactions (not to exceed 30% of the ordinary shares on deposit in the aggregate, but such limit may be changed or disregarded from time to time as the depositary deems appropriate) and imposes a number of conditions on such transactions (e.g., the need to receive collateral, the type of collateral required, the representations required from brokers, etc.). The depositary may retain the compensation received from the pre-release transactions.

Taxes

You will be responsible for the taxes and other governmental charges payable on the ADSs and the securities represented by the ADSs. We, the depositary and the custodian may deduct from any distribution the taxes and governmental charges payable by holders and may sell any and all property on deposit to pay the taxes and governmental charges payable by holders. You will be liable for any deficiency if the sale proceeds do not cover the taxes that are due.

The depositary may refuse to issue ADSs, to deliver, transfer, split and combine ADRs or to release securities on deposit until all taxes and charges are paid by the applicable holder. The depositary and the custodian may take reasonable administrative actions to obtain tax refunds and reduced tax withholding for any distributions on your behalf. However, you may be required to provide to the depositary and to the custodian proof of taxpayer status and residence and such other information as the depositary and the custodian may require to fulfill legal obligations. You are required to indemnify us, the depositary and the custodian for any claims with respect to taxes based on any tax benefit obtained for you.

Foreign Currency Conversion

The depositary will arrange for the conversion of all foreign currency received into U.S. dollars if such conversion is practical, and it will distribute the U.S. dollars in accordance with the terms of the

deposit agreement. You may have to pay fees and expenses incurred in converting foreign currency, such as fees and expenses incurred in complying with currency exchange controls and other governmental requirements.

If the conversion of foreign currency is not practical or lawful, or if any required approvals are denied or not obtainable at a reasonable cost or within a reasonable period, the depositary may take the following actions in its discretion:

- Convert the foreign currency to the extent practical and lawful and distribute the U.S. dollars to the holders for whom the conversion and distribution is lawful and practical.
- Distribute the foreign currency to holders for whom the distribution is lawful and practical.
- Hold the foreign currency (without liability for interest) for the applicable holders.

Governing Law/Waiver of Jury Trial

The deposit agreement and the ADRs will be interpreted in accordance with the laws of the State of New York. The rights of holders of ordinary shares (including ordinary shares represented by ADSs) is governed by the laws of England and Wales.

AS A PARTY TO THE DEPOSIT AGREEMENT, YOU IRREVOCABLY WAIVE YOUR RIGHT TO TRIAL BY JURY IN ANY LEGAL PROCEEDING AGAINST US AND/OR THE DEPOSITARY ARISING OUT OF THE DEPOSIT AGREEMENT OR THE ADRs.

SHARES AND ADSs ELIGIBLE FOR FUTURE SALE

Prior to this offering, no public market existed for our ordinary shares or ADSs. Future sales of our ADSs in the public market after this offering, or the perception that these sales could occur, could adversely affect prevailing market prices for our ADSs and could impair our future ability to raise equity capital.

Based on the number of shares outstanding as of September 30, 2017, upon completion of this offering, and assuming no exercise of the underwriters' option to purchase additional ADSs, 37,775,184 of our ordinary shares, including ordinary shares underlying ADSs, will be outstanding, assuming the issuance of 7,812,500 ADSs offered by us in this offering and the conversion of all outstanding preferred and ordinary shares into an aggregate of 29,962,684 ordinary shares upon the closing of this offering. All of the ADSs sold in this offering will be freely tradable without restrictions or further registration under the Securities Act, except for any ADSs sold to our "affiliates," as that term is defined under Rule 144 under the Securities Act. The ordinary shares held by existing shareholders are "restricted securities," as that term is defined in Rule 144 under the Securities Act. Restricted securities may be sold in the public market only if registered or if their resale qualifies for exemption from registration such as Rule 144 or Rule 701 promulgated under the Securities Act or Regulation S, as described below.

After conversion of all of our outstanding shares into ordinary shares, 29,598,264 of the shares held by existing shareholders will be subject to the contractual 180-day lock-up period described below. This may adversely affect the prevailing market price of our ADSs and our ability to raise equity capital in the future.

Rule 144

In general, persons who have beneficially owned restricted ordinary shares for at least six months, and any affiliate of the company who owns either restricted or unrestricted ordinary shares, are entitled to sell their securities without registration with the SEC under an exemption from registration provided by Rule 144 under the Securities Act.

Non-Affiliates

Any person who is not deemed to have been one of our affiliates at the time of, or at any time during the three months preceding, a sale may sell an unlimited number of restricted securities under Rule 144 if:

- the restricted securities have been held for at least six months, including the holding period of any prior owner other than one of our affiliates;
- we have been subject to the Exchange Act periodic reporting requirements for at least 90 days before the sale; and
- we are current in our Exchange Act reporting at the time of sale.

Any person who is not deemed to have been an affiliate of ours at the time of, or at any time during the three months preceding, a sale and has held the restricted securities for at least one year, including the holding period of any prior owner other than one of our affiliates, will be entitled to sell an unlimited number of restricted securities without regard to the length of time we have been subject to Exchange Act periodic reporting or whether we are current in our Exchange Act reporting.

Affiliates

Persons seeking to sell restricted securities who are our affiliates at the time of, or any time during the three months preceding, a sale, would be subject to the restrictions described above. They are also subject to additional restrictions, by which such person would be required to comply with the manner of sale and notice provisions of Rule 144 and would be entitled to sell within any three-month period only that number of securities that does not exceed the greater of:

- 1% of the number of ordinary shares then outstanding, in the form of ADSs or otherwise, which will equal 377,751 shares immediately after the completion of this offering based on the number of shares outstanding as of September 30, 2017; and
- the average weekly trading volume of our ADSs on The Nasdaq Global Select Market during the four calendar weeks preceding the filing of a notice on Form 144 with respect to the sale.

Additionally, persons who are our affiliates at the time of, or any time during the three months preceding, a sale may sell unrestricted securities under the requirements of Rule 144 described above, without regard to the six month holding period of Rule 144, which does not apply to sales of unrestricted securities.

Rule 701

Rule 701 under the Securities Act, as in effect on the date of this prospectus, permits resales of shares in reliance upon Rule 144 but without compliance with certain restrictions of Rule 144, including the holding period requirement. Most of our employees, members of senior management or directors who purchased shares under a written compensatory plan or contract will be entitled to rely on the resale provisions of Rule 701, but all holders of Rule 701 shares are required to wait until 90 days after the date of this prospectus before selling their shares. However, substantially all Rule 701 shares are subject to lock-up agreements as described below and in the section titled "Underwriting" and will become eligible for sale upon the expiration of the restrictions set forth in those agreements.

Form S-8 Registration Statements

As soon as practicable after the closing of this offering, we intend to file with the SEC one or more registration statements on Form S-8 under the Securities Act to register the ordinary shares subject to outstanding stock options or reserved for issuance under the 2017 Plan and the 2018 Plan. These registration statements will become effective immediately upon filing. Shares covered by these registration statements will then be eligible for sale in the open market, subject to vesting restrictions, any applicable lock-up agreements described below and Rule 144 limitations applicable to affiliates.

Regulation S

Regulation S provides generally that sales made in offshore transactions are not subject to the registration or prospectus delivery requirements of the Securities Act. In general, this means that our ordinary shares may be sold in some manner outside the United States without requiring registration in the United States.

Lock-Up Agreements

We and the holders of substantially all of our equity securities, or securities convertible into, exchangeable or exercisable for, our equity securities, including each of the members of our senior management and board of directors, have entered into lock-up agreements or have otherwise agreed, subject to limited exceptions, that we and they will not, directly or indirectly, offer, sell, contract to sell, pledge, grant any option to purchase, make any short sale, or otherwise dispose of or hedge any of our equity securities, any options or warrants to purchase our equity securities, or any securities convertible into, or exchangeable for or that represent the right to receive equity securities, without the prior written consent of the representatives of the underwriters for a period of 180 days from the date of this prospectus, whether owned as of the date of this prospectus or thereafter acquired. See the section titled “Underwriting.”

MATERIAL INCOME TAX CONSIDERATIONS

The following summary contains a description of material U.K. and U.S. federal income tax consequences of the acquisition, ownership and disposition of our ADSs. This summary should not be considered a comprehensive description of all the tax considerations that may be relevant to the decision to acquire ADSs in this offering.

Material U.S. Federal Income Tax Considerations for U.S. Holders

The following is a description of the material U.S. federal income tax consequences to the U.S. Holders described below of owning and disposing of our ADSs. It is not a comprehensive description of all tax considerations that may be relevant to a particular person's decision to acquire securities. This discussion applies only to a U.S. Holder that holds our ADSs as a capital asset for tax purposes (generally, property held for investment). In addition, it does not describe all of the tax consequences that may be relevant in light of a U.S. Holder's particular circumstances, including state and local tax consequences, estate tax consequences, alternative minimum tax consequences, the potential application of the Medicare contribution tax, and tax consequences applicable to U.S. Holders subject to special rules, such as:

- banks, insurance companies, and certain other financial institutions;
- U.S. expatriates and certain former citizens or long-term residents of the United States;
- dealers or traders in securities who use a mark-to-market method of tax accounting;
- persons holding ADSs as part of a hedging transaction, "straddle," wash sale, conversion transaction or integrated transaction or persons entering into a constructive sale with respect to ADSs;
- persons whose "functional currency" for U.S. federal income tax purposes is not the U.S. dollar;
- brokers, dealers or traders in securities, commodities or currencies;
- tax-exempt entities or government organizations;
- S corporations, partnerships, or other entities or arrangements classified as partnerships for U.S. federal income tax purposes;
- regulated investment companies or real estate investment trusts;
- persons who acquired our ADSs pursuant to the exercise of any employee share option or otherwise as compensation;
- persons that own or are deemed to own 10 percent or more of our shares including shares represented by ADSs (by vote or value); and
- persons holding our ADSs in connection with a trade or business, permanent establishment, or fixed base outside the United States.

If an entity that is classified as a partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes holds ADSs, the U.S. federal income tax treatment of a partner will generally depend on the status of the partner and the activities of the partnership. Partnerships holding ADSs and partners in such partnerships are encouraged to consult their tax advisers as to the particular U.S. federal income tax consequences of holding and disposing of ADSs.

U.S. Holders that own (directly, indirectly, or constructively) 10% or more of our total combined voting power or value could be subject to adverse U.S. federal income tax consequences pursuant to

the controlled foreign corporation rules due to our ownership of a U.S. subsidiary. Such prospective U.S. Holders should consult with their tax advisors as to the tax consequences of acquiring, owning and disposing of our ADSs.

The discussion is based on the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, or the Code, administrative pronouncements, judicial decisions, final, temporary and proposed Treasury Regulations, and the income tax treaty between the United Kingdom and the United States, or the Treaty, all as of the date hereof, changes to any of which may affect the tax consequences described herein—possibly with retroactive effect.

A “U.S. Holder” is a holder who, for U.S. federal income tax purposes, is a beneficial owner of ADSs who is eligible for the benefits of the Treaty and is:

- (i) a citizen or individual resident of the United States;
- (ii) a corporation, or another entity taxable as a corporation, created or organized in or under the laws of the United States, any state therein or the District of Columbia;
- (iii) an estate the income of which is subject to U.S. federal income taxation regardless of its source; or
- (iv) a trust if (1) a U.S. court is able to exercise primary supervision over the administration of the trust and one or more U.S. persons have authority to control all substantial decisions of the trust or (2) the trust has a valid election to be treated as a U.S. person under applicable U.S. Treasury Regulations.

U.S. Holders are encouraged to consult their tax advisors concerning the U.S. federal, state, local and foreign tax consequences of owning and disposing of ADSs in their particular circumstances.

THESE PARAGRAPHS ARE A SUMMARY OF CERTAIN U.S. TAX CONSIDERATIONS AND ARE INTENDED AS A GENERAL GUIDE ONLY. IT IS RECOMMENDED THAT ALL HOLDERS OF ADSs OBTAIN ADVICE AS TO THE CONSEQUENCES OF THE ACQUISITION, OWNERSHIP AND DISPOSAL OF THE ADSs IN THEIR OWN SPECIFIC CIRCUMSTANCES FROM THEIR OWN TAX ADVISORS.

The discussion below assumes that the representations contained in the deposit agreement are true and that the obligations in the deposit agreement and any related agreement will be complied with in accordance with their terms. A U.S. Holder of an ADS will generally be treated for U.S. federal income tax purposes as holding the ordinary shares represented by the ADS, and, accordingly, no gain or loss will be recognized upon an exchange of ADSs for ordinary shares. However, U.S. Treasury has expressed concerns that parties to whom ADSs are released before shares are delivered to the depository or intermediaries in the chain of ownership between the U.S. Holder of an ADS and the issuer of the security underlying the ADS may be taking actions that are inconsistent with the claiming of foreign tax credits by U.S. Holders of ADSs. These actions would also be inconsistent with the claiming of the reduced rate of tax, described below, applicable to dividends received by certain non-corporate U.S. Holders. As a result, the creditability of non-U.S. withholding taxes (if any), and the availability of the reduced tax rate for dividends received by certain non-corporate U.S. Holders, each described below, could be affected by actions taken by such parties or intermediaries. Accordingly, U.S. Holders should consult their tax advisors regarding the ownership of ADSs and exchange of ADSs for ordinary shares.

Passive Foreign Investment Company Rules

If we are classified as a PFIC in any taxable year, a U.S. Holder will be subject to special rules generally intended to reduce or eliminate any benefits from the deferral of U.S. federal income tax that a U.S. Holder could derive from investing in a non-U.S. company that does not distribute all of its earnings on a current basis.

A non-U.S. corporation will be classified as a PFIC for any taxable year in which, after applying certain look-through rules, either:

- at least 75% of its gross income is passive income (such as interest income); or
- at least 50% of its gross assets (determined on the basis of a quarterly average) is attributable to assets that produce passive income or are held for the production of passive income.

We will be treated as owning our proportionate share of the assets and earning our proportionate share of the income of any other corporation, the equity of which we own, directly or indirectly, 25% or more (by value).

Based on our current estimates of expected gross assets and income for the current taxable year, we do not believe we will be a PFIC for the year ending September 30, 2018. However, the application of the PFIC rules is subject to uncertainty in several respects, and therefore, no assurances can be provided with respect to our PFIC status for our taxable year ending September 30, 2018 or with regard to our PFIC status in the past or in the future.

A separate determination must be made after the close of each taxable year as to whether we are a PFIC for that year. As a result, our PFIC status may change from year to year. The total value of our assets for purposes of the asset test generally will be calculated using the market price of the ADSs, which may fluctuate considerably. Fluctuations in the market price of the ADSs may result in our being a PFIC for any taxable year. In its legal opinion issued in connection with this offering, our U.S. tax counsel expresses no opinion regarding our PFIC status.

If we are classified as a PFIC in any year with respect to which a U.S. Holder owns ADSs, we will continue to be treated as a PFIC with respect to such U.S. Holder in all succeeding years during which the U.S. Holder owns the ordinary shares or ADSs, regardless of whether we continue to meet the tests described above unless (i) we cease to be a PFIC and the U.S. Holder has made a "deemed sale" election under the PFIC rules, (ii) we cease to be a PFIC and the U.S. Holder has a valid mark-to-market election in effect (as described below) or (iii) the U.S. Holder makes a Qualified Electing Fund Election, or QEF Election, with respect to all taxable years during such U.S. Holder's holding period in which we are a PFIC. However, a U.S. Holder may make a QEF Election with respect to our ADSs only if we annually provide such U.S. Holder with certain tax information, and we currently do not intend to prepare or provide such information. As a result, the QEF Election is not expected to be available to a U.S. Holder and the remainder of this discussion assumes that such election will not be available. If the "deemed sale" election is made, a U.S. Holder will be deemed to have sold the ADSs the U.S. Holder holds at their fair market value and any gain from such deemed sale would be subject to the rules described below. After the deemed sale election, so long as we do not become a PFIC in a subsequent taxable year, the U.S. Holder's ADSs with respect to which such election was made will not be treated as shares in a PFIC and the U.S. Holder will not be subject to the rules described below with respect to any "excess distribution" the U.S. Holder receives from us or any gain from an actual sale or other disposition of the ADSs. U.S. Holders should consult their tax advisors as to the possibility and consequences of making a deemed sale election if we cease to be a PFIC and such election becomes available.

For each taxable year we are treated as a PFIC with respect to U.S. Holders, U.S. Holders will be subject to special tax rules with respect to any "excess distribution" such U.S. Holder receives and any gain such U.S. Holder recognizes from a sale or other disposition (including a pledge) of ADSs, unless (i) such U.S. Holder makes a QEF Election with respect to all taxable years of a U.S. Holder's holding period during which we are a PFIC or makes a purging election to cause a deemed sale of the ADSs at their fair market value in conjunction with a QEF election (however, as discussed above, such elections are expected and assumed not to be available) or (ii) our ADSs constitute "marketable" securities, and such U.S. Holder makes a mark-to-market election as discussed below. Distributions a U.S. Holder receives in a taxable year that are greater than 125% of the average annual distributions a U.S. Holder

received during the shorter of the three preceding taxable years or the U.S. Holder's holding period for the ADSs will be treated as an excess distribution. Under these special tax rules:

- the excess distribution or gain will be allocated ratably over a U.S. Holder's holding period for the ADSs;
- the amount allocated to the current taxable year, and any taxable year prior to the first taxable year in which we became a PFIC, will be treated as ordinary income; and
- the amount allocated to each other year will be subject to the highest tax rate in effect for that year and the interest charge generally applicable to underpayments of tax will be imposed on the resulting tax attributable to each such year.

The tax liability for amounts allocated to years prior to the year of disposition or the year of an "excess distribution" cannot be offset by any net operating losses for such years, and gains (but not losses) realized on the sale of the ADSs cannot be treated as capital, even if a U.S. Holder holds the ADSs as capital assets.

If we are a PFIC, a U.S. Holder will generally be subject to similar rules with respect to distributions we receive from, and our dispositions of the stock of, any of our direct or indirect subsidiaries that also are PFICs, as if such distributions were indirectly received by, and/or dispositions were indirectly carried out by, such U.S. Holder. U.S. Holders should consult their tax advisors regarding the application of the PFIC rules to our subsidiaries.

U.S. Holders can avoid the interest charge on excess distributions or gain relating to the ADSs by making a mark-to-market election with respect to the ordinary shares, provided that the ADSs are "marketable." ADSs will be marketable if they are "regularly traded" on certain U.S. stock exchanges or on a foreign stock exchange that meets certain conditions. For these purposes, the ordinary shares or ADSs will be considered regularly traded during any calendar year during which they are traded, other than in de minimis quantities, on at least 15 days during each calendar quarter. Any trades that have as their principal purpose meeting this requirement will be disregarded. Our ADSs will be listed on Nasdaq, which is a qualified exchange for these purposes. Consequently, if our ADSs remain listed on Nasdaq and are regularly traded, and you are a holder of ADSs, we expect the mark-to-market election would be available to U.S. Holders if we are a PFIC. Each U.S. Holder should consult its tax advisor as to the whether a mark-to-market election is available or advisable with respect to the ADSs.

A U.S. Holder that makes a mark-to-market election must include as ordinary income for each year an amount equal to the excess, if any, of the fair market value of the ADSs at the close of the taxable year over the U.S. Holder's adjusted tax basis in the ADSs. Accordingly, such mark-to-market election may accelerate the recognition of income without a corresponding receipt of cash. An electing holder may also claim an ordinary loss deduction for the excess, if any, of the U.S. Holder's adjusted basis in the ADSs over the fair market value of the ADSs at the close of the taxable year, but this deduction is allowable only to the extent of any net mark-to-market gains for prior years. Gains from an actual sale or other disposition of the ADSs will be treated as ordinary income, and any losses incurred on a sale or other disposition of the ADSs will be treated as an ordinary loss to the extent of any net mark-to-market gains for prior years. Once made, the election cannot be revoked without the consent of the Internal Revenue Service, or the IRS, unless the ADSs cease to be marketable.

However, a mark-to-market election generally cannot be made for equity interests in any lower-tier PFICs that we own, unless shares of such lower-tier PFIC are themselves "marketable." As a result, even if a U.S. Holder validly makes a mark-to-market election with respect to our ADSs, the U.S. Holder may continue to be subject to the PFIC rules (described above) with respect to its indirect interest in any of our investments that are treated as an equity interest in a PFIC for U.S. federal

income tax purposes. U.S. Holders should consult their tax advisors as to the availability and desirability of a mark-to-market election, as well as the impact of such election on interests in any lower-tier PFICs.

Unless otherwise provided by the U.S. Treasury, each U.S. shareholder of a PFIC is required to file an annual report containing such information as the U.S. Treasury may require. A U.S. Holder's failure to file the annual report will cause the statute of limitations for such U.S. Holder's U.S. federal income tax return to remain open with regard to the items required to be included in such report until three years after the U.S. Holder files the annual report, and, unless such failure is due to reasonable cause and not willful neglect, the statute of limitations for the U.S. Holder's entire U.S. federal income tax return will remain open during such period. U.S. Holders should consult their tax advisors regarding the requirements of filing such information returns under these rules.

ADSSs

A U.S. Holder of ADSs will generally be treated for U.S. federal income tax purposes as the owner of the underlying ordinary shares that such ADSs represent. Accordingly, no gain or loss will be recognized if a U.S. Holder exchanges ADSs for the underlying shares represented by those ADSs.

The U.S. Treasury has expressed concern that parties to whom ADSs are released before shares are delivered to the depositary or intermediaries in the chain of ownership between holders and the issuer of the security underlying the ADSs, may be taking actions that are inconsistent with the claiming of foreign tax credits by U.S. Holders of ADSs. These actions would also be inconsistent with the claiming of the reduced rate of tax, described below, applicable to dividends received by certain non-corporate U.S. Holders. Accordingly, the creditability of non-U.S. withholding taxes (if any), and the availability of the reduced tax rate for dividends received by certain non-corporate U.S. Holders, each described below, could be affected by actions taken by such parties or intermediaries.

Taxation of Distributions

Subject to the discussion above under "Passive Foreign Investment Company Rules," distributions paid on ADSs, other than certain pro rata distributions of ADSs, will generally be treated as dividends to the extent paid out of our current or accumulated earnings and profits (as determined under U.S. federal income tax principles). Because we may not calculate our earnings and profits under U.S. federal income tax principles, we expect that distributions generally will be reported to U.S. Holders as dividends. Subject to applicable limitations, dividends paid to certain non-corporate U.S. Holders may be taxable at preferential rates applicable to "qualified dividend income." However, the qualified dividend income treatment will not apply if we are treated as a PFIC with respect to the U.S. Holder for the taxable year in which a dividend is paid or the preceding year. The amount of the dividend will be treated as foreign-source dividend income to U.S. Holders and will not be eligible for the dividends-received deduction generally available to U.S. corporations under the Code. Dividends will generally be included in a U.S. Holder's income on the date of the U.S. Holder's receipt of the dividend. The amount of any dividend income paid in foreign currency will be the U.S. dollar amount calculated by reference to the exchange rate in effect on the date of actual or constructive receipt, regardless of whether the payment is in fact converted into U.S. dollars. If the dividend is converted into U.S. dollars on the date of receipt, a U.S. Holder should not be required to recognize foreign currency gain or loss in respect of the dividend income. A U.S. Holder may have foreign currency gain or loss if the dividend is converted into U.S. dollars after the date of receipt. Such gain or loss would generally be treated as U.S.-source ordinary income or loss. The amount of any distribution of property other than cash (and other than certain pro rata distributions of ADSs or rights to acquire ADSs) will be the fair market value of such property on the date of distribution.

For foreign tax credit limitation purposes, our dividends will generally be treated as passive category income. Because no U.K. income taxes will be withheld from dividends on ordinary shares or ADSs, there will be no creditable foreign taxes associated with any dividends that a U.S. Holder will receive.

Sale or Other Taxable Disposition of ADSs

Subject to the discussion above under “Passive Foreign Investment Company Rules,” gain or loss realized on the sale or other taxable disposition of ADSs will be capital gain or loss, and will be a long-term capital gain or loss if the U.S. Holder held the ADSs for more than one year. The amount of the gain or loss will equal the difference between the U.S. Holder’s tax basis in the ADSs disposed of and the amount realized on the disposition, in each case as determined in U.S. dollars. This gain or loss will generally be U.S.-source gain or loss for foreign tax credit purposes. The deductibility of capital losses is subject to limitations.

If the consideration received by a U.S. Holder is not paid in U.S. dollars, the amount realized will be the U.S. dollar value of the payment received determined by reference to the spot rate of exchange on the date of the sale or other disposition. However, if the ADSs are treated as traded on an “established securities market” and a U.S. Holder is either a cash basis taxpayer or an accrual basis taxpayer that has made a special election (which must be applied consistently from year to year and cannot be changed without the consent of the IRS), such U.S. Holder will determine the U.S. dollar value of the amount realized in a non-U.S. dollar currency by translating the amount received at the spot rate of exchange on the settlement date of the sale. If a U.S. Holder is an accrual basis taxpayer that is not eligible to or does not elect to determine the amount realized using the spot rate on the settlement date, such U.S. Holder will recognize foreign currency gain or loss to the extent of any difference between the U.S. dollar amount realized on the date of sale or disposition and the U.S. dollar value of the currency received at the spot rate on the settlement date.

WE STRONGLY URGE YOU TO CONSULT YOUR TAX ADVISOR REGARDING THE IMPACT OF OUR PFIC STATUS ON YOUR INVESTMENT IN THE ADSs AS WELL AS THE APPLICATION OF THE PFIC RULES TO YOUR INVESTMENT IN THE ADSs.

Information Reporting and Backup Withholding

Payments of dividends and sales proceeds that are made within the United States or through certain U.S.-related financial intermediaries generally are subject to information reporting, and may be subject to backup withholding, unless (i) the U.S. Holder is a corporation or other exempt recipient or (ii) in the case of backup withholding, the U.S. Holder provides a correct taxpayer identification number and certifies that it is not subject to backup withholding (generally, by providing an IRS Form W-9).

Backup withholding is not an additional tax. The amount of any backup withholding from a payment to a U.S. Holder will be allowed as a credit against the holder’s U.S. federal income tax liability and may entitle it to a refund, provided that the required information is timely furnished to the IRS.

Information with Respect to Foreign Financial Assets

Certain U.S. Holders who are individuals (and, under regulations, certain entities) may be required to report information relating to the ordinary shares or ADSs, subject to certain exceptions (including an exception for ordinary shares or ADSs held in accounts maintained by certain U.S. financial institutions). Such U.S. Holders who fail to timely furnish the required information may be subject to a penalty. Additionally, if a U.S. Holder does not file the required information, the statute of

limitations with respect to tax returns of the U.S. Holder to which the information relates may not close until three years after such information is filed. U.S. Holders should consult their tax advisers regarding their reporting obligations with respect to their ownership and disposition of the ADSs.

U.K. Taxation

For purposes of this section, all references to "the company" refer to Autolus Therapeutics plc only.

The following is intended as a general guide to current U.K. tax law and HMRC published practice applying as at the date of this prospectus (both of which are subject to change at any time, possibly with retrospective effect) relating to the holding of ADSs. It does not constitute legal or tax advice and does not purport to be a complete analysis of all U.K. tax considerations relating to the holding of ADSs, or all of the circumstances in which holders of ADSs may benefit from an exemption or relief from U.K. taxation. It is written on the basis that the company is and remains solely resident in the U.K. for tax purposes and will therefore be subject to the U.K. tax regime and not the U.S. tax regime save as set out above under "Material U.S. Federal Income Tax Considerations for U.S. Holders."

Except to the extent that the position of non-U.K. resident persons is expressly referred to, this guide relates only to persons who are resident (and, in the case of individuals, domiciled or deemed domiciled) for tax purposes solely in the U.K. and do not have a permanent establishment or fixed base in any other jurisdiction with which the holding of the ADSs is connected, or U.K. Holders, who are absolute beneficial owners of the ADSs (where the ADSs are not held through an Individual Savings Account or a Self-Invested Personal Pension) and who hold the ADSs as investments.

This guide may not relate to certain classes of U.K. Holders, such as (but not limited to):

- persons who are connected with the company;
- financial institutions;
- insurance companies;
- charities or tax-exempt organizations;
- collective investment schemes;
- pension schemes;
- market makers, intermediaries, brokers or dealers in securities;
- persons who have (or are deemed to have) acquired their ADSs by virtue of an office or employment or who are or have been officers or employees of the company or any of its affiliates; and
- individuals who are subject to U.K. taxation on a remittance basis.

THESE PARAGRAPHS ARE A SUMMARY OF CERTAIN U.K. TAX CONSIDERATIONS AND ARE INTENDED AS A GENERAL GUIDE ONLY. IT IS RECOMMENDED THAT ALL HOLDERS OF ADSs OBTAIN ADVICE AS TO THE CONSEQUENCES OF THE ACQUISITION, OWNERSHIP AND DISPOSAL OF THE ADSs IN THEIR OWN SPECIFIC CIRCUMSTANCES FROM THEIR OWN TAX ADVISORS. IN PARTICULAR, NON-U.K. RESIDENT OR DOMICILED PERSONS ARE ADVISED TO CONSIDER THE POTENTIAL IMPACT OF ANY RELEVANT DOUBLE TAXATION AGREEMENTS.

The decision of the First-tier Tribunal (Tax Chamber) in *HSBC Holdings PLC and The Bank of New York Mellon Corporation v HMRC* (2012) has cast some doubt on whether a holder of a depositary receipt is the beneficial owner of the underlying shares. However, based on published HMRC guidance we would expect that HMRC will regard a holder of ADSs as holding the beneficial interest in the underlying shares and therefore these paragraphs assume that a holder of ADSs is the beneficial owner of the underlying ordinary shares and any dividends paid in respect of the underlying ordinary shares (where the dividends are regarded for U.K. purposes as that person's own income) for U.K. direct tax purposes.

Dividends

Withholding Tax

Dividends paid by the company will not be subject to any withholding or deduction for or on account of U.K. tax.

Income Tax

An individual U.K. Holder may, depending on his or her particular circumstances, be subject to U.K. tax on dividends received from the company. An individual holder of ADSs who is not resident for tax purposes in the United Kingdom should not be chargeable to U.K. income tax on dividends received from the company unless he or she carries on (whether solely or in partnership) a trade, profession or vocation in the U.K. through a branch or agency to which the ADSs are attributable.

Dividend income is treated as the top slice of the total income chargeable to U.K. income tax. An individual U.K. Holder who receives a dividend in the 2018/2019 tax year will be entitled to a tax-free allowance of £2,000. Dividend income in excess of this tax-free allowance will (subject to the availability of any income tax personal allowance) be charged at the highest marginal rate of 7.5% for basic rate taxpayers, 32.5% for higher rate taxpayers, and 38.1% for additional rate taxpayers.

Corporation Tax

A corporate holder of ADSs who is not resident for tax purposes in the United Kingdom should not be chargeable to U.K. corporation tax on dividends received from the company unless it carries on (whether solely or in partnership) a trade in the United Kingdom through a permanent establishment to which the ADSs are attributable.

Corporate U.K. Holders should not be subject to U.K. corporation tax on any dividend received from the company so long as the dividends qualify for exemption, which should be the case, although certain conditions must be met. If the conditions for the exemption are not satisfied, or such U.K. Holder elects for an otherwise exempt dividend to be taxable, U.K. corporation tax will be chargeable on the amount of any dividends (at the current rate of 19%).

Chargeable Gains

A disposal or deemed disposal of ADSs by a U.K. Holder may, depending on the U.K. Holder's circumstances and subject to any available exemptions or reliefs (such as the annual exemption), give rise to a chargeable gain or an allowable loss for the purposes of U.K. capital gains tax and corporation tax on chargeable gains.

If an individual U.K. Holder who is subject to U.K. income tax at either the higher or the additional rate is liable to U.K. capital gains tax on the disposal of ADSs, the current applicable rate will be 20%. For an individual U.K. Holder who is subject to U.K. income tax at the basic rate and liable to U.K. capital gains tax on such disposal, the current applicable rate would be 10%, save to the extent that any capital gains exceed the unused basic rate tax band. In that case, the rate currently applicable to the excess would be 20%.

If a corporate U.K. Holder becomes liable to U.K. corporation tax on the disposal (or deemed disposal) of ADSs, the main rate of U.K. corporation tax (currently 19%) would apply. Indexation allowance is not available in respect of disposals of ADSs acquired after January 1, 2018 (and only covers the movement in the retail prices index up until December 31, 2017 in respect of assets acquired prior to that date).

A holder of ADSs which is not resident for tax purposes in the United Kingdom should not normally be liable to U.K. capital gains tax or corporation tax on chargeable gains on a disposal (or deemed disposal) of ADSs unless the person is carrying on (whether solely or in partnership) a trade, profession or vocation in the United Kingdom through a permanent establishment to which the ADSs are attributable. However, an individual holder of ADSs who has ceased to be resident for tax purposes in the United Kingdom for a period of less than five years and who disposes of ADSs during that period may be liable on his or her return to the United Kingdom to U.K. tax on any capital gain realized (subject to any available exemption or relief).

Stamp Duty and Stamp Duty Reserve Tax

The discussion below relates to the holders of our ordinary shares or ADSs wherever resident, however it should be noted that special rules may apply to certain persons such as market makers, brokers, dealers or intermediaries.

Issue of Ordinary Shares

No U.K. stamp duty or stamp duty reserve tax, or SDRT, is payable on the issue of the underlying ordinary shares in the company.

Transfers of ADSs

No U.K. stamp duty or SDRT will be payable in respect of a transfer or an agreement to transfer an ADS.

Transfers of Ordinary Shares

An unconditional agreement to transfer ordinary shares in certificated form will normally give rise to a charge to SDRT at the rate of 0.5% of the amount or value of the consideration payable for the transfer. The purchaser of the shares is liable for the SDRT. Transfers of ordinary shares in certificated form are generally also subject to stamp duty at the rate of 0.5% of the amount or value of the consideration given for the transfer (rounded up to the next £5.00). Stamp duty is normally paid by the purchaser. The charge to SDRT will be canceled or, if already paid, repaid (generally with interest), where a transfer instrument has been duly stamped within six years of the charge arising (either by paying the stamp duty or by claiming an appropriate relief) or if the instrument is otherwise exempt from stamp duty.

An unconditional agreement to transfer ordinary shares to, or to a nominee or agent for, a person whose business is or includes the issue of depositary receipts or the provision of clearance services will generally be subject to SDRT (or, where the transfer is effected by a written instrument, stamp duty) at a higher rate of 1.5% of the amount or value of the consideration given for the transfer unless the clearance service has made and maintained an election under section 97A of the U.K. Finance Act 1986, or a section 97A election. It is understood that HMRC regards the facilities of DTC as a clearance service for these purposes and we are not aware of any section 97A election having been made by DTC.

Based on current published HMRC practice following case law in respect of the European Council Directives 69/335/EEC and 2008/7/EC, or the Capital Duties Directives, no SDRT is generally payable where the transfer of ordinary shares to a clearance service or depositary receipt system is an integral part of an issue of share capital (although the relevant judgment refers to transfers which are integral to the raising of capital). In addition, a recent Court of Justice of the European Union judgment (Air Berlin

plc v HMRC (2017)) held on the relevant facts that the Capital Duties Directives preclude the taxation of a transfer of legal title to shares for the sole purpose of listing those shares on a stock exchange which does not impact the beneficial ownership of the shares, but, as yet, the U.K. domestic law and HMRC's published practice remain unchanged and, accordingly, we anticipate that amounts on account of SDRT will continue to be collected by the depositary receipt issuer or clearance service. Holders of ordinary shares should consult their own independent professional advisers before incurring or reimbursing the costs of such a 1.5% SDRT charge.

Any stamp duty or SDRT payable on a transfer of ordinary shares to a depositary receipt system or clearance service will in practice generally be paid by the participants in the clearance service or depositary receipt system.

UNDERWRITING

We and the underwriters named below will enter into an underwriting agreement with respect to the ADSs being offered. Subject to certain conditions, each underwriter shall severally agree to purchase the number of ADSs indicated in the following table. Goldman Sachs & Co. LLC and Jefferies LLC are the representatives of the underwriters.

Underwriters	Number of ADSs
Goldman Sachs & Co. LLC	
Jefferies LLC	
Wells Fargo Securities, LLC	
William Blair & Company, L.L.C.	
Total	<u>7,812,500</u>

The underwriters will be committed to take and pay for all of the ADSs being offered, if any are taken, other than the ADSs covered by the option described below unless and until this option is exercised.

The underwriters have an option to buy up to an additional 1,171,875 ADSs from us to cover sales by the underwriters of a greater number of ADSs than the total number set forth in the table above. They may exercise that option for 30 days after the date of the final prospectus. If any ADSs are purchased pursuant to this option, the underwriters will severally purchase ADSs in approximately the same proportion as set forth in the table above.

The following table shows the per ADS and total underwriting discounts and commissions to be paid to the underwriters by us. Such amounts are shown assuming both no exercise and full exercise of the underwriters' option to purchase 1,171,875 additional ADSs.

Paid by Us	No Exercise	Full Exercise
Per ADS	\$	\$
Total	\$	\$

ADSs sold by the underwriters to the public will initially be offered at the initial public offering price set forth on the cover of this prospectus. Any ADSs sold by the underwriters to securities dealers may be sold at a discount of up to \$ per ADS from the initial public offering price. After the initial offering of the ADSs, the representatives may change the offering price and the other selling terms. The offering of the ADSs by the underwriters is subject to receipt and acceptance and subject to the underwriters' right to reject any order in whole or in part.

We and members of our senior management, our directors, and holders of substantially all of our equity securities, or securities convertible into, or exchangeable or exercisable for, our equity securities, have agreed with the underwriters, subject to limited exceptions, not to, directly or indirectly, offer, sell, contract to sell, pledge, grant any option to purchase, make any short sale, or otherwise dispose of or hedge any of our equity securities, or any options or warrants to purchase our equity securities, or any securities convertible into, or exchangeable for or that represent the right to receive, our equity securities, without the prior written consent of the representatives of the underwriters for a period of 180 days from the date of this prospectus, whether owned as of the date of this prospectus or thereafter acquired. See "Shares and ADSs Eligible for Future Sale" for a discussion of certain transfer restrictions.

Prior to this offering, there has been no public market for our ordinary shares or ADSs. The initial public offering price will be negotiated among us and the representatives. Among the factors to be considered in determining the initial public offering price of the ADSs, in addition to prevailing market conditions, will be our historical performance, estimates of our business potential and earnings prospects, an assessment of our management and the consideration of the above factors in relation to market valuation of companies in related businesses.

Our ADSs have been approved for listing on the Nasdaq Global Select Market under the symbol "AUTL."

In connection with this offering, the underwriters may purchase and sell ADSs in the open market. These transactions may include short sales, stabilizing transactions and purchases to cover positions created by short sales. Short sales involve the sale by the underwriters of a greater number of ADSs than they are required to purchase in the offering, and a short position represents the amount of such sales that have not been covered by subsequent purchases. A "covered" short position is a short position that is not greater than the amount of additional ADSs for which the underwriters' option described above may be exercised. The underwriters may cover any covered short position by either exercising their option to purchase additional ADSs or purchasing ADSs in the open market. In determining the source of ADSs to cover the covered short position, the underwriters will consider, among other things, the price of ADSs available for purchase in the open market as compared to the price at which they may purchase additional ADSs pursuant to the option described above. "Naked" short sales are any short sales that create a short position greater than the amount of additional ADSs for which the option described above may be exercised. The underwriters must cover any such naked short position by purchasing ADSs in the open market. A naked short position is more likely to be created if the underwriters are concerned that there may be downward pressure on the price of the ADSs in the open market after pricing that could adversely affect investors who purchase in the offering. Stabilizing transactions consist of various bids for or purchases of ADSs made by the underwriters in the open market prior to the completion of the offering.

The underwriters may also impose a penalty bid. This occurs when a particular underwriter repays to the underwriters a portion of the underwriting discount received by it because the representatives have repurchased ADSs sold by or for the account of such underwriter in stabilizing or short covering transactions.

Purchases to cover a short position and stabilizing transactions, as well as other purchases by the underwriters for their own accounts, may have the effect of preventing or retarding a decline in the market price of our ADSs, and together with the imposition of the penalty bid, may stabilize, maintain or otherwise affect the market price of our ADSs. As a result, the price of our ADSs may be higher than the price that otherwise might exist in the open market. The underwriters are not required to engage in these activities and may end any of these activities at any time. These transactions may be effected on Nasdaq, in the over-the-counter market or otherwise.

Selling Restrictions

European Economic Area

In relation to each Member State of the European Economic Area that has implemented the Prospectus Directive (each, a Relevant Member State) an offer to the public of our ADSs may not be made in that Relevant Member State, except that an offer to the public in that Relevant Member State of our ADSs may be made at any time under the following exemptions under the Prospectus Directive:

- To any legal entity which is a qualified investor as defined in the Prospectus Directive;

- To fewer than 150 natural or legal persons (other than qualified investors as defined in the Prospectus Directive), subject to obtaining the prior consent of the representatives for any such offer; or
- In any other circumstances falling within Article 3(2) of the Prospectus Directive;

provided that no such offer of our ADSs shall result in a requirement for the publication by us or any underwriter of a prospectus pursuant to Article 3 of the Prospectus Directive.

For the purposes of this provision, the expression an "offer to the public" in relation to our ADSs in any Relevant Member State means the communication in any form and by any means of sufficient information on the terms of the offer and our ADSs to be offered so as to enable an investor to decide to purchase our ADSs, as the same may be varied in that Relevant Member State by any measure implementing the Prospectus Directive in that Relevant Member State, and the expression "Prospectus Directive" means Directive 2003/71/EC (as amended, including by Directive 2010/73/EU) and includes any relevant implementing measure in the Relevant Member State.

Solely for the purposes of the product governance requirements contained within: (a) EU Directive 2014/65/EU on markets in financial instruments, as amended ("MiFID II"); (b) Articles 9 and 10 of Commission Delegated Directive (EU) 2017/593 supplementing MiFID II; and (c) local implementing measures (together, the "MiFID II Product Governance Requirements"), and disclaiming all and any liability, whether arising in tort, contract or otherwise, which any "manufacturer" (for the purposes of the MiFID II Product Governance Requirements) may otherwise have with respect thereto, the ADSs which are the subject of this offering have been subject to a product approval process, which has determined that such securities are: (i) compatible with an end target market of retail investors and investors who meet the criteria of professional clients and eligible counterparties, each as defined in MiFID II; and (ii) eligible for distribution through all distribution channels as are permitted by MiFID II (the "Target Market Assessment"). Notwithstanding the Target Market Assessment, distributors should note that: the price of the ADSs may decline and investors could lose all or part of their investment; the ADSs offer no guaranteed income and no capital protection; and an investment in the ADSs is compatible only with investors who do not need a guaranteed income or capital protection, who (either alone or in conjunction with an appropriate financial or other adviser) are capable of evaluating the merits and risks of such an investment and who have sufficient resources to be able to bear any losses that may result therefrom. For the avoidance of doubt, the Target Market Assessment does not constitute: (a) an assessment of suitability or appropriateness for the purposes of MiFID II; or (b) a recommendation to any investor or group of investors to invest in, or purchase, or take any other action whatsoever with respect to the ADSs. Each distributor is responsible for undertaking its own target market assessment in respect of the ADSs and determining appropriate distribution channels.

This European Economic Area selling restriction is in addition to any other selling restrictions set out below.

United Kingdom

In the United Kingdom, this prospectus is only addressed to and directed at qualified investors who are (i) investment professionals falling within Article 19(5) of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005 (the Order); or (ii) high net worth entities and other persons to whom it may lawfully be communicated, falling within Article 49(2)(a) to (d) of the Order (all such persons together being referred to as "relevant persons"). Any investment or investment activity to which this prospectus relates is available only to relevant persons and will only be engaged with relevant persons. Any person who is not a relevant person should not act or rely on this prospectus or any of its contents.

Canada

The ADSs may be sold in Canada only to purchasers purchasing, or deemed to be purchasing, as principal that are accredited investors, as defined in National Instrument 45-106 Prospectus Exemptions or subsection 73.3(1) of the Securities Act (Ontario), and that are permitted clients, as defined in National Instrument 31-103 Registration Requirements, Exemptions, and Ongoing Registrant Obligations. Any resale of the ADSs must be made in accordance with an exemption from, or in a transaction not subject to, the prospectus requirements of applicable securities laws.

Securities legislation in certain provinces or territories of Canada may provide a purchaser with remedies for rescission or damages if this prospectus (including any amendment hereto) contains a misrepresentation, provided that the remedies for rescission or damages are exercised by the purchaser within the time limit prescribed by the securities legislation of the purchaser's province or territory. The purchaser should refer to any applicable provisions of the securities legislation of the purchaser's province or territory regarding these rights or consult with a legal advisor.

Pursuant to section 3A.3 of National Instrument 33-105 Underwriting Conflicts (NI 33-105), the underwriters are not required to comply with the disclosure requirements of NI 33-105 regarding underwriter conflicts of interest in connection with this offering.

Hong Kong

The ADSs may not be offered or sold in Hong Kong by means of any document other than (i) in circumstances which do not constitute an offer to the public within the meaning of the Companies (Winding Up and Miscellaneous Provisions) Ordinance (Cap. 32 of the Laws of Hong Kong) (Companies (Winding Up and Miscellaneous Provisions) Ordinance) or which do not constitute an invitation to the public within the meaning of the Securities and Futures Ordinance (Cap. 571 of the Laws of Hong Kong) (Securities and Futures Ordinance), (ii) to "professional investors" as defined in the Securities and Futures Ordinance and any rules made thereunder, or (iii) in other circumstances that do not result in the document being a "prospectus" as defined in the Companies (Winding Up and Miscellaneous Provisions) Ordinance, and no advertisement, invitation or document relating to the ADSs may be issued or may be in the possession of any person for the purpose of issue (in each case, whether in Hong Kong or elsewhere), which is directed at, or the contents of which are likely to be accessed or read by, the public in Hong Kong (except if permitted to do so under the securities laws of Hong Kong) other than with respect to ADSs that are or are intended to be disposed of only to persons outside Hong Kong or only to "professional investors" in Hong Kong as defined in the Securities and Futures Ordinance and any rules made thereunder.

Singapore

This prospectus has not been registered as a prospectus with the Monetary Authority of Singapore. Accordingly, this prospectus and any other document or material in connection with the offer or sale, or invitation for subscription or purchase, of the ADSs may not be circulated or distributed, nor may the ADSs be offered or sold, or be made the subject of an invitation for subscription or purchase, whether directly or indirectly, to persons in Singapore other than (i) to an institutional investor (as defined under Section 4A of the Securities and Futures Act, Chapter 289 of Singapore (the SFA)) under Section 274 of the SFA, (ii) to a relevant person (as defined in Section 275(2) of the SFA) pursuant to Section 275(1) of the SFA, or any person pursuant to Section 275(1A) of the SFA, and in accordance with the conditions specified in Section 275 of the SFA or (iii) otherwise pursuant to, and in accordance with the conditions of, any other applicable provision of the SFA, in each case subject to conditions set forth in the SFA.

Where the ADSs are subscribed for or purchased under Section 275 of the SFA by a relevant person that is a corporation (which is not an accredited investor (as defined in Section 4A of the SFA)), the sole business of which is to hold investments and the entire share capital of which is owned by one or more individuals, each of whom is an accredited investor, the securities (as defined in Section 239(1) of the SFA) of that corporation shall not be transferable for six months after that corporation has acquired the ADSs under Section 275 of the SFA except: (1) to an institutional investor under Section 274 of the SFA or to a relevant person (as defined in Section 275(2) of the SFA), (2) where such transfer arises from an offer in that corporation's securities pursuant to Section 275(1A) of the SFA, (3) where no consideration is or will be given for the transfer, (4) where the transfer is by operation of law, (5) as specified in Section 276(7) of the SFA, or (6) as specified in Regulation 32 of the Securities and Futures (Offers of Investments) (Shares and Debentures) Regulations 2005 of Singapore (Regulation 32).

Where the ADSs are subscribed or purchased under Section 275 of the SFA by a relevant person that is a trust (where the trustee is not an accredited investor (as defined in Section 4A of the SFA)), the sole purpose of which is to hold investments and each beneficiary of which is an accredited investor, the beneficiaries' rights and interest (howsoever described) in that trust shall not be transferable for six months after that trust has acquired the ADSs under Section 275 of the SFA except: (1) to an institutional investor under Section 274 of the SFA or to a relevant person (as defined in Section 275(2) of the SFA), (2) where such transfer arises from an offer that is made on terms that such rights or interest are acquired at a consideration of not less than \$200,000 (or its equivalent in a foreign currency) for each transaction (whether such amount is to be paid for in cash or by exchange of securities or other assets), (3) where no consideration is or will be given for the transfer, (4) where the transfer is by operation of law, (5) as specified in Section 276(7) of the SFA, or (6) as specified in Regulation 32.

Japan

The ADSs have not been and will not be registered under the Financial Instruments and Exchange Act of Japan (Act No. 25 of 1948, as amended) (the FIEA). The ADSs may not be offered or sold, directly or indirectly, in Japan or to or for the benefit of any resident of Japan (including any person resident in Japan or any corporation or other entity organized under the laws of Japan) or to others for reoffering or resale, directly or indirectly, in Japan or to or for the benefit of any resident of Japan, except pursuant to an exemption from the registration requirements of the FIEA and otherwise in compliance with any relevant laws and regulations of Japan.

We estimate that our share of the total expenses of the offering, excluding underwriting discounts and commissions, will be approximately \$5.6 million. We will agree to reimburse the underwriters for all expenses related to the clearance of the offering with the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority and the qualification of our ADSs under state securities laws (in a combined amount not to exceed \$30,000).

We will agree to indemnify the several underwriters against certain liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act.

The underwriters and their respective affiliates are full service financial institutions engaged in various activities, which may include sales and trading, commercial and investment banking, advisory, investment management, investment research, principal investment, hedging, market making, brokerage and other financial and non-financial activities and services. Certain of the underwriters and their respective affiliates have provided, and may in the future provide, a variety of these services to us and to persons and entities with relationships with us, for which they received or will receive customary fees and expenses.

In the ordinary course of their various business activities, the underwriters and their respective affiliates, officers, directors and employees may purchase, sell or hold a broad array of investments and actively trade securities, derivatives, loans, commodities, currencies, credit default swaps and other financial instruments for their own account and for the accounts of their customers, and such investment and trading activities may involve or relate to our assets, securities and/or instruments (directly, as collateral securing other obligations or otherwise) and/or persons and entities with relationships with us. The underwriters and their respective affiliates may also communicate independent investment recommendations, market color or trading ideas and/or publish or express independent research views in respect of such assets, securities or instruments and may at any time hold, or recommend to clients that they should acquire, long and/or short positions in such assets, securities and instruments.

EXPENSES OF THIS OFFERING

Set forth below is an itemization of the total expenses, excluding the underwriting discounts and commissions, which are expected to be incurred in connection with the sale of ADSs in this offering. With the exception of the registration fee payable to the SEC, the Nasdaq listing fee and the filing fee payable to FINRA, all amounts are estimates.

	<u>Amount to be Paid</u>
SEC registration fee	19,016
FINRA filing fee	23,411
The Nasdaq Global Select Market initial listing fee	125,000
Printing and engraving expenses	220,000
Legal fees and expenses	3,500,000
Accounting fees and expenses	1,500,000
Miscellaneous fees and expenses	212,573
Total	<u>5,600,000</u>

LEGAL MATTERS

The validity of the ADSs being offered by this prospectus and certain other matters of English law will be passed upon for us by Cooley (UK) LLP and certain other matters of U.S. federal law will be passed upon for us by Cooley LLP. Certain legal matters related to this offering will be passed upon for the underwriters by Ropes & Gray LLP.

EXPERTS

The financial statements of Autolus Limited as of September 30, 2016 and September 30, 2017 and for each of the two years in the period ended September 30, 2017, appearing in this prospectus and the registration statement, have been audited by Ernst & Young LLP, an independent registered public accounting firm, as set forth in their report thereon appearing elsewhere herein, and are included in reliance upon such report given on the authority of such firm as experts in accounting and auditing.

The balance sheet of Autolus Therapeutics plc (formerly Autolus Therapeutics Limited) as of February 2, 2018, has been audited by Ernst & Young LLP, an independent registered public accounting firm, as set forth in their report thereon appearing elsewhere herein, and is included in reliance upon such report given on the authority of such firm as experts in accounting and auditing.

The registered business address of Ernst & Young LLP is Apex Plaza, Forbury Road, Reading RG1 1YE, United Kingdom.

SERVICE OF PROCESS AND ENFORCEMENT OF LIABILITIES

We are incorporated and currently existing under the laws of England and Wales. In addition, certain of our directors and officers reside outside of the United States. As a result, it may be difficult for investors to effect service of process on us or those persons in the United States or to enforce in the United States judgments obtained in United States courts against us or those persons based on the civil liability or other provisions of the United States securities laws or other laws.

In addition, uncertainty exists as to whether the courts of England and Wales would:

- recognize or enforce judgments of United States courts obtained against us or our directors or officers predicated upon the civil liabilities provisions of the securities laws of the United States or any state in the United States; or
- entertain original actions brought in England and Wales against us or our directors or officers predicated upon the securities laws of the United States or any state in the United States.

We have been advised by Cooley LLP that there is currently no treaty between (i) the United States and (ii) England and Wales providing for reciprocal recognition and enforcement of judgments of United States courts in civil and commercial matters (although the United States and the United Kingdom are both parties to the New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards) and that a final judgment for the payment of money rendered by any general or state court in the United States based on civil liability, whether predicated solely upon the United States securities laws, would not be automatically enforceable in England and Wales. We have also been advised by Cooley LLP that any final and conclusive monetary judgment for a definite sum obtained against us in United States courts would be treated by the courts of England and Wales as a cause of action in itself and sued upon as a debt at common law so that no retrial of the issues would be necessary, provided that:

- the relevant U.S. court had jurisdiction over the original proceedings according to English conflicts of laws principles at the time when proceedings were initiated;

- England and Wales courts had jurisdiction over the matter on enforcement and we either submitted to such jurisdiction or were resident or carrying on business within such jurisdiction and were duly served with process;
- the U.S. judgment was final and conclusive on the merits in the sense of being final and unalterable in the court that pronounced it and being for a definite sum of money;
- the judgment given by the courts was not in respect of penalties, taxes, fines or similar fiscal or revenue obligations (or otherwise based on a U.S. law that an English court considers to relate to a penal, revenue or other public law);
- the judgment was not procured by fraud;
- recognition or enforcement of the judgment in England and Wales would not be contrary to public policy or the Human Rights Act 1998;
- the proceedings pursuant to which judgment was obtained were not contrary to natural justice;
- the U.S. judgment was not arrived at by doubling, trebling or otherwise multiplying a sum assessed as compensation for the loss or damages sustained and not being otherwise in breach of Section 5 of the U.K. Protection of Trading Interests Act 1980, or is a judgment based on measures designated by the Secretary of State under Section 1 of that Act;
- there is not a prior decision of an English court or the court of another jurisdiction on the issues in question between the same parties; and
- the English enforcement proceedings were commenced within the limitation period.

Whether these requirements are met in respect of a judgment based upon the civil liability provisions of the United States securities laws, including whether the award of monetary damages under such laws would constitute a penalty, is an issue for the court making such decision.

Subject to the foregoing, investors may be able to enforce in England and Wales judgments in civil and commercial matters that have been obtained from U.S. federal or state courts. Nevertheless, we cannot assure you that those judgments will be recognized or enforceable in England and Wales.

If an English court gives judgment for the sum payable under a U.S. judgment, the English judgment will be enforceable by methods generally available for this purpose. These methods generally permit the English court discretion to prescribe the manner of enforcement. In addition, it may not be possible to obtain an English judgment or to enforce that judgment if the judgment debtor is or becomes subject to any insolvency or similar proceedings, or if the judgment debtor has any set-off or counterclaim against the judgment creditor. Also note that, in any enforcement proceedings, the judgment debtor may raise any counterclaim that could have been brought if the action had been originally brought in England unless the subject of the counterclaim was in issue and denied in the U.S. proceedings.

WHERE YOU CAN FIND ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

We have filed with the SEC a registration statement (including amendments and exhibits to the registration statement) on Form F-1 under the Securities Act. We have also filed a related registration statement on Form F-6 with the SEC to register the ADSs. This prospectus, which forms a part of the registration statement, does not contain all of the information included in the registration statement and the exhibits and schedules to the registration statement. Certain information is omitted and you should refer to the registration statement and its exhibits and schedules for that information. If a document has been filed as an exhibit to the registration statement, we refer you to the copy of the document that has been filed. Each statement in this prospectus relating to a document filed as an exhibit is qualified in all respects by the filed exhibit.

You may review a copy of the registration statement, including exhibits and any schedule filed therewith, and obtain copies of such materials at the SEC's Public Reference Room at 100 F Street, N.E., Washington, D.C. 20549. You may obtain information on the operation of the Public Reference Room by calling the SEC at 1-800-SEC-0330. The SEC maintains an Internet website (<http://www.sec.gov>) that contains reports, proxy and information statements and other information regarding issuers, like us, that file electronically with the SEC.

Upon completion of this offering, we will be subject to the information reporting requirements of the Exchange Act applicable to foreign private issuers. Accordingly, we will be required to file reports and other information with the SEC, including annual reports on Form 20-F and current reports on Form 6-K. Those reports may be inspected without charge at the locations described above. As a foreign private issuer, we will be exempt from the rules under the Exchange Act related to the furnishing and content of proxy statements, and our officers, directors and principal shareholders will be exempt from the reporting and short-swing profit recovery provisions contained in Section 16 of the Exchange Act. In addition, we will not be required under the Exchange Act to file periodic reports and financial statements with the SEC as frequently or as promptly as U.S. companies whose securities are registered under the Exchange Act.

We maintain a corporate website at www.autolus.com. Information contained in, or that can be accessed through, our website is not a part of, and shall not be incorporated by reference into, this prospectus. We have included our website address in this prospectus solely as an inactive textual reference.

Audited Financial Statements of Autolus Therapeutics plc (formerly Autolus Therapeutics Limited)

Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm	F-2
Balance Sheet as of February 2, 2018	F-3
Notes to the Financial Statements	F-4

Audited Financial Statements of Autolus Limited

Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm	F-5
Balance Sheet	F-6
Statement of Operations and Comprehensive Loss	F-7
Statement of Shareholders' Equity	F-8
Statement of Cash Flows	F-9
Notes to Financial Statements	F-10

REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

To the Board of Directors and Shareholders of Autolus Therapeutics plc (formerly Autolus Therapeutics Limited)

We have audited the accompanying balance sheet of Autolus Therapeutics plc (formerly Autolus Therapeutics Limited) as of February 2, 2018. This balance sheet is the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on this balance sheet based on our audit.

We conducted our audit in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States). Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. We were not engaged to perform an audit of the Company's internal control over financial reporting. Our audit included consideration of internal control over financial reporting as a basis for designing audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting. Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements, assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, and evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, the balance sheet referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of Autolus Therapeutics plc (formerly Autolus Therapeutics Limited) at February 2, 2018, in conformity with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

/s/ Ernst & Young LLP

Reading, United Kingdom

February 8, 2018, except for note 1.1, as to which the date is June 18, 2018

Autolus Therapeutics plc (formerly Autolus Therapeutics Limited)
Balance Sheet
 As of February 2, 2018 (date of inception)
 (Expressed in US Dollars, unless otherwise stated)

	February 2, 2018
TOTAL ASSETS	<u>—</u>
	\$ —
Liabilities	<u>—</u>
Equity	<u>—</u>
Share capital (£0.00001 par value, one hundred thousand shares, issued and outstanding)	1
Additional paid in capital	—
Receivable from shareholder	(1)
Total equity	<u>—</u>
TOTAL LIABILITIES AND EQUITY	<u>\$ —</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of this balance sheet.

Autolus Therapeutics plc (formerly Autolus Therapeutics Limited)
Notes to Financial Statements
As of February 2, 2018 (date of inception)
(Expressed in US Dollars, unless otherwise stated)

1. Overview

1.1. General Information

Autolus Therapeutics plc, formerly Autolus Therapeutics Limited ("ATL" or "the Company"), was incorporated in England and Wales on February 2, 2018.

The share capital of ATL consists of one share, par value £1.00 per share, which has been issued. ATL was incorporated with nominal assets and liabilities for the purpose of becoming a holding company for Autolus Limited and for the purposes of consummating a corporate reorganization.

Prior to the Company's proposed initial public offering, the Company will undertake a corporate reorganization pursuant to which (i) ATL will ultimately become the direct holding company of Autolus Holdings (UK) Limited, a new holding company we plan to incorporate pursuant to the laws of England and Wales, (ii) Autolus Holdings (UK) Limited will become the wholly owned subsidiary of ATL and the direct holding company of Autolus Limited, and (iii) ATL will re-register as a public limited company and change its name to Autolus Therapeutics plc.

In connection with the corporate reorganization, on June 14, 2018, the Company split the one share, issued and outstanding at a par value of £1, into 100,000 shares with a par value of £0.00001. This has been given retrospective effect in the Company's balance sheet.

Subsequent to this, on June 15, 2018, the Company completed a share for share exchange and capital reduction as a part of the corporate reorganization, which does not change the capital structure of the Company or need retrospective application in the balance sheet.

On June 18, 2018, the Company completed the re-registration as a public company.

2. Basis of preparation

The accompanying financial statements have been prepared in accordance with US Generally Accepted Accounting Principles ("US GAAP"). Separate statements of income, changes in equity and cash flows have not been presented in the financial statements because there have been no operations in the Company at the balance sheet date.

3. Subsequent events

There have been no subsequent events at the date of issue of this balance sheet.

REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

The Board of Directors and Shareholders of Autolus Limited

We have audited the accompanying balance sheets of Autolus Limited (the Company) as of September 30, 2017 and 2016 and the related statements of operations and comprehensive loss, shareholders' equity, and cash flows for each of the two years in the period ended September 30, 2017. These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audits.

We conducted our audit in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States). Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. We were not engaged to perform an audit of the Company's internal control over financial reporting. Our audit included consideration of internal control over financial reporting as a basis for designing audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting. Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements, assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, and evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of Autolus Limited at September 30, 2017 and 2016 and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the two years in the period ended September 30, 2017, in conformity with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

/s/ Ernst & Young LLP

Reading, United Kingdom

February 8, 2018

AUTOLUS LIMITED
BALANCE SHEET
(In thousands, except share and per share amounts)

	September 30	
	2016	2017
Assets		
Current assets:		
Cash	\$ 28,059	\$137,070
Prepaid expenses and other current assets (Note 3)	2,867	5,412
Total current assets	30,926	142,482
Property and equipment, net (Note 4)	3,254	6,180
Total assets	\$ 34,180	\$148,662
Liabilities and shareholders' equity		
Current liabilities:		
Accounts payable	\$ 1,438	\$ 1,946
Accrued expenses and other liabilities (Note 5)	1,297	3,087
Total current liabilities	2,735	5,033
Long-term lease incentive obligation (Note 11)	188	265
Other long-term payables (Note 11)	570	763
Total liabilities	3,493	6,061
Shareholders' equity:		
Preferred shares, £0.00001 par value; 52,151,281 and 78,143,548 shares authorized, 28,647,008 and 78,002,897 shares issued and outstanding as of September 30, 2016 and 2017, respectively	—	1
Ordinary shares, £0.00001 par value; 20,908,499 and 119,203,434 shares authorized, 15,693,107 and 17,428,434 shares issued and outstanding at September 30, 2016 and 2017, respectively	—	—
Additional paid-in capital	63,513	194,351
Accumulated other comprehensive loss	(4,651)	(3,849)
Accumulated deficit	(28,175)	(47,902)
Total shareholders' equity	30,687	142,601
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	\$ 34,180	\$148,662

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

AUTOLUS LIMITED
STATEMENT OF OPERATIONS AND COMPREHENSIVE LOSS
(In thousands, except share and per share amounts)

	Year Ended September 30,	
	2016	2017
Grant income	\$ 1,212	\$ 1,693
Operating expenses:		
Research and development	(10,436)	(16,012)
General and administrative	(5,152)	(9,099)
Total operating expenses, net	(14,376)	(23,418)
Other income (expense):		
Interest income	75	84
Other expense	(26)	(46)
Total other income, net	49	38
Net loss before income tax	(14,327)	(23,380)
Income tax benefit	1,777	3,653
Net loss attributable to ordinary shareholders	(12,550)	(19,727)
Other comprehensive income (loss):		
Foreign exchange translation adjustment	(2,942)	802
Total comprehensive loss	(15,492)	(18,925)
Basic and diluted net loss per ordinary share	\$ (1.16)	\$ (1.61)
Weighted-average basic and diluted ordinary shares	10,794,798	12,226,019
Pro forma basic and diluted net loss per share to ordinary shareholders (unaudited)		\$ (0.45)
Pro forma weighted-average basic and diluted ordinary shares (unaudited)		43,899,562

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

AUTOLUS LIMITED
STATEMENT OF SHAREHOLDERS' EQUITY
(In thousands, except share amounts)

	Preferred shares		Ordinary shares		Additional paid-in capital	Accumulated other comprehensive loss	Accumulated deficit	Total
	Shares	Amount	Shares	Amount				
Balance at September 30, 2015	10,100,000	\$ —	11,283,014	\$ —	\$ 27,835	\$ (1,709)	\$ (15,625)	\$ 10,501
Issuance of preferred shares, net of issuance costs	18,547,008	—	—	—	32,222	—	—	32,222
Issuance of ordinary shares, net of issuance costs	—	—	4,410,093	—	1,199	—	—	1,199
Share-based compensation expense	—	—	—	—	2,257	—	—	2,257
Unrealized loss on foreign currency translation	—	—	—	—	—	(2,942)	—	(2,942)
Net loss	—	—	—	—	—	—	(12,550)	(12,550)
Balance at September 30, 2016	28,647,008	\$ —	15,693,107	\$ —	\$ 63,513	\$ (4,651)	\$ (28,175)	\$ 30,687
Issuance of preferred shares, net of issuance costs	49,355,889	1	—	—	127,685	—	—	127,686
Issuance of ordinary shares, net of issuance costs	—	—	1,735,327	—	—	—	—	—
Share-based compensation expense	—	—	—	—	3,153	—	—	3,153
Unrealized gain on foreign currency translation	—	—	—	—	—	802	—	802
Net loss	—	—	—	—	—	—	(19,727)	(19,727)
Balance at September 30, 2017	78,002,897	\$ 1	17,428,434	\$ —	\$ 194,351	\$ (3,849)	\$ (47,902)	\$142,601

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

AUTOLUS LIMITED
STATEMENT OF CASH FLOWS
(In thousands)

	<u>Year Ended September 30,</u>	
	<u>2016</u>	<u>2017</u>
Cash flows from operating activities:		
Net loss	\$ (12,550)	\$ (19,727)
Adjustments to reconcile net loss to net cash used in operating activities:		
Depreciation	478	1,009
Non-cash share compensation	2,257	3,153
Non-cash consideration for licenses (Note 7)	1,199	—
Changes in operating assets and liabilities:		
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	(2,048)	(2,317)
Accounts payable	507	434
Accrued expenses and other liabilities	308	1,088
Net cash used in operating activities	(9,849)	(16,360)
Cash flows from investing activities:		
Purchases of property and equipment	(1,855)	(2,876)
Net cash used in investing activities	(1,855)	(2,876)
Cash flows from financing activities:		
Proceeds from issuance of preferred shares, net of issuance costs	32,222	127,686
Net cash provided by financing activities	32,222	127,686
Effect of exchange rate changes on cash	(2,662)	561
Net increase in cash	17,856	109,011
Cash, beginning of year	10,203	28,059
Cash, end of year	\$ 28,059	\$ 137,070

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

AUTOLUS LIMITED
NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

1. Nature of the Business

Autolus Limited (the “Company”) is a private company with limited liability incorporated in England and Wales in July 2014 as “NewIncCo 1311 Limited.” The Company subsequently changed its name to “Autolus Limited” in August 2014.

The Company is a biopharmaceutical company developing next-generation programmed T cell therapies for the treatment of cancer. Using its broad suite of proprietary and modular T cell programming technologies, the Company is engineering precisely targeted, controlled and highly active T cell therapies that are designed to better recognize cancer cells, break down their defense mechanisms and attack and kill these cells. The Company believes its programmed T cell therapies have the potential to be best-in-class and offer cancer patients substantial benefits over the existing standard of care, including the potential for cure in some patients.

The Company is subject to risks and uncertainties common to early-stage companies in the biotechnology industry, including, but not limited to, risks associated with completing preclinical studies and receiving regulatory approvals for product candidates, development by competitors of new biopharmaceutical products, dependence on key personnel, protection of proprietary technology, compliance with government regulations and the ability to secure additional capital to fund operations. Product candidates currently under development will require significant additional research and development efforts, including preclinical and clinical testing and regulatory approval, prior to commercialization. These efforts require significant amounts of additional capital, adequate personnel and infrastructure and extensive compliance-reporting capabilities. Even if the Company’s product development efforts are successful, it is uncertain when, if ever, the Company will realize revenue from its product sales.

The Company has funded its operations primarily with proceeds from the sales of its equity securities. The Company has incurred recurring losses since its inception, including net losses of \$12.6 million and \$19.7 million for the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2017, respectively. In addition, as of September 30, 2016 and 2017, the Company had an accumulated deficit of \$28.2 million and \$47.9 million, respectively. The Company expects to continue to generate operating losses for the foreseeable future. The future viability of the Company beyond that point is dependent on its ability to raise additional capital to finance its operations. The Company’s inability to raise capital as and when needed could have a negative impact on its financial condition and ability to pursue its business strategies. There can be no assurances that the current operating plan will be achieved or that additional funding will be available on terms acceptable to the Company, or at all.

The Company believes the cash on hand at September 30, 2017 of \$137.1 million will be sufficient to fund the Company’s operations for at least 12 months from the issuance date of these financial statements.

2. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies

Basis of Presentation

The accompanying financial statements have been prepared in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America (“U.S. GAAP”).

Use of Estimates

The preparation of financial statements in conformity with U.S. GAAP requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities, the

AUTOLUS LIMITED
NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of the financial statements and the reported amounts of income and expenses during the reporting periods. Significant estimates and assumptions reflected in these financial statements include, but are not limited to, the accrual for research and development expenses, the fair value of ordinary shares, share-based compensation and income taxes. Estimates are periodically reviewed in light of changes in circumstances, facts and experience. Changes in estimates are recorded in the period in which they become known. Actual results could differ materially from those estimates.

Cash

The Company considers all highly liquid short-term deposits that have maturities of three months or less when acquired to be cash.

Fair Value Measurements

The carrying amounts reported in the balance sheets for cash, prepaid expenses and other assets, accounts payable and accrued expenses and other liabilities approximate their fair value because of the short-term nature of these instruments.

Property and Equipment

Property and equipment are recorded at cost and depreciated or amortized using the straight-line method over the estimated useful lives of the respective assets. As of September 30, 2016 and 2017, the Company's property and equipment consisted of office equipment, lab equipment, furniture and fixtures, and leasehold improvements. The office equipment has an estimated useful life of three years and the lab equipment and furniture and fixtures have an estimated useful life of five years. Leasehold improvements are amortized over the shorter of the lease term or the estimated useful life of the asset. Upon retirement or sale, the cost of assets disposed of, and the related accumulated depreciation, are removed from the accounts and any resulting gain or loss is included in the statement of operations and other comprehensive loss. Repairs and maintenance expenditures, which are not considered improvements and do not extend the useful life of property and equipment, are expensed as incurred.

The Company evaluates an asset for potential impairment when events or changes in circumstances indicate the carrying value of the asset may not be recoverable. Recoverability is measured by comparing the book value of the asset to the expected future net undiscounted cash flows that the asset is expected to generate. If such asset is considered to be impaired, the impairment to be recognized is measured by the amount by which the book value of the asset exceeds the fair value. The Company has not recognized any impairment losses from its inception through September 30, 2017.

Deferred Rent

The Company has operating leases that include rent escalation payment terms and a rent free period. Deferred rent represents the difference between actual operating lease payments and straight-line rent expense over the term of the lease.

Segment Information

Operating segments are defined as components of an enterprise about which separate discrete information is available for evaluation by the chief operating decision maker in deciding how to allocate

AUTOLUS LIMITED
NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

resources and assess performance. The Company's chief operating decision maker, its Chief Executive Officer, views the Company's operations and manages its business as a single operating segment, which is the business of developing cancer treatments. The Company currently operates in a single geographic region, the United Kingdom.

Research and Development Costs

Research and development costs are expensed as incurred. Research and development expenses consist of costs incurred in performing research and development activities, including salaries, share-based compensation and benefits, depreciation expense, third-party license fees, external costs of outside vendors engaged to conduct clinical development activities, clinical trials, costs to manufacture clinical trial materials and certain tax credits associated with research and development activities. The Company recorded research and development tax credits of \$39,000 and \$0.2 million for the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2017, respectively, as reductions of research and development expenses within the Company's statement of operations and comprehensive loss.

Share-Based Compensation

The Company recognizes compensation expense for equity awards based on the grant date fair value of the award. The Company recognizes share-based compensation expense for awards granted to employees that have a graded vesting schedule based on a service condition only on a straight-line basis over the requisite service period for each separately vesting portion of the award as if the award was, in substance, multiple awards (the "graded-vesting attribution method"), based on the estimated grant date fair value for each separately vesting tranche. For equity awards with a graded vesting schedule and a combination of service and performance conditions, the Company recognizes share-based compensation expense using a graded-vesting attribution method over the requisite service period when the achievement of a performance-based milestone is probable, based on the relative satisfaction of the performance condition as of the reporting date. For share-based awards granted to consultants and non-employees, compensation expense is recognized using the graded-vesting attribution method over the period during which services are rendered by such consultants and non-employees until completed. At the end of each financial reporting period prior to completion of the service, the fair value of these awards is remeasured using the then-current fair value of the Company's ordinary shares. The Company accounts for forfeitures as they occur. Forfeitures to date are infrequent and immaterial.

The fair value of each share option grant is estimated on the date of grant using the Black-Scholes option pricing model. See Note 8 for the Company's assumptions used in connection with option grants made during the periods covered by these financial statements. Assumptions used in the option pricing model include the following:

Expected volatility. As a private company, the Company lacks company-specific historical and implied volatility information for its ordinary shares. Therefore, it estimates its expected share volatility based on the historical volatility of publicly traded peer companies and expects to continue to do so until such time as it has adequate historical data regarding the volatility of its own traded share price.

Expected term. The expected term of the Company's share options has been determined utilizing the "simplified" method for awards that qualify as "plain-vanilla" options.

AUTOLUS LIMITED
NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Risk-free interest rate. The risk-free interest rate is determined by reference to the U.S. Treasury yield curve in effect at the time of grant of the award for time periods that are approximately equal to the expected term of the award.

Expected dividend. Expected dividend yield of zero is based on the fact that the Company has never paid cash dividends on ordinary shares and does not expect to pay any cash dividends in the foreseeable future.

Fair value of ordinary shares. The Company uses the fair value of its ordinary shares to determine the fair value of share options and restricted share awards as of each grant date. The Company calculates the fair value of its ordinary shares in accordance with the guidelines in the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants' Accounting and Valuation Guide, *Valuation of Privately-Held-Company Equity Securities Issued as Compensation*. The Company's valuations of ordinary shares were prepared using a market approach, based on precedent transactions in the shares, to estimate the Company's total equity value using the option-pricing method ("OPM"), which used a combination of market approaches and an income approach to estimate the Company's enterprise value.

The OPM derives an equity value such that the value indicated is consistent with the investment price, and it provides an allocation of this equity value to each class of the Company's securities. The OPM treats the various classes of shares as call options on the total equity value of a company, with exercise prices based on the value thresholds at which the allocation among the various holders of a company's securities changes. Under this method, each class of shares has value only if the funds available for distribution to shareholders exceed the value of the share liquidation preferences of the class or classes of shares with senior preferences at the time of the liquidity event. Key inputs and assumptions used in the OPM calculation include the following:

Expected volatility. The Company applied re-levered equity volatility based on the historical unlevered and re-levered equity volatility of publicly traded peer companies.

Expected dividend. Expected dividend yield of zero is based on the fact that the Company has never paid cash dividends on ordinary shares and does not expect to pay any cash dividends in the foreseeable future.

Expected term. The expected term of the option or the estimated time until a liquidation event.

Risk-free interest rate. The risk-free interest rate is determined by reference to the U.S. Treasury yield curve for the period commensurate with the expected of the exit event.

Foreign Currency Translation

The Company maintains its financial statements in its functional currency, which is the pounds sterling. Monetary assets and liabilities denominated in currencies other than the functional currency are translated into the functional currency at rates of exchange prevailing at the balance sheet dates. Non-monetary assets and liabilities denominated in foreign currencies are translated into the functional currency at the exchange rates prevailing at the date of the transaction. Exchange gains or losses arising from foreign currency transactions are included in the determination of net income (loss) for the respective periods. The Company recorded foreign exchange losses of \$10,000 and \$25,000 for the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2017, respectively, which are included in other income in the statements of operations and comprehensive loss.

For financial reporting purposes, the financial statements of the Company have been translated into U.S. dollars. Assets and liabilities have been translated at the exchange rates at the balance sheet

AUTOLUS LIMITED
NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

dates, while revenue and expenses are translated at the average exchange rates over the reporting period and shareholders' equity amounts are translated based on historical exchange rates as of the date of each transaction. Translation adjustments are not included in determining net income (loss) but are included in foreign exchange adjustment to other comprehensive loss, a component of shareholders' equity.

Patent Costs

The Company expenses patent prosecution and related legal costs as they are incurred and classifies such costs as general and administrative expenses in the accompanying statements of operations and comprehensive loss. The Company recorded patent expenses of \$0.5 million for the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2017.

Grant Income

The Company has received research grants under which it is reimbursed for specific research and development activities. Payments received are recognized as income in the statements of operations and comprehensive loss over the period in which the Company recognizes the related costs. At the time the Company recognizes grant income, it has complied with the conditions attached to it and the receipt of the reimbursement is reasonably assured. The Company has received grants from the U.K. government, which are repayable under certain circumstances, including breach or noncompliance. For grants with refund provisions, the Company reviews the grant to determine the likelihood of repayment. If the likelihood of repayment of the grant is determined to be remote, then the grant is recognized as grant income. The Company has determined that the likelihood of any repayment events included in its current grants are remote.

Income Taxes

The Company accounts for income taxes under the asset and liability method which includes the recognition of deferred tax assets and liabilities for the expected future tax consequences of events that have been included in the Company's financial statements. Under this approach, deferred taxes are recorded for the future tax consequences expected to occur when the reported amounts of assets and liabilities are recovered or paid. The provision for income taxes represents income taxes paid or payable for the current year plus deferred taxes. Deferred taxes result from differences between the financial statements and tax bases of the Company's assets and liabilities, and are adjusted for changes in tax rates and tax law when changes are enacted. The effects of future changes in income tax laws or rates are not anticipated.

The Company is subject to income taxes in the United Kingdom. The calculation of the Company's tax provision involves the application of United Kingdom tax law and requires judgement and estimates.

The Company evaluates the realizability of its deferred tax assets at each reporting date, and establishes a valuation allowance when it is more likely than not that all or a portion of its deferred tax assets will not be realized.

The ultimate realization of deferred tax assets is dependent upon the generation of future taxable income of the same character and in the same jurisdiction. The Company considers all available positive and negative evidence in making this assessment, including, but not limited to, the scheduled

AUTOLUS LIMITED
NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

reversal of deferred tax liabilities, projected future taxable income, and tax planning strategies. In circumstances where there is sufficient negative evidence indicating that the Company's deferred tax assets are not more likely than not realizable, the Company establishes a valuation allowance.

The Company uses a two-step approach for recognizing and measuring uncertain tax positions. The first step is to evaluate tax positions taken or expected to be taken in a tax return by assessing whether they are more likely than not sustainable, based solely on their technical merits, upon examination, and including resolution of any related appeals or litigation process. The second step is to measure the associated tax benefit or each position as the largest amount that the Company believes is more likely than not realizable. Differences between the amount of tax benefits taken or expected to be taken in the Company's income tax returns and the amount of tax benefits recognized in the its financial statements represent the Company's unrecognized income tax benefits, which it either records as a liability or reduction of deferred tax assets.

Income Tax Credit

The Company benefits from the U.K. research and development tax credit regime under both the small and medium sized enterprise, or SME, scheme and by claiming an RDEC in respect of grant funded projects. Under the SME regime, a portion of the Company's losses can be surrendered for a cash rebate of up to 33.35% of eligible expenditures. Such credits are accounted for within the tax provision in the year in which the expenditures were incurred.

Comprehensive Loss

The Company follows the provisions of the Financial Accounting Standards Board ("FASB") Accounting Standards Codification ("ASC") Topic 220, *Comprehensive Income*, which establishes standards for the reporting and display of comprehensive income and its components. Comprehensive loss is defined to include all changes in equity during a period except those resulting from investments by owners and distributions to owners. The Company recorded a loss of \$2.9 million and gain of \$0.8 million related to foreign currency translation during the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2017, respectively.

Net Loss per Share

Basic and diluted net loss per ordinary share is determined by dividing net loss by the weighted average number of ordinary shares outstanding during the period. For all periods presented, the preferred shares and outstanding but unvested restricted shares and share options have been excluded from the calculation, because their effects would be anti-dilutive. Therefore, the weighted average shares outstanding used to calculate both basic and diluted loss per share are the same for all periods presented.

The following potentially dilutive securities have been excluded from the calculation of diluted net loss per share due to their anti-dilutive effect:

	Year Ended September 30,	
	2016	2017
Unvested restricted incentive shares	4,034,347	4,326,382
Series A preferred shares	28,647,008	78,002,897
Incentive share options	—	1,816,726
Total	32,681,355	84,146,005

AUTOLUS LIMITED
NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Unaudited Pro Forma Information

The pro forma basic and diluted net loss per share attributable to ordinary shareholders for the year ended September 30, 2017 has been prepared to give effect to the automatic conversion of all outstanding shares of series A preferred shares into 78,002,897 shares of B ordinary shares, as if the proposed initial public offering ("IPO") had occurred in all periods in which such shares were outstanding.

Shares to be sold in the proposed IPO are excluded from the unaudited pro forma basic and diluted loss per share attributable to ordinary shareholders. As the Company incurred a net loss for the year ended September 30, 2017, there is no income allocation attributed to pro forma weighted-average shares outstanding in the calculation of pro forma diluted loss per share attributable to ordinary shareholders.

Recent Accounting Pronouncements

In February 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-02, *Leases (Topic 842)* ("ASU 2016-02"), which requires a lessee to recognize certain leases on the balance sheet but recognize expenses on the income statement in a manner similar to current accounting standards practice. The update states that a lessee will recognize a lease liability for the obligation to make lease payments and a right-to-use asset for the right to use the underlying assets for the lease term. Leases will continue to be classified as either financing or operating, with classification affecting the recognition, measurement, and presentation of expenses and cash flows arising from a lease. For public entities, the new standard is effective for interim and annual periods beginning on or after January 1, 2019, or January 1, 2020 for non-public entities, with early adoption permitted in each case. The Company is currently evaluating the impact that the adoption of ASU 2016-02 will have on its financial statements.

3. Prepaid Expenses and Other Current Assets

Prepaid expenses and other current assets consisted of the following (in thousands):

	September 30,	
	2016	2017
Research and development claims receivable	\$1,690	\$4,069
Prepayments	688	681
VAT receivable	275	248
Grant income receivable	128	279
Other receivable	86	135
Total prepaid expenses and other current assets	\$2,867	\$5,412

AUTOLUS LIMITED
NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

4. Property and Equipment, Net

Property and equipment, net consisted of the following (in thousands):

	September 30,	
	2016	2017
Lab equipment	\$2,017	\$4,141
Office equipment	482	950
Furniture and fixtures	5	517
Leasehold improvements	1,216	2,100
Less: accumulated depreciation	(466)	(1,528)
Total property and equipment, net	\$3,254	\$ 6,180

Depreciation expense recorded for the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2017 were \$0.5 million and \$1.0 million, respectively.

5. Accrued Expenses and Other Liabilities

Accrued expenses and other liabilities consisted of the following (in thousands):

	September 30,	
	2016	2017
Compensation and benefits	\$841	\$1,662
Research and development costs	33	339
Professional fees	77	300
Deferred rent	53	197
Other liabilities	293	589
Total accrued expenses and other liabilities	\$1,297	\$3,087

Other liabilities primarily consists of the current portion of other long-term payables and lease incentive liability, together amounts of \$0.2 million and \$0.4 million are recorded as of September 30, 2016 and 2017, respectively.

6. Series A Preferred Shares

As of September 30, 2016 and 2017, the Company's Articles of Association, as amended and restated, authorized the Company to issue 52,151,281 and 78,143,548 series A preferred shares, respectively. The preferred shares were authorized to be issued by the Company with a nominal value of £0.00001.

The series A preferred shares give the holder the right to vote on all matters submitted to a vote of the Company's shareholders. The shares also have a liquidation preference of one times the subscription price in the event of liquidation or return of capital, in the event that if, after paying £1.00 to the entire class of deferred shareholders, the surplus to be distributed amongst both preferred and ordinary shares would fall below the per share subscription price. Any remaining surplus after liquidation preference would then be distributed next to the holders of ordinary shares. Series A preferred shares may be converted at any time, at the option of the holder or upon the closing of a firmly written initial public offering which values the issued share capital of the Company, on a pre-new money basis, at no less than \$350.0 million and involves a raise by the Company of not less than \$50.0 million (a "Qualified Public Offering"), into B ordinary shares, at a conversion rate of 1:1.

AUTOLUS LIMITED
NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

The holders of series A preferred shares are entitled to dividends and may elect to receive non-cash dividends in the form of shares or other assets. As of September 30, 2017, the Company has not declared any dividends on the series A preferred shares.

The Company had 28,647,008 and 78,002,897 series A preferred shares issued and outstanding at September 30, 2016 and 2017, respectively.

The following table summarizes the series A preferred shares issued through September 30, 2017:

Date Issued	Series A Preferred Shares Issued
September 25, 2014	10,100,000
March 2, 2016	18,547,008
July 17, 2017	11,752,137
September 22, 2017	11,752,136
July 31, 2017	2
September 25, 2017	25,851,614
Total	78,002,897

2014 Series A Financing (including 2016 and 2017 Amendments)

In September 2014, the Company entered into a subscription agreement (the "2014 Series A Agreement") pursuant to which the Company issued an aggregate of 10,100,000 series A preferred shares for total proceeds of approximately \$16.5 million. The Company incurred aggregate issuance costs of \$81,000 for the 2014 issuances, recorded as a reduction to additional paid in capital.

The 2014 Series A Agreement was amended and restated in March 2016 (as so amended, the "Amended 2014 Series A Agreement"). Pursuant to the Amended 2014 Series A Agreement, the Company issued 18,547,008 series A preferred shares for an aggregate purchase price of \$32.5 million and incurred issuance costs of \$0.3 million, recorded as a reduction to additional paid in capital.

Under the 2014 Amended Series A Agreement, the Company committed to issuing 11,752,137 series A preferred shares at a purchase price of £1.56 per share upon the achievement of specified clinical development milestones. The first milestone was achieved in April 2017, and in July 2017 the Company issued 11,752,137 series A preferred shares for gross proceeds of \$23.8 million. The second milestone was achieved in September 2017, at which time the Company issued 11,752,136 series A preferred shares for gross proceeds of \$24.7 million.

In July 2017, the Company also issued two shares of series A preferred shares in connection with the repurchase of C ordinary restricted employee incentive shares from an employee (see Note 8).

In September 2017, the Company entered into a new subscription agreement with investors pursuant to which the Company issued 25,851,614 series A preferred shares for gross proceeds of \$79.5 million and incurred issuance costs of \$0.3 million, recorded as a reduction to additional paid in capital. As of September 30, 2017, the Company had not received proceeds of \$0.4 million related to series A preferred shares that were to be issued in connection with the subscription agreement.

AUTOLUS LIMITED
NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

7. Ordinary Shares

As of September 30, 2016 and 2017, the Company's Articles of Association, as amended and restated, authorized the Company to issue 10,750,000 B ordinary shares. The Company was also authorized to issue 10,158,499 and 108,453,434 C ordinary shares as of September 30, 2016 and 2017, respectively. All ordinary shares were authorized to be issued by the Company with a nominal value of £0.00001.

The holders of B ordinary shares have the right to vote on all matters submitted to a vote of the Company's shareholders, while C ordinary shares, which may be granted in the form of restricted C ordinary share awards, confer no voting rights. Holders of series A preferred shares, B ordinary shares and C ordinary shares are entitled to dividends may elect to receive non-cash dividends in the form of shares or other assets.

The Company had the following number of B ordinary shares on the following dates during the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2017:

	Number of B ordinary shares
As of October 1, 2015	9,750,000
On March 2, 2016	1,000,000
As of September 30, 2016	10,750,000
As of September 30, 2017	10,750,000

2014 B Ordinary Share Financing (including 2016 Amendment)

In September 2014, the Company entered into a subscription agreement (the "2014 B Agreement") pursuant to which it issued 4,980,006 B ordinary shares to its founders, which were recorded at their fair market value of \$5.4 million and expensed as compensation to the founders. In connection with the execution of the 2014 B Agreement, the Company also entered into an exclusive license agreement with UCL Business plc ("UCLB") (see Note 9), pursuant to which the Company issued 4,769,994 B ordinary shares to UCLB, which were recorded at their fair market value of \$5.2 million and expensed as research and development costs upon issuance.

The Company amended its license agreement with UCLB in March 2016. In exchange for the additional rights the Company received when the license agreement was amended, the Company granted an additional 1,000,000 B ordinary shares to UCLB and made a one-time payment of £150,000 (see Note 9). The B ordinary shares were recorded at their fair market value of \$1.2 million and the rights acquired were immediately expensed as research and development costs upon issuance.

AUTOLUS LIMITED
NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

The Company had the following number of restricted C ordinary shares on the following dates during the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2017:

	Number of Restricted C Ordinary Shares
Issued and outstanding as of October 1, 2015	1,533,014
On November 24, 2015	36,127
On January 26, 2016	11,116
On February 5, 2016	794
On March 2, 2016	2,693,235
On March 23, 2016	1,000
On April 18, 2016	111,923
On May 17, 2016	286,273
On July 19, 2016	12,897
On September 21, 2016	257,125
Shares canceled during the period	(397)
Issued and outstanding as of September 30, 2016	4,943,107
On November 29, 2016	1,402
On April 21, 2017	1,643,884
On July 24, 2017	400,000
Shares canceled during the period	(309,959)
Issued and outstanding as of September 30, 2017	6,678,434

Restricted C ordinary shares are issued under the employee incentive pool and remain in the control of the Company until the point at which the shares vest. Forfeited restricted C ordinary shares are converted to deferred shares. Further details on the vesting conditions and compensation expense, along with a full reconciliation of the restricted C ordinary share movements is discussed in Note 8.

Deferred shares are a unit of equity in the Company. All deferred shares can be repurchased at any time by the Company at a purchase price of £0.00001 per share. Deferred shares have no rights attached to them. As of September 30, 2016 and 2017, the Company had 397 and 20,935 shares, respectively, that were converted to deferred shares but that had not been repurchased by the Company. Additionally, the Company repurchased 289,421 restricted C ordinary shares from one employee at nominal value of £0.00001 per share. These shares were canceled on repurchase and have been included as canceled in the table above. The Company issued two shares of series A preferred shares in connection with this repurchase (see Note 6).

8. Share-Based Compensation

Employee Incentive Pool

Under the Company's shareholder agreements, the Company is authorized to issue C ordinary shares, as well as options and other securities exercisable for or convertible into C ordinary shares, as incentives to its employees and members of its board of directors. To the extent such incentives are in the form of share options, the options are granted pursuant to the terms of the 2017 Share Option Plan, or the 2017 Plan. As of September 30, 2017, the Company was authorized under the shareholder agreements to issue a total of 12,121,847 C ordinary shares, including shares underlying

AUTOLUS LIMITED
NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

options granted pursuant to the 2017 Plan. Awards of restricted C ordinary shares, which are referred to as employee shares, are subject to vesting. Unvested employee shares are forfeited upon termination of employment. The forfeited shares are converted into deferred shares, with a repurchase right in favor of the Company. These deferred shares reduce the restricted C ordinary shares issued, but do not impact the number of restricted C ordinary shares available to be issued from the employee incentive pool.

2017 Share Option Plan

On February 22, 2017, the Company's board of directors adopted the 2017 Plan. The 2017 Plan expires on February 21, 2027. The 2017 Plan provides for the grant of potentially tax-favored Enterprise Management Incentive, or EMI, options, to its U.K. employees and for the grant of options to its U.S. employees. The 2017 Plan is administered by the board of directors.

Under the Company's shareholder agreement in effect as of September 30, 2017, the Company was authorized to issue a total of 12,121,847 C ordinary shares, including shares underlying options granted pursuant to the 2017 Plan. As of September 30, 2017, there were 3,626,687 C ordinary shares available for issuance as incentives to the Company's employees and directors, which amount includes shares underlying options that may be granted from time to time subsequent to September 30, 2017 under the terms of the 2017 Plan.

Options granted under the 2017 Plan, as well as restricted C shares granted as employee incentives, typically vest over a four-year service period with 25% of the award vesting on the first anniversary of the commencement date and the balance vesting monthly over the remaining three years, unless the award contains specific performance vesting provisions. For equity awards issued that have both a performance vesting condition and a services condition, once the performance criteria is achieved, the awards are then subject to a four-year service vesting with 25% of the award vesting on the first anniversary of the performance condition being achieved and the balance vesting monthly over the remaining three years. Options granted under the 2017 Plan generally expire 10 years from the date of grant. For certain senior members of management and directors, the board of directors has approved an alternative vesting schedule.

Share Option Valuation

The assumptions (see Note 2) used in the Black-Scholes option pricing model to determine the fair value of the share options granted to employees and directors during the year ended September 30, 2017 were as follows:

	September 30, 2017
Expected option life (years)	6 years
Risk-free interest rate	1.91% to 2.05%
Expected volatility	68.61% to 68.93%
Expected dividend yield	0.00%

There were no share options granted during the year ended September 30, 2016.

AUTOLUS LIMITED
NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Share Options

	Number of Options	Weighted- Average Exercise Price	Weighted- Average Remaining Contractual Term (Years)	Aggregate Intrinsic Value
Outstanding as of September 30, 2016	—	\$ —	—	\$ —
Granted	1,817,462	0.16	—	—
Exercised	—	—	—	—
Canceled or forfeited	(736)	0.00	—	—
Outstanding as of September 30, 2017	1,816,726	\$ 0.16	9.73	\$ 2,024
Exercisable as of September 30, 2017	—	\$ —	—	\$ —
Vested and expected to vest as of September 30, 2017	1,816,726	\$ 0.16	9.73	\$ 2,024

The aggregate intrinsic value of share options is calculated as the difference between the exercise price of the share options and the fair value of the Company's restricted C ordinary shares for those share options that had exercise prices lower than the fair value of the Company's restricted C ordinary shares.

The weighted average grant-date fair value of share options granted during the year ended September 30, 2017 was \$1.27 per share, none of which were vested. There were no share options granted during the year ended September 30, 2016.

The Company granted 1,817,462 share options during the year ended September 30, 2017 of which 1,774,226 were performance-based share options. These performance-based share options begin to vest upon the Company achieving specified clinical development milestones. During the year ended September 30, 2017, 736 of the performance-based share options were forfeited.

The Company achieved the milestones related to the 2017 performance-based share options during the year ended September 30, 2017 and recorded share-based compensation expense of \$0.4 million related to those option awards that started vesting upon the achievement of the milestones. As of September 30, 2017, there was unrecognized compensation of \$1.8 million related to the 2017 performance-based share options, which will be recognized over the remaining term of the awards.

Restricted C Ordinary Shares

The assumptions (Note 2) used in the OPM to determine the fair value of the ordinary shares for the following dates are as follows:

	March 2, 2016	April 26, 2017	September 25, 2017
Expected term	2.8 years	1.2 years	0.8 years
Risk-free interest rate	1.0%	1.0%	1.3%
Expected volatility	73.2%	76.6%	71.0%
Expected dividend yield	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%

AUTOLUS LIMITED
NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

A summary of the changes in the Company's restricted C ordinary shares during the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2017 are as follows:

	Number of restricted shares	Weighted average grant date fair value
Unvested and outstanding at September 30, 2015	1,327,948	\$ 1.11
Granted	3,410,490	1.28
Vested	(703,694)	1.06
Canceled or forfeited	(397)	0.95
Unvested and outstanding at September 30, 2016	4,034,347	1.22
Granted	2,045,286	1.37
Vested	(1,443,292)	1.23
Canceled or forfeited	(309,959)	1.32
Unvested and outstanding at September 30, 2017	4,326,382	\$ 1.32

During the year ended September 30, 2016, the Company granted an aggregate of 3,410,490 restricted C ordinary shares, with only service-based vesting conditions, to its employees, directors and consultants.

During the year ended September 30, 2017, the Company granted an aggregate of 1,402 restricted C ordinary shares with vesting based on service conditions only and 2,043,884 restricted C ordinary shares that included both performance and service conditions in order to vest. During the year ended September 30, 2017, 79,294 restricted C ordinary shares were vested related to performance-based awards. The remainder of the restricted C ordinary shares and all forfeited restricted C ordinary shares related to awards with only service-based vesting conditions.

The 2017 performance-based restricted shares were scheduled to begin vesting upon the Company's achievement of specified clinical development milestones. The Company achieved the milestones related to the 2017 performance-based restricted shares during the year ended September 30, 2017 and recorded share-based compensation expense of \$0.8 million related to the vesting of those incentive share awards. As of September 30, 2017, there was unrecognized compensation of \$2.0 million, which will be recognized over the remaining vesting term of the awards.

The Company recorded share-based compensation expense related to awards to certain consultants, who are not employees, of \$0.2 million for the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2017, respectively.

Share-based Compensation

The Company recorded share-based compensation expense of \$2.3 million and \$3.2 million during the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2017, respectively, related to both restricted shares and share options based awards. As of September 30, 2016, and 2017, there was \$3.1 million and \$5.1 million, respectively, of unrecognized compensation cost related to outstanding but unvested restricted shares and share options, which amounts are expected to be recognized over weighted-average periods of 3.4 years and 3.5 years, respectively.

AUTOLUS LIMITED
NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Share-based compensation expense recorded as research and development and general and administrative expenses is as follows (in thousands):

	Year Ended September 30,	
	2016	2017
Research and development	\$ 916	\$1,145
General and administrative	1,341	2,008
Total share-based compensation	\$2,257	\$3,153

In February 2017, the Company modified the terms of all outstanding share options and restricted share awards to adjust the vesting of the awards in the event of an exit event or IPO. As modified, the options and share awards will no longer convert to deferred shares, and will continue vesting, if the Company undertakes an exit event or IPO. The incremental share-based compensation expense due to the modification was nominal.

9. License Agreements

UCL Business plc License

In September 2014, the Company entered into an exclusive license agreement (the "License") with UCLB, to obtain licenses to certain technology rights in the field of cancer therapy and diagnosis. In March 2016, the License was amended (the "Amended License Agreement") to include additional licenses.

As part of the consideration for the License in September 2014, the Company issued 4,769,994 B ordinary shares to UCLB (see Note 7). The Company paid upfront fees of \$0.3 million and issued an additional 1,000,000 B ordinary shares to UCLB when the License was amended in March 2016 (see Note 7).

The License requires the Company to make annual license payments of \$40,000 through the year ending September 30, 2018. Additionally, the Company may be obligated to make payments to UCLB under the Amended License Agreement upon the receipt of specified regulatory approvals in an aggregate amount of £15 million, the start of commercialization in an aggregate amount of £18 million, and the achievement of net sales levels in an aggregate amount of £51 million, as well as royalty payments based on possible future sales resulting from the utilization of the licensed technologies. On a per-product basis, these milestone payments range from £1 million to £6 million, depending on which T cell programming modules are used in the product achieving the milestone.

In the event that the Company commits a material breach, or becomes insolvent or does not pay its obligations as they become due under the Amended License Agreement, UCLB can terminate the Amended License Agreement. The Company can terminate the Amended License Agreement if UCLB commits a material breach or becomes insolvent. The Company and UCLB may also terminate the Amended License Agreement by mutual agreement at any time. The Amended License Agreement expires upon the expiration of the royalty term in each country and at such time as no further sublicense or milestone payments are due.

10. Income Taxes

The Company recorded an income tax benefit of \$1.8 million and \$3.7 million for the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2017, respectively.

AUTOLUS LIMITED
NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

A reconciliation of income tax expense (benefit) at the statutory corporate income tax rate to the income tax expense (benefit) at the Company's effective income tax rates is as follows (in thousands):

	September 30,	
	2016	2017
Net loss before taxes	\$(14,327)	\$(23,380)
U.K. statutory tax rate	20.0%	19.5%
Income tax benefit at U.K. statutory tax rate	(2,865)	(4,559)
Tax incentives / credits	(1,837)	(3,702)
Non-deductible expenses	694	609
Adjustments in respect of prior years	57	13
Operating losses	2,168	3,754
Tax on property, plant, equipment and intangibles	—	113
Other, net	6	119
Total income tax benefit	\$ (1,777)	\$ (3,653)
Effective rate of income tax	12.4%	15.6%

The effective tax rate for September 30, 2016 and 2017 is 12.4% and 15.6%, respectively. This is lower than the main rate of U.K. tax primarily due to administration of the U.K. research and development tax credit, which is included within the tax incentive/credits line in the table above.

Deferred tax assets and liabilities consisted of the following at September 30, 2016 and 2017 (in thousands):

	September 30	
	2016	2017
Deferred tax assets:		
Other differences	\$ 3	\$ 11
Tax losses	2,928	3,878
Fixed assets	488	1,098
Total deferred tax assets	3,419	4,987
Valuation allowances	(3,419)	(4,987)
Net deferred tax asset (liability)	\$ —	\$ —

Deferred tax assets resulting from loss carryforwards, fixed assets and retirement benefits, with total deferred tax assets increasing by \$1.6 million in 2017. The Company has recorded a full valuation allowance against the net deferred tax asset as the recoverability due to future taxable profits is unknown. As a result, the net deferred tax remains the same, due to a corresponding increase in valuation allowance.

At September 30, 2017, the Company had U.K. trading losses carry forward of approximately \$22.8 million. These losses are carry forwards indefinitely under local law, but are subject to numerous utilization criteria and restrictions.

As required by the authoritative guidance on accounting for income taxes, the Company evaluates the realizability of deferred tax assets at each reporting date. Accounting for income taxes guidance requires that a valuation allowance be established when it is more likely than not that all or a portion of the deferred tax assets will not be realized. In circumstances where this is sufficient negative

AUTOLUS LIMITED
NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

evidence indicating that the deferred tax assets are not more likely than not realizable, the Company establishes a valuation allowance. The Company recorded valuation allowances in the amounts of \$3.4 million and \$5.0 million at September 30, 2016 and 2017, respectively.

11. Commitments and Contingencies

License Agreement

The Company has entered into an exclusive license agreement, as amended, with UCLB (see Note 9). In connection with the UCLB license agreement, the Company is required to make annual license payments and may be required to make payments upon the achievement of specified milestones. The Company has estimated the probability of the Company achieving each potential milestone in accordance with ASC 450, *Contingencies*. The Company concluded that, as of September 30, 2016 and 2017, there were no milestones for which the likelihood of achievement was probable, and as a result, no future milestone payments were accrued by the Company to date.

Legal Proceedings

From time to time, the Company may be a party to litigation or subject to claims incident to the ordinary course of business. Regardless of the outcome, litigation can have an adverse impact on the Company because of defense and settlement costs, diversion of management resources and other factors. The Company was not a party to any litigation and did not have contingency reserves established for any liabilities as of September 30, 2016 and 2017.

Leases

The Company's corporate headquarters are located in London, United Kingdom. As of September 30, 2016 and 2017, the Company leased space at this location from Imperial (Forest House) Limited under a ten year lease, the term of which commenced in September 2015. The lease included an option for the Company to lease additional space within a 15-month period, which the Company exercised in October 2016. The exercise of the option resulted in a separate new lease with a concurrent term through September 2025. The Company has the option to early terminate both leases in September 2020.

Prior to the lease commencement date of both leases, the Company, in conjunction with the landlord, made improvements to the leased space. The total cost of these improvements was funded by the landlord, a portion of the cost will be reimbursed by the Company over the term of the leases. The total cost of the improvements were capitalized as leasehold improvements on the Company's balance sheet, with an offset to long-term lease incentive obligation for the portion funded by the landlord and other long-term payables for the portion to be repaid to the landlord. As of September 30, 2016 and 2017, the Company capitalized \$1.2 million and \$2.1 million, respectively, as leasehold improvements. The lease related to this facility is classified as an operating lease.

In September 2017, the Company executed a lease arrangement with Catapult Limited to lease manufacturing space for a term through May 15, 2021, at which time the Company has the option to renew or terminate the lease. The lease related to this facility is classified as an operating lease. The lease has an eight-month rent-free period. The rent-free period is included in the deferred rent.

AUTOLUS LIMITED
NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

The following table summarizes the future minimum lease payments due under operating leases as of September 30, 2017 (in thousands):

Year ending September 30,	
2018	\$ 610
2019	936
2020	1,003
2021	844
Thereafter	2,727
Total	\$6,120

The Company recognizes rent expense on a straight-line basis over the respective lease period and has recorded deferred rent for rent expense incurred but not yet paid.

The Company recorded rent expense totaling \$0.4 million and \$0.6 million for the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2017, respectively.

12. Related Party Transactions

Syncona LLP

The Company has an agreement with Syncona LLP, investor in the Company, pursuant to which the Company is charged for services including director compensation fees. The Company recorded expenses totaling \$0.2 million and \$56,000 for the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2017, respectively, which are included in general and administrative expenses. As of September 30, 2016 and 2017, there was \$3,000 included in accrued expenses for each period on the Company's balance sheets related to the arrangement with Syncona LLP.

University College London and Related Entities

The Company recorded research and development expenses totaling \$2.4 million and \$0.7 million, of which \$1.5 million and \$40,000 represent license fees for the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2017, respectively. The Company, under various agreements, receives research and development, office and consulting services from the University College London and its subsidiaries. The University College London is a shareholder of the Company through UCLB. As of September 30, 2016 and 2017, there was \$43,000 and \$0.2 million, respectively, of which is included in accrued expenses and accounts payable on the Company's balance sheets related to the arrangement with the University College London.

The Wellcome Trust

The Company has an arrangement with The Wellcome Trust, previously the holding company of Syncona LLP, pursuant to which the Company is billed for certain administrative and consulting services. There were nominal charges for the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2017, respectively, for processing of salaries from The Wellcome Trust. As of September 30, 2016 and 2017, there were no unpaid amounts related to this arrangement that were included in accrued expenses on the Company's balance sheets.

AUTOLUS LIMITED
NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Arix Bioscience

The Company has an agreement with Arix Bioscience Holdings Limited, investor of the Company, pursuant to which, the Company is charged for director compensation fees. The Company recorded expenses totaling \$11,000 and \$20,000 for the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2017, respectively. As of September 30, 2016 and 2017, there was \$2,000 included in accrued expenses on the Company's balance sheets.

13. Employee Benefit Plans

The Company makes contributions to private defined contribution pension schemes on behalf of its employees. The Company matches employee contributions up to five percent of the employee's annual salary. The Company paid \$0.1 million and \$0.3 million in matching contributions for the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2017, respectively.

14. Subsequent Events

The Company evaluated subsequent events through February 8, 2018, the date on which these financial statements were issued.

7,812,500 American Depositary Shares



Representing 7,812,500 Ordinary Shares

PRELIMINARY PROSPECTUS

, 2018

Goldman Sachs & Co. LLC
Wells Fargo Securities

Jefferies
William Blair

Through and including , 2018 (the 25th day after the date of this prospectus), all dealers that effect transactions in these securities, whether or not participating in this offering, may be required to deliver a prospectus. This is in addition to the dealers' obligation to deliver a prospectus when acting as underwriters and with respect to their unsold allotments or subscriptions.

PART II
INFORMATION NOT REQUIRED IN PROSPECTUS

Item 6. Indemnification of Directors and Officers.

Subject to the U.K. Companies Act 2006, members of the registrant's board of directors and its officers (excluding auditors) have the benefit of the following indemnification provisions in the registrant's Articles of Association:

Current and former members of the registrant's board of directors or officers shall be reimbursed for:

- (i) all costs, charges, losses, expenses and liabilities sustained or incurred in relation to his or her actual or purported execution of his or her duties in relation to the registrant, including any liability incurred in defending any criminal or civil proceedings; and
- (ii) expenses incurred or to be incurred in defending any criminal or civil proceedings, in an investigation by a regulatory authority or against a proposed action to be taken by a regulatory authority, or in connection with any application for relief under the statutes of the United Kingdom and any other statutes that concern and affect the registrant as a company, or collectively the Statutes, arising in relation to the registrant or an associated company, by virtue of the actual or purported execution of the duties of his or her office or the exercise of his or her powers.

In the case of current or former members of the registrant's board of directors, there shall be no entitlement to reimbursement as referred to above for (i) any liability incurred to the registrant or any associated company, (ii) the payment of a fine imposed in any criminal proceeding or a penalty imposed by a regulatory authority for non-compliance with any requirement of a regulatory nature, (iii) the defense of any criminal proceeding if the member of the registrant's board of directors is convicted, (iv) the defense of any civil proceeding brought by the registrant or an associated company in which judgment is given against the director, and (v) any application for relief under the statutes of the United Kingdom and any other statutes that concern and affect the registrant as a company in which the court refuses to grant relief to the director.

In addition, members of the registrant's board of directors and its officers who have received payment from the registrant under these indemnification provisions must repay the amount they received in accordance with the Statutes or in any other circumstances that the registrant may prescribe or where the registrant has reserved the right to require repayment.

The underwriting agreement the registrant will enter into in connection with the offering of ADSs being registered hereby provides that the underwriters will indemnify, under certain conditions, the registrant's board of directors and its officers against certain liabilities arising in connection with this offering.

Item 7. Recent Sales of Unregistered Securities.

Issuances of Share Capital

The following list sets forth information regarding all unregistered securities sold by us since July 3, 2014, the date of our inception, through the date of the prospectus that forms a part of this registration statement. All share and per share information presented in this Item 7 does not reflect the 3.185-for-1 conversion ratio that will be part of our corporate reorganization.

- 1) On August 21, 2014, Autolus Limited issued one ordinary share of £1.00 nominal value to Syncona LLP for consideration of £1.00 which share, on September 24, 2014, was subdivided into 100,000 series A preferred shares of £0.00001 nominal value. These shares were subsequently transferred to Syncona Portfolio Limited.

- 2) On September 24, 2014, Autolus Limited issued an aggregate of 4,980,006 B ordinary shares to UCL Business plc and 13 individuals at a purchase price of £0.00001 per share, for aggregate consideration of £49.80.
- 3) On September 24, 2014, Autolus Limited issued 1,715,687 B ordinary shares to Martin Pulé for aggregate consideration of £17.16.
- 4) On September 25, 2014, Autolus Limited issued:
 - a. 9,900,000 series A preferred shares to Syncona LLP for aggregate consideration of £10,000,000. These shares were subsequently transferred to Syncona Portfolio Limited.
 - b. 4,769,994 B ordinary shares to UCL Business plc as consideration for entry into an exclusive license agreement.
 - c. On September 25, 2014, Autolus Limited issued 100,000 series A preferred shares to John Berriman for aggregate consideration of £100,000.
- 5) On March 2, 2016, Autolus Limited issued 10,000,000 series A preferred shares to Syncona LLP for aggregate consideration of £10,000,000. These shares were subsequently transferred to Syncona Portfolio Limited.
- 6) On March 2, 2016, Autolus Limited issued an additional 1,000,000 B ordinary shares to UCL Business plc as consideration for the additional rights received when we amended our license agreement.
- 7) On March 2, 2016, Autolus Limited issued an aggregate of 18,547,008 series A preferred shares to a total of three investors for aggregate proceeds of £23.3 million.
- 8) On April 3, 2017, Autolus Limited issued an aggregate of 11,752,139 series A preferred shares to a total of three investors at a purchase price of £1.56 per share for aggregate proceeds of £18.3 million.
- 9) On September 22, 2017, Autolus Limited issued an aggregate of 11,752,136 series A preferred shares to a total of three investors at a purchase price of £1.56 per share for aggregate proceeds of £18.3 million.
- 10) On September 25, 2017, Autolus Limited entered into a subscription agreement pursuant to which it issued an aggregate of 25,992,265 series A preferred shares to a total of eleven investors for aggregate proceeds of \$80.0 million.

Share Option Grants

Since July 3, 2014 through the date of the prospectus that forms a part of this registration statement, Autolus Limited has granted share options to employees, directors, consultants and service providers covering an aggregate of 4,652,329 ordinary shares with exercise prices ranging from \$0.00001 to \$3.75 per share.

Restricted C Ordinary Shares Grants

Since July 3, 2014 through the date of the prospectus that forms a part of this registration statement, Autolus Limited has granted restricted C ordinary shares to employees, directors and consultants covering an aggregate of 6,988,780 ordinary shares issuable upon conversion of the restricted C ordinary shares, as follows:

Grant Date	Number of Restricted C Ordinary Shares Granted
Issued and outstanding as of October 1, 2015	1,533,014
November 24, 2015	36,127
January 26, 2016	11,116
February 5, 2016	794
March 2, 2016	2,693,235
March 23, 2016	1,000
April 18, 2016	111,923
May 17, 2016	286,273
July 19, 2016	12,897
September 21, 2016	257,125
November 29, 2016	1,402
April 21, 2017	1,643,884
July 24, 2017	400,000

The offers, sales and issuances of the securities described above were exempt from registration either (i) under Section 4(a)(2) of the Securities Act in that the transactions did not involve any public offering, (ii) under Rule 701 promulgated under the Securities Act in that the transactions were under compensatory benefit plans and contracts relating to compensation or (iii) under Regulation S promulgated under the Securities Act in that offers, sales and issuances were not made to persons in the United States and no directed selling efforts were made in the United States.

Item 8. Exhibits and Financial Statement Schedules.

Exhibits

<u>Exhibit Number</u>	<u>Description of Document</u>
1.1 *	Form of Underwriting Agreement.
3.1	Form of Articles of Association of Autolus Therapeutics plc.
4.1 *	Form of Deposit Agreement.
4.2 *	Form of American Depositary Receipt (included in Exhibit 4.1).
5.1	Opinion of Cooley (UK) LLP.
10.1 **	License Agreement, dated as of September 25, 2014, by and between the registrant and UCL Business plc, as amended on March 2, 2016 and May 7, 2018.
10.2 **	Supply Agreement, dated as of March 23, 2018, by and between the registrant and Miltenyi Biotec GmbH.
10.3 +	Form of Autolus Therapeutics plc 2018 Equity Incentive Plan.
10.4 +	Non-Employee Sub Plan to the Autolus Therapeutics plc 2018 Equity Incentive Plan.
10.5 **	Management Incentive Compensation Plan.
10.6 **	Form of Deed of Indemnity between the registrant and each of its members of senior management and directors.
21.1 *	Subsidiaries of the registrant.
23.1	Consent of Ernst & Young LLP, independent registered public accounting firm (Autolus Therapeutics Limited).
23.2	Consent of Ernst & Young LLP, independent registered public accounting firm (Autolus Limited).
23.3	Consent of Cooley (UK) LLP (included in Exhibit 5.1).
24.1 *	Power of Attorney (included on signature page to registration statement filed May 7, 2018).
24.2	Power of Attorney of Linda Bain.

+ Indicates management contract or compensatory plan.

Portions of this exhibit (indicated by asterisks) have been omitted pursuant to a request for confidential treatment and have been separately filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission.

* Previously filed.

Financial Statement Schedules

No financial statement schedules have been submitted because they are not required or are not applicable or because the information required is included in the financial statements or the notes thereto.

Item 9. Undertakings.

- (a) The undersigned registrant hereby undertakes to provide to the underwriters at the closing specified in the underwriting agreements, certificates in such denominations and registered in such names as required by the underwriters to permit prompt delivery to each purchaser.
- (b) Insofar as indemnification for liabilities arising under the Securities Act may be permitted to directors, officers and controlling persons of the registrant pursuant to the provisions described in Item 6 hereof, or otherwise, the registrant has been advised that in the opinion of the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission such indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and is, therefore, unenforceable. In the event that a claim for indemnification against such liabilities (other than the payment by the registrant of expenses incurred or paid by a director, officer or controlling person of the registrant in the successful defense of any action, suit or proceeding) is asserted by such director, officer or controlling person in connection with the securities being registered, the registrant will, unless in the opinion of its counsel the matter has been settled by controlling precedent, submit to a court of appropriate jurisdiction the question whether such indemnification by it is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and will be governed by the final adjudication of such issue.
- (c) The undersigned registrant hereby undertakes that:
 - (i) For purposes of determining any liability under the Securities Act, the information omitted from the form of prospectus filed as part of this registration statement in reliance upon Rule 430A and contained in a form of prospectus filed by the registrant pursuant to Rule 424(b)(1) or (4) or 497(h) under the Securities Act shall be deemed to be part of this registration statement as of the time it was declared effective.
 - (ii) For the purpose of determining any liability under the Securities Act, each post-effective amendment that contains a form of prospectus shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial *bona fide* offering thereof.

SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, the registrant certifies that it has reasonable grounds to believe that it meets all of the requirements for filing on Form F-1 and has duly caused this registration statement to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, in the City of London, United Kingdom, on June 19, 2018.

AUTOLUS THERAPEUTICS LIMITED

By: /s/ Christian Itin
Christian Itin
Chief Executive Officer

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act, this registration statement has been signed by the following persons in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

<u>SIGNATURE</u>	<u>TITLE</u>	<u>DATE</u>
<u>/s/ Christian Itin, Ph.D.</u> Christian Itin, Ph.D.	Chief Executive Officer and Chairman of the Board of Directors (<i>Principal Executive Officer</i>)	June 19, 2018
<u>/s/ Dominic Moreland</u> Dominic Moreland	Vice President, Finance (<i>Principal Financial Officer and Principal Accounting Officer</i>)	June 19, 2018
<u>*</u> Joseph Anderson, Ph.D.	Director	June 19, 2018
<u>*</u> Linda Bain	Director	June 19, 2018
<u>*</u> John Berriman	Director	June 19, 2018
<u>*</u> Cynthia Butitta	Director	June 19, 2018
<u>*</u> Kapil Dhingra, M.D.	Director	June 19, 2018
<u>*</u> Edward Hodgkin, D.Phil	Director	June 19, 2018
<u>*</u> Martin Murphy, Ph.D.	Director	June 19, 2018
<u>*</u> Martin Pulé, MBBS	Director	June 19, 2018
*By <u>/s/ Christian Itin, Ph. D.</u> Christian Itin, Ph. D. Attorney-in-fact		

SIGNATURE OF AUTHORIZED U.S. REPRESENTATIVE OF THE REGISTRANT

Pursuant to the Securities Act of 1933, the undersigned, the duly authorized representative in the United States of Autolus Therapeutics plc has signed this pre-effective amendment to registration statement on June 19, 2018.

AUTOLUS INC.

By: /s/ Matthias Alder
Name: Matthias Alder
Title: Senior Vice President, Chief Business
Officer and General Counsel

AUTOLUS THERAPEUTICS PLC

ARTICLES OF ASSOCIATION

Adopted on 15 June 2018



COOLEY (UK) LLP, DASHWOOD, 69 OLD BROAD STREET, LONDON EC2M 1QS, UK
T: +44 (0) 20 7583 4055 F: +44 (0) 20 7785 9355 WWW.COOLEY.COM

CONTENTS

CLAUSE

1.	EXCLUSION OF MODEL ARTICLES (AND ANY OTHER PRESCRIBED REGULATIONS)	1
2.	INTERPRETATION	1
3.	FORM OF RESOLUTION	4
4.	LIMITED LIABILITY	4
5.	CHANGE OF NAME	4
6.	SHAREHOLDER RIGHTS	4
7.	POWER TO ATTACH RIGHTS TO SHARES	5
8.	ALLOTMENT OF SHARES AND PRE-EMPTION	5
9.	REDEEMABLE SHARES	7
10.	PARI PASSU ISSUES	7
11.	VARIATION OF RIGHTS	7
12.	RIGHTS DEEMED NOT VARIED	8
13.	PAYMENT OF COMMISSION	8
14.	TRUSTS NOT RECOGNISED	8
15.	UNCERTIFICATED SHARES	8
16.	SHARE CERTIFICATES	10
17.	REPLACEMENT CERTIFICATES	10
18.	LIEN ON SHARES NOT FULLY PAID	11
19.	ENFORCEMENT OF LIEN BY SALE	11
20.	APPLICATION OF PROCEEDS OF SALE	11

21.	CALLS	11
22.	LIABILITY OF JOINT HOLDERS	12
23.	INTEREST ON CALLS	12
24.	SUMS TREATED AS CALLS	12
25.	POWER TO DIFFERENTIATE	12
26.	PAYMENT OF CALLS IN ADVANCE	12
27.	NOTICE IF CALL OR INSTALMENT NOT PAID	13
28.	FORFEITURE FOR NON-COMPLIANCE	13
29.	NOTICE AFTER FORFEITURE	13
30.	FORFEITURE MAY BE ANNULLED	13
31.	SURRENDER	13
32.	SALE OF FORFEITED SHARES	13
33.	EFFECT OF FORFEITURE	14
34.	EVIDENCE OF FORFEITURE	14
35.	FORM OF TRANSFER	14
36.	RIGHT TO REFUSE REGISTRATION OF TRANSFER	15
37.	NOTICE OF REFUSAL TO REGISTER A TRANSFER	15
38.	NO FEES ON REGISTRATION	16
39.	OTHER POWERS IN RELATION TO TRANSFERS	16
40.	TRANSMISSION OF SHARES ON DEATH	16
41.	ELECTION OF PERSON ENTITLED BY TRANSMISSION	16
42.	RIGHTS ON TRANSMISSION	17
43.	DESTRUCTION OF DOCUMENTS	17

44.	SUB-DIVISION	18
45.	FRACTIONS	18
46.	ANNUAL GENERAL MEETINGS	19
47.	CONVENING OF GENERAL MEETINGS	19
48.	NOTICE OF GENERAL MEETINGS	19
49.	CONTENTS OF NOTICE OF MEETINGS	19
50.	OMISSION TO GIVE NOTICE AND NON-RECEIPT OF NOTICE	20
51.	POSTPONEMENT OF GENERAL MEETING	20
52.	QUORUM AT GENERAL MEETING	20
53.	PROCEDURE IF QUORUM NOT PRESENT	21
54.	CHAIRMAN OF GENERAL MEETING	21
55.	ENTITLEMENT TO ATTEND AND SPEAK	21
56.	ADJOURNMENTS	22
57.	NOTICE OF ADJOURNMENT	22
58.	BUSINESS OF ADJOURNED MEETING	22
59.	SECURITY ARRANGEMENTS AND ORDERLY CONDUCT	22
60.	OVERFLOW MEETING ROOMS	23
61.	SATELLITE MEETING PLACES	23
62.	PROCEDURE WHERE GENERAL MEETINGS HELD AT MORE THAN ONE PLACE	24
63.	AMENDMENT TO RESOLUTIONS	25
64.	WITHDRAWAL AND RULING AMENDMENTS OUT OF ORDER	25
65.	MEMBERS' RESOLUTIONS	25
66.	METHOD OF VOTING	25

67.	OBJECTION TO ERROR IN VOTING	26
68.	VOTING PROCEDURE	26
69.	VOTES OF MEMBERS	26
70.	NO RIGHT TO VOTE WHERE SUMS OVERDUE ON SHARES	27
71.	VOTING BY PROXY	27
72.	RECEIPT OF PROXY	29
73.	REVOCATION OF PROXY	30
74.	AVAILABILITY OF APPOINTMENTS OF PROXY	30
75.	CORPORATE REPRESENTATIVES	31
76.	FAILURE TO DISCLOSE INTERESTS IN SHARES	31
77.	POWER OF SALE OF SHARES OF UNTRACED MEMBERS	33
78.	APPLICATION OF PROCEEDS OF SALE OF SHARES OF UNTRACED MEMBERS	35
79.	NUMBER OF DIRECTORS	35
80.	POWER OF COMPANY TO APPOINT DIRECTORS	35
81.	POWER OF BOARD TO APPOINT DIRECTORS	35
82.	ELIGIBILITY OF NEW DIRECTORS	35
83.	CLASSES AND RETIREMENT OF DIRECTORS	36
84.	DEEMED RE-APPOINTMENT	36
85.	PROCEDURE IF INSUFFICIENT DIRECTORS APPOINTED	37
86.	REMOVAL OF DIRECTORS	37
87.	VACATION OF OFFICE BY DIRECTOR	37
88.	RESOLUTION AS TO VACANCY CONCLUSIVE	38
89.	APPOINTMENT OF ALTERNATE DIRECTORS	38

90.	ALTERNATE DIRECTORS' PARTICIPATION IN BOARD MEETINGS	39
91.	ALTERNATE DIRECTOR RESPONSIBLE FOR OWN ACTS	39
92.	INTERESTS OF ALTERNATE DIRECTOR	39
93.	REVOCATION OF ALTERNATE DIRECTOR	39
94.	DIRECTORS' FEES	40
95.	EXPENSES	40
96.	ADDITIONAL REMUNERATION	40
97.	REMUNERATION OF EXECUTIVE DIRECTORS	40
98.	PENSIONS AND OTHER BENEFITS	40
99.	POWERS OF THE BOARD	41
100.	POWERS OF DIRECTORS IF LESS THAN MINIMUM NUMBER	41
101.	POWERS OF EXECUTIVE DIRECTORS	41
102.	DELEGATION TO COMMITTEES	42
103.	LOCAL MANAGEMENT	42
104.	POWER OF ATTORNEY	43
105.	EXERCISE OF VOTING POWER	43
106.	PROVISION FOR EMPLOYEES ON CESSATION OF BUSINESS	43
107.	OVERSEAS REGISTERS	43
108.	BORROWING POWERS	43
109.	BOARD MEETINGS	45
110.	NOTICE OF BOARD MEETINGS	45
111.	QUORUM	46
112.	CHAIRMAN	46

113.	VOTING	46
114.	PARTICIPATION BY TELEPHONE OR OTHER FORM OF COMMUNICATION	46
115.	RESOLUTION IN WRITING	47
116.	PROCEEDINGS OF COMMITTEES	47
117.	MINUTES OF PROCEEDINGS	47
118.	VALIDITY OF PROCEEDINGS	47
119.	TRANSACTIONS OR OTHER ARRANGEMENTS WITH THE COMPANY	47
120.	AUTHORISATION OF DIRECTORS' CONFLICTS OF INTEREST	48
121.	DIRECTORS' PERMITTED INTERESTS	50
122.	GENERAL	52
123.	POWER TO AUTHENTICATE DOCUMENTS	52
124.	USE OF SEALS	52
125.	DECLARATION OF DIVIDENDS	53
126.	INTERIM DIVIDENDS	53
127.	CALCULATION AND CURRENCY OF DIVIDENDS	53
128.	AMOUNTS DUE ON SHARES CAN BE DEDUCTED FROM DIVIDENDS	54
129.	DIVIDENDS NOT IN CASH	54
130.	NO INTEREST ON DIVIDENDS	54
131.	METHOD OF PAYMENT	54
132.	UNCASHED DIVIDENDS	56
133.	UNCLAIMED DIVIDENDS	56
134.	SCRIP DIVIDENDS	56
135.	CAPITALISATION OF RESERVES	59

136.	RECORD DATES	61
137.	INSPECTION OF RECORDS	61
138.	ACCOUNT TO BE SENT TO MEMBERS	61
139.	SERVICE OF NOTICES	62
140.	HARD COPY FORM	63
141.	ELECTRONIC FORM	63
142.	ELECTRONIC MEANS	64
143.	WEBSITE	64
144.	SENDING OR SUPPLYING ANY DOCUMENT, INFORMATION OR NOTICE BY ANY OTHER MEANS	65
145.	PRESENCE AT MEETING EVIDENCE IN ITSELF OF RECEIPT OF NOTICE	65
146.	NOTICE ON PERSON ENTITLED BY TRANSMISSION	65
147.	RECORD DATE FOR SERVICE	65
148.	EVIDENCE OF SERVICE	65
149.	NOTICE WHEN POST NOT AVAILABLE	66
150.	VALIDATION OF DOCUMENTS IN ELECTRONIC FORM	66
151.	WINDING UP	67
152.	INDEMNITY AND INSURANCE	67
153.	EXCLUSIVE JURISDICTION	68

THE COMPANIES ACT 2006
PUBLIC COMPANY LIMITED BY SHARES
ARTICLES OF ASSOCIATION
OF
AUTOLUS THERAPEUTICS PLC
(Adopted on 15 June 2018)

1. Exclusion of model articles (and any other prescribed regulations)

No regulations or articles set out in any statute, or in any statutory instrument or other subordinate legislation made under any statute, concerning companies (including the regulations in the Companies (Model Articles) Regulations 2008 (SI 2008/3229)) shall apply as the articles of the Company. The following shall be the articles of association of the Company.

2. Interpretation

2.1 In these articles, unless the context otherwise requires:

Act: Companies Act 2006;

address: includes any number or address used for the purposes of sending or receiving documents or information by electronic means;

Affiliates: in relation to a person any other person directly or indirectly controlling, controlled by or under common control with such person, where “control” means the possession, directly or indirectly, of the power to direct the management and policies of a person whether through the ownership of voting securities, contract or otherwise, provided that Affiliates shall not include any portfolio companies of a person;

Articles: these articles of association as altered from time to time and “Article” shall be construed accordingly;

B Deferred Shares: means the Company’s B deferred shares with a nominal value of £0.00099 each as sub-divided or consolidated from time to time;

Board: the board of Directors for the time being of the Company or the Directors present or deemed to be present at a duly convened quorate meeting of the Directors;

C Deferred Shares: means the Company’s C deferred shares with a nominal value of £0.00008 each as sub-divided or consolidated from time to time;

certificated shares: a share which is not an uncertificated share and references in these Articles to a share being held in certificated form shall be construed accordingly;

class meeting: shall have the meaning given to it in Article 11;

clear days: in relation to a period of notice means that period excluding the day when the notice is served or deemed to be served and the day for which it is given or on which it is to take effect;

Companies Acts: the Act, the Companies Act 1985 and, where the context requires, every other statute from time to time in force concerning companies and affecting the Company;

Company: Autolus Therapeutics plc;

Deferred Shares: means the Company's deferred shares with a nominal value of £0.00001 each as sub-divided or consolidated from time to time;

Director: a Director for the time being of the Company;

DTC: The Depository Trust Company and any Affiliate or nominee therefore, including Cede & Co, and any successors thereto;

electronic form: has the meaning given to it in section 1168 of the Act;

electronic means: has the meaning given to it in section 1168 of the Act;

hard copy form: has the meaning given to it in section 1168 of the Act;

Listing: listing of the Company's Ordinary Shares (including the form of American Depositary Shares) on Nasdaq;

member: a member of the Company, or where the context requires, a member of the Board or of any committee;

Nasdaq: the market known as Nasdaq;

Nasdaq Rules: the rules of Nasdaq;

Office: the registered office from time to time of the Company;

Operator: the Operator of a relevant system (as defined in the uncertificated securities rules) or the transfer agent of the Company (as applicable);

Ordinary Shares: means the Company's ordinary shares with a nominal value of U.S. \$0.000042 each as sub-divided or consolidated from time to time;

paid up: paid up or credited as paid up;

participating class: a class of shares title to which is permitted by the Operator to be transferred by means of a relevant system;

Register: the register of members of the Company to be maintained under the Act or as the case may be any overseas branch register maintained under Article 107;

relevant system: a computer-based system which allows units of securities without written instruments to be transferred and endorsed pursuant to the uncertificated securities rules or other applicable regulations;

SEC: the United States Securities and Exchange Commission;

Secretary: the secretary of Company for the time being;

share: an Ordinary Share;

Share Warrant: a warrant to bearer issued by the Company in respect of its shares;

Seal: the common seal of the Company or, where the context allows, any official seal kept by the Company under section 50 of the Act;

uncertificated securities rules: any provision of the Companies Acts relating to the holding, evidencing of title to, or transfer of uncertificated shares and any legislation, rules or other arrangements made under or by virtue of such provision;

uncertificated share: a share of a class which is at the relevant time a participating class, title to which is recorded on the Register as being held in uncertificated form and references in these Articles to a share being held in uncertificated form shall be construed accordingly; and

Voting Control: with respect to a share the exclusive power (whether directly or indirectly) to vote or direct the voting of such share by proxy, voting agreement, or otherwise.

2.2 Headings are used for convenience only and shall not affect the construction or interpretation of these Articles.

2.3 A **person** includes a corporate and an unincorporated body (whether or not having separate legal personality).

2.4 Words in the singular shall include the plural and vice versa.

2.5 A reference to one gender shall include a reference to the other gender.

2.6 A reference to a statute or statutory provision is a reference to it as it is in force for the time being, taking account of any amendment, extension, or re-enactment and includes any subordinate legislation for the time being in force made under it.

2.7 Any words or expressions defined in the Companies Acts in force when these Articles or any part of these Articles are adopted shall (if not inconsistent with the subject or context in which they appear) have the same meaning in these Articles or that part, save that the word “company” shall include any body corporate.

2.8 A reference to a document **being signed** or to **signature** includes references to its being executed under hand or under seal or by any other method and, in the case of a communication in electronic form, such references are to its being authenticated as specified by the Companies Acts.

2.9 A reference to **writing** or **written** includes references to any method of representing or reproducing words in a legible and non-transitory form whether sent or supplied in electronic form or otherwise.

- 2.10 A reference to documents or information **being sent or supplied by or to** a company (including the Company) shall be construed in accordance with section 1148(3) of the Act.
- 2.11 A reference to a **meeting** shall not be taken as requiring more than one person to be present if any quorum requirement can be satisfied by one person.

3. **Form of resolution**

Subject to the Companies Acts, where anything can be done by passing an ordinary resolution, this can also be done by passing a special resolution.

4. **Limited liability**

The liability of the members of the Company is limited to the amount, if any, unpaid on the shares in the Company held by them.

5. **Change of name**

The Company may change its name by resolution of the Board.

6. **Shareholder rights**

- 6.1 The Ordinary Shares shall rank pari passu as a single class. The Deferred Shares, B Deferred Shares and C Deferred Shares shall rank pari passu as a single class.
- 6.2 In the event of the liquidation, dissolution or winding up of the Company, the assets of the Company available for distribution to members shall be distributed amongst all holders of the Ordinary Shares in proportion to the number of shares held irrespective of the amount paid or credited as paid on any share.
- 6.3 Any:
- (a) consolidation or merger of the Company with or into another entity or entities (whether or not the Company is the surviving entity) as a result of which the holders of the Company's outstanding shares possessing the voting power (under ordinary circumstances) to elect a majority of the Board immediately prior to such sale or issue cease to own the Company's outstanding shares possessing the voting power (under ordinary circumstances) to elect a majority of the Board;
 - (b) sale or transfer by the Company of all or substantially all of its assets (determined either for the Company alone or together with its subsidiaries on a consolidated basis); or
 - (c) sale, transfer or issuance or series of sales, transfers and/or issues of shares by the Company or the holders thereof, as a result of which the holders of the Company's outstanding shares possessing the voting power (under ordinary circumstances) to elect a majority of the Board immediately prior to such sale or issue cease to own the Company's outstanding shares possessing the voting power (under ordinary circumstances) to elect a majority of the Board,

shall be deemed to be a liquidation, dissolution and winding up of the Company for purposes of Article 6.2 (unless the Board determine otherwise), and the holders of the Ordinary Shares shall be entitled to receive from the Company the amounts payable with respect to the Ordinary Shares on a liquidation, dissolution or winding up of the Company under Article 6.2 in cancellation of their Ordinary Shares upon the completion of any such transaction.

- 6.4 At a general meeting of the Company and at any separate class meeting of the holders of Ordinary Shares, where a holder of Ordinary Shares is entitled to vote, such holder is entitled to one vote for each Ordinary Share held.
- 6.5 A holder of Ordinary Shares is entitled to receive notice of any general meeting of the Company (and notice of any separate class meeting of the holders of Ordinary Shares) and a copy of every report, accounts, circular or other document sent out by the Company to members.
- 6.6 Notwithstanding any other provision of these Articles, the special rights, privileges, restrictions and limitations attaching to the Deferred Shares, B Deferred Shares and C Deferred Shares (for the purposes of this Article 6.6, collectively the “**deferred shares**”) are as follows:
- (a) the deferred shares shall not be entitled to any dividends or to any other right or participation in the profits of the Company;
 - (b) on return of assets on liquidation, the deferred shares shall confer on the holders thereof an entitlement to receive out of the assets of the Company available for distribution amongst the members (subject to the rights of any new class of shares with preferred rights) the amount paid up or credited as paid up on the deferred shares held by them respectively after (but only after) payment shall have been made to the holders of the Ordinary Shares of the amounts paid up or credited as paid up on such shares and the sum of £1,000,000 in respect of each Ordinary Share held by them respectively. The deferred shares shall confer on the holders thereof no further right to participate in the assets of the Company;
 - (c) the deferred shares do not entitle the holder thereof to vote upon any resolution or to receive notice of, attend any general meeting, or be part of the quorum thereof as the holders of deferred shares;
 - (d) any reduction of capital involving the cancellation of the deferred shares for no consideration shall not be deemed to be a variation of the rights attaching to them nor a modification or abrogation of the rights or privileges attaching to the deferred shares;
 - (e) the special rights conferred upon the holders of the deferred shares shall be deemed not to be modified varied or abrogated by the creation or issue of further shares ranking *pari passu* with or in priority to the deferred shares;
 - (f) the deferred shares shall not be entitled to be reissued with a share certificate;
 - (g) no transfer of any deferred shares shall be permitted save as provided in Article 6.6(h);
 - (h) the Company shall have irrevocable authority at any time to appoint any person execute on behalf of the holders of the deferred shares a transfer thereof and/or an agreement to transfer the same without making any payment to the holders thereof or to such person as the Company may determine as custodian thereof and/or to cancel the same without making and payment to the holders thereof and/or acquire the same (in accordance with the provisions of the Act without making any payment to or obtaining the sanction of the holders thereof; and
 - (i) subject to the Act, the Company shall be entitled to purchase any deferred shares in issue at any time for no consideration.

7. Power to attach rights to shares

Subject to the Companies Acts and to any rights attached to existing shares, any share may be issued with or have attached to it such rights and restrictions as the Company may by ordinary resolution determine, or if no ordinary resolution has been passed or so far as the resolution does not make specific provision, as the Board may determine.

8. Allotment of shares and pre-emption

- 8.1 Subject to the Companies Acts, these Articles and to any relevant authority of the Company in general meeting required by the Act, the Board may offer, allot (with or without conferring rights of renunciation), grant options over or otherwise deal with or dispose of shares or grant rights to subscribe for or convert any security into shares to such persons, at such times and upon such terms as the Board may decide. No share may be issued at a discount to the nominal value of such share.
- 8.2 The Board may, at any time after the allotment of any share but before any person has been entered in the Register, recognise a renunciation by the allottee in favour of some other person and accord to the allottee of a share a right to effect such renunciation and/or allow the rights to be represented to be one or more participating securities, in each case upon the subject to such terms and conditions as the Board may think fit to impose.
- 8.3 Under and in accordance with section 551 of the Act, the Directors shall be generally and unconditionally authorised to exercise for each prescribed period all the powers of the Company to allot shares up to an aggregate nominal amount equal to the Section 551 Amount.

- 8.4 Under and within the terms of the said authority or otherwise in accordance with section 570 of the Act, the Directors shall be empowered during each prescribed period to allot equity securities (as defined by the Act) wholly for cash:
- (a) in connection with a rights issue; and
 - (b) otherwise than in connection with a rights issue up to an aggregate nominal amount equal to the Section 561 Amount.
- 8.5 During each prescribed period the Company and its Directors by such authority and power may make offers or agreements which would or might require equity securities or other securities to be allotted after the expiry of such period.
- 8.6 During the Initial Period the authorities set for the Section 551 amount and the Section 561 amount are both set at \$8,400 unless either of those authorities are revoked by Shareholders by special resolution or replaced by relevant resolutions of Shareholders at a general meeting convened for the purpose prior to their expiry.
- 8.7 For the purposes of this Article:
- (a) **Initial Period** means the period commencing on adoption of these Articles and expiring on the fifth anniversary of the same;
 - (b) **rights issue** means an offer of equity securities (as defined by the Act) open for acceptance for a period fixed by the Board to holders of equity securities on the Register on a fixed record date in proportion to their respective holdings of such securities or in accordance with the rights attached to them but subject to such exclusions or other arrangements as the Board may deem necessary or expedient with regard to treasury shares, fractional entitlements or legal or practical problems under the laws of any territory or under the requirements of any recognised regulatory body or stock exchange in any territory;
 - (c) **prescribed period** means any period (not exceeding five years on any occasion) for which the authority, in the case of Article 8.3, is conferred or renewed by ordinary or special resolution stating the Section 551 Amount and in the case of Article 8.4 is conferred or renewed by special resolution stating the Section 561 Amount provided that for the Initial Period the relevant amounts are those set out in Article 8.6;
 - (d) **Section 551 Amount** means for any prescribed period, the amount stated in the relevant ordinary or special resolution;
 - (e) **Section 561 Amount** means for any prescribed period, the amount stated in the relevant special resolution; and
 - (f) the nominal amount of any securities shall be taken to be, in the case of rights to subscribe for or to convert any securities into shares of the Company, the nominal amount of such shares which may be allotted pursuant to such rights.

9. **Redeemable shares**

Subject to the Companies Acts and to any rights attaching to existing shares, any share may be issued which can be redeemed or is liable to be redeemed at the option of the Company or the holder. The Board may determine the terms, conditions and manner of redemption of any redeemable shares which are issued. Such terms and conditions shall apply to the relevant shares as if the same were set out in these Articles.

10. **Pari passu issues**

If new shares are created or issued which rank equally with any other existing shares, or the Company purchases any of its own shares, the rights of the existing shares will not be regarded as changed or abrogated unless the terms of the existing shares expressly say otherwise.

11. **Variation of rights**

11.1 Subject to the Companies Acts, the rights attached to any class of shares can be varied or abrogated:

- (a) in such manner (if any) as may be provided by those rights;
- (b) with the consent in writing of the holders of not less than three-quarters in nominal value of the issued share of that class (excluding any shares of that class held as treasury shares); or
- (c) with the authority of a special resolution passed at a separate meeting of the holders of the relevant class of shares known as a **class meeting**.

11.2 The provisions of this Article will apply to any variation or abrogation of rights of shares forming part of a class. Each part of the class which is being treated differently is treated as a separate class in applying this Article.

11.3 All the provisions in these Articles as to general meetings shall apply, with any necessary modifications, to every class meeting except that:

- (a) the quorum at every such meeting shall not be less than two persons holding or representing by proxy at least one-third of the nominal amount paid up on the issued shares of the class) (excluding any shares of that class held as treasury shares); and
- (b) if at any adjourned meeting of such holders such quorum as set out above is not present, at least one person holding shares of the class who is present in person or by proxy shall be a quorum.

11.4 The Board may convene a class meeting whenever it thinks fit and whether or not the business to be transacted involves a variation or abrogation of class rights.

12. **Rights deemed not varied**

Unless otherwise expressly provided by the rights attached to any class of shares, those rights shall be deemed not to be varied by the purchase by the Company of any of its own shares or the holding of such shares as treasury shares.

13. **Payment of commission**

The Company may in connection with the issue of any shares or the sale for cash of treasury shares exercise all powers of paying commission and brokerage conferred or permitted by the Companies Acts. Any such commission or brokerage may be satisfied by the payment of cash or by the allotment of fully or partly paid shares or other securities or the grant of an option to call for an allotment of shares or any combination of such methods.

14. **Trusts not recognised**

Except as otherwise expressly provided by these Articles, required by law or as ordered by a court of competent jurisdiction, the Company shall not recognise any person as holding any share on any trust, and the Company shall not be bound by or required in any way to recognise (even when having notice of it) any equitable, contingent, future, partial or other claim to or interest in any share other than an absolute right of the holder of the whole of the share.

15. **Uncertificated shares**

15.1 Under and subject to the uncertificated securities rules, the Board may permit title to shares of any class to be evidenced otherwise than by certificate and title to shares of such a class to be transferred by means of a relevant system and may make arrangements for a class of shares (if all shares of that class are in all respects identical) to become a participating class. Title to shares of a particular class may only be evidenced otherwise than by a certificate where that class of shares is at the relevant time a participating class. The Board may also, subject to compliance with the uncertificated securities rules, determine at any time that title to any class of shares may from a date specified by the Board no longer be evidenced otherwise than by a certificate or that title to such a class shall cease to be transferred by means of any particular relevant system.

15.2 In relation to a class of shares which is a participating class and for so long as it remains a participating class, no provision of these Articles shall apply or have effect to the extent that it is inconsistent in any respect with:

- (a) the holding of shares of that class in uncertificated form;
- (b) the transfer of title to shares of that class by means of a relevant system; or
- (c) any provision of the uncertificated securities rules,

and, without prejudice to the generality of this Article, no provision of these Articles shall apply or have effect to the extent that it is in any respect inconsistent with the maintenance, keeping or entering up by the Operator, so long as that is permitted or required by the uncertificated securities rules, of an Operator register of securities in respect of that class of shares in uncertificated form.

- 15.3 Shares of a class which is at the relevant time a participating class may be changed from uncertificated to certificated form, and from certificated to uncertificated form, in accordance with and subject as provided in the uncertificated securities rules.
- 15.4 If, under these Articles or the Companies Acts, the Company is entitled to sell, transfer or otherwise dispose of, forfeit, re-allot, accept the surrender of or otherwise enforce a lien over an uncertificated share, then, subject to these Articles and the Companies Acts, such entitlement shall include the right of the Board to:
- (a) require the holder of the uncertificated share by notice in writing to change that share from uncertificated to certificated form within such period as may be specified in the notice and keep it as a certificated share for as long as the Board requires;
 - (b) appoint any person to take such other steps, by instruction given by means of a relevant system or otherwise, in the name of the holder of such share as may be required to effect the transfer of such share and such steps shall be as effective as if they had been taken by the registered holder of that share; and
 - (c) take such other action that the Board considers appropriate to achieve the sale, transfer, disposal, forfeiture, re-allotment or surrender of that share or otherwise to enforce a lien in respect of that share.
- 15.5 Unless the Board determines otherwise, shares which a member holds in uncertificated form shall be treated as separate holdings from any shares which that member holds in certificated form but a class of shares shall not be treated as two classes simply because some shares of that class are held in certificated form and others in uncertificated form.
- 15.6 Unless the Board determines otherwise or the uncertificated securities rules require otherwise, any shares issued or created out of or in respect of any uncertificated shares shall be uncertificated shares and any shares issued or created out of or in respect of any certificated shares shall be certificated shares.
- 15.7 The Company shall be entitled to assume that the entries on any record of securities maintained by it in accordance with the uncertificated securities rules and regularly reconciled with the relevant Operator register of securities are a complete and accurate reproduction of the particulars entered in the Operator register of securities and shall accordingly not be liable in respect of any act or thing done or omitted to be done by or on behalf of the Company in reliance on such assumption. Any provision of these Articles which requires or envisages that action will be taken in reliance on information contained in the Register shall be construed to permit that action to be taken in reliance on information contained in any relevant record of securities (as so maintained and reconciled).

16. **Share certificates**
- 16.1 Every person (except a person to whom the Company is not by law required to issue a certificate) whose name is entered in the Register as a holder of any certificated shares shall be entitled, without charge, to receive within the time limits prescribed by the Companies Acts (unless the terms of issue prescribe otherwise) one certificate for all of the shares of that class registered in his name.
- 16.2 The Company shall not be bound to issue more than one certificate in respect of shares held jointly by two or more persons. Delivery of a certificate to the person first named in the Register shall be sufficient delivery to all joint holders.
- 16.3 Where a member has transferred part only of the shares comprised in a certificate, he shall be entitled without charge to a certificate for the balance of such shares to the extent that the balance is to be held in certificated form. Where a member receives more shares of any class, he shall be entitled without charge to a certificate for the extra shares of that class to the extent that the balance is to be held in certificated form.
- 16.4 A share certificate may be issued under Seal (by affixing the Seal to or printing the Seal or a representation of it on the certificate) or signed by at least two Directors or by at least one Director and the Secretary. Such certificate shall specify the number and class of the shares in respect of which it is issued and the amount or respective amounts paid up on it. The Board may by resolution decide, either generally or in any particular case or cases, that any signatures on any share certificates need not be autographic but may be applied to the certificates by some mechanical or other means or may be printed on them or that the certificates need not be signed by any person.
- 16.5 Every share certificate sent in accordance with these Articles will be sent at the risk of the member or other person entitled to the certificate. The Company will not be responsible for any share certificate lost or delayed in the course of delivery.
17. **Replacement certificates**
- 17.1 Any two or more certificates representing shares of any one class held by any member may at his request be cancelled and a single new certificate for such shares issued in lieu without charge on surrender of the original certificates for cancellation.
- 17.2 Any certificate representing shares of any one class held by any member may at his request be cancelled and two or more certificates for such shares may be issued instead.
- 17.3 If a share certificate is defaced, worn out or said to be stolen, lost or destroyed, it may be replaced on such terms as to evidence and indemnity as the Board may decide and, where it is defaced or worn out, after delivery of the old certificate to the Company.
- 17.4 The Board may require the payment of any exceptional out-of-pocket expenses of the Company incurred in connection with the issue of any certificates under this Article. In the case of shares held jointly by several persons, any such request as is mentioned in this Article may be made by any one of the joint holders.

18. **Lien on shares not fully paid**

The Company shall have a first and paramount lien on every share, not being a fully paid share, for all amounts payable to the Company (whether presently or not) in respect of that share. The Company's lien over a share takes priority over any third party's interest in that share, and extends to any dividend or other money payable by the Company in respect of that share (and, if the lien is enforced and the share is sold by the Company, the proceeds of sale of that share). The Board may at any time, either generally or in any particular case, waive any lien that has arisen or declare any share to be wholly or in part exempt from the provisions of this Article.

19. **Enforcement of lien by sale**

The Company may sell, in such manner as the Board may decide, any share over which the Company has a lien if a sum in respect of which the lien exists is presently payable and is not paid within fourteen (14) clear days after a notice has been served on the holder of the share or the person who is entitled by transmission to the share, demanding payment and stating that if the notice is not complied with the share may be sold. For giving effect to the sale, in the case of a certificated share, the Board may authorise some person to sign an instrument of transfer of the share sold to, or in accordance with the directions, of the buyer. In the case of an uncertificated share, the Board may require the Operator to convert the share into certificated form and after such conversion, authorise any person to sign the instrument of transfer of the share to effect the sale of the share. The buyer shall not be bound to see to the application of the purchase money, nor shall his title to the share be affected by any irregularity or invalidity in the proceedings in reference to the sale.

20. **Application of proceeds of sale**

The net proceeds of any sale of shares subject to any lien, after payment of the costs, shall be applied:

- (a) first, in or towards satisfaction of so much of the amount due to the Company or of the liability or engagement (as the case may be) as is presently payable or is liable to be presently fulfilled or discharged; and
- (b) second, any residue shall be paid to the person who was entitled to the share at the time of the sale but only after the certificate for the shares sold has been surrendered to the company for cancellation, or an indemnity in a form reasonably satisfactory to the Directors has been given for any lost certificates, and subject to a like lien for debts or liabilities not presently payable as existed on the share prior to the sale.

21. **Calls**

21.1 Subject to these Articles and the terms on which the shares are allotted, the Board may from time to time make calls on the members in respect of any monies unpaid on their shares (whether in respect of nominal value or premium) and not payable on a date fixed by or in accordance with the terms of issue.

-
- 21.2 Each member shall (subject to the Company serving upon him at least fourteen (14) clear days' notice specifying when and where payment is to be made and whether or not by instalments) pay to the Company as required by the notice the amount called on for his shares.
- 21.3 A call shall be deemed to have been made at the time when the resolution of the Board authorising the call was passed.
- 21.4 A call may be revoked or postponed, in whole or in part, as the Board may decide.
- 21.5 Liability to pay a call is not extinguished or transferred by transferring the shares in respect of which the call is required to be paid.

22. **Liability of joint holders**

The joint holders of a share shall be jointly and severally liable to pay all calls in respect of the share.

23. **Interest on calls**

If a call remains unpaid after it has become due and payable, the person from whom it is due and payable shall pay all expenses that may have been incurred by the Company by reason of such non-payment together with interest on the amount unpaid from the day it is due and payable to the time of actual payment at such rate (not exceeding the Bank of England base rate by more than five percentage points) as the Board may decide. The Board may waive payment of the interest or the expenses in whole or in part.

24. **Sums treated as calls**

An amount payable in respect of a share on allotment or at any fixed date, whether in respect of nominal value or premium or as an instalment of a call, shall be deemed to be a call and if it is not paid these Articles shall apply as if that sum had become due and payable by virtue of a call.

25. **Power to differentiate**

On or before the issue of shares, the Board may decide that allottees or holders of shares can be called on to pay different amounts or that they can be called on at different times.

26. **Payment of calls in advance**

The Board may, if it thinks fit, receive from any member willing to advance the same, all or any part of the monies uncalled and unpaid on the shares held by him. Such payment in advance of calls shall, to the extent of the payment, extinguish the liability on the shares on which it is made. The Company may pay interest on the money paid in advance, or so much of it as exceeds the amount for the time being called upon the shares in respect of which such advance has been made, at such rate as the Board may decide. The Board may at any time repay the amount so advanced by giving at least three

months' notice in writing to such member of its intention to do so, unless before the expiration of such notice the amount so advanced shall have been called up on the shares in respect of which it was advanced.

27. **Notice if call or instalment not paid**

If any member fails to pay the whole of any call (or any instalment of any call) by the date when payment is due, the Board may at any time give notice in writing to such member (or to any person entitled to the shares by transmission), requiring payment of the amount unpaid (and any accrued interest and any expenses incurred by the Company by reason of such non-payment) by a date not less than fourteen (14) clear days from the date of the notice. The notice shall name the place where the payment is to be made and state that, if the notice is not complied with, the shares in respect of which such call was made will be liable to be forfeited.

28. **Forfeiture for non-compliance**

If the notice referred to in Article 27 is not complied with, any share for which it was given may be forfeited, by resolution of the Board to that effect, at any time before the payment required by the notice has been made. Such forfeiture shall include all dividends declared or other monies payable in respect of the forfeited shares and not paid before the forfeiture.

29. **Notice after forfeiture**

When any share has been forfeited, notice of the forfeiture shall be served on the holder of the share or the person entitled to such share by transmission (as the case may be) before forfeiture. An entry of such notice having been given and of the forfeiture and the date of forfeiture shall immediately be made in the Register in respect of such share. However, no forfeiture shall be invalidated by any omission to give such notice or to make such entry in the Register.

30. **Forfeiture may be annulled**

The Board may annul the forfeiture of a share, at any time before any forfeited share has been cancelled or sold, re-allotted or otherwise disposed of, on the terms that payment shall be made of all calls and interest due on it and all expenses incurred in respect of the share and on such further terms (if any) as the Board shall see fit.

31. **Surrender**

The Board may accept the surrender of any share liable to be forfeited and, in any event, references in these Articles to forfeiture shall include surrender.

32. **Sale of forfeited shares**

32.1 A forfeited share shall become the property of the Company.

32.2 Subject to the Companies Acts, any such share may be sold, re-allotted or otherwise disposed of, on such terms and in such manner as the Board thinks fit.

32.3 The Board may, for the purposes of the disposal, authorise some person to transfer the share in question and may enter the name of the transferee in respect of the transferred share in the Register even if no share certificate is lodged and may issue a new certificate to the transferee. An instrument of transfer executed by that person shall be as effective as if it had been executed by the holder of, or the person entitled by transmission to, the share. The Company may receive the consideration (if any) given for the share on its disposal.

33. **Effect of forfeiture**

A shareholder whose shares have been forfeited shall cease to be a member in respect of such forfeited shares and shall surrender the certificate for such shares to the Company for cancellation. Such shareholder shall remain liable to pay to the Company all sums which at the date of forfeiture were presently payable by him to the Company in respect of such shares with interest (not exceeding the Bank of England base rate by 2 percentage points) from the date of the forfeiture to the date of payment. The Directors may waive payment of interest wholly or in part and may enforce payment, without any reduction or allowance for the value of the shares at the time of forfeiture or for any consideration received on their disposal.

34. **Evidence of forfeiture**

A statutory declaration by a Director or the Secretary that a share has been forfeited on a specified date shall be conclusive evidence of the facts stated in it as against all persons claiming to be entitled to the share. The declaration shall (subject to the execution of an instrument of transfer if necessary) constitute a good title to the share. The person to whom the share is transferred or sold shall not be bound to see to the application of the purchase money or other consideration (if any), nor shall his title to the share be affected by any act, omission or irregularity relating to or connected with the proceedings in reference to the forfeiture or disposal of the share.

35. **Form of transfer**

35.1 Subject to these Articles:

- (a) each member may transfer all or any of his shares which are in certificated form by instrument of transfer in writing in any usual form or in any form approved by the Board. Such instrument shall be executed by or on behalf of the transferor and (in the case of a transfer of a share which is not fully paid up) by or on behalf of the transferee. All instruments of transfer, when registered, may be retained by the Company.
- (b) each member may transfer all or any of his shares which are in uncertificated form by means of a relevant system in such manner provided for, and subject as provided in, the uncertificated securities rules. No provision of these Articles shall apply in respect of an uncertificated share to the extent that it requires or contemplates the effecting of a transfer by an instrument in writing or the production of a certificate for the share to be transferred.

- 35.2 The transferor of a share shall be deemed to remain the holder of the share concerned until the name of the transferee is entered in the Register in respect of it.
36. **Right to refuse registration of transfer**
- 36.1 The Board may, in its absolute discretion, refuse to register any transfer of a share in certificated form (or renunciation of a renounceable letter of allotment) unless:
- (a) it is for a share which is fully paid up;
 - (b) it is for a share upon which the Company has no lien;
 - (c) it is only for one class of share;
 - (d) it is in favour of a single transferee or no more than four joint transferees;
 - (e) it is duly stamped or is duly certificated or otherwise shown to the satisfaction of the Board to be exempt from stamp duty (if this is required); and
 - (f) it is delivered for registration to the Office (or such other place as the Board may determine), accompanied (except in the case of a transfer by a person to whom the Company is not required by law to issue a certificate and to whom a certificate has not been issued or in the case of a renunciation) by the certificate for the shares to which it relates and such other evidence as the Board may reasonably require to prove the title of the transferor (or person renouncing) and the due execution of the transfer or renunciation by him or, if the transfer or renunciation is executed by some other person on his behalf, the authority of that person to do so.
- 36.2 The Board shall not refuse to register any transfer or renunciation of partly paid shares which are listed on Nasdaq on the grounds that they are partly paid shares in circumstances where such refusal would prevent dealings in such shares from taking place on an open and proper basis.
- 36.3 Transfers of shares will not be registered in the circumstances referred to in Article 76.
- 36.4 The Board may refuse to register a transfer of uncertificated shares in any circumstances that are allowed or required by the uncertificated securities rules and the relevant system.

37. **Notice of refusal to register a transfer**

If the Board refuses to register a transfer of a share it shall notify the transferee of the refusal and the reasons for it within two months after the date on which the transfer was lodged with the Company or the instructions to the relevant system received. Any instrument of transfer which the Board refuses to register shall be returned to the person depositing it (except if there is suspected or actual fraud). All instruments of transfer which are registered may be retained by the Company.

38. **No fees on registration**

No fee shall be charged for registration of a transfer or other document or instruction relating to or affecting the title to any share or for making any other entry in the Register.

39. **Other powers in relation to transfers**

Nothing in these Articles shall prevent the Board:

- (a) from recognising a renunciation of the allotment of any share by the allottee in favour of another person; or
- (b) (if empowered to do so by these Articles) from authorising any person to execute an instrument of transfer of a share and from authorising any person to transfer that share in accordance with any procedures implemented under Article 19.

40. **Transmission of shares on death**

If a member dies, the survivors or survivor (where he was a joint holder), and his executors or administrators (where he was a sole or the only survivor of joint holders), shall be the only persons recognised by the Company as having any title to his shares. Nothing in these Articles shall release the estate of a deceased member from any liability for any share which has been solely or jointly held by him.

41. **Election of person entitled by transmission**

41.1 Any person becoming entitled to a share because of the death or bankruptcy of a member, or otherwise by operation of law, may (on such evidence as to his title being produced as the Board may require) elect either to become registered as a member or to have some person nominated by him registered as a member. If he elects to become registered himself, he shall notify the Company to that effect. If he elects to have some other person registered, he shall execute an instrument of transfer of such share to that person. All the provisions of these Articles relating to the transfer of shares shall apply to the notice or instrument of transfer (as the case may be) as if it were an instrument of transfer executed by the member and his death, bankruptcy or other event had not occurred. Where the entitlement of a person to a share because of the death or bankruptcy of a member or otherwise by operation of law is proved to the satisfaction of the Board, the Board shall within thirty (30) days after proof cause the entitlement of that person to be noted in the Register.

41.2 A person entitled by transmission to a share in uncertificated form who elects to have some other person registered shall either:

- (a) procure that instructions are given by means of the relevant system to effect transfer of such uncertificated share to that person; or
- (b) change the uncertificated share to certificated form and execute an instrument of transfer of that certificated share to that person.

42. **Rights on transmission**

Where a person becomes entitled to a share because of the death or bankruptcy of any member, or otherwise by operation of law, the rights of the holder in relation to such share shall cease. However, the person so entitled may give a good discharge for any dividends and other monies payable in respect of it and shall have the same rights to which he would be entitled if he were the holder of the share, except that he shall not be entitled to receive notice of, or to attend or vote at, any meeting of the Company or an separate meeting of the holders of any class of shares of the Company before he is registered as the holder of the share. The Board may at any time give notice requiring any such person to elect either to be registered himself or to transfer the share. If the notice is not complied with within thirty (30) days, the Board may withhold payment of all dividends and the other monies payable in respect of such share until the requirements of the notice have been complied with.

43. **Destruction of documents**

43.1 The Company may destroy any:

- (a) instrument of transfer, after six years from the date on which it is registered;
- (b) dividend mandate or any variation or cancellation of a dividend mandate or any notification of change of name or address, after two years from the date on which it is recorded;
- (c) share certificate, after one year from the date on which it is cancelled;
- (d) instrument of proxy which has been used for the purpose of voting at any time after one year has elapsed from the date of use;
- (e) instrument of proxy which has not been used for the purpose of voting at any time after a period of one month has elapsed from the end of the meeting to which the instrument of proxy relates;
- (f) Share Warrant (including coupons or tokens detailed from it) which has been cancelled at any time after seven years from the date on which it was cancelled; or
- (g) other document for which any entry in the Register is made, after six years from the date on which an entry was first made in the Register in respect of it,

provided that the Company may destroy any such type of document at a date earlier than that authorised by this Article if a copy of such document is made and retained (whether electronically, by microfilm, by digital imaging or by other similar means) until the expiration of the period applicable to the destruction of the original of such document.

43.2 It shall be conclusively presumed in favour of the Company that every:

- (a) entry in the Register purporting to have been made on the basis of a document so destroyed was duly and properly made;

- (b) instrument of transfer so destroyed was duly registered;
 - (c) share certificate so destroyed was duly cancelled; and
 - (d) other document so destroyed had been properly dealt with under its terms and was valid and effective according to the particulars in the records of the Company.
- 43.3 This Article shall only apply to the destruction of a document in good faith and without notice of any claim (regardless of the parties to it) to which the document might be relevant. Nothing in this Article shall be construed as imposing any liability on the Company in respect of the destruction of any such document other than as provided for in this Article which would not attach to the Company in the absence of this Article. References in this Article to the destruction of any document include references to the disposal of it in any manner.
- 43.4 References in this Article to instruments of transfer shall include, in relation to uncertificated shares, instructions and/or notifications made in accordance with the relevant system relating to the transfer of such shares.
- 44. **Sub-division**

Any resolution authorising the Company to sub-divide its shares or any of them may determine that, as between the shares resulting from the sub-division, any of them may have any preference or advantage or be subject to any restriction as compared with the others.
- 45. **Fractions**
- 45.1 Where any difficulty arises in regard to any consolidation or division, the Board may settle such difficulty as they see fit. In particular, without limitation, the Directors may sell to any person (including the Company) the shares representing the fractions for the best once reasonably obtainable and distribute the net proceeds of sale in due proportion among those members or retain such net proceeds for the benefit of the Company and:
 - (a) in the case of shares in certificated form, the Board may authorise any person to execute an instrument of transfer of the shares to the purchaser or a person nominated by the purchaser and take such other steps (including the giving of directions to or on behalf of the holder, who shall be bound by them) as they think fit to effect such transfer; and
 - (b) in the case of shares in uncertificated form, the Board may:
 - (i) to enable the Company to deal with the share in accordance with the provisions of this Article, require or procure any relevant person or the Operator (as applicable) to convert the share into certificated form; and
 - (ii) after such conversion, authorise any person to execute an instrument of transfer of the shares to the purchaser or a person nominated by the purchaser and take such other steps (including the giving of directions to or on behalf of the holder, who shall be bound by them) as they think fit to effect the transfer.

- 45.2 The transferee shall not be bound to see to the application of the purchase money nor shall his title to the shares be affected by any irregularity in or invalidity of the proceedings in reference to the sale.
46. **Annual general meetings**
- An annual general meeting shall be held once a year, at such time (consistent with the terms of the Companies Acts) and place as may be determined by the Board.
47. **Convening of general meetings**
- All meetings other than annual general meetings shall be called general meetings. The Board or the chairman of the Board may, whenever it thinks fit, and shall on requisition in accordance with the Companies Acts, proceed to convene a general meeting. For all other purposes, and unless expressly provided otherwise in these Articles, the procedures for giving notice (other than as to duration) of, the conduct of, and voting at annual general meetings and all other general meetings shall be the same.
48. **Notice of general meetings**
- A general meeting shall be called by at least such minimum notice as is required or permitted by the Companies Acts. The period of notice shall in either case be exclusive of the day on which it is served or deemed to be served and of the day on which the meeting is to be held and shall be given to all members other than those who are not entitled to receive such notices from the Company. The Company may give such notice by any means or combination of means permitted by the Companies Acts.
49. **Contents of notice of meetings**
- 49.1 Every notice calling a meeting shall specify;
- (a) whether the meeting shall be a physical or hybrid physical and electronic meeting (such a meeting a *hybrid meeting*);
 - (b) in the case of a physical meeting and/or a hybrid meeting the place and, if applicable, the electronic platform for the hybrid meeting, together with the date and time of the meeting,
- and there shall appear with reasonable prominence in every such notice a statement that a member entitled to attend and vote is entitled to a proxy or (if he has more than one share) proxies to exercise all or any of his rights to attend, speak and vote and that a proxy need not be a member of the Company. Such notice shall also include the address of the website on which the information required by the Act is published, state the procedures with which

- members must comply in order to be able to attend and vote at the meeting (including the date by which they must comply), provide details of any forms to be used for the appointment of a proxy and state that a member has the right to ask questions at the meeting in accordance with the Act.
- 49.2 The notice shall specify the general nature of the business to be transacted at the meeting and shall set out the text of all resolutions to be considered by the meeting and shall state in each case whether it is proposed as an ordinary resolution or as a special resolution.
- 49.3 In the case of an annual general meeting, the notice shall also specify the meeting as such.
- 49.4 For the purposes of determining which persons are entitled to attend or vote at a meeting and how many votes a person may cast, the Company may specify in the notice of meeting a time, not more than forty-eight (48) hours before the time fixed for the meeting (not taking into account non-working days) by which a person must be entered in the Register in order to have the right to attend or vote at the meeting or appoint a proxy to do so.

50. **Omission to give notice and non-receipt of notice**

The accidental omission to give notice of any meeting or to send an instrument of proxy (where this is intended to be sent out with the notice) to, or the non-receipt of either by, any person entitled to receive the same shall not invalidate the proceedings of that meeting.

51. **Postponement of general meeting**

If the Board considers that it is impracticable or unreasonable to hold a general meeting on the date or at the time or place stated in the notice calling the meeting, it may postpone or move the meeting (or do both). The Board shall take reasonable steps to ensure that notice of the date, time and place of the rearranged meeting is given to any member trying to attend the meeting at the original time and place. Notice of the date, time and place of the rearranged meeting shall, if practicable, also be placed in at least two national newspapers published in the United Kingdom. Notice of the business to be transacted at such rearranged meeting shall not be required. If a meeting is rearranged in this way, appointments of proxy are valid if they are received as required by these Articles not less than forty-eight (48) hours before the time appointed for holding the rearranged meeting and for the purpose of calculating this period, the Board can decide in their absolute discretion, not to take account of any part of a day that is not a working day. The Board may also postpone or move the rearranged meeting (or do both) under this Article.

52. **Quorum at general meeting**

No business shall be transacted at any general meeting unless a quorum is present. If a quorum is not present a chairman of the meeting can still be chosen and this will not be treated as part of the business of the meeting. Two members present in person or by proxy and entitled to attend and to vote on the business to be transacted shall be a quorum.

53. **Procedure if quorum not present**

If a quorum is not present within fifteen (15) minutes (or such longer interval as the chairman in his absolute discretion thinks fit) from the time appointed for holding a general meeting, or if a quorum ceases to be present during a meeting, the meeting shall be dissolved if convened on the requisition of members. In any other case, the meeting shall stand adjourned to another day, (not being less than ten (10) clear days after the date of the original meeting), and at such time and place as the chairman (or, in default, the Board) may determine. If at such adjourned meeting a quorum is not present within fifteen (15) minutes from the time appointed for holding the meeting, one person entitled to vote on the business to be transacted, being a member or a proxy for a member or a duly authorised representative of a corporation which is a member, shall be a quorum and any notice of an adjourned meeting shall state this.

54. **Chairman of general meeting**

The chairman of the Board shall preside at every general meeting of the Company. If there is no such chairman or if at any meeting he shall not be present within five (5) minutes after the time appointed for holding the meeting, or shall be unwilling to act as chairman, the deputy chairman (if any) of the Board shall, if present and willing to act, preside at such meeting. If more than one deputy chairman is present they shall agree amongst themselves who is to take the chair or, if they cannot agree, the deputy chairman who has been in office as a Director the longest shall take the chair. If no chairman or deputy chairman shall be so present and willing to act, the Directors present shall choose one of their number to act or, if there be only one Director present, he shall be chairman if willing to act. If there be no Director present and willing to act, the members present and entitled to vote shall choose one of their number to be chairman of the meeting. Nothing in these Articles shall restrict or exclude any of the powers or rights of a chairman of a meeting which are given by law.

55. **Entitlement to attend and speak**

55.1 A Director (and any other person invited by the chairman to do so) may attend and speak at any general meeting and at any separate meeting of the holders of any class of shares of the Company, whether or not he is a member.

55.2 The Board may resolve to enable persons entitled to attend a hybrid meeting at a physical meeting place which is simultaneously hosted on an electronic platform which enables attendance by electronic means. The members or their proxies present shall be counted in the quorum for, and entitled to vote at, the general meeting in question, and that meeting shall be duly constituted and its proceedings valid if the chairman of the general meeting is satisfied that adequate facilities are available throughout the hybrid meeting to ensure that members attending the hybrid meeting who are not present together at the same place may, by electronic means, attend and speak and vote at it.

56. **Adjournments**
- 56.1 The chairman may, with the consent of a meeting at which a quorum is present, and shall, if so directed by the meeting, adjourn any meeting from time to time (or indefinitely) and from place to place as the meeting shall determine.
- 56.2 Without prejudice to any other power which he may have under these Articles or at common law, the chairman may, without the need for the consent of the meeting, interrupt or adjourn any meeting from time to time and from place to place or for an indefinite period if he is of the opinion that it has become necessary to do so in order to secure the proper and orderly conduct of the meeting or to give all persons entitled to do so a reasonable opportunity of attending, speaking and voting at the meeting (where facilities at a physical meeting place and/or an electronic platform appear to the chairman to have become inadequate for the purpose) or to ensure that the business of the meeting is properly disposed of.
- 56.3 Meetings can be adjourned more than once, in accordance with the procedures set out in this Article.

57. **Notice of adjournment**

If the meeting is adjourned indefinitely or for more than three months, notice of the adjourned meeting shall be given in the same manner as in the case of the original meeting. Except as provided in these Articles, there is no need to give notice of the adjourned meeting or of the business to be considered there.

58. **Business of adjourned meeting**

No business shall be transacted at any adjourned meeting other than the business which might properly have been transacted at the meeting from which the adjournment took place.

59. **Security arrangements and orderly conduct**

- 59.1 The Board may direct that any person wishing to attend any meeting should provide such evidence of identity and submit to such searches or other security arrangements or restrictions as the Board shall consider appropriate in the circumstances and shall be entitled in its absolute discretion to refuse entry to any meeting to any person who fails to provide such evidence of identity or to submit to such searches or to otherwise comply with such security arrangements or restrictions.
- 59.2 The Board and, at any hybrid meeting, the chairman may make any arrangement and impose any requirement or restriction as is:
- (a) necessary to ensure the identification of those taking part and the security of the electronic communication; and
 - (b) proportionate to those objectives.

- In this respect, the Company is able to authorise any voting application, system or facility for hybrid meetings as it sees fit.
- 59.3 The chairman shall take such action or give directions as he thinks fit to promote the orderly conduct of the business of the meeting as laid down in the notice of the meeting and to ensure the security of the meeting and the safety of the people attending the meeting. The chairman's decision on matters of procedure or arising incidentally from the business of the meeting shall be final as shall be his determination as to whether any matter is of such a nature.
60. **Overflow meeting rooms**
- 60.1 The Board may, in accordance with this Article, make arrangements for members and proxies who are entitled to attend and participate in a general meeting, but who cannot be seated in the main meeting room where the chairman will be, to attend and take part in a general meeting in an overflow room or rooms. Any overflow room will have appropriate links to the main room and will enable audio-visual communication between the meeting rooms throughout the meeting. The Board will decide how to divide members and proxies between the main room and the overflow room. If an overflow room is used, the meeting will be treated as being held and taking place in the main meeting room and the meeting will consist of all the members and proxies who are attending both in the main meeting room and the overflow room.
- 60.2 Details of any arrangements for overflow rooms will be set out in the notice of the meeting but failure to do so will not invalidate the meeting.
61. **Satellite meeting places**
- 61.1 To facilitate the organisation and administration of any general meeting, the Board may decide that the meeting shall be held at two or more locations.
- 61.2 For the purposes of these Articles, any general meeting of the Company taking place at two or more locations shall be treated as taking place where the chairman of the meeting presides (the **principal meeting place**) and any other location where that meeting takes place is referred in this Article as a **satellite meeting**.
- 61.3 A member present in person or by proxy at a satellite meeting may be counted in the quorum and may exercise all rights that they would have been able to exercise if they were present at the principal meeting place.
- 61.4 The Board may make and change from time to time such arrangements as they shall in their absolute discretion consider appropriate to:
- (a) ensure that all members and proxies for members wishing to attend the meeting can do so;

- (b) ensure that all persons attending the meeting are able to participate in the business of the meeting and to see and hear anyone else addressing the meeting;
 - (c) ensure the safety of persons attending the meeting and the orderly conduct of the meeting; and
 - (d) restrict the numbers of members and proxies at any one location to such number as can safely and conveniently be accommodated there.
- 61.5 The entitlement of any member or proxy to attend a satellite meeting shall be subject to any such arrangements then in force and stated by the notice of the meeting or adjourned meeting to apply to the meeting.
- 61.6 If there is a failure of communication equipment or any other failure in the arrangements for participation in the meeting at more than one place, the chairman may adjourn the meeting in accordance with Article 56. Such adjournment will not affect the validity of such meeting, or any business conducted at such meeting up to the point of adjournment, or any action taken pursuant to such meeting.
- 61.7 A person (**satellite chairman**) appointed by the Board shall preside at each satellite meeting. Every satellite chairman shall carry out all requests made of him by the chairman of the meeting, may take such action as he thinks necessary to maintain the proper and orderly conduct of the satellite meeting and shall have all powers necessary or desirable for such purposes.
62. **Procedure where general meetings held at more than one place**
- 62.1 The provisions of this Article shall apply if any general meeting is held at or adjourned to more than one place.
- 62.2 The notice of such a meeting or adjourned meeting shall specify the principal meeting place and the Directors shall make arrangements for simultaneous attendance and participation at the principal meeting place and at other satellite meetings by members, provided that persons attending at any particular place shall be able to see and hear and be seen and heard by means of audio visual links by persons attending the principal meeting place and at the other satellite meeting places at which the meeting is held.
- 62.3 The Directors may from time to time make such arrangements for the purpose of controlling the level of attendance at any such place (whether involving the issue of tickets or the imposition of some geographical or regional means of selection or otherwise) as they shall in their absolute discretion consider appropriate, and may from time to time vary any such arrangements or make new arrangements in place of them, provided that a member who is not entitled to attend, in person or by proxy, at any principal meeting place shall be entitled so to attend at one of the satellite meetings, and the entitlement of any member so to attend the meeting or adjourned meeting at such place shall be subject to any such arrangements as may from time to time be in force and by the notice of meeting or adjourned meeting stated to apply to the meeting.

62.4	For the purposes of all other provisions of these Articles, any such meeting shall be treated as being held at the principal meeting place.
62.5	If a meeting is adjourned to more than one place, not less than seven days' notice of the adjourned meeting shall be given despite any other provision of these Articles.
63.	Amendment to resolutions
63.1	If an amendment to any resolution under consideration is proposed but is ruled out of order by the chairman of the meeting in good faith, any error in such ruling shall not invalidate the proceedings on the original resolution.
63.2	In the case of a resolution duly proposed as a special resolution, no amendment to it (other than an amendment to correct a patent error) may in any event be considered or voted on. In the case of a resolution duly proposed as an ordinary resolution no amendment to it (other than an amendment to correct a patent error) may be considered or voted on unless either at least forty-eight (48) hours prior to the time appointed for holding the meeting or adjourned meeting at which such ordinary resolution is to be proposed, notice in writing of the terms of the amendment and intention to move the same has been lodged at the Office or received in electronic form at the electronic address at which the Company has or is deemed to have agreed to receive it or the chairman of the meeting in his absolute discretion decides that it may be considered or voted on.
64.	Withdrawal and ruling amendments out of order
	With the consent of the chairman of the meeting, an amendment may be withdrawn by its proposer before it is voted on. If an amendment proposed to any resolution under consideration is ruled out of order by the chairman of the meeting, the proceedings on the resolution shall not be invalidated by any error in the ruling.
65.	Members' resolutions
65.1	Members of the Company shall have the rights provided by the Companies Acts to have the Company circulate and give notice of a resolution which may be properly moved, and is intended to be moved, at the Company's next annual general meeting.
65.2	Expenses of complying with these rights shall be borne in accordance with the Companies Acts.
66.	Method of voting
66.1	Any resolution put to the vote of a general meeting must be decided exclusively on a poll.
66.2	At general meetings, resolutions shall be put to the vote by the chairman of the meeting and there shall be no requirement for the resolution to be proposed or seconded by any person.

67. **Objection to error in voting**

No objection shall be raised to the qualification of any voter or to the counting of, or failure to count, any vote, except at the meeting or adjourned meeting at which the vote objected to is given or tendered or at which the error occurs. Any objection or error shall be referred to the chairman of the meeting and shall only vitiate the decision of the meeting on any resolution if the chairman decides that the same is of sufficient magnitude to vitiate the resolution or may otherwise have affected the decision of the meeting. The decision of the chairman of the meeting on such matters shall be final and conclusive.

68. **Voting Procedure**

- 68.1 Any poll on any question of adjournment shall be taken immediately. A poll on any other matter shall be taken in such manner (including the use of ballot or voting papers or tickets) and at such time and place, not more than thirty (30) days from the date of the meeting or adjourned meeting, as the chairman shall direct. The chairman may appoint scrutineers who need not be members. It is not necessary to give notice of a poll not taken immediately if the time and place at which it is to be taken are announced at the meeting. In any other case, at least seven clear days' notice shall be given specifying the time, date and place at which the poll shall be taken. The result of the poll shall be deemed to be the resolution of the meeting at which the poll was due to be conducted.
- 68.2 Votes may be given in person or by proxy. A member entitled to more than one vote need not, if he votes, use all his votes or cast all the votes he uses in the same way.
- 68.3 No notice need be given of a poll not taken during the meeting if the time and place at which it is to be taken are announced at the meeting. In any other case, at least seven clear days' notice must be given specifying the time and place at which the poll is to be taken.

69. **Votes of members**

- 69.1 Subject to Article 69.2, to the Companies Acts and to any special terms as to voting on which any shares may have been issued or may for the time being be held and to any suspension or abrogation of voting rights under these Articles, at any general meeting:
- (a) every shareholder present in person or by duly appointed proxy or corporate representative has one vote for every Share of which he is the holder or in respect of which his appointment as proxy or corporate representative has been made; and
 - (b) a member, proxy or corporate representative entitled to more than one vote need not, if he votes, use all his votes or cast all the votes he uses the same way.
- 69.2 If two or more persons are joint holders of a share, then in voting on any question the vote of the senior who tenders a vote, whether in person or by proxy, shall be accepted to the exclusion of the votes of the other joint holders. For this purpose seniority shall be determined by the order in which the names of the holders stand in the Register.

- 69.3 Where in England or elsewhere a receiver or other person (by whatever name called) has been appointed by any court claiming jurisdiction in that behalf to exercise powers with respect to the property or affairs of any member on the ground (however formulated) of mental disorder, the Board may in its absolute discretion, upon or subject to production of such evidence of the appointment as the Board may require, permit such receiver or other person on behalf of such member to vote in person by proxy on behalf of such member at any general meeting or to exercise any other right conferred by membership in relation to meetings of the Company. Evidence to the satisfaction of the Board of the authority of the person claiming to exercise the right to vote shall be deposited at the Office, or at such other place as is specified in accordance with these Articles for the deposit of instruments of proxy, at least forty-eight (48) hours before the time appointed for holding the meeting or adjourned meeting at which the right to vote is to be exercised and, in default, the right to vote shall not be exercisable.
- 69.4 In the case of equality of votes the chairman of the meeting shall not be entitled to a casting vote.
- 69.5 In order that the Company may determine the members entitled to vote at any meeting of members or any adjournment thereof, and how many votes such person may cast, the Board may fix a record date, which record date shall not precede the date upon which the resolution fixing the record date is adopted by the Board, and which record date shall, unless otherwise required by law, not be more than sixty (60) nor less than ten (10) days before the date of such meeting. If no record date is fixed the record date for determining members entitled to vote at a meeting of members shall, unless otherwise required by law, be at the close of business on the business day preceding the day on which notice is given.
70. **No right to vote where sums overdue on shares**
- No member may vote at a general meeting (or any separate meeting of the holders of any class of shares), either in person or by proxy, or to exercise any other right or privilege as a member in respect of a share held by him unless:
- (a) all calls or other sums presently due and payable by him in respect of that share whether alone or jointly with any other person together with interest and expenses (if any) have been paid to the Company; or
 - (b) the Board determines otherwise.
71. **Voting by proxy**
- 71.1 Subject to Article 71.2, an instrument appointing a proxy shall be in writing in any usual form (or in another form approved by the Board) executed under the hand of the appointor or his duly constituted attorney or, if the appointor is a corporation, under its seal or signed by a duly authorised officer or attorney or other person authorised to sign.
- 71.2 Subject to the Companies Acts, the Board may accept the appointment of a proxy received by electronic means on such terms and subject to such conditions as it considers fit. The appointment of a proxy received by electronic means shall not be subject to the requirements of Article 71.1.

- 71.3 For the purposes of Articles 71.1 and 71.2, the Board may require such reasonable evidence it considers necessary to determine:
- (a) the identity of the member and the proxy; and
 - (b) where the proxy is appointed by a person acting on behalf of the member, the authority of that person to make the appointment.
- 71.4 A member may appoint another person as his proxy to exercise all or any of his rights to attend and to speak and to vote on a resolution or amendment of a resolution, or on other business arising, at a meeting or meetings of the Company. Unless the contrary is stated in it, the appointment of a proxy shall be deemed to confer authority to exercise all such rights, as the proxy thinks fit.
- 71.5 A proxy need not be a member.
- 71.6 A member may appoint more than one proxy in relation to a meeting, provided that each proxy is appointed to exercise the rights attached to different shares held by the member. When two or more valid but differing appointments of proxy are delivered or received for the same share for use at the same meeting, the one which is last validly delivered or received (regardless of its date or the date of its execution) shall be treated as replacing and revoking the other or others as regards that share. If the Company is unable to determine which appointment was last validly delivered or received, none of them shall be treated as valid in respect of that share.
- 71.7 Delivery or receipt of an appointment of proxy does not prevent a member attending and voting in person at the meeting or an adjournment of the meeting.
- 71.8 The appointment of a proxy shall (unless the contrary is stated in it) be valid for an adjournment of the meeting as well as for the meeting or meetings to which it relates. The appointment of a proxy shall be valid for 12 months from the date of execution or, in the case of an appointment of proxy delivered by electronic means, for 12 months from the date of delivery unless otherwise specified by the Board.
- 71.9 Subject to the Companies Acts, the Company may send a form of appointment of proxy to all or none of the persons entitled to receive notice of and to vote at a meeting. If sent, the form shall provide for three-way voting on all resolutions (other than procedural resolutions) set out in the notice of meeting.
- 71.10 The Company shall not be bound to enquire whether any proxy or corporate representative votes in accordance with the instructions given to him by the member he represents and if a proxy or corporate representative does not vote in accordance with the instructions of the member he represents the vote or votes cast shall nevertheless be valid for all purposes.

72.

Receipt of proxy

72.1

An instrument appointing a proxy and any reasonable evidence required by the Board in accordance with Article 71.3 shall:

- (a) subject to Articles 72.1(c) and (d), in the case of an instrument of proxy in hard copy form, delivered to the office, or another place in the United Kingdom specified in the notice convening the meeting or in the form of appointment of proxy or other accompanying document sent by the Company in relation to the meeting (a “**proxy notification address**”) not less than forty-eight (48) hours before the time for holding the meeting or adjourned meeting at which the person named in the form of appointment of proxy proposes to vote;
- (b) subject to Articles 72.1(c) and (d), in the case of an appointment of a proxy sent by electronic means, where the Company has given an electronic address (a “**proxy notification electronic address**”):
 - (i) in the notice calling the meeting;
 - (ii) in an instrument of proxy sent out by the Company in relation to the meeting;
 - (iii) in an invitation to appoint a proxy issued by the Company in relation to the meeting; or
 - (iv) on a website maintained by or on behalf of the Company on which any information relating to the meeting is required by the Act to be kept,

it shall be received at such proxy notification electronic address not less than forty-eight (48) hours before the time for holding the meeting or adjourned meeting at which the person named in the form of appointment of proxy proposes to vote.

- (c) in the case of a poll taken more than forty-eight (48) hours after it is demanded, delivered or received at a proxy notification address or a proxy notification electronic address and not less than twenty-four (24) hours before the time appointed for the holding of the adjourned meeting; or
- (d) in the case of a poll which is not taken at the meeting but is taken forty-eight (48) hours or less thereafter, or in the case of an adjourned meeting to be held forty-eight (48) hours or less after the time fixed for holding the original meeting, received:
 - (i) at a proxy notification address or a proxy notification electronic address in accordance with Articles 72.1(a) or (b);
 - (ii) by the chairman of the meeting or the secretary or any Director at the meeting, as the case may be, at the original meeting; or

(iii) at a proxy notification address or a proxy notification electronic address by such time as the chairman of the meeting may direct at the meeting.

In calculating the periods in this Article, no account shall be taken of any part of a day that is not a working day.

72.2 The Board may decide, either generally or in any particular case, to treat a proxy appointment as valid notwithstanding that the appointment or any of the information required under Article 71.3 has not been received in accordance with the requirements of this Article.

72.3 Subject to Article 72.2, if the proxy appointment and any of the information required under Article 71.3 is not received in the manner set out in Article 72.1, the appointee shall not be entitled to vote in respect of the shares in question.

72.4 Without limiting the foregoing, in relation to any uncertificated shares, the Board may from time to time:

- (a) permit appointments of a proxy by means of a communication sent in electronic form in the form of an uncertificated proxy instruction; and
- (b) permit supplements to, or amendments or revocations of, any such uncertificated proxy instruction by the same means.

The Board may in addition prescribe the method of determining the time at which any such uncertificated proxy instruction is to be treated as received by the Company or a participant acting on its behalf. The Board may treat any such uncertificated proxy instruction which purports to be or is expressed to be sent on behalf of a holder of a share as sufficient evidence of the authority of the person sending that instruction to send it on behalf of that holder.

73. **Revocation of proxy**

A vote given shall be valid in the event of the death or mental disorder of the principal or the revocation of the instrument of proxy, or of the authority under which the instrument of proxy was executed, or the transfer of the share for which the instrument of proxy is given, unless notice in writing of such death, mental disorder, revocation or transfer shall have been received by the Company at the Office, or at such other place as has been appointed for the deposit of instruments of proxy, no later than the last time at which an appointment of a proxy should have been received in order for it to be valid for use at the meeting at which the vote was given.

74. **Availability of appointments of proxy**

The Directors may at the expense of the Company send or make available appointments of proxy or invitations to appoint a proxy to the members by post or by electronic means or otherwise (with or without provision for their return prepaid) for use at any general meeting or at any separate class meeting, either in blank or nominating in the alternative any one or more of the Directors or any other person. If for the purpose of any meeting, appointments of proxy or invitations to appoint as proxy a person or one of a number of persons specified in the invitations are issued at the Company's

expense, they shall be issued to all (and not to some only) of the members entitled to be sent a notice of the meeting and to vote at it. The accidental omission, or the failure due to circumstances beyond the Company's control, to send or make available such an appointment of proxy or give such an invitation to, or the non-receipt thereof by, any member entitled to attend and vote at a meeting shall not invalidate the proceedings at that meeting.

75. **Corporate representatives**

75.1 A corporation (whether or not a company within the meaning of the Act) which is a member may, by resolution of its Directors or other governing body, authorise such person as it thinks fit to act as its representative (or, as the case may be, representatives) at any meeting of the Company or at any separate meeting of the holders of any class of shares.

75.2 Any person so authorised shall be entitled to exercise the same powers on behalf of the corporation (in respect of that part of the corporation's holdings to which the authority relates) as the corporation could exercise if it were an individual member.

75.3 The corporation shall for the purposes of these Articles be deemed to be present in person and at any such meeting if a person so authorised is present at it, and all references to attendance and voting in person shall be construed accordingly.

75.4 A Director, the Secretary or some person authorised for the purpose by the Secretary may require the representative to produce a certified copy of the resolution so authorising him or such other evidence of his authority reasonably satisfactory to them before permitting him to exercise his powers.

75.5 A vote given by a corporate representative shall be valid notwithstanding that he is no longer authorised to represent the member unless notice of the revocation of appointment was delivered in writing to the Company at such place or address and by such time as is specified in Article 74 for the revocation of the appointment of a proxy.

76. **Failure to disclose interests in shares**

76.1 If a member, or any other person appearing to be interested in shares held by that member, has been issued with a notice under section 793 of the Act (**section 793 notice**) and has failed in relation to any shares (**default shares**, which expression includes any shares issued after the date of such notice in right of those shares) to give the Company the information required by the section 793 notice within the prescribed period from the service of the notice, the following sanctions shall apply unless the Board determines otherwise:

- (a) the member shall not be entitled in respect of the default shares to be present or to vote (either in person or by representative or proxy) at any general meeting or at any separate meeting of the holders of any class of shares or to exercise any other right conferred by membership in relation to any such meeting; and
- (b) where the default shares represent at least 0.25% in nominal value of the issued shares of their class (calculated exclusive of any shares held as treasury shares):

- (i) any dividend or other money payable for such shares shall be withheld by the Company, which shall not have any obligation to pay interest on it, and the member shall not be entitled to elect, pursuant to Article 135, to receive shares instead of that dividend; and
 - (ii) no transfer, other than an excepted transfer, of any shares held by the member shall be registered unless the member himself is not in default of supplying the required information and the member proves to the satisfaction of the Board that no person in default of supplying such information is interested in any of the shares that are the subject of the transfer.
 - (c) For the purposes of ensuring Article 76.1(b)(ii) can apply to all shares held by the member, the Company may in accordance with the uncertificated securities rules, issue a written notification to the Operator requiring conversion into certificated form of any share held by the member in uncertificated form.
- 76.2 Where the sanctions under Article 76.1 apply in relation to any shares, they shall cease to have effect (and any dividends withheld under Article 76.1(b) shall become payable):
- (a) if the shares are transferred by means of an excepted transfer but only in respect of the shares transferred; or
 - (b) at the end of the period of seven days (or such shorter period as the Board may determine) following receipt by the Company of the information required by the section 793 notice and the Board being fully satisfied that such information is full and complete.
- 76.3 Where, on the basis of information obtained from a member in respect of any share held by him, the Company issues a section 793 notice to any other person, it shall at the same time send a copy of the notice to the member, but the accidental omission to do so, or the non-receipt by the member of the copy, shall not invalidate or otherwise affect the application of Article 76.1.
- 76.4 For the purposes of this Article:
- (a) a person, other than the member holding a share, shall be treated as appearing to be interested in that share if the member has informed the Company that the person is, or may be, so interested, or if the Company (after taking account of any information obtained from the member or, pursuant to a section 793 notice, from anyone else) knows or has reasonable cause to believe that the person is, or may be, so interested;
 - (b) **interested** shall be construed as it is for the purpose of section 793 of the Act;
 - (c) reference to a person having failed to give the Company the information required by a notice, or being in default as regards supplying such information, includes reference:

- (i) to his having failed or refused to give all of any part of it; and
- (ii) to his having given information which he knows to be false in a material particular or having recklessly given information which is false in a material particular;
- (d) prescribed period means fourteen (14) days;
- (e) **excepted transfer** means, in relation to any shares held by a member:
 - (i) a transfer by way of or pursuant to acceptance of a takeover offer for the Company (within the meaning of section 974 of the Act); or
 - (ii) a transfer in consequence of a sale made through Nasdaq or any other stock exchange on which the Company's shares are normally traded; or
 - (iii) a transfer which is shown to the satisfaction of the Board to be made in consequence of a sale of the whole of the beneficial interest in the shares to a person who is unconnected with the member and with any other person appearing to be interested in the shares.

76.5 Nothing contained in this Article shall be taken to limit the powers of the Company under section 794 of the Act.

77. **Power of sale of shares of untraced members**

77.1 The Company shall be entitled to sell at the best price reasonably obtainable any share of a member, or any share to which a person is entitled by transmission, if and provided that:

- (a) during the period of twelve (12) years before the date of sending of the notice referred to in Article 77.1(b) no cheque, order or warrant in respect of such share sent by the Company through the post in a pre-paid envelope addressed to the member or to the person entitled by transmission to the share, at his address on the Register or other last known address given by the member or person to which cheques, orders or warrants in respect of such share are to be sent has been cashed and the Company has received no communications in respect of such share from such member or person entitled, provided that during such period of twelve (12) years the Company has paid at least three cash dividends (whether interim or final) and no such dividend has been claimed by the person entitled to it;
- (b) on or after expiry of the said period of twelve (12) years, the Company has given notice of its intention to sell such share by sending a notice to the member or person entitled by transmission to the share at his address on the Register or other last known address given by the member or person entitled by transmission to the share and before sending such a notice to the member or other person entitled by transmission, the Company must have used reasonable efforts to trace the member or other person entitled, engaging, if considered appropriate, a professional asset

reunification company or other tracing agent and/or giving notice of its intention to sell the share by advertisement in a national newspaper and in a newspaper circulating in the area of the address of the member or person entitled by transmission to the share shown in the Register;

- (c) during the further period of three months following the date of such notice and prior to the exercise of the power of sale the Company has not received any communication in respect of such share from the member or person entitled by transmission; and
- (d) the Company has given notice to Nasdaq or the SEC of its intention to make such sale, if shares of the class concerned are listed on Nasdaq.

77.2 To give effect to any sale of shares under this Article:

- (a) in the case of a share in certificated form, the Board may authorise any person to execute an instrument of transfer of the share to the purchaser or a person nominated by the purchaser and take such other steps (including the giving of directions to or on behalf of the holder, who shall be bound by them) as it thinks fit to effect the transfer. The Board may authorise some person to transfer the shares in question and may enter the name of the transferee in respect of the transferred shares in the Register even if no share certificate has been lodged for such shares and may issue a new certificate to the transferee. An instrument of transfer executed by that person shall be as effective as if it had been executed by the holder of, or the person entitled by transmission to, the shares.
- (b) in the case of a share in uncertificated form, the Directors may:
 - (i) to enable the Company to deal with the share in accordance with the provisions of this Article, require or procure any relevant person or the Operator (as applicable) to convert the share into certificated form; and
 - (ii) after such conversion authorise any person to execute an instrument of transfer of the shares to the purchase or person nominated by the purchaser and take such other steps (including the giving of directions to or on behalf of the holder, who shall be bound by them) as it thinks fit to effect the transfer.

77.3 The buyer shall not be bound to see to the application of the purchase monies, nor shall his title to the shares be affected by any irregularity or invalidity in the proceedings in reference to the sale. If the shares are in uncertificated form, in accordance with the uncertificated securities rules, the Board may issue a written notification to the Operator requiring the conversion of the share to certificated form.

77.4 If during the period of twelve (12) years referred to in Article 77.1, or during any period ending on the date when all the requirements of Articles 77.1(a) to 77.1(d) have been satisfied, any additional shares have been issued in respect of those held at the beginning of, or previously so issued during, any such period and all the requirements of Articles 77.1(b) to 77.1(d) have been satisfied in regard to such additional shares, the Company shall also be entitled to sell the additional shares.

78. **Application of proceeds of sale of shares of untraced members**

The Company shall account to the member or other person entitled to the share for the net proceeds of a sale under Article 77 by carrying all monies relating to such sale to a separate account. The Company shall be deemed to be a debtor to, and not a trustee for, such member or other person in respect of such monies. Monies carried to such separate account may either be employed in the business of the Company or invested in such investments as the Board may think fit. No interest shall be payable to such member or other person in respect of such monies and the Company does not have to account for any money earned on them.

79. **Number of Directors**

Unless otherwise determined by the Company by ordinary resolution, the number of Directors (other than any alternate Directors) shall be at least two and not more than fifteen (15).

80. **Power of company to appoint Directors**

Subject to these Articles and the Companies Acts, the Company may by ordinary resolution appoint a person who is willing to act to be a Director, either to fill a vacancy or as an addition to the existing Board but the total number of Directors shall not exceed any maximum number fixed in accordance with these Articles.

81. **Power of board to appoint Directors**

Subject to these Articles, the Board shall have power at any time to appoint any person who is willing to act as a Director, either to fill a vacancy or as an addition to the existing Board but the total number of Directors shall not exceed any maximum number fixed in accordance with these Articles.

82. **Eligibility of new Directors**

82.1 No person, other than a retiring Director (by rotation or otherwise), shall be appointed or re-appointed a Director at any general meeting unless:

- (a) he is recommended by the Board; or
- (b) at least seven but not more than forty-two (42) clear days before the date appointed for the meeting the Company has received notice from a member (other than the person proposed) entitled to vote at the meeting of his intention to propose a resolution for the appointment or re-appointment of that person, stating the particulars which would, if he were so appointed or re-appointed, be required to be included in the Company's register of Directors and a notice executed by that person of his willingness to be appointed or re-appointed, is lodged at the Office.

82.2 A Director need not be a member of the Company.

83.	Classes and Retirement of Directors
83.1	Following the closing of the Listing, the Directors shall be divided into three classes designated as “Class I”, “Class II” and “Class III”, respectively. The Board is authorised to assign members of the Board already in office to such classes at the time the classification becomes effective.
83.2	At the first annual general meeting of the Company following the closing of the Listing, each Director in Class I shall retire from office but shall be eligible for re-appointment by ordinary resolution at such annual general meeting and, in each case, where such Director is so re-appointed, they shall be entitled to serve until the third anniversary of such annual general meeting of the Company, at which stage such Director shall retire from office but shall be eligible for further re-appointment.
83.3	At the second annual general meeting of the Company following the closing of the Listing, each Director in Class II shall retire from office but shall be eligible for re-appointment by ordinary resolution at such annual general meeting and, in each case, where such Director is so re-appointed, they shall be entitled to serve until the third anniversary of such annual general meeting of the Company, at which stage such Director shall retire from office but shall be eligible for further re-appointment.
83.4	At the third annual general meeting of the Company following the closing of the Listing, each Director in Class III shall retire from office but shall be eligible for re-appointment by ordinary resolution at such annual general meeting and, in each case, where such Director is so re-appointed, they shall be entitled to serve until the third anniversary of such annual general meeting of the Company, at which stage such Director shall retire from office but shall be eligible for further re-appointment.
83.5	At each succeeding annual general meeting of the Company following the third annual general meeting of the Company after the closing of the Listing, Directors shall be elected to serve for a term of three years to succeed the Directors of the class whose terms expire at such annual general meeting.
83.6	Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions, each Director shall serve until their successor is duly elected and qualified or until their earlier death, resignation or removal.
84.	Deemed re-appointment
84.1	A Director who retires at an annual general meeting shall (unless he is removed from office or his office is vacated in accordance with these Articles) retain office until the close of the meeting at which he retires or (if earlier) when a resolution is passed at that meeting not to fill the vacancy or to elect another person in his place or the resolution to re-appoint him is put to the meeting and lost.
84.2	If the Company, at any meeting at which a Director retires in accordance with these Articles does not fill the office vacated by such Director, the retiring Director, if willing to act, shall be deemed to be re-appointed unless at that meeting a resolution is passed not to fill the vacancy or elect another person in his place or unless the resolution to re-appoint him is put to the meeting and lost.

85. **Procedure if insufficient Directors appointed**

- 85.1 If:
- (a) at the annual general meeting in any year any resolution or resolutions for the appointment or re-appointment of the persons eligible for appointment or re-appointment as Directors are put to the meeting and lost; and
 - (b) at the end of that meeting the number of Directors is fewer than any minimum number of Directors required under Article 79.

All retiring Directors who stood for re-appointment at that meeting (**Retiring Directors**) shall be deemed to have been re-appointed as Directors and shall remain in office but the Retiring Directors may only act for the purpose of filling vacancies, convening general meetings of the Company and performing such duties as are essential to maintain the Company as a going concern, and not for any other purpose.

- 85.2 The Retiring Directors shall convene a general meeting as soon as reasonably practicable following the meeting referred to in Article 85.1 and they shall retire from office at that meeting. If at the end of any meeting convened under this Article the number of Directors is fewer than any minimum number of Directors required under Article 79, the provisions of this Article shall also apply to that meeting.

86. **Removal of Directors**

In addition to any power of removal conferred by the Companies Acts, the Company may by special resolution, or by ordinary resolution of which special notice has been given in accordance with section 312 of the Act, remove a Director before the expiry of his period of office (without prejudice to a claim for damages for breach of contract or otherwise) and may (subject to these Articles) by ordinary resolution appoint another person who is willing to act to be a Director in his place.

87. **Vacation of office by Director**

- 87.1 Without prejudice to the provisions for retirement (by rotation or otherwise) contained in these Articles, the office of a Director shall be vacated if:
- (a) he resigns by notice in writing delivered to the Secretary at the Office or at an address specified by the Company for the purposes of communication by electronic means or tendered at a Board meeting;
 - (b) he offers to resign by notice in writing delivered to the Secretary at the Office or at an address specified by the Company for the purposes of communication by electronic means or tendered at a Board meeting and the Board resolves to accept such offer;

- (c) he is requested to resign by all of the other Directors by notice in writing addressed to him at his address as shown in the register of Directors (without prejudice to any claim for damages which he may have for breach of any contract between him and the Company);
- (d) he ceases to be a Director by virtue of any provision of the Companies Acts, is removed from office pursuant to these Articles or the Act or becomes prohibited by law or the Nasdaq Rules from being a Director;
- (e) he becomes bankrupt or makes an arrangement or composition with his creditors generally;
- (f) a registered medical practitioner who is treating that person gives a written opinion to the Company stating that person has become physically or mentally incapable of acting as a Director and may remain so for more than three months, or he is or has been suffering from mental or physical ill health and the Board resolves that his office be vacated; or
- (g) he is absent (whether or not his alternate Director appointed by him attends), without the permission of the Board, from Board meetings for six consecutive months and a notice is served on him personally, or at his residential address provided to the Company under section 165 of the Act signed by all the other Directors stating that he shall cease to be a Director with immediate effect (and such notice may consist of several copies each signed by one or more Directors).

87.2 If the office of a Director is vacated for any reason, he shall cease to be a member of any committee or sub-committee of the Board.

88. **Resolution as to vacancy conclusive**

A resolution of the Board declaring a Director to have vacated office under the terms of Article 88 shall be conclusive as to the fact and ground of vacation stated in the resolution.

89. **Appointment of alternate Directors**

89.1 Each Director may appoint any person (including another Director) to be his alternate and may at his discretion remove an alternate Director so appointed. Any appointment or removal of an alternate Director must be by written notice delivered to the Office or at an address specified by the Company for the purposes of communication by electronic means or tendered at a Board meeting or in any other manner approved by the Board. The appointment requires the approval of the Board unless it has been previously approved or the appointee is another Director.

89.2 An alternate Director must provide the particulars, and sign any form for public filing required by the Companies Acts relating to his appointment.

90. **Alternate Directors’ participation in Board meetings**
- 90.1 Every alternate Director is (subject to his giving to the Company an address within the United Kingdom at which notices may be served on him (and, if applicable, an address in relation to which electronic communications may be received by him)) entitled to receive notice of all meetings of the Board and all committees of the Board of which his appointor is a member and, in his appointor’s absence, to attend and vote at such meetings and to exercise all the powers, rights, duties and authorities of his appointor. Each person acting as an alternate Director shall have a separate vote at Board meetings for each Director for whom he acts as alternate Director in addition to his own vote if he is also a Director, but he shall count as only one for the purpose of determining whether a quorum is present.
- 90.2 Signature by an alternate Director of any resolution in writing of the Board or a committee of the Board will, unless the notice of his appointment provides otherwise, be as effective as signature by his appointor.

91. **Alternate Director responsible for own acts**

Each person acting as an alternate Director will be an officer of the Company, will alone be responsible to the Company for his own acts and defaults and will not be deemed to be the agent of the Director appointing him.

92. **Interests of alternate Director**

An alternate Director is entitled to contract and be interested in and benefit from contracts or arrangements with the Company, to be repaid expenses and to be indemnified to the same extent as if he were a Director. However, he is not entitled to receive from the Company any fees for his services as alternate, except such part (if any) of the fee payable to his appointor as such appointor may by written notice to the Company direct.

93. **Revocation of alternate Director**

An alternate Director will cease to be an alternate Director:

- (a) if his appointor revokes his appointment; or
- (b) if he resigns his office by notice in writing to the Company; or
- (c) if his appointor ceases for any reason to be a Director, provided that if any Director retires but is re-appointed or deemed to be re-appointed at the same meeting, any valid appointment of an alternate Director which was in force immediately before his retirement shall remain in force; or
- (d) if any event happens in relation to him which, if he were a Director otherwise appointed, would cause him to vacate his office.

94. **Directors’ fees**

Each of the Directors may be paid a fee at such rate as may from time to time be determined by the Board. However, the aggregate of all fees payable to the Directors (other than amounts payable under any other provision of these Articles) must not exceed \$2,500,000 a year or such higher amount as may from time to time be decided by ordinary resolution of the Company. Any fees payable under this Article shall be distinct from any salary, remuneration or other amounts payable to a Director under any other provisions of these Articles and shall accrue from day to day.

95. **Expenses**

Each Director may be paid his reasonable travelling, hotel and other expenses properly incurred by him in or about the performance of his duties as Director, including any expenses incurred in attending meetings of the Board or any committee of the Board or general meetings or separate meetings of the holders of any class of shares or debentures of the Company. Subject to the Act, the Directors shall have the power to make arrangements to provide a Director with funds to meet expenditure incurred or to be incurred by him for the purposes of the Company or for the purpose of enabling him to perform his duties as an officer of the Company or to enable him to avoid incurring any such expenditure.

96. **Additional remuneration**

If by arrangement with the Board any Director shall perform or render any special duties or services outside his ordinary duties as a Director and not in his capacity as a holder of employment or executive office, he may be paid such reasonable additional remuneration (whether by way of salary, commission, participation in profits or otherwise) as the Board may determine.

97. **Remuneration of executive Directors**

The salary or remuneration of any Director appointed to hold any employment or executive office in accordance with these Articles may be either a fixed sum of money, or may altogether or in part be governed by business done or profits made or otherwise determined by the Board, and may be in addition to or instead of any fee payable to him for his services as Director under these Articles.

98. **Pensions and other benefits**

98.1 The Board may exercise all the powers of the Company to provide pensions or other retirement or superannuation benefits and to provide death or disability benefits or other allowances or gratuities (whether by insurance or otherwise) for any person who is or has at any time been a Director or employee of:

- (a) the Company;
- (b) any company which is or was a holding company or a subsidiary undertaking of the Company;

-
- (c) any company which is or was allied to or associated with the Company or a subsidiary undertaking or holding company of the Company; or
 - (d) a predecessor in business of the Company or of any holding company or subsidiary undertaking of the Company.

and, in each case, for any member of his family (including a spouse or former spouse) and any person who is or was dependent on him.

98.2 The Board may establish, maintain, subscribe and contribute to any scheme, institution, association, club, trust or fund and pay premiums and, subject to the Companies Acts, lend money or make payments to, guarantee or give an indemnity in respect of, or give any financial or other assistance in connection with any of the matters set out in Article 99.1. The Board may procure any of such matters to be done by the Company either alone or in conjunction with any other person. Any Director or former Director shall be entitled to receive and retain for his own benefit any pension or other benefit provided under this Article and shall not have to account for it to the Company. The receipt of any such benefit will not disqualify any person from being or becoming a Director of the Company.

99. **Powers of the Board**

99.1 Subject to the Companies Acts, these Articles and to any directions given by special resolution of the Company, the business of the Company will be managed by the Board, which may exercise all the powers of the Company, whether relating to the management of the business or not.

99.2 No alteration of these Articles and no such direction given by the Company shall invalidate any prior act of the Board which would have been valid if such alteration had not been made or such direction had not been given. Provisions contained elsewhere in these Articles as to any specific power of the Board shall not be deemed to limit the general powers given by this Article.

100. **Powers of Directors if less than minimum number**

If the number of Directors is less than the minimum prescribed in Article 79 or decided by the Company by ordinary resolution, the remaining Director or Directors may act only for the purposes of appointing an additional Director or Directors to make up that minimum or convening a general meeting of the Company for the purpose of making such appointment. If no Director or Directors is or are able or willing to act, two members may convene a general meeting for the purpose of appointing Directors. An additional Director appointed in this way holds office (subject to these Articles) only until the dissolution of the next annual general meeting after his appointment unless he is reappointed during the annual general meeting.

101. **Powers of executive Directors**

The Board or any committee authorised by the Board may:

- (a) delegate or entrust to and confer on any Director holding executive office (including a Chief Executive or Managing Director) such of its powers, authorities and discretions (with power to sub-delegate) for such time, on such terms and subject to such conditions as it thinks fit; and
- (b) revoke, withdraw, alter or vary all or any of such powers.

102. **Delegation to committees**

102.1 The Board may delegate any of its powers, authorities and discretions (with power to sub-delegate) for such time on such terms and subject to such conditions as it thinks fit to any committee consisting of one or more Directors and (if thought fit) one or more other persons provided that:

- (a) a majority of the members of a committee shall be Directors; and
- (b) no resolution of a committee shall be effective unless a majority of those present when it is passed are Directors or alternate Directors.

102.2 The Board may confer such powers either collaterally with, or to the exclusion of and in substitution for, all or any of the powers of the Board in that respect and may revoke, withdraw, alter or vary any such powers and discharge any such committee in whole or in part. Insofar as any power, authority or discretion is so delegated, any reference in these Articles to the exercise by the Board of such power, authority or discretion shall be construed as if it were a reference to the exercise of such power, authority or discretion by such committee.

103. **Local management**

103.1 The Board may establish any local or divisional boards or agencies for managing any of the affairs of the Company in any specified locality, either in the United Kingdom or elsewhere, and appoint any persons to be members of such local or divisional board, or any managers or agents, and may fix their remuneration.

103.2 The Board may delegate to any local or divisional board, manager or agent so appointed any of its powers, authorities and discretions (with power to sub-delegate) and may authorise the members of any such local or divisional board, or any of them, to fill any vacancies and to act notwithstanding vacancies. Any such appointment or delegation under this Article may be made, on such terms and conditions as the Board may think fit. The Board may confer such powers either collaterally with, or to the exclusion of and in substitution for, all or any of the powers of the Board, and the Board may remove any person so appointed and may annul or vary all or any of such powers, but no person dealing in good faith and without notice of any such annulment or variation shall be affected by it.

103.3 Subject to any terms and conditions expressly imposed by the Board, the proceedings of any local or divisional board or agency with two or more members shall be governed by such of these Articles as regulate the proceedings of the Board, so far as they are capable of applying.

104. **Power of attorney**

The Board may, by power of attorney or otherwise, appoint any person or persons to be the agent or attorney of the Company and may delegate to any such person or persons any of its powers, authorities and discretions (with power to sub-delegate), in each case for such purposes and for such time, on such terms (including as to remuneration) and conditions as it thinks fit. The Board may confer such powers either collaterally with, or to the exclusion of and in substitution for, all or any of the powers of the Board in that respect and may revoke, withdraw, alter or vary any of such powers.

105. **Exercise of voting power**

The Board may exercise or cause to be exercised the voting power conferred by the shares in any other company held or owned by the Company, or any power of appointment to be exercised by the Company, in such manner as it thinks fit (including the exercise of the voting power or power of appointment in favour of the appointment of any Director as a Director or other officer or employee of such company or in favour of the payment of remuneration to the Directors, officers or employees of such company).

106. **Provision for employees on cessation of business**

The Board may, by resolution, sanction the exercise of the power to make provision for the benefit of persons employed or formerly employed by the Company or any of its subsidiary undertakings, in connection with the cessation or the transfer to any person of the whole or part of the undertaking of the Company or that subsidiary undertaking, but any such resolution shall not be sufficient for payments to or for the benefit of Directors, former Directors or shadow Directors.

107. **Overseas registers**

Subject to the Companies Acts, the Company may keep an overseas, local or other register and the Board may make and vary such regulations as it thinks fit respecting the keeping of any such register.

108. **Borrowing powers**

108.1 Subject to these Articles and the Companies Acts, the Board may exercise all the powers of the Company to:

- (a) borrow money;
- (b) indemnify and guarantee;
- (c) mortgage or charge all or any part of the undertaking, property and assets (present and future) and uncalled capital of the Company;
- (d) create and issue debentures and other securities; and

- (e) give security either outright or as collateral security for any debt, liability or obligation of the Company or of any third party.
- 108.2 The Board shall restrict the borrowings of the Company and exercise all voting and other rights or powers of control exercisable by the Company in relation to its subsidiary undertakings (if any) so as to secure (as regards the subsidiary undertakings, so far as by such exercise they can secure) that the aggregate of the amounts borrowed by the Group and remaining outstanding at any time (excluding intra-Group borrowings) shall not without the previous sanction of an ordinary resolution of the Company exceed an amount equal to US\$400,000,000. The limit in this Article 108.2 may be varied, increased, reduced or relaxed (temporarily or permanently) or the same replaced with a fixed monetary cap at any time and from time to time with the sanction of an ordinary resolution of Shareholders.
- 108.3 For the purpose of this Article:
- (a) **Group** means the Company and its subsidiary undertakings for the time being;
- (b) **minority proportion** means a proportion equal to the proportion of the issued share capital of a partly-owned subsidiary undertaking which is not attributable to a member of the Group.
- 108.4 Borrowings shall be deemed to include the following except in so far as otherwise taken into account:
- (a) the nominal amount of any issued and paid up share capital (other than equity share capital) of any subsidiary undertaking of the Company owned otherwise than by a member of the Group;
- (b) the nominal amount of any other issued and paid up share capital and the principal amount of any debentures or borrowed moneys which is not at the relevant time beneficially owned by a member of the Group, the redemption or repayment of which is the subject of a guarantee or indemnity by a member of the Group or which any member of the Group may be required to buy;
- (c) the principal amount of any debenture (whether secured or unsecured) of a member of the Group beneficially owned otherwise than by a member of the Group;
- (d) the outstanding amount raised by acceptances by any bank or accepting house under any acceptance credit opened by or on behalf of any member of the Group;
- (e) the minority proportion of moneys borrowed by a member of the Group and owing to a partly-owned subsidiary undertaking.
- 108.5 Borrowings shall not include and shall be deemed not to include:
- (a) borrowings incurred by any member of the Group for the purpose of repaying within six months of the borrowing the whole or any part (with or without premium) of any borrowings of that or other member of the Group then outstanding, pending their application for such purpose within such period;

	(b)	the minority proportion of moneys borrowed by a partly owned subsidiary undertaking and not owing to another member of the Group.
108.6		When the aggregate principal amount of borrowings required to be taken into account on any particular date is being ascertained, any particular borrowing then outstanding which is denominated or repayable in a currency other than sterling shall be notionally converted into sterling at the rate of exchange prevailing in London on the last business day before that date or, if it would result in a lower figure, at the rate of exchange prevailing in London on the last business day six months before that date. For these purposes the rate of exchange shall be taken to be the spot rate in London recommended by a London clearing bank, selected by the Board, as being the most appropriate rate for the purchase by the company of the currency in question for sterling on the day in question.
108.7		A certificate or report by the auditors of the Company as to the amount of any borrowings or to the effect that the limit imposed by this Article has not been or will not be exceeded at any particular time or times, shall be conclusive evidence of such amount or fact for the purposes of this Article. Nevertheless the Board may at any time rely on a bona fide estimate of the aggregate of the borrowings. If, in consequence, the limit on borrowings set out in this Article is inadvertently exceeded, the amount of borrowings equal to the excess may be disregarded for ninety (90) days after the date on which by reason of a determination of the auditors of the Company or otherwise the Board becomes aware that such a situation has or may have arisen.
108.8		No person dealing with the Company or any of its subsidiary undertakings shall be concerned to see or enquire whether the said limit is observed and no debt incurred or security given in excess of such limit shall be invalid or ineffectual unless the lender or recipient of the security had, at the time the debt was incurred or security given, express notice that the said limit had been or would be exceeded.
109.		Board meetings
109.1		The Board can decide when and where to have meetings and how they will be conducted. They may also adjourn meetings.
109.2		A Board meeting can be called by any Director. The Secretary must call a Board meeting if asked to do so by a Director.
110.		Notice of Board meetings
110.1		Notice of a Board meeting shall be deemed to be duly given to a Director if it is given to him personally or by word of mouth or given in writing or by electronic means to him at his last known address or any other address given by him to the Company for that purpose.

110.2	A Director may waive the requirement that notice be given to him of any Board meeting, either prospectively or retrospectively and any retrospective waiver shall not affect the validity of the meeting or of any business conducted at the meeting.
111.	Quorum
111.1	The quorum necessary for the transaction of business shall be at least two persons, each being a Director or an alternate Director. A duly convened meeting of the Board at which a quorum is present shall be competent to exercise all or any of the authorities, powers, and discretions for the time being vested in or exercisable by the Board.
111.2	If a Director ceases to be a Director at a Board meeting, he can continue to be present and to act as a Director and be counted in the quorum until the end of the meeting if no other Director objects and if otherwise a quorum of Directors would not be present.
112.	Chairman
112.1	The Board may appoint one or more of its body as chairman or joint chairman and one or more of its body as deputy chairman of its meetings and may determine the period for which he is or they are to hold office and may at any time remove him or them from office.
112.2	If no such chairman or deputy chairman is elected, or if at any meeting neither a chairman nor a deputy chairman is present within ten (10) minutes of the time appointed for holding the same, the Directors present shall choose one of their number to be chairman of such meeting. In the event two or more joint chairmen or, in the absence of a chairman, two or more deputy chairman being present, the joint chairman or deputy chairman to act as chairman of the meeting shall be decided by those Directors present.
113.	Voting
Questions arising at any Board meeting shall be determined by a majority of votes. In the case of an equality of votes the chairman of that meeting shall have a second or casting vote (unless he is not entitled to vote on the resolution in question).	
114.	Participation by telephone or other form of communication
114.1	Any Director or his alternate may validly participate in a meeting of the Board or a committee of the Board through the medium of conference telephone or any other form of communications equipment (whether in use when these Articles are adopted or developed subsequently), provided that all persons participating in the meeting are able to hear and speak to each other throughout such meeting.
114.2	A person so participating by telephone or other communication shall be deemed to be present in person at the meeting and shall be counted in a quorum and entitled to vote. Such a meeting shall be deemed to take place where the largest group of those participating is assembled or, if there is no group which is larger than any other group, where the chairman of the meeting then is.

- 114.3 A resolution passed at any meeting held in the above manner, and signed by the chairman of the meeting, shall be as valid and effectual as if it had been passed at a meeting of the Board (or committee, as the case may be) duly convened and held.
115. **Resolution in writing**
- 115.1 A resolution in writing signed or confirmed electronically by all the Directors for the time being entitled to receive notice of a Board meeting and to vote on the resolution and not being less than a quorum (or by all the members of a committee of the Board for the time being entitled to receive notice of such committee meeting and to vote on the resolution and not being less than a quorum of that committee), shall be as valid and effective for all purposes as a resolution duly passed at a meeting of the Board (or committee, as the case may be).
- 115.2 Such a resolution may consist of several documents or electronic communications in the same form each signed or authenticated by one or more of the Directors or members of the relevant committee.
116. **Proceedings of committees**
- All committees of the Board shall, in the exercise of the powers delegated to them and in the transaction of business, conform with any mode of proceedings and regulations which the Board may prescribe and subject to this shall be governed by such of these Articles as regulate the proceedings of the Board as are capable of applying.
117. **Minutes of proceedings**
- 117.1 The Board shall keep minutes of all shareholder meetings, all Board meetings and meetings of committees of the Board. The minutes must include the names of the Directors present.
- 117.2 Any such minutes, if purporting to be signed by the chairman of the meeting at which the proceedings were held or by the chairman of the next meeting or the Secretary, shall be evidence of the matters stated in such minutes without any further proof.
118. **Validity of proceedings**
- All acts done by a meeting of the Board, or of a committee of the Board, or by any person acting as a Director, alternate Director or member of a committee shall be valid even if it is discovered afterwards that there was some defect in the appointment of any person or persons acting, or that they or any of them were or was disqualified from holding office or not entitled to vote, or had in any way vacated their or his office.
119. **Transactions or other arrangements with the company**
- 119.1 Subject to the Companies Acts and provided he has declared the nature and extent of his interest in accordance with the requirements of the Companies Acts, a Director who is in any way, whether directly or indirectly, interested in an existing or proposed transaction or arrangement with the Company may:

- (a) be a party to, or otherwise interested in, any transaction or arrangement with the Company or in which the Company is otherwise (directly or indirectly) interested;
 - (b) act by himself or through his firm in a professional capacity for the Company (otherwise than as auditor) and he or his firm shall be entitled to remuneration for professional services as if he were not a Director;
 - (c) be or become a Director or other officer of, or employed by, or a party to a transaction or arrangement with, or otherwise interested in, any body corporate in which the Company is otherwise (directly or indirectly) interested; and
 - (d) hold any office or place of profit with the Company (except as auditor) in conjunction with his office of Director for such period and upon such terms, including as to remuneration as the Board may decide.
- 119.2 A Director shall not, save as he may otherwise agree, be accountable to the Company for any benefit which he derives from any such contract, transaction or arrangement or from any such office or employment or from any interest in any such body corporate and no such contract, transaction or arrangement shall be liable to be avoided on the grounds of any such interest or benefit nor shall the receipt of any such remuneration or other benefit constitute a breach of his duty under section 176 of the Act.
120. **Authorisation of Directors' conflicts of interest**
- 120.1 The Board may, in accordance with the requirements set out in this Article, authorise any matter or situation proposed to them by any Director which would, if not authorised, involve a Director (an **Interested Director**) breaching his duty under the Act to avoid conflicts of interest.
- 120.2 A Director seeking authorisation in respect of a conflict of interest shall declare to the Board the nature and extent of his interest in a conflict of interest as soon as is reasonably practicable. The Director shall provide the Board with such details of the matter as are necessary for the Board to decide how to address the conflict of interest together with such additional information as may be requested by the Board.
- 120.3 Any authorisation under this Article will be effective only if:
- (a) to the extent permitted by the Act, the matter in question shall have been proposed by any Director for consideration in the same way that any other matter may be proposed to the Directors under the provisions of these Articles;
 - (b) any requirement as to the quorum for consideration of the relevant matter is met without counting the Interested Director and any other interested Director; and
 - (c) the matter is agreed to without the Interested Director voting or would be agreed to if the Interested Director's and any other interested Director's vote is not counted.

- 120.4 Any authorisation of a conflict of interest under this Article must be recorded in writing (but the authority shall be effective whether or not the terms are so recorded) and may (whether at the time of giving the authorisation or subsequently):
- (a) extend to any actual or potential conflict of interest which may reasonably be expected to arise out of the matter or situation so authorised;
 - (b) provide that the Interested Director be excluded from the receipt of documents and information and the participation in discussions (whether at meetings of the Directors or otherwise) related to the conflict of interest;
 - (c) impose upon the Interested Director such other terms for the purposes of dealing with the conflict of interest as the Directors think fit;
 - (d) provide that, where the Interested Director obtains, or has obtained (through his involvement in the conflict of interest and otherwise than through his position as a Director) information that is confidential to a third party, he will not be obliged to disclose that information to the Company, or to use it in relation to the Company's affairs where to do so would amount to a breach of that confidence; and
 - (e) permit the Interested Director to absent himself from the discussion of matters relating to the conflict of interest at any meeting of the Directors and be excused from reviewing papers prepared by, or for, the Directors to the extent they relate to such matters.
- 120.5 Where the Directors authorise a conflict of interest, the Interested Director will be obliged to conduct himself in accordance with any terms and conditions imposed by the Directors in relation to the conflict of interest.
- 120.6 The Directors may revoke or vary such authorisation at any time, but this will not affect anything done by the Interested Director, prior to such revocation or variation, in accordance with the terms of such authorisation.
- 120.7 A Director is not required, by reason of being a Director (or because of the fiduciary relationship established by reason of being a Director), to account to the Company for any remuneration, profit or other benefit which he derives from or in connection with a relationship involving a conflict of interest which has been authorised by the Directors or by the Company in general meeting (subject in each case to any terms, limits or conditions attaching to that authorisation) and no contract shall be liable to be avoided on such grounds.
- 120.8 If he has disclosed to the Board the nature and extent of his interest to the extent required by the Companies Acts, a Director is not required, by reason of being a Director (or because of the fiduciary relationship established by reason of being a Director), to account to the Company for any remuneration or other benefit which he derives from or in connection with:
- (a) being a party to, or otherwise interested in, any transaction or arrangement with:

- (i) the Company or in which the Company is interested; or
- (ii) a body corporate in which the Company is interested;
- (b) acting (otherwise than as auditor) alone or through his organisation in a professional capacity for the Company (and he or that organisation is entitled to remuneration for professional services as if he were not a Director); or
- (c) being a director or other officer of, or employed by, or otherwise interested in any other body corporate in which the Company is interested.

120.9 A Director's receipt of any remuneration or other benefit referred to in Article 120.7 or 120.8 does not constitute an infringement of his duty under the Companies Acts.

120.10 A transaction or arrangement referred to in Article 120.7 or 120.8 is not liable to be avoided on the ground of any remuneration, benefit or interest referred to in that Article.

121. **Directors' permitted interests**

121.1 A Director cannot vote or be counted in the quorum on any resolution relating to any transaction or arrangement with the Company in which he has an interest and which may reasonably be regarded as likely to give rise to a conflict of interest but can vote (and be counted in the quorum) on the following:

- (a) giving him any security, guarantee or indemnity for any money or any liability which he, or any other person, has lent or obligations he or any other person has undertaken at the request, or for the benefit, of the Company or any of its subsidiary undertakings;
- (b) giving any security, guarantee or indemnity to any other person for a debt or obligation which is owed by the Company or any of its subsidiary undertakings, to that other person if the Director has taken responsibility for some or all of that debt or obligation. The Director can take this responsibility by giving a guarantee, indemnity or security;
- (c) a proposal or contract relating to an offer of any shares or debentures or other securities for subscription or purchase by the Company or any of its subsidiary undertakings, if the Director takes part because he is a holder of shares, debentures or other securities, or if he takes part in the underwriting or sub-underwriting of the offer;
- (d) any arrangement for the benefit of employees of the Company or any of its subsidiary undertakings which only gives him benefits which are also generally given to employees to whom the arrangement relates;
- (e) any arrangement involving any other company if the Director (together with any person connected with the Director) has an interest of any kind in that company

(including an interest by holding any position in that company or by being a shareholder of that company). This does not apply if he knows that he has a Relevant Interest.

- (f) a contract relating to insurance which the Company can buy or renew for the benefit of the Directors or a group of people which includes Directors; and
- (g) a contract relating to a pension, superannuation or similar scheme or a retirement, death, disability benefits scheme or employees' share scheme which gives the Director benefits which are also generally given to the employees to whom the scheme relates.

- 121.2 A Director cannot vote or be counted in the quorum on a resolution relating to his own appointment or the settlement or variation of the terms of his appointment to an office or place of profit with the Company or any other company in which the Company has an interest.
- 121.3 Where the Directors are considering proposals about the appointment, or the settlement or variation of the terms or the termination of the appointment of two or more Directors to other offices or places of profit with the Company or any company in which the Company has an interest, a separate resolution may be put in relation to each Director and in that case each of the Directors concerned shall be entitled to vote and be counted in the quorum in respect of each resolution unless it concerns his own appointment or the settlement or variation of the terms or the termination of his own appointment or the appointment of another Director to an office or place of profit with a company in which the Company has an interest and the Director seeking to vote or be counted in the quorum has a Relevant Interest in it.
- 121.4 A company shall be deemed to be one in which the Director has a **Relevant Interest** if and so long as (but only if and so long as) he is to his knowledge (either directly or indirectly) the holder of or beneficially interested in one per cent or more of any class of the equity share capital of that company (calculated exclusive of any shares of that class in that company held as treasury shares) or of the voting rights available to members of that company. In relation to an alternate Director, an interest of his appointor shall be treated as an interest of the alternate Director without prejudice to any interest which the alternate Director has otherwise. Where a company in which a Director has Relevant Interest is interested in a contract, he also shall be deemed interested in that contract.
- 121.5 If a question arises at a Board meeting about whether a Director (other than the chairman of the meeting) has an interest which is likely to give rise to a conflict of interest, or whether he can vote or be counted in the quorum, and the Director does not agree to abstain from voting on the issue or not to be counted in the quorum, the question must be referred to the chairman of the meeting. The chairman's ruling about the relevant Director is final and conclusive, unless the nature and extent of the Director's interests have not been fairly disclosed to the Directors. If the question arises about the chairman of the meeting, the question must be directed to the Directors. The chairman cannot vote on the question but can be counted in the quorum. The Directors' resolution about the chairman is final and conclusive, unless the nature and extent of the chairman's interests have not been fairly disclosed to the Directors.

122. **General**

For the purposes of Articles 118 to 121 inclusive (which shall apply equally to alternate Directors):

- 122.1 An interest of a person who is connected (which word shall have the meaning given to it by section 252 of the Act) with a Director shall be treated as an interest of the Director.
- 122.2 A contract includes references to any proposed contract and to any transaction or arrangement or proposed transaction or arrangement whether or not consulting a contract.
- 122.3 A conflict of interest includes a conflict of interest and duty and a conflict of duties.
- 122.4 Subject to the Companies Acts, the Company may by ordinary resolution suspend or relax the provisions of Articles 118 to 121 to any extent or ratify any contract not properly authorised by reason of a contravention of any of the provisions of Articles 118 to 121.

123. **Power to authenticate documents**

Any Director, the Secretary or any person appointed by the Board for the purpose shall have power to authenticate any documents affecting the constitution of the Company and any resolution passed by the Company or the Board or any committee, and any books, records, documents and accounts relating to the business of the Company, and to certify copies or extracts as true copies or extracts. Where any books, records, documents or accounts are not at the Office, the local manager or other officer of the Company who has their custody shall be deemed to be a person appointed by the Board for this purpose. A document purporting to be a copy of a resolution, or an extract from the minutes of a meeting, of the Company or the Board or any committee which is so certified shall be conclusive evidence in favour of all persons dealing with the Company that such resolution has been duly passed or, as the case may be, that any minute so extracted is a true and accurate record of proceedings at a duly constituted meeting.

124. **Use of seals**

- 124.1 The Board shall provide for the safe custody of the Seal. A Seal shall not be used without the authority of the Board or of a committee of the Board so authorised.
- 124.2 Subject as otherwise provided in these Articles, every document which is sealed using the Seal must be signed by at least one authorised person in the presence of a witness who attests the signature. An authorised person for this purpose is any Director, the Secretary or any other person authorised by the Directors for the purpose of signing documents to which the Seal is applied.
- 124.3 The Seal shall be used only for sealing securities issued by the Company and documents creating or evidencing securities so issued. Any such securities or documents sealed with the Seal shall not require to be signed unless the Board decides otherwise or the law otherwise requires.

124.4 The Board may decide who will sign an instrument to which a Seal is affixed (or in the case of a share certificate, on which the Seal may be printed) either generally or in relation to a particular instrument or type of instrument and may also determine either generally or in a particular case that a signature may be dispensed with or affixed by mechanical means.

125. **Declaration of dividends**

Subject to the Act and these Articles, the Company may by ordinary resolution declare dividends to be paid to members according to their respective rights and interests in the profits of the Company. However, no dividend shall exceed the amount recommended by the Board.

126. **Interim dividends**

126.1 Subject to the Act, the Board may declare and pay such interim dividends (including any dividend at a fixed rate) as appears to the Board to be justified by the profits of the Company available for distribution. If the Board acts in good faith, it shall not incur any liability to the holders of shares for any loss that they may suffer by the lawful payment of any interim dividend on any other class of shares ranking with or after those shares.

126.2 If the share capital is divided into different classes, the Board may pay interim dividends on shares which confer deferred or non-preferred rights with regard to dividend as well as on shares which confer preferential rights with regard to dividend, but no interim dividend shall be paid on shares carrying deferred or non-preferred rights if, at the time of payment, any preferential dividend is in arrears.

126.3 The Board may also pay at intervals settled by them any dividend payable at a fixed rate if it appears to them that the profits available for distribution justify the payment. If the Directors act in good faith they shall not incur any liability to the holders of shares conferring preferred rights for any loss they may suffer by the lawful payment of a dividend on any shares having deferred or non-preferred rights.

127. **Calculation and currency of dividends**

Except as provided otherwise by the rights attached to shares, all dividends:

- (a) shall be declared and paid accordingly to the amounts paid up (otherwise than in advance of calls) on the shares on which the dividend is paid;
- (b) shall be apportioned and paid proportionately to the amounts paid up on the shares during any portion or portions of the period in respect of which the dividend is paid, but if any share is issued on terms that it shall rank for dividend as from a particular date, it shall rank for dividend accordingly; and

- (c) may be declared or paid in any currency. The Board may decide the rate of exchange for any currency conversions that may be required and how any costs involved are to be met.

128. **Amounts due on shares can be deducted from dividends**

The Board may deduct from any dividend or other money payable to any person on or in respect of a share all such sums as may be due from him to the Company on account of calls or otherwise in relation to the shares of the Company. Sums so deducted can be used to pay amounts owing to the Company in respect of the shares.

129. **Dividends not in cash**

The Board may, by ordinary resolution of the Company direct, or in the case of an interim dividend may without the authority of an ordinary resolution direct, that payment of any dividend declared may be satisfied wholly or partly by the distribution of assets, and in particular of paid up shares or debentures of any other company, or in any one or more of such ways. Where any difficulty arises regarding such distribution, the Board may settle it as it thinks fit. In particular, the Board may:

- (a) issue fractional certificates (or ignore fractions);
- (b) fix the value for distribution of such assets or any part of them and determine that cash payments may be made to any members on the footing of the values so fixed, in order to adjust the rights of members; and
- (c) vest any such assets in trustees on trust for the person entitled to the dividend.

130. **No interest on dividends**

Unless otherwise provided by the rights attached to the share, no dividend or other monies payable by the Company or in respect of a share shall bear interest as against the Company.

131. **Method of payment**

- 131.1 The Company may pay any dividend, interest or other sum payable in respect of a share wholly or partly in cash or by direct debit, bank transfer, cheque, dividend warrant, or money order or by any other method, including by electronic means, as the Board may consider appropriate. For uncertificated shares, any payment may be made by means of the relevant system (subject always to the facilities and requirements of the relevant system) and such payment may be made by the Company or any person on its behalf by sending an instruction to the operator of the relevant system to credit the cash memorandum account of the holder or joint holders of such shares or, if permitted by the Company, of such person as the holder or joint holders may in writing direct.
- 131.2 The Company may send such payment by post or other delivery service (or by such means offered by the Company as the member or person entitled to it may agree in writing) to the registered address of the member or person entitled to it (or, if two or more persons are

- holders of the share or are jointly entitled to it because of the death or bankruptcy of the member or otherwise by operation of law, to the registered address of such of those persons as is first named in the Register) or to such person and such address as such member or person may direct in writing.
- 131.3 Every cheque, warrant, order or other form of payment is sent at the risk of the person entitled to the money represented by it, shall be made payable to the person or persons entitled, or to such other person as the person or persons entitled may direct in writing. Payment of the cheque, warrant, order or other form of payment (including transmission of funds through a bank transfer or other funds transfer system or by such other electronic means as permitted by these Articles or in accordance with the facilities and requirements of the relevant system concerned) shall be good discharge to the Company. If any such cheque, warrant, order or other form of payment has or shall be alleged to have been lost, stolen or destroyed the Company shall not be responsible.
- 131.4 Any joint holder or other person jointly entitled to a share may give an effective receipt for any dividend or other monies payable in respect of such share.
- 131.5 The Board may, at its discretion, make provisions to enable any member as the Board shall determine to receive duly declared dividends in a currency or currencies other than sterling. For the purposes of the calculation of the amount receivable in respect of any dividend, the rate of exchange to be used to determine the foreign currency equivalent of any sum payable as a dividend shall be such rate or rates and the payment shall be on such terms and conditions as the Board may in its absolute discretion determine
- 131.6 In respect of the payment of any dividend or other sum which is a distribution, the Board may decide, and notify recipients, that:
- (a) one or more of the means described in this Article will be used for payment and a recipient may elect to receive the payment by one of the means so notified in the manner prescribed by the Directors;
 - (b) one or more of such means will be used for the payment unless a recipient elects otherwise in the manner prescribed by the Directors; or
 - (c) one or more of such means will be used for the payment and that recipients will not be able to elect otherwise,
- the Board may for this purpose decide that different methods of payment may apply to different recipients or groups of recipients.
- 131.7 All cheques, warrants and similar financial instruments are sent, and payment in any other way is made, at the risk of the person who is entitled to the money and the Company will not be responsible for a payment which is lost, rejected or delayed. The Company can rely on a receipt for a dividend or other money paid in relation to a share from any one of the joint recipients on behalf of all of them. The Company is treated as having paid a dividend if the cheque, warrant or similar financial instrument is cleared or if a payment is made using a relevant system or inter-bank transfer or other electronic means.

131.8 Subject to the rights attaching to any shares, any dividends or other monies payable on or in respect of a share may be declared or paid in such currency or currencies and using such exchange rate or such date for determining the value or currency conversions as the Directors may determine.

132. **Uncashed dividends**

If cheques, warrants or orders for dividends or other sums payable in respect of a share sent by the Company to the person entitled to them are returned to the Company or left uncashed on two consecutive occasions or, following one occasion, reasonable enquires have failed to establish any new address to be used for the purpose, the Company does not have to send any dividends or other monies payable in respect of that share due to that person until he notifies the Company of an address to be used for the purpose. If any such cheque, warrant or order has or is alleged to have been lost, stolen or destroyed, the Directors may, on request of the person entitled to it, issue a replacement cheque, warrant or order subject to compliance with such conditions as to evidence and indemnity and the payment of out of pocket expenses of the Company in connection with the request as the Directors may think fit.

133. **Unclaimed dividends**

All dividends, interest or other sums payable and unclaimed for 12 months after having become payable may be invested or otherwise made use of by the Board for the benefit of the Company until claimed. The Company shall not be a trustee in respect of such unclaimed dividends and will not be liable to pay interest on it. All dividends that remain unclaimed for twelve (12) years after they were first declared or became due for payment shall (if the Board so resolves) be forfeited and shall cease to remain owing by the Company.

134. **Scrip dividends**

134.1 Subject to the Act, the Board may, by ordinary resolution of the Company and subject to such terms and conditions as the Board may determine, offer to any holders of shares (excluding any member holding shares as treasury shares) the right to elect to receive shares, credited as fully paid, instead of cash in respect of the whole (or some part, to be determined by the Board) of any dividend specified by the ordinary resolution. The following provisions shall apply:

- (a) the said resolution may specify a particular dividend, or may specify all or any dividends declared within a specified period or periods but such period may not end later than the fifth anniversary of the date of the meeting at which the ordinary resolution is passed;
- (b) the entitlement of each holder of shares to new shares shall be such that the relevant value of the entitlement shall be as nearly as possible equal to (but not greater than) the cash amount (disregarding any tax credit) of the dividend that such holder would

have received by way of dividend. For this purpose **relevant value** shall be calculated by reference to the average of the middle market quotations for the shares on Nasdaq or any other publication of a recognised investment exchange showing quotations for the Company's shares), for the day on which the shares are first quoted "ex" the relevant dividend and the four subsequent dealing days, or in such other manner as the Board may determine on such basis as it considers to be fair and reasonable. A certificate or report by the Company's auditors as to the amount of the relevant value in respect of any dividend shall be conclusive evidence of that amount;

- (c) no fractions of a share shall be allotted. The Board may make such provisions as it thinks fit for any fractional entitlements including provisions where, in whole or in part, the benefit accrues to the Company and/or under which fractional entitlements are accrued and/or retained and in each case accumulated on behalf of any member and such accruals or retentions are applied to the allotment by way of bonus to or cash subscription on behalf of any member of fully paid shares and/or provisions where cash payments may be made to members in respect of their fractional entitlements;
- (d) the Board shall, after determining the basis of allotment, notify the holders of shares in writing of the right of election offered to them, and specify the procedure to be followed and place at which, and the latest time by which, elections must be lodged in order to be effective. No such notice need to be given to holders of shares who have previously given election mandates in accordance with this Article and whose mandates have not been revoked. The accidental omission to give notice of any right of election to, or the non-receipt (even if the Company becomes aware of such non-receipt) of any such notice by, any holder of shares entitled to the same shall neither invalidate any offer of an election nor give rise to any claim, suit or action;
- (e) The Board may on any occasion decide that rights of election shall only be made available subject to such exclusions, restrictions or other arrangements as they shall in their absolute discretion deem necessary or desirable in order to comply with legal or practical problems under the laws of, or the requirements of any recognised regulatory body or stock exchange in, any territory;
- (f) the Board shall not proceed with any election unless the company has sufficient reserves or funds that may be capitalised, and the Board has authority to allot sufficient shares, to give effect to it after the basis of the allotment is determined;
- (g) the Board may exclude from any offer or make other arrangements in relation to any holders of shares where the Board considers that the making of the offer to them or in respect of such shares would or might involve the contravention of the laws of any territory or that for any other reason the offer should not be made to them or in respect of such shares;

- (h) Unless the Board decides otherwise or the rules of a relevant system require otherwise, any new shares which a holder has elected to receive instead of cash in respect of some or all of his dividend will be:
- (i) shares in uncertificated form if the corresponding elected shares were uncertificated shares on the record date for that dividend; and
 - (ii) shares in certificated form if the corresponding elected shares were shares in certificated form on the record date for that dividend;
- (i) the Board may establish or vary a procedure for election mandates in respect of future rights of election and may determine that every duly effected election in respect of any shares shall be binding on every successor in title to the holder;
- (j) the dividend (or that part of the dividend in respect of which a right of election has been offered) shall not be payable on shares in respect of which an election has been duly made (**elected shares**) and instead additional shares shall be allotted to the holders of the elected shares on the basis of allotment determined as stated above. For such purpose the Board may capitalise, out of any amount for the time being standing to the credit of any reserve or fund (including any share premium account or capital redemption reserve) or of any of the profits which could otherwise have been applied in paying dividends in cash as the Board may determine, a sum equal to the aggregate nominal amount of the additional shares to be allotted on such basis and apply it in paying up in full the appropriate number of unissued shares for allotment and distribution to the holders of the elected shares on such basis. The Board may do all acts and things considered necessary or expedient to give effect to any such capitalisation;
- (k) the Board may decide how any costs relating to the new shares available in place of a cash dividend will be met, including to deduct an amount from the entitlement of a holder of shares under this Article;
- (l) the additional shares so allotted shall rank *pari passu* in all respects with each other and with the fully paid shares in issue on the record date for the dividend in respect of which the right of election has been offered, except that they will not rank for any dividend or other distribution or other entitlement which has been declared, paid or made by reference to such record date;
- (m) the Board may terminate, suspend, or amend any offer of the right to elect to receive shares in lieu of any cash dividend at any time and generally may implement any scrip dividend scheme on such terms and conditions as the Board may determine and take such other action as the Board may deem necessary or desirable in respect of any such scheme; and
- (n) The Board may do all acts and things which they consider necessary or expedient to give effect to any such capitalisation, and may authorise any person to enter on behalf of all the members interested into an agreement with the Company providing for such capitalisation and incidental matters and any agreement so made shall be binding on all concerned.

135.1 The Board may, with the authority of an ordinary resolution of the Company:

- (a) subject as provided in this Article, resolve to capitalise any undivided profits of the Company not required for paying any preferential dividend (whether or not they are available for distribution) or any sum standing to the credit of any reserve or fund of the Company which is available for distribution or standing to the credit of the share premium account of capital redemption reserve or other undistributable reserve;
- (b) appropriate the sum resolved to be capitalised to the members in proportion to the nominal amounts of the shares (whether or not fully paid) held by them respectively which would entitle them to participate in a distribution of that sum if the shares were fully paid and the sum were then distributable and were distributed by way of dividend and apply such sum on their behalf either in or towards paying up the amounts, if any, for the time being unpaid on any shares held by them respectively, or in paying up in full unissued shares or debentures of the Company of a nominal amount equal to that sum, and allot the shares or debentures credited as fully paid to those members or as they may direct, in those proportions, or partly in one way and partly in the other, provided that:
 - (i) the share premium account, the capital redemption reserve, any other undistributable reserve and any profits which are not available for distribution may, for the purposes of this Article, only be applied in paying up in full shares to be allotted to members credited as fully paid;
 - (ii) the Company will also be entitled to participate in the relevant distribution in relation to any shares of the relevant class held by it as treasury shares and the proportionate entitlement of the relevant class of members to the distribution will be calculated accordingly; and
 - (iii) in a case where any sum is applied in paying amounts for the time being unpaid on any shares of the Company or in paying up in full debentures of the Company, the amount of the net assets of the Company at that time in not less than the aggregate of the called up share capital of the Company and its undistributable reserves as shown in the latest audited accounts of the Company or such other accounts as may be relevant and would not be reduced below that aggregate by the payment of it;
- (c) resolve that any shares so allotted to any member in respect of a holding by him of any partly paid shares shall, so long as such shares remain partly paid, rank for dividends only to the extent that such partly paid shares rank for dividends;

- (d) make such provision by the issue of fractional certificates (or by ignoring fractions or by accruing the benefit of it to the Company rather than to the members concerned) or by payment in cash or otherwise as it thinks fit in the case of shares or debentures becoming distributable in fractions;
- (e) authorise any person to enter on behalf of such members concerned into an agreement with the Company providing for either:
 - (i) the allotment to them respectively, credited as fully paid up, of any shares or debentures to which they may be entitled on such capitalisation; or
 - (ii) the payment up by the Company on behalf of such members by the application of their respective proportions of the reserves or profits resolved to be capitalised, of the amounts or any part of the amounts remaining unpaid on their existing shares, (any agreement made under such authority being effective and binding on all such members); and
- (f) generally do all acts and things required to give effect to such resolution.

135.2

Where, pursuant to an employees' share scheme (within the meaning of section 1166 of the Act) or any similar scheme under which participation is extended to non-executive Directors or consultants providing services to the Company or any of its subsidiaries:

- (a) the Company has granted options to subscribe for shares on terms which provide (inter alia) for adjustments to the subscription price payable on the exercise of such options or to the number of shares to be allotted upon such exercise in the event of any increase or reduction in or other reorganisation of the Company's issued share capital and an otherwise appropriate adjustment would result in the subscription price for any share being less than its nominal value, then the Board may, on the exercise of any of the options concerned and payment of the subscription price which would have applied had such adjustment been made, capitalise any such profits or other sum as is mentioned in Article 135.1(a) to the extent necessary to pay up the unpaid balance of the nominal value of the shares which fall to be allotted on the exercise of such options and apply such amount in paying up such balance and allot shares fully paid accordingly;
- (b) the Company has granted (or assumed liability to satisfy) rights to subscribe for shares (whether in the form of stock options, stock units, restricted stock, stock appreciation rights, performance shares and units, dividend equivalent rights or otherwise) then the Board may, in connection with the issue of shares, capitalise any such profits or other sum as is mentioned in Article 135.1 to the extent necessary to pay up the unpaid balance of the nominal value of the shares which fall to be issued in connection with such rights to subscribe and apply such amount in paying up such balance and allot shares fully paid accordingly; and
- (c) the provisions of Article 135.1(a) to (f) shall apply with the necessary alterations to this Article.

136. **Record dates**
- 136.1 Notwithstanding any other provision of these Articles but without prejudice to the rights attached to any shares and subject always to the Act, the Company or the Board may by resolution specify any date (**record date**) as the date at the close of business (or such other time as the Board may determine) on which persons registered as the holders of shares or other securities shall be entitled to receipt of any dividend, distribution, interest, allotment, issue, notice, information, document or circular. Such record date may be before, on or after the date on which the dividend, distribution, interest, allotment, issue, notice, information, document or circular is declared, made, paid, given, or served.
- 136.2 In the absence of a record date being fixed, entitlement to any dividend, distribution, interest, allotment, issue, notice, information, document or circular shall be determined by reference to the date on which the dividend is declared, the distribution allotment or issue is made or the notice, information, document or circular made, given or served.

137. **Inspection of records**

No member (other than a Director) shall have any right to inspect any accounting record or other document of the Company unless he is authorised to do so by law, by order of a court of competent jurisdiction, by the Board or by ordinary resolution of the Company.

138. **Account to be sent to members**

- 138.1 In respect of each financial year, a copy of the Company's annual accounts, the strategic report, the Directors' report, the Directors' remuneration report, the auditor's report on those accounts and on the auditable part of the Directors' remuneration report shall be sent or supplied to:
- (a) Every member (whether or not entitled to receive notices of general meetings);
 - (b) Every holder of debentures (whether or not entitled to receive notice of general meetings); and
 - (c) Every other person who is entitled to receive notice of general meetings,

not less than twenty-one (21) clear days before the date of the meeting at which copies of those documents are to be laid in accordance with the Act.

- 138.2 This Article does not require copies of the documents to which it applies to be sent or supplied to:
- (a) A member or holder of debentures of whose address the Company is unaware; or
 - (b) More than one of the joint holders of shares or debentures.
- 138.3 The Board may determine that persons entitled to receive a copy of the Company's annual accounts, the strategic report, the Directors' report, the Directors' remuneration report, the

	auditor's report on those accounts and on the auditable part of the Directors' remuneration report are those persons entered on the Register at the close of business on a day determined by the Board, provided that the day determined by the Board may not be more than twenty-one (21) days before the day that the relevant copies are being sent.
138.4	Where permitted by the Act, a strategic report with supplementary material in the form and containing the information prescribed by the Act may be sent or supplied to a person so electing in place of the documents required to be sent or supplied by Article 138.
139.	Service of Notices
139.1	The Company can send, deliver or serve any notice or other document, including a share certificate, to or on a member: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) personally; (b) by sending it through the postal system addressed to the member at his registered address or by leaving it at that address addressed to the member; (c) through a relevant system, where the notice or document relates to uncertificated shares; (d) where appropriate, by sending or supplying it in electronic form to an address notified by the member to the Company for that purpose; (e) where appropriate, by making it available on a website and notifying the member of its availability in accordance with this Article or (f) by any other means authorised in writing by the member.
139.2	In the case of joint holders of a share: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) service, sending or supply of any notice, document or other information on or to one of the joint holders shall for all purposes be deemed a sufficient service on, sending or supplying to all the joint holders; and (b) anything to be agreed or specified in relation to any notice, document or other information to be served on, sent or supplied to them may be agreed or specified by any one of the joint holders and the agreement or specification of the first named in the Register shall be accepted to the exclusion of that of the other joint holders.
139.3	Where a member (or, in the case of a joint holders, the person first named in the Register) has a registered address outside the United Kingdom but has notified the Company of an address within the United Kingdom at which notices, documents or other information may be given to him or has given to the Company an address for the purposes of communications by electronic means at which notices, documents or other information may be served, sent or supplied to him, he shall be entitled to have notices served, sent or supplied to him at such

	address or, where applicable, the Company may make them available on a website and notify the holder of that address. Otherwise no such member shall be entitled to receive any notice, document or other information from the Company.
139.4	If on three consecutive occasions any notice, document or other information has been sent to any member at his registered address or his address for the service of notices (by electronic means or otherwise) but has been returned undelivered, such member shall not be entitled to receive notices, documents or other information from the Company until he shall have communicated with the Company and supplied in writing a new registered address or address within the United Kingdom for the service of notices or has informed the Company of an address for the service of notices and the sending or supply of documents and other information in electronic form. For these purposes, any notice, document or other information served, sent or supplied by post shall be treated as returned undelivered if the notice, document or other information is served, sent or supplied back to the Company (or its agents) and a notice, document or other information served, sent or supplied in electronic form shall be treated as returned undelivered if the Company (or its agents) receives notification that the notice, document or other information was not delivered to the address to which it was served, sent or supplied.
139.5	The Company may at any time and in its sole discretion choose to serve, send or supply notices, documents or other information in hard copy form alone to some or all of the members.
140.	Hard copy form
140.1	Any document, information or notice is validly sent or supplied by the Company in hard copy form if it is handed to the intended recipient or sent or supplied by hand or through the post in a prepaid envelope: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) to an address specified for the purpose by the intended recipient; (b) if the intended recipient is a company, to its registered office; (c) to the address shown in the Company's Register; (d) to any address to which any provision of the Companies Acts authorises it to be sent or supplied; or (e) if the Company is unable to obtain an address falling within paragraphs (a) to (d), to the last address known to the Company of the intended recipient.
141.	Electronic form
141.1	Any document, information or notice is validly sent or supplied by the Company in electronic form:

- (a) to a person if that person has agreed (generally or specifically) that the document, information or notice may be sent or supplied in that form and has not revoked that agreement; or
- (b) to a company that is deemed to have so agreed by the Companies Acts.

142. **Electronic means**

142.1 Any document, information or notice is validly sent or supplied by the Company by electronic means if it is sent or supplied:

- (a) to an address specified for the purpose by the intended recipient (generally or specifically); or
- (b) where the intended recipient is a company, to an address deemed by the Companies Acts to have been so specified.

143. **Website**

143.1 Any document, information or notice is validly sent or supplied by the Company to a person by being made available on a website if:

- (a) the person has agreed (generally or specifically) that the document, information or notice may be sent or supplied to him in that manner, or he is taken to have so agreed under Schedule 5 of the Act, and in either case he has not revoked that agreement;
- (b) the Company has notified the intended recipient of:
 - (i) the presence of the document, information or notice on the website;
 - (ii) the address of the website;
 - (iii) the place on the website where it may be accessed;
 - (iv) how to access the document, information or notice; and
 - (v) any other information prescribed by the Companies Acts or any other provisions of law including, when the document, information or notice is a notice of meeting, that fact, the place, date and time of the meeting and whether the meeting is an annual general meeting; and
- (c) the document, information or notice is available on the website throughout the period specified by any applicable provision of the Companies Acts or, if no such period is specified, the period of twenty-eight (28) days starting on the date on which the notification referred to in paragraph (b) above is sent to the relevant person.

144. **Sending or supplying any Document, information or notice by any other means**

Any document, information or notice that is sent or supplied otherwise than in hard copy form or electronic form or by means of a website is validly sent or supplied if it is sent or supplied in a form or manner that has been agreed by the intended recipient.

145. **Presence at meeting evidence in itself of receipt of notice**

A member present either in person or by proxy, or in the case of a corporate member by a duly authorised representative, at any meeting of the Company or of the holders of any class of Shares shall be deemed to have received notice of the meeting and, where required, of the purposes for which it was called.

146. **Notice on person entitled by transmission**

The Company may give notice to the person entitled to a share because of the death or bankruptcy of a member or otherwise by operation of law, by sending or delivering it in any manner authorised by these Articles for the giving of notice to a member, addressed to that person by name, or by the title of representative of the deceased or trustee of the bankrupt or representative by operation of law or by any like description, at the address (if any) within the United Kingdom supplied for the purpose by the person claimed to be so entitled or to which notices may be sent in electronic form. Until such an address has been so supplied, a notice may be given in any manner in which it might have been given if the death or bankruptcy or operation of law had not occurred. This shall apply whether or not the Company has notice of the death or bankruptcy or other event.

147. **Record date for service**

Any notice, document or other information may be served, sent or supplied by the Company by reference to the register as it stands at any time not more than fifteen (15) days before the date of service, sending or supplying. No change in the register after that time shall invalidate that service, sending or supply. Where any notice, document or other information is served on, sent or supplied to any person in respect of a share in accordance with these Articles, no person deriving any title or interest in that share shall be entitled to any further service, sending or supplying of that notice, document or other information.

148. **Evidence of service**

148.1 Any notice, document or other information, addressed to a member at his registered address or address for service in the United Kingdom shall, if served, sent or supplied by first class post, be deemed to have been served or delivered on the day after the day when it was put in the post (or, where second class post is employed, on the second day after the day when it was put in the post). Proof that an envelope containing the notice, document or other information was properly addressed and put into the post as a prepaid letter shall be conclusive evidence that the notice was given.

- 148.2

Any notice, document or other information not served, sent or supplied by post but delivered or left at a registered address or address for service in the United Kingdom (other than an address for the purposes of communications by electronic means) shall be deemed to have been served or delivered on the day on which it was so delivered or left.
- 148.3

Any notice, document or other information, if served, sent or supplied by electronic means shall be deemed to have been received on the day on which the electronic communication was sent by or on behalf of the Company notwithstanding that the Company subsequently sends such notice, document or other information in hard copy form by post. Any notice, document or other information made available on a website shall be deemed to have been received on the day on which the notice, document or other information was first made available on the website or, if later, when a notice of availability is received or deemed to have been received pursuant to this Article. Proof that the notice, document or other information was properly addressed shall be conclusive evidence that the notice by electronic means was given.
- 148.4

Any notice, document or other information served, sent or supplied by the Company by means of a relevant system shall be deemed to have been received when the Company or any sponsoring system-participant acting on its behalf sends the issuer-instruction relating to the notice, document or other information.
- 148.5

Any notice, document or other information served, sent or supplied by the Company by any other means authorised in writing by the member concerned shall be deemed to have been received when the Company has carried out the action it has been authorised to take for that purpose.

149.

Notice when post not available

If at any time by reason of the suspension, interruption or curtailment of postal services within the United Kingdom the Company is unable effectively to convene a general meeting by notices sent through the post, the Company need only give notice of a general meeting to those members with whom the Company can communicate by electronic means and who have provided the Company with an address for this purpose. The Company shall also advertise the notice in at least one national newspaper published in the United Kingdom and make it available on its website from the date of such advertisement until the conclusion of the meeting or any adjournment of it. In any such case the Company shall send confirmatory copies of the notice by post to those members to whom notice cannot be given by electronic means if, at least seven days prior to the meeting, the posting of notices to addresses throughout the United Kingdom again becomes practicable.

150.

Validation of documents in electronic form

- 150.1

Where a document is required under these Articles to be signed by a member or any other person, if the document is in electronic form, then in order to be valid the document must:
- (a)

incorporate the electronic signature, or personal identification details (which may be details previously allocated by the Company), of that member or other person, in such form as the Board may approve; or

	(b)	be accompanied by such other evidence as the Board may require in order to be satisfied that the document is genuine.
150.2		The Company may designate mechanisms for validating any such document and a document not validated by the use of any such mechanisms shall be deemed as having not been received by the Company In the case of any document or information relating to a meeting, an instrument of proxy or invitation to appoint a proxy, any validation requirements shall be specified in the relevant notice of meeting in accordance with Articles 49 and 72.
151.		Winding Up
		If the Company is wound up and subject to the rights and restrictions attached to any share or classes of shares, the liquidator may, with the sanction of a special resolution and any other sanction required by law, divide among the members in specie the whole or any part of the assets of the Company and may, for that purpose, value any assets and determine how the division shall be carried out as between the members or different classes of members. The liquidator may, with the like sanction, vest the whole or any part of the assets in trustees upon such trusts for the benefit of the members as he may with the like sanction determine, but no member shall be compelled to accept any assets upon which there is a liability.
152.		Indemnity and insurance
152.1		In this Article:
	(a)	companies are associated if one is a subsidiary of the other or both are subsidiaries of the same body corporate;
	(b)	a relevant officer means any Director or other officer or former Director or other officer of the Company or an associated company (including any company which is a trustee of an occupational pension scheme (as defined by section 235(6) of the Act), but excluding in each case any person engaged by the Company (or associated company) as auditor (whether or not he is also a Director or other officer), to the extent he acts in his capacity as auditor); and
	(c)	relevant loss means any loss or liability which has been or may be incurred by a relevant officer in connection with that relevant officer's duties or powers in relation to the company, any associated company or any pension fund or employees' share scheme of the company or associated company.
152.2		Subject to Article 152.3, but without prejudice to any indemnity to which a relevant officer is otherwise entitled:
	(a)	each relevant officer shall be indemnified out of the Company's assets against all relevant loss and in relation to the Company's (or any associated company's) activities as trustee of an occupational pension scheme (as defined in section 235(6) of the Act), including any liability incurred by him in defending any civil or criminal proceedings, in which judgment is given in his favour or in which he is acquitted or

the proceedings are otherwise disposed of without any finding or admission of any material breach of duty on his part or in connection with any application in which the court grants him, in his capacity as a relevant officer, relief from liability for negligence, default, breach of duty or breach of trust in relation to the Company's (or any associated company's) affairs; and

- (b) the Company may provide any relevant officer with funds to meet expenditure incurred or to be incurred by him in connection with any proceedings or application referred to in Article 152.2(a) and otherwise may take any action to enable any such relevant officer to avoid incurring such expenditure.

152.3 This Article does not authorise any indemnity which would be prohibited or rendered void by any provision of the Companies Acts or by any other provision of law.

152.4 The Directors may decide to purchase and maintain insurance, at the expense of the Company, for the benefit of any relevant officer in respect of any relevant loss.

152.5 Where a relevant officer is indemnified against a liability in accordance with this Article, the indemnity extends to each cost, charge, loss, expense and liability incurred by him in relation to that liability.

153. **Exclusive jurisdiction**

153.1 Unless the Company consents in writing to the selection of an alternative forum in the United States of America, the federal district courts of the United States of America shall be the exclusive forum for the resolution of any complaint asserting a cause of action arising under the U.S. Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the Securities Act).

153.2 Save in respect of any cause of action arising under the Securities Act, by subscribing for or acquiring shares, the member submits all disputes between him or herself and the Company or the Directors to the exclusive jurisdiction of the English courts.



Ed Lukins
+44 (0) 20 7556 4261
elukins@cooley.com

19 June 2018

Autolus Therapeutics plc
Forest House
58 Wood Lane
White City
London W12 7RZ
United Kingdom

Re: Autolus Therapeutics plc— Registration Statement on Form F-1 — Exhibit 5.1

Ladies and Gentlemen:

We have acted as English legal advisers to Autolus Therapeutics plc, a public limited company incorporated in England and Wales (the “**Company**”) in connection with the proposed offering of American Depositary Shares (the “**ADSs**”) representing ordinary shares of nominal value \$0.000042 each in the capital of the Company (the “**Ordinary Shares**”) (the “**Offering**” and the Ordinary Shares allotted and issued in connection therewith, including those being issued to Citibank, N.A. (London) as the custodian and represented by ADSs, being the “**Shares**”). Each ADS represents one Ordinary Share of the Company.

1. INTRODUCTION

1.1 Purpose

In connection with the preparation and filing of a registration statement on Form F-1 (File No. 333-224720) (such registration statement, with exhibits, as amended through the date hereof, the “**Registration Statement**”), to which this letter is attached as an exhibit, with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (the “**SEC**”) pursuant to the U.S. Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “**Securities Act**”), we have been asked to provide opinions on certain matters, as set out below. We have taken instruction in this regard solely from the Company.

1.2 Defined terms and headings

In this letter:

- (a) capitalised terms used without definition in this letter or the schedules hereto have the meanings assigned to them in the Registration Statement unless a contrary indication appears;
- (b) headings are for ease of reference only and shall not affect interpretation; and
- (c) the term “**Shares**” shall include any additional ADSs registered by the Company pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act in connection with the Offering contemplated by the Registration Statement.

1.3 Legal review

For the purpose of issuing this letter, we have examined such matters of fact and questions of law as we have considered appropriate to enable us to render the opinion expressed below. We have reviewed only the following documents and conducted only the following enquiries and searches:

Cooley (UK) LLP Dashwood 69 Old Broad Street London EC2M 1QS, UK
t: +44 (0) 20 7583 4055 f: +44 (0) 20 7785 9355 cooley.com

Cooley (UK) LLP is a limited liability partnership and is registered in England and Wales with registered number OC395270. Our registered office is at the address above. Cooley (UK) LLP is authorised and regulated by the Solicitors Regulation Authority (SRA number 617791). A list of the members of Cooley (UK) LLP and their professional qualifications is open to inspection at its registered office. The word ‘partner,’ used in relation to Cooley (UK) LLP, refers to a member of Cooley (UK) LLP or an employee or consultant of Cooley (UK) LLP (or any affiliated firm) of equivalent standing.

- (a) an online search at Companies House in respect of information available for inspection on the Company's file conducted on 18 June 2018 at 10:30 a.m. (London time);
- (b) an enquiry by telephone at the Central Index of Winding Up Petitions, London on 18 June 2018 at 10:48 a.m. (London time) ((a) and (b) together, the "**Searches**");
- (c) a PDF executed copy of the written resolutions passed by the then sole shareholder of the Company on 14 June 2018 (the "**First Shareholder Written Resolutions**");
- (d) a PDF executed copy of the written resolutions passed by the shareholders of the Company on 15 June 2018 (the "**Second Shareholder Written Resolutions**");
- (e) a PDF executed copy of the written resolutions of the board of directors of Company passed on 15 June 2018 at which it was resolved, *inter alia*, to allot the Shares (the "**Allotment Resolutions**" and together with the First Shareholder Written Resolutions and the Second Shareholder Written Resolutions, the "**Corporate Approvals**");
- (f) PDF executed copies of letters from shareholders in the Company comprising an "Investor Majority" (as defined in the Company's articles of association adopted by the First Shareholder Written Resolution (the "**First Articles**")) approving, *inter alia*, the conversion of all classes of shares in the Company into a single class of ordinary shares and three classes of deferred shares (the "**Investor Consents**");
- (g) a PDF copy of the First Articles;
- (h) a PDF copy of the current articles of association of the Company dated 18 June 2018 (the "**Second Articles**") and certificate of incorporation of the Company dated 2 February 2018;
- (i) a draft copy of the articles of association of the Company to be adopted conditional on the completion of the Offering pursuant to a special resolution passed as part of the Second Shareholder Written Resolutions (the "**IPO Articles**"); and
- (j) a draft copy of the Registration Statement.

1.4 Applicable law

This letter, the opinions given in it, and any non-contractual obligations arising out of or in connection with this letter and/or the opinions given in it, are governed by, and to be construed in accordance with, English law and relate only to English law as applied by the English courts, including the laws of the European Union to the extent having the force of law in England, as at today's date. In particular:

- (a) we have not investigated the laws of any country other than England and we assume that no foreign law affects any of the opinions stated below;
- (b) we do not undertake or accept any obligation to update this letter and/or the opinions given in it to reflect subsequent changes in English law or factual matters; and
- (c) we express no opinion in this letter on the laws of any jurisdiction other than England. It is assumed that no foreign law which may apply to the matters contemplated by the Registration Statement, the Offering, the Company, any document or any other matter contemplated by any document would or might affect this letter and/or the opinions given in it.

Cooley (UK) LLP Dashwood 69 Old Broad Street London EC2M 1QS, UK
t: +44 (0) 20 7583 4055 f: +44 (0) 20 7785 9355 cooley.com

Cooley (UK) LLP is a limited liability partnership and is registered in England and Wales with registered number OC395270. Our registered office is at the address above. Cooley (UK) LLP is authorised and regulated by the Solicitors Regulation Authority (SRA number 617791). A list of the members of Cooley (UK) LLP and their professional qualifications is open to inspection at its registered office. The word 'partner,' used in relation to Cooley (UK) LLP, refers to a member of Cooley (UK) LLP or an employee or consultant of Cooley (UK) LLP (or any affiliated firm) of equivalent standing.

1.5 Assumptions and reservations

The opinions given in this letter are given on the basis of each of the assumptions set out in schedule 1 (*Assumptions*) and are subject to each of the reservations set out in schedule 2 (*Reservations*) to this letter. The opinions given in this letter are strictly limited to the matters stated in paragraph 2 (*Opinions*) of this letter and do not extend, and should not be read as extending, by implication or otherwise, to any other matters.

2. OPINION

Subject to paragraph 1 (*Introduction*) and the other matters set out in this letter and its schedules, and subject further to the following:

- (a) the Registration Statement becoming effective under the Securities Act;
- (b) the number of Shares to be allotted and issued in connection with the Offering not being greater than 15,000,000 and such Shares being allotted and issued by 31 December 2018;
- (c) that the Corporate Approvals were validly passed in accordance with all applicable laws and regulations; that in particular, but without limitation, a duly qualified quorum of directors or, as the case may be, shareholders voted in favour of the resolutions; and that in relation to any written resolution passed by the directors of the Company and of any committee, each provision contained in the Companies Act 2006, as amended (the “**Act**”) or the then applicable articles of association of the Company relating to the declaration of the directors’ interests or the power of the interested directors to vote and to count in the quorum was or will be duly observed;
- (d) the Investor Consents having been signed by an “Investor Majority” (as defined in the First Articles) and delivered to the Company;
- (e) the receipt in full of payment for the Shares in an amount of “cash consideration” (as defined in section 583(3) of the Act) of not less than the aggregate nominal value for such Shares; and
- (f) valid entries having been made in relation to the allotment and issue of the Shares in the books and registers of the Company,

it is our opinion that, as at today’s date, the Shares, if and when allotted and issued, registered in the name of the recipient in the register of members of the Company and delivered as described in the Registration Statement, will be duly and validly authorised and issued, fully paid or credited as fully paid (subject to the receipt of valid consideration by the Company for the issue thereof in connection with the Offering) and will not be subject to any call for payment of further capital.

3. EXTENT OF OPINIONS

We express no opinion as to any agreement, instrument or other document other than as specified in this letter or as to any liability to tax or duty which may arise or be suffered as a result of or in connection with the Offering or the transactions contemplated thereby.

Cooley (UK) LLP Dashwood 69 Old Broad Street London EC2M 1QS, UK
t: +44 (0) 20 7583 4055 f: +44 (0) 20 7785 9355 cooley.com

Cooley (UK) LLP is a limited liability partnership and is registered in England and Wales with registered number OC395270. Our registered office is at the address above. Cooley (UK) LLP is authorised and regulated by the Solicitors Regulation Authority (SRA number 617791). A list of the members of Cooley (UK) LLP and their professional qualifications is open to inspection at its registered office. The word ‘partner,’ used in relation to Cooley (UK) LLP, refers to a member of Cooley (UK) LLP or an employee or consultant of Cooley (UK) LLP (or any affiliated firm) of equivalent standing.

This letter only applies to those facts and circumstances which exist as at today's date and we assume no obligation or responsibility to update or supplement this letter to reflect any facts or circumstances which may subsequently come to our attention, any changes in laws which may occur after today, or to inform the addressee of any change in circumstances happening after the date of this letter which would alter our opinion.

4. **DISCLOSURE AND RELIANCE**

This letter is addressed to you in connection with the Registration Statement. We consent to the filing of this letter as an exhibit to the Registration Statement. We further consent to the incorporation by reference of this letter and consent into any registration statement filed pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act with respect to the Shares. In giving such consent, we do not thereby admit that we are in the category of persons whose consent is required under Section 7 of the Securities Act or the rules and regulations thereunder.

Other than for the purpose set out in the prior paragraph, this letter may not be relied upon, or assigned, for any purpose, without our prior written consent, which may be granted or withheld in our discretion.

Yours faithfully

/s/ Edward J. Lukins
Cooley (UK) LLP

Cooley (UK) LLP Dashwood 69 Old Broad Street London EC2M 1QS, UK
t: +44 (0) 20 7583 4055 f: +44 (0) 20 7785 9355 cooley.com

Cooley (UK) LLP is a limited liability partnership and is registered in England and Wales with registered number OC395270. Our registered office is at the address above. Cooley (UK) LLP is authorised and regulated by the Solicitors Regulation Authority (SRA number 617791). A list of the members of Cooley (UK) LLP and their professional qualifications is open to inspection at its registered office. The word 'partner,' used in relation to Cooley (UK) LLP, refers to a member of Cooley (UK) LLP or an employee or consultant of Cooley (UK) LLP (or any affiliated firm) of equivalent standing.

SCHEDULE 1

ASSUMPTIONS

The opinions in this letter have been given on the basis of the following assumptions:

- (a) the genuineness of all signatures, stamps and seals on all documents, the authenticity and completeness of all documents submitted to us as originals, and the conformity to original documents of all documents submitted to us as copies;
- (b) that, where a document has been examined by us in draft or specimen form, it will be or has been duly executed in the form of that draft or specimen, and that each of the signed documents examined by us has been duly executed and, where applicable, delivered on behalf of the Company;
- (c) that the Second Articles referred to in paragraph 1.3(h) of this letter remain in full force and effect, and, save for the adoption of the IPO Articles upon the Offering, no alteration has been made or will be made to such articles of association, in each case prior to the date of allotment and issue of the Shares (the “**Allotment Date**”);
- (d) on the Allotment Date the Company will comply with all applicable laws to allot and issue the Shares and the Company will receive such amounts as are necessary to fully pay the nominal value of the Shares and any applicable share premium;
- (e) that all documents, forms and notices which should have been delivered to the Registrar of Companies in respect of the Company have been so delivered, that information revealed by the Searches was complete and accurate in all respects and has not, since the time of the Searches, been altered and that the results of the Searches will remain complete and accurate as at the Allotment Date;
- (f) that the written resolutions of the board of directors of the Company provided to us in connection with the giving of the opinions in this letter comply fully with all constitutional, statutory and other formalities, and the resolutions set out therein were validly passed and have not been and will not be revoked or varied and remain in full force and effect and will remain so as at the Allotment Date;

Cooley (UK) LLP Dashwood 69 Old Broad Street London EC2M 1QS, UK
t: +44 (0) 20 7583 4055 f: +44 (0) 20 7785 9355 cooley.com

Cooley (UK) LLP is a limited liability partnership and is registered in England and Wales with registered number OC395270. Our registered office is at the address above. Cooley (UK) LLP is authorised and regulated by the Solicitors Regulation Authority (SRA number 617791). A list of the members of Cooley (UK) LLP and their professional qualifications is open to inspection at its registered office. The word ‘partner,’ used in relation to Cooley (UK) LLP, refers to a member of Cooley (UK) LLP or an employee or consultant of Cooley (UK) LLP (or any affiliated firm) of equivalent standing.

- (g) that the resolutions set out in the First Shareholder Written Resolutions and the Second Shareholder Written Resolutions were validly passed and have not been and will not be revoked or varied and remain in full force and effect and will remain so as at the Allotment Date;
- (h) that in relation to the allotment and issue of the Shares, the directors of the Company have acted and will act in the manner required by section 172 of the Act (*Duty to promote the success of the Company*), and there has not been and will not be any bad faith, breach of trust, fraud, coercion, duress or undue influence on the part of any of the directors of the Company;
- (i) following the date of this letter and prior to the issue of the ADSs, the Company will validly enter into an underwriting agreement on substantially the terms and conditions described in Exhibit 1.1 of the Registration Statement; and
- (j) that no Shares or rights to subscribe for Shares have been or shall be offered to the public in the United Kingdom in breach of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000, as amended (“**FSMA**”) or of any other United Kingdom laws or regulations concerning offers of securities to the public, and no communication has been or shall be made in relation to the Shares in breach of section 21 of FSMA or any other United Kingdom laws or regulations relating to offers or invitations to subscribe for, or to acquire rights to subscribe for or otherwise acquire, shares or other securities.

Cooley (UK) LLP Dashwood 69 Old Broad Street London EC2M 1QS, UK
t: +44 (0) 20 7583 4055 f: +44 (0) 20 7785 9355 cooley.com

Cooley (UK) LLP is a limited liability partnership and is registered in England and Wales with registered number OC395270. Our registered office is at the address above. Cooley (UK) LLP is authorised and regulated by the Solicitors Regulation Authority (SRA number 617791). A list of the members of Cooley (UK) LLP and their professional qualifications is open to inspection at its registered office. The word ‘partner,’ used in relation to Cooley (UK) LLP, refers to a member of Cooley (UK) LLP or an employee or consultant of Cooley (UK) LLP (or any affiliated firm) of equivalent standing.

RESERVATIONS

The opinions in this letter are subject to the following reservations:

- (a) the Searches are not capable of revealing conclusively whether or not a winding-up or administration petition or order has been presented or made, a receiver appointed, a company voluntary arrangement proposed or approved or any other insolvency proceeding commenced, and the available records may not be complete or up-to-date. In particular, the Central Registry of Winding-Up Petitions in England may not contain details of administration applications filed, or appointments recorded in or orders made by, district registries and county courts outside London. Searches at Companies House and at the Central Registry of Winding Up Petitions in England are not capable of revealing whether or not a winding up petition or a petition for the making of an administration order has been presented and, further, notice of a winding up order or resolution, notice of an administration order and notice of the appointment of a receiver may not be filed at Companies House immediately and there may be a delay in the relevant notice appearing on the file of the company concerned. Further, not all security interests are registrable, such security interests have not in fact been registered or such security interests have been created by an individual or an entity which is not registered in England. We have not made enquiries of any District Registry or County Court in England;
- (b) the opinions set out in this letter are subject to: (i) any limitations arising from applicable laws relating to insolvency, bankruptcy, administration, reorganisation, liquidation, moratoria, schemes or analogous circumstances; and (ii) an English court exercising its discretion under section 426 of the Insolvency Act 1986 (*co-operation between courts exercising jurisdiction in relation to insolvency*) to assist the courts having the corresponding jurisdiction in any part of the United Kingdom or any relevant country or territory;
- (c) we express no opinion as to matters of fact;
- (d) we have made no enquiries of any individual connected with the Company;
- (e) a certificate, documentation, notification, opinion or the like might be held by the English courts not to be conclusive if it can be shown to have an unreasonable or arbitrary basis or in the event of a manifest error; and
- (f) it should be understood that we have not been responsible for investigating or verifying the accuracy of the facts, including statements of foreign law, or the reasonableness of any statements of opinion, contained in the Registration Statement, or that no material facts have been omitted from it.

Cooley (UK) LLP Dashwood 69 Old Broad Street London EC2M 1QS, UK
t: +44 (0) 20 7583 4055 f: +44 (0) 20 7785 9355 cooley.com

Cooley (UK) LLP is a limited liability partnership and is registered in England and Wales with registered number OC395270. Our registered office is at the address above. Cooley (UK) LLP is authorised and regulated by the Solicitors Regulation Authority (SRA number 617791). A list of the members of Cooley (UK) LLP and their professional qualifications is open to inspection at its registered office. The word 'partner,' used in relation to Cooley (UK) LLP, refers to a member of Cooley (UK) LLP or an employee or consultant of Cooley (UK) LLP (or any affiliated firm) of equivalent standing.

AUTOLUS THERAPEUTICS PLC

2018 EQUITY INCENTIVE PLAN

Adopted by the Board on June 15, 2018 and approved by Shareholders on [] 2018



COOLEY (UK) LLP, DASHWOOD, 69 OLD BROAD STREET, LONDON EC2M 1QS, UK
T: +44 (0) 20 7583 4055 F: +44 (0) 20 7785 9355 WWW.COOLEY.COM

Table of Contents

	Page
1. PURPOSE	1
2. ELIGIBILITY	1
3. ADMINISTRATION AND DELEGATION	1
3.1 Administration	1
3.2 Appointment of Committees	1
3.3 Delegation of an Officer	1
4. SHARES AVAILABLE FOR AWARDS	1
4.1 Number of Shares	1
4.2 Share Recycling	2
4.3 Incentive Option Limitations	2
4.4 Substitute Awards	2
4.5 Deed Poll	3
5. OPTIONS AND SHARE APPRECIATION RIGHTS	3
5.1 General	3
5.2 Exercise Price	3
5.3 Duration	3
5.4 Exercise	4
5.5 Payment Upon Exercise	4
6. RESTRICTED SHARES; RESTRICTED SHARE UNITS	5
6.1 General	5
6.2 Restricted Shares	5
6.3 Restricted Share Units	5
7. OTHER SHARE BASED AWARDS	6
8. ADJUSTMENTS FOR CHANGES IN SHARES AND CERTAIN OTHER EVENTS	6
8.1 Equity Restructuring	6
8.2 Corporate Events	6
8.3 Administrative Stand Still	8
8.4 General	8
9. GENERAL PROVISIONS APPLICABLE TO AWARDS	8
9.1 Transferability	8
9.2 Documentation	9
9.3 Discretion	9
9.4 Termination of Status	9
9.5 Withholding	9
9.6 Amendment of Award; Repricing	10
9.7 Conditions on Delivery of Shares	10

Table of Contents

	Page
9.8 Acceleration	10
9.9 Additional Terms of Incentive Options	10
10. MISCELLANEOUS	11
10.1 No Right to Employment or Other Status	11
10.2 No Rights as Shareholder; Certificates	11
10.3 Effective Date and Term of Plan	11
10.4 Amendment of Plan	11
10.5 Provisions for Foreign Participants	12
10.6 Section 409A	12
10.7 Limitations on Liability	13
10.8 Lock-Up Period	13
10.9 Data Privacy	13
10.10 Severability	13
10.11 Governing Documents	14
10.12 Governing Law	14
10.13 Claw-back Provisions	14
10.14 Titles and Headings	14
10.15 Conformity to Securities Laws	14
10.16 Relationship to Other Benefits	14
10.17 Broker-Assisted Sales	14
11. DEFINITIONS	15
APPENDIX 1 OPTION GRANT NOTICE	20
APPENDIX 2 RESTRICTED SHARE GRANT NOTICE	26
APPENDIX 3 PERFORMANCE RESTRICTED SHARE UNIT GRANT NOTICE	35
APPENDIX 4 RESTRICTED SHARE UNIT GRANT NOTICE	43
APPENDIX 5 NON-EMPLOYEE SUB-PLAN	51

AUTOLUS THERAPEUTICS PLC
2018 EQUITY INCENTIVE PLAN

1. PURPOSE

The Plan's purpose is to enhance the Company's ability to attract, retain and motivate persons who make (or are expected to make) important contributions to the Company by providing these individuals with equity ownership opportunities. Capitalized terms used in the Plan are defined in Section 11.

2. ELIGIBILITY

Service Providers are eligible to be granted Awards under the Plan, subject to the limitations described herein.

3. ADMINISTRATION AND DELEGATION

3.1 Administration.

The Plan is administered by the Administrator. The Administrator has authority to determine which Service Providers receive Awards, grant Awards, set Award terms and conditions, and designate whether such Awards will cover Ordinary Shares or ADSs, subject to the conditions and limitations in the Plan. The Administrator also has the authority to take all actions and make all determinations under the Plan, to interpret the Plan and Award Agreements and to adopt, amend and repeal Plan administrative rules, guidelines and practices as it deems advisable. The Administrator may correct defects and ambiguities, supply omissions and reconcile inconsistencies in the Plan or any Award as it deems necessary or appropriate to administer the Plan and any Awards. The Administrator's determinations under the Plan are in its sole discretion and will be final and binding on all persons having or claiming any interest in the Plan or any Award.

3.2 Appointment of Committees.

To the extent Applicable Laws permit, the Board may delegate any or all of its powers under the Plan to one or more Committees or officers of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries. The Board may abolish any Committee or re-vest in itself any previously delegated authority at any time.

3.3 Delegation to an Officer.

In each case to the extent Applicable Laws permit, the Board may delegate to one or more officers the authority to do one or both of the following (i) designate Employees who are not officers to be recipients of Awards and the terms of such Awards, and (ii) determine the number of Shares to be subject to such Awards granted to such Employees; provided, however, that the Board resolutions regarding such delegation will specify the total number of Shares that may be subject to the Awards granted by such officer and that such officer may not grant an Award to himself or herself. Any such Awards will be granted on the form of Award Agreement most recently approved for use by the Committee or the Board, unless otherwise provided in the resolutions approving the delegation authority. The Board may not delegate authority to an officer who is acting solely in the capacity of an officer (and not also as a Director) to determine the Fair Market Value pursuant to Section 11.20 below.

4. SHARES AVAILABLE FOR AWARDS

4.1 Number of Shares.

Subject to adjustment under Section 8 and the terms of this Section 4, Awards may be made under the Plan in an aggregate amount up to 6,831,465 Shares (the "**Share Reserve**"), which number is the sum of (i) 3,025,548 new Shares, *plus* (ii) a number of Shares equal to the number of shares that would otherwise remain available for future grants under the Prior Plans as of 12:01 a.m. GMT of the Plan's effective date in Section 10.3 *plus* (iii) the number of shares that are subject to Prior Plan Awards that are outstanding as of 12:01 a.m. GMT on the Plan's effective date in Section 10.3 that may become available for issuance under the Plan in accordance with Section 4.2 from time to time. In addition, the Share Reserve will automatically increase on October 1st of each year following the fiscal year in which the NASDAQ Listing Date occurs and ending on (and including) October 1, 2027, in an amount equal to 4% of the total number of Shares outstanding on September 30th of the same calendar year. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Board may act prior to October 1st of a given year to provide that there will be no October 1st increase in the Share Reserve for such year or that the increase in the Share Reserve for such year will be a lesser number of Shares than would otherwise occur pursuant to the preceding sentence.

4.2 Share Recycling.

If all or any part of an Award or Prior Plan Award expires, lapses or is terminated, exchanged for cash, surrendered, repurchased or cancelled, without having been fully exercised, or forfeited, in any case, in a manner that results in the Company acquiring Shares covered by the Award or Prior Plan Award at a price not greater than the price (as adjusted to reflect any Equity Restructuring) paid by the Participant for such Shares or not issuing any Shares covered by the Award or Prior Plan Award, the unused Shares covered by the Award or Prior Plan Award will, as applicable, become or again be available for Award grants under the Plan. Further, Shares delivered (either by actual delivery or attestation) to the Company by a Participant to satisfy the applicable exercise or purchase price of an Award or Prior Plan Award and/or to satisfy any applicable tax withholding obligation (including Shares retained by the Company from the Award or Prior Plan Award being exercised or purchased and/or creating the tax obligation) will, as applicable, become or again be available for Award grants under the Plan. The payment of Dividend Equivalents in cash in conjunction with any outstanding Awards or Prior Plan Awards shall not count against the Share Reserve.

4.3 Incentive Option Limitations.

Notwithstanding anything to the contrary herein, subject to adjustment under Section 8, no more than 14,000,000 Shares may be issued pursuant to the exercise of Incentive Options.

4.4 Substitute Awards.

In connection with an entity's merger or consolidation with the Company or the Company's acquisition of an entity's property or stock, the Administrator may grant Awards in substitution for any options or other equity or equity-based awards granted before such merger or consolidation by such entity or its affiliate. Substitute Awards may be granted on such terms as the Administrator deems appropriate, notwithstanding limitations on Awards in the Plan. Substitute Awards will not count against the Share Reserve (nor shall Shares subject to a Substitute Award be added to the Shares available for Awards under the Plan as provided above), except that Shares acquired by exercise of substitute Incentive Options will count against the maximum number of Shares that may be issued pursuant to the exercise of Incentive Options under the Plan. Additionally, in the event that a company acquired by the Company or any Subsidiary or with which the Company or any Subsidiary combines has shares available under a pre-existing plan approved by shareholders and not adopted in contemplation of such acquisition or combination, the shares available for grant pursuant to the terms of such pre-existing plan (as adjusted, to the extent appropriate, using the exchange ratio or other adjustment or valuation ratio or formula used in such acquisition or combination to determine the consideration payable to the holders of common stock of the entities party to such acquisition or combination) may be used for Awards under the Plan and shall not reduce the Shares authorized for grant under the Plan (and Shares subject to such Awards shall not be added to the Shares available for Awards under the Plan as provided above); provided that Awards using such available shares shall not be made after the date awards or grants could have been made under the terms of the pre-existing plan, absent the acquisition or combination, and shall only be made to individuals who were not Employees or Directors prior to such acquisition or combination.

- 4.5 Deed Poll.
- The Administrator may grant Awards by entering into a deed poll and, as soon as practicable after the Company has executed the deed poll, the Administrator shall enter into an Award Agreement.
5. **OPTIONS AND SHARE APPRECIATION RIGHTS**
- 5.1 General.
- The Administrator may grant Options or Share Appreciation Rights to Service Providers subject to the limitations in the Plan, including any limitations in the Plan that apply to Incentive Options. The Administrator will determine the number of Shares covered by each Option and Share Appreciation Right, the exercise price of each Option and Share Appreciation Right and the conditions and limitations applicable to the exercise of each Option and Share Appreciation Right. A Share Appreciation Right will entitle the Participant (or other person entitled to exercise the Share Appreciation Right) to receive from the Company upon exercise of the exercisable portion of the Share Appreciation Right an amount determined by multiplying the excess, if any, of the Fair Market Value of one Share on the date of exercise over the exercise price per Share of the Share Appreciation Right by the number of Shares with respect to which the Share Appreciation Right is exercised, subject to any limitations of the Plan or that the Administrator may impose and payable in cash, Shares valued at Fair Market Value or a combination of the two as the Administrator may determine or provide in the Award Agreement.
- 5.2 Exercise Price.
- The Administrator will establish each Option's and Share Appreciation Right's exercise price and specify the exercise price in the Award Agreement. The exercise price will not be less than 100% of the Fair Market Value on the grant date of the Option or Share Appreciation Right.
- 5.3 Duration.
- Each Option or Share Appreciation Right will be exercisable at such times and as specified in the Award Agreement, provided that the term of an Option or Share Appreciation Right will not exceed ten years. Notwithstanding the foregoing and unless determined otherwise by the Company, in the event that on the last business day of the term of an Option or Share Appreciation Right (other than an Incentive Option) (i) the exercise of the Option or Share Appreciation Right is prohibited by Applicable Laws, as determined by the Company, or (ii) Shares may not be purchased or sold by the applicable Participant due to any Company insider trading policy (including blackout periods) or a “**lock-up**” agreement undertaken in connection with an issuance of securities by the Company, the term of the Option or Share Appreciation Right shall be extended until the date that is thirty (30) days after the end of the legal prohibition, black-out period or lock-up agreement, as determined by the Company; provided, however, in no event shall the extension last beyond the ten year term of the applicable Option or Share Appreciation Right. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if the

Participant, prior to the end of the term of an Option or Share Appreciation Right, violates the non-competition, non-solicitation, confidentiality or other similar restrictive covenant provisions of any employment contract, confidentiality and nondisclosure agreement or other agreement between the Participant and the Company or any of its Subsidiaries, the right of the Participant and the Participant's transferees to exercise any Option or Share Appreciation Right issued to the Participant shall terminate immediately upon such violation, unless the Company otherwise determines. In addition, if, prior to the end of the term of an Option or Share Appreciation Right, the Participant is given notice by the Company or any of its Subsidiaries of the Participant's Termination of Service by the Company or any of its Subsidiaries for Cause, and the effective date of such Termination of Service is subsequent to the date of the delivery of such notice, the right of the Participant and the Participant's transferees to exercise any Option or Share Appreciation Right issued to the Participant shall be suspended from the time of the delivery of such notice until the earlier of (i) such time as it is determined or otherwise agreed that the Participant's service as a Service Provider will not be terminated for Cause as provided in such notice or (ii) the effective date of the Participant's Termination of Service by the Company or any of its Subsidiaries for Cause (in which case the right of the Participant and the Participant's transferees to exercise any Option or Share Appreciation Right issued to the Participant will terminate immediately upon the effective date of such Termination of Service).

5.4 Exercise.

Options and Share Appreciation Rights may be exercised by delivering to the Company a written notice of exercise, in a form the Administrator approves (which may be electronic), signed by the person authorized to exercise the Option or Share Appreciation Right, together with, as applicable, payment in full (i) as specified in Section 5.5 for the number of Shares for which the Award is exercised and (ii) as specified in Section 9.5 for any applicable taxes. Unless the Administrator otherwise determines, an Option or Share Appreciation Right may not be exercised for a fraction of a Share.

5.5 Payment Upon Exercise.

Subject to Section 10.8, any Company insider trading policy (including blackout periods) and Applicable Laws, the exercise price of an Option must be paid by:

- (a) cash, wire transfer of immediately available funds or by check payable to the order of the Company, provided that the Company may limit the use of one of the foregoing payment forms if one or more of the payment forms below is permitted;
- (b) if there is a public market for Shares at the time of exercise, unless the Company otherwise determines, (A) delivery (including telephonically to the extent permitted by the Company) of an irrevocable and unconditional undertaking by a broker acceptable to the Company to deliver promptly to the Company sufficient funds to pay the exercise price, or (B) the Participant's delivery to the Company of a copy of irrevocable and unconditional instructions to a broker acceptable to the Company to deliver promptly to the Company cash or a check sufficient to pay the exercise price; provided that such amount is paid to the Company at such time as may be required by the Administrator;

- (c) to the extent permitted by the Administrator, delivery (either by actual delivery or attestation) of Shares owned by the Participant valued at their Fair Market Value;
- (d) to the extent permitted by the Administrator, surrendering Shares then issuable upon the Option's exercise valued at their Fair Market Value on the exercise date;
- (e) to the extent permitted by the Administrator, delivery of a promissory note or any other property that the Administrator determines is good and valuable consideration; or
- (f) to the extent permitted by the Company, any combination of the above payment forms approved by the Administrator.

6. **RESTRICTED SHARES; RESTRICTED SHARE UNITS**

6.1 General.

The Administrator may grant Restricted Shares, or the right to purchase Restricted Shares, to any Service Provider, subject to the Company's right to repurchase all or part of such shares at their issue price or other stated or formula price from the Participant (or to require forfeiture of such shares) if conditions the Administrator specifies in the Award Agreement are not satisfied before the end of the applicable restriction period or periods that the Administrator establishes for such Award. In addition, the Administrator may grant to Service Providers Restricted Share Units, which may be subject to vesting and forfeiture conditions during the applicable restriction period or periods, as set forth in an Award Agreement. The Administrator will determine and set forth in the Award Agreement the terms and conditions for each Restricted Share and Restricted Share Unit Award, subject to the conditions and limitations contained in the Plan.

6.2 Restricted Shares.

(a) Dividends.

Participants holding Restricted Shares will be entitled to all ordinary cash dividends paid with respect to such Shares, unless the Administrator provides otherwise in the Award Agreement. In addition, unless the Administrator provides otherwise, if any dividends or distributions are paid in Shares, or consist of a dividend or distribution to holders of Restricted Shares of property other than an ordinary cash dividend, the Shares or other property will be subject to the same restrictions on transferability and forfeitability as the Restricted Shares with respect to which they were paid.

(b) Certificates.

The Company may require that the Participant deposit in escrow with the Company (or its designee) any certificates issued in respect of Restricted Shares, together with a stock transfer form endorsed in blank.

6.3 Restricted Share Units.

(a) Settlement.

The Administrator may provide that settlement of Restricted Share Units will occur upon or as soon as reasonably practicable after the Restricted Share Units vest or will instead be deferred, on a mandatory basis or at the Participant's election.

(b) Shareholder Rights.

A Participant will have no rights of a shareholder with respect to Shares subject to any Restricted Share Unit unless and until the Shares are delivered in settlement of the Restricted Share Unit.

(c) Dividend Equivalents.

If the Administrator provides, a grant of Restricted Share Units may provide a Participant with the right to receive Dividend Equivalents. Dividend Equivalents may be paid currently or credited to an account for the Participant, settled in cash or Shares and subject to the same restrictions on transferability and forfeitability as the Restricted Share Units with respect to which the Dividend Equivalents are granted and subject to other terms and conditions as set forth in the Award Agreement.

7. **OTHER SHARE BASED AWARDS**

Other Share Based Awards may be granted to Participants, including Awards entitling Participants to receive Shares to be delivered in the future (whether based on specified Performance Criteria or otherwise), in each case subject to any conditions and limitations in the Plan. Such Other Share Based Awards will also be available as a payment form in the settlement of other Awards, as standalone payments and as payment in lieu of compensation to which a Participant is otherwise entitled. Other Share Based Awards may be paid in Shares or other property, as the Administrator determines. Subject to the provisions of the Plan, the Administrator will determine the terms and conditions of each Other Share Based Award, including any purchase price, performance goal (which may be based on the Performance Criteria), transfer restrictions, and vesting conditions, which will be set forth in the applicable Award Agreement.

8. **ADJUSTMENTS FOR CHANGES IN SHARES AND CERTAIN OTHER EVENTS**

8.1 Equity Restructuring.

In connection with any Equity Restructuring, notwithstanding anything to the contrary in this Section 8, the Administrator may adjust the Share Reserve and each outstanding Award as it deems appropriate to reflect the Equity Restructuring, which may include adjusting the number and type of securities subject to each outstanding Award and/or the Award's exercise price or grant price (if applicable), granting new Awards to Participants, and making a cash payment to Participants, and may further adjust the maximum number and type of securities that may be issued pursuant to the exercise of Incentive Options set forth in Section 4.3. The adjustments provided under this Section 8.1 will be final and binding on the affected Participant and the Company; provided that the Administrator will determine whether an adjustment is equitable.

8.2 Corporate Events.

In the event of any Equity Restructuring, dividend or other distribution (whether in the form of cash, Shares, other securities, or other property), capitalization, share issue, offer, subdivision, reorganization, merger, consolidation, combination, amalgamation, repurchase,

recapitalization, liquidation, dissolution, or sale, transfer, exchange or other disposition of all or substantially all of the assets of the Company, or sale or exchange of Shares or other securities of the Company, Change in Control, issuance of warrants or other rights to purchase Shares or other securities of the Company, other similar corporate transaction or event, other unusual or nonrecurring transaction or event affecting the Company or its financial statements or any change in any Applicable Laws or accounting principles (any “**Corporate Event**”), the Administrator, on such terms and conditions as it deems appropriate, either by the terms of the Award or by action taken prior to the occurrence of such transaction or event (except that action to give effect to a change in Applicable Laws or accounting principles may be made within a reasonable period of time after such change) and either automatically or upon the Participant’s request, is hereby authorized to take any one or more of the following actions whenever the Administrator determines that such action is appropriate in order to (x) prevent dilution or enlargement of the benefits or potential benefits intended by the Company to be made available under the Plan or with respect to any Award granted or issued under the Plan, (y) to facilitate such transaction or event or (z) give effect to such changes in Applicable Laws or accounting principles:

- (a) To provide for the cancellation of any such Award in exchange for either an amount of cash or other property with a value equal to the amount that could have been obtained upon the exercise or settlement of the vested portion of such Award or realization of the Participant’s rights under the vested portion of such Award, as applicable; provided that, if the amount that could have been obtained upon the exercise or settlement of the vested portion of such Award or realization of the Participant’s rights, in any case, is equal to or less than zero (as determined by the Administrator in its discretion), then the Award may be terminated without payment. In addition, such payments under this provision may, in the Administrator’s discretion, be delayed to the same extent that payment of consideration to the holders of Ordinary Shares in connection with the Corporate Event is delayed as a result of escrows, earn outs, holdbacks or any other contingencies;
- (b) To provide that such Award shall vest and, to the extent applicable, be exercisable as to all shares covered thereby, notwithstanding anything to the contrary in the Plan or the provisions of such Award;
- (c) To provide that such Award be assumed by the successor or survivor corporation, or a parent or subsidiary thereof, or shall be substituted for by awards covering the equity securities of the successor or survivor corporation, or a parent or subsidiary thereof, with appropriate adjustments as to the number and kind of shares and/or applicable exercise or purchase price, in all cases, as determined by the Administrator;
- (d) To make adjustments in the number and type of shares (or other securities or property) subject to outstanding Awards and/or with respect to which Awards may be granted under the Plan (including, but not limited to, adjustments of the limitations in Section 4 hereof on the maximum number and kind of shares which may be issued) and/or in the terms and conditions of (including the grant or exercise price), and the criteria included in, outstanding Awards;

- (e) To replace such Award with other rights or property selected by the Administrator; and/or
- (f) To provide that the Award will terminate and cannot vest, be exercised or become payable after the applicable transaction or event.

The Administrator need not take the same action or actions with respect to all Awards or portions thereof or with respect to all Participants. The Administrator may take different actions with respect to the vested and unvested portions of an Award.

8.3 Administrative Stand Still.

In the event of any pending Corporate Event or other similar transaction, for administrative convenience, the Administrator may refuse to permit the exercise of any Award for up to sixty days before or after such transaction.

8.4 General.

Except as expressly provided in the Plan or the Administrator's action under the Plan, no Participant will have any rights due to any subdivision or consolidation of Shares of any class, dividend payment, increase or decrease in the number of Shares of any class, issue, rights issue, offer or dissolution, liquidation, merger, or consolidation of the Company or other corporation. Except as expressly provided with respect to an Equity Restructuring under Section 8.1 above or the Administrator's action under the Plan, no issuance by the Company of Shares of any class, or securities convertible into Shares of any class, will affect, and no adjustment will be made regarding, the number of Shares subject to an Award or the Award's grant or exercise price. The existence of the Plan, any Award Agreements and the Awards granted hereunder will not affect or restrict in any way the Company's right or power to make or authorize (i) any adjustment, recapitalization, reorganization or other change in the Company's capital structure or its business, (ii) any Corporate Event or (iii) sale or issuance of securities, including securities with rights superior to those of the Shares or securities convertible into or exchangeable for Shares. The Administrator may treat Participants and Awards (or portions thereof) differently under this Section 8.

9. **GENERAL PROVISIONS APPLICABLE TO AWARDS**

9.1 Transferability.

Except as the Administrator may determine or provide in an Award Agreement or otherwise for Awards other than Incentive Options, Awards may not be sold, assigned, transferred, pledged or otherwise encumbered, either voluntarily or by operation of law, except by will or the laws of descent and distribution, or, subject to the Administrator's consent, pursuant to a domestic relations order, and, during the life of the Participant, will be exercisable only by the Participant. References to a Participant, to the extent relevant in the context, will include references to a Participant's authorized transferee that the Administrator specifically approves.

- 9.2 Documentation.
- Each Award will be evidenced in an Award Agreement, which may be written or electronic, as the Administrator determines. Each Award may contain terms and conditions in addition to those set forth in the Plan.
- 9.3 Discretion.
- Except as the Plan otherwise provides, each Award may be made alone or in addition or in relation to any other Award. The terms of each Award to a Participant need not be identical, and the Administrator need not treat Participants or Awards (or portions thereof) uniformly.
- 9.4 Termination of Status.
- The Administrator will determine how the disability, death, retirement, authorized leave of absence or any other change or purported change in a Participant's Service Provider status affects an Award and the extent to which, and the period during which, the Participant, the Participant's legal representative, conservator, guardian or Designated Beneficiary may exercise rights under the Award, if applicable.
- 9.5 Withholding.
- Each Participant must pay the Company, or make provision satisfactory to the Administrator for payment of, any taxes (which includes any social security contributions or the like) required by law to be withheld or paid by the Company or by an Subsidiary that is the employing entity of the Participant in connection with such Participant's Awards by the date of the event creating the tax liability. The Company may deduct an amount sufficient to satisfy such tax obligations based on the minimum statutory withholding rates (or such other rate as may be determined by the Company after considering any accounting consequences or costs) from any payment of any kind otherwise due to a Participant. Subject to Section 10.8 and any Company insider trading policy (including blackout periods), Participants may satisfy such tax obligations (i) in cash, by wire transfer of immediately available funds, by check made payable to the order of the Company, provided that the Company may limit the use of the foregoing payment forms if one or more of the payment forms below is permitted, (ii) to the extent permitted by the Administrator, in whole or in part by delivery of Shares, including Shares retained from the Award creating the tax obligation, valued at their Fair Market Value, (iii) if there is a public market for Shares at the time the tax obligations are satisfied, unless the Company otherwise determines, (A) delivery (including telephonically to the extent permitted by the Company) of an irrevocable and unconditional undertaking by a broker acceptable to the Company to deliver promptly to the Company sufficient funds to satisfy the tax obligations, or (B) delivery by the Participant to the Company of a copy of irrevocable and unconditional instructions to a broker acceptable to the Company to deliver promptly to the Company cash or a check sufficient to satisfy the tax withholding, provided that such amount is paid to the Company at such time as may be required by the Administrator, or (iv) to the extent permitted by the Company, any combination of the foregoing payment forms approved by the Administrator. If any tax withholding obligation will be satisfied under clause (ii) of the immediately preceding sentence by the Company's retention of Shares from the Award creating the tax obligation and there is a public market for Shares at the time the tax obligation is satisfied, the Company may elect to instruct any brokerage firm determined acceptable to the Company for such purpose to sell on the applicable Participant's behalf some or all of the Shares retained and to remit the proceeds of the sale to the Company or its designee, and each Participant's acceptance of an Award under the Plan will constitute the Participant's authorization to the Company and instruction and authorization to such brokerage firm to complete the transactions described in this sentence.

- 9.6 Amendment of Award; Repricing.
- The Administrator may amend, modify or terminate any outstanding Award, including by substituting another Award of the same or a different type, changing the exercise or settlement date, and converting an Incentive Option to a Non-Qualified Option. The Participant's consent to such action will be required unless (i) the action, taking into account any related action, does not materially and adversely affect the Participant's rights under the Award, or (ii) the change is permitted under Section 8 or pursuant to Section 10.6. Notwithstanding the foregoing or anything in the Plan to the contrary, the Administrator may not, except pursuant to Section 8, without the approval of the shareholders of the Company, reduce the exercise price per share of outstanding Options or Share Appreciation Rights or cancel outstanding Options or Share Appreciation Rights in exchange for cash, other Awards or Options or Share Appreciation Rights with an exercise price per share that is less than the exercise price per share of the original Options or Share Appreciation Rights.
- 9.7 Conditions on Delivery of Shares.
- The Company will not be obligated to deliver any Shares under the Plan or remove restrictions from Shares previously delivered under the Plan until (i) all Award conditions have been met or removed to the Company's satisfaction, (ii) as determined by the Company, all other legal matters regarding the issuance and delivery of such Shares (including payment of nominal value) have been satisfied, including any applicable securities laws and stock exchange or stock market rules and regulations, and (iii) the Participant has executed and delivered to the Company such representations or agreements as the Administrator deems necessary or appropriate to satisfy any Applicable Laws. The Company's inability to obtain authority from any regulatory body having jurisdiction, which the Administrator determines is necessary to the lawful issuance and sale of any securities, will relieve the Company of any liability for failing to issue or sell such Shares as to which such requisite authority has not been obtained.
- 9.8 Acceleration.
- The Administrator may at any time provide that any Award will become immediately vested and fully or partially exercisable, free of some or all restrictions or conditions, or otherwise fully or partially realizable.
- 9.9 Additional Terms of Incentive Options.
- The Administrator may grant Incentive Options only to employees of the Company, any of its present or future parent or subsidiary corporations, as defined in Sections 424(e) or (f) of the Code, respectively, and any other entities the employees of which are eligible to receive Incentive Options under the Code. If an Incentive Option is granted to a Greater Than 10% Shareholder, the exercise price will not be less than 110% of the Fair Market Value on the Option's grant date, and the term of the Option will not exceed five years. All Incentive Options will be subject to and construed consistently with Section 422 of the Code. By accepting an Incentive Option, the Participant agrees to give prompt notice to the Company of

dispositions or other transfers (other than in connection with a Change in Control) of Shares acquired under the Option made within (i) two years from the grant date of the Option or (ii) one year after the transfer of such Shares to the Participant, specifying the date of the disposition or other transfer and the amount the Participant realized, in cash, other property, assumption of indebtedness or other consideration, in such disposition or other transfer. Neither the Company nor the Administrator will be liable to a Participant, or any other party, if an Incentive Option fails or ceases to qualify as an “incentive stock option” under Section 422 of the Code. Any Incentive Option or portion thereof that fails to qualify as an “incentive stock option” under Section 422 of the Code for any reason, including becoming exercisable with respect to Shares having a fair market value exceeding the \$100,000 limitation under Treasury Regulation Section 1.422-4, will be a Non-Qualified Option.

10. **MISCELLANEOUS**

10.1 No Right to Employment or Other Status.

No person will have any claim or right to be granted an Award, and the grant of an Award will not be construed as giving a Participant the right to continued employment or any other relationship with the Company. The Company expressly reserves the right at any time to dismiss or otherwise terminate its relationship with a Participant free from any liability or claim under the Plan or any Award, except as expressly provided in an Award Agreement.

10.2 No Rights as Shareholder; Certificates.

Subject to the Award Agreement, no Participant or Designated Beneficiary will have any rights as a shareholder with respect to any Shares to be distributed under an Award until becoming the record holder of such Shares. Notwithstanding any other provision of the Plan, unless the Administrator otherwise determines or Applicable Laws require, the Company will not be required to deliver to any Participant certificates evidencing Shares issued in connection with any Award and instead such Shares may be recorded in the books of the Company (or, as applicable, its transfer agent or stock plan administrator). The Company may place legends on certificates issued under the Plan that the Administrator deems necessary or appropriate to comply with Applicable Laws.

10.3 Effective Date and Term of Plan.

Unless earlier terminated by the Board, the Plan will become effective on the day prior to the NASDAQ Listing Date and will remain in effect until the tenth anniversary of the effective date, but Awards previously granted may extend beyond that date in accordance with the Plan. If the Plan is not approved by the Company’s shareholders, the Plan will not become effective, no Awards will be granted under the Plan and the Prior Plans will continue in full force and effect in accordance with their terms. No Incentive Option may be granted after the tenth anniversary of the earlier of (i) the date the Plan is adopted by the Board or (ii) the date the Plan is approved by the Company’s shareholders.

10.4 Amendment of Plan.

The Administrator may amend, suspend or terminate the Plan at any time; provided that no amendment, other than an increase to the Share Reserve, may materially and adversely affect any Award outstanding at the time of such amendment without the affected Participant’s consent. No Awards may be granted under the Plan during any suspension period or after Plan termination. Awards outstanding at the time of any Plan suspension or

termination will continue to be governed by the Plan and the Award Agreement, as in effect before such suspension or termination. The Board will obtain shareholder approval of any Plan amendment to the extent necessary to comply with Applicable Laws.

10.5 Provisions for Foreign Participants.

The Administrator may modify Awards granted to Participants who are foreign nationals or employed outside the United States or establish subplans or procedures under the Plan to address differences in laws, rules, regulations or customs of such foreign jurisdictions with respect to tax, securities, currency, employee benefit or other matters.

10.6 Section 409A.

The following provisions only apply to Participants subject to tax in the United States.

(a) General.

The Company intends that all Awards be structured to comply with, or be exempt from, Section 409A, such that no adverse tax consequences, interest, or penalties under Section 409A apply. Notwithstanding anything in the Plan or any Award Agreement to the contrary, the Administrator may, without a Participant's consent, amend this Plan or Awards, adopt policies and procedures, or take any other actions (including amendments, policies, procedures and retroactive actions) as are necessary or appropriate to preserve the intended tax treatment of Awards, including any such actions intended to (A) exempt this Plan or any Award from Section 409A, or (B) comply with Section 409A, including regulations, guidance, compliance programs and other interpretative authority that may be issued after an Award's grant date. The Company makes no representations or warranties as to an Award's tax treatment under Section 409A or otherwise. The Company will have no obligation under this Section 10.6 or otherwise to avoid the taxes, penalties or interest under Section 409A with respect to any Award and will have no liability to any Participant or any other person if any Award, compensation or other benefits under the Plan are determined to constitute noncompliant "nonqualified deferred compensation" subject to taxes, penalties or interest under Section 409A.

(b) Separation from Service.

If an Award constitutes "nonqualified deferred compensation" under Section 409A, any payment or settlement of such Award upon a termination of a Participant's Service Provider relationship will, to the extent necessary to avoid taxes under Section 409A, be made only upon the Participant's "separation from service" (within the meaning of Section 409A), whether such "separation from service" occurs upon or after the termination of the Participant's Service Provider relationship. For purposes of this Plan or any Award Agreement relating to any such payments or benefits, references to a "termination," "termination of employment" or like terms means a "separation from service."

(c) Payments to Specified Employees.

Notwithstanding any contrary provision in the Plan or any Award Agreement, any payment(s) of “nonqualified deferred compensation” required to be made under an Award to a “specified employee” (as defined under Section 409A and as the Administrator determines) due to his or her “separation from service” will, to the extent necessary to avoid taxes under Section 409A(a)(2)(B)(i) of the Code, be delayed for the six-month period immediately following such “separation from service” (or, if earlier, until the specified employee’s death) and will instead be paid (as set forth in the Award Agreement) on the day immediately following such six-month period or as soon as administratively practicable thereafter (without interest). Any payments of “nonqualified deferred compensation” under such Award payable more than six months following the Participant’s “separation from service” will be paid at the time or times the payments are otherwise scheduled to be made.

10.7 Limitations on Liability.

Notwithstanding any other provisions of the Plan, no individual acting as a director, officer, other employee or agent of the Company or any Subsidiary will be liable to any Participant, former Participant, spouse, beneficiary, or any other person for any claim, loss, liability, or expense incurred in connection with the Plan or any Award, and such individual will not be personally liable with respect to the Plan because of any contract or other instrument executed in his or her capacity as an Administrator, director, officer, other employee or agent of the Company or any Subsidiary. The Company will indemnify and hold harmless each director, officer, other employee and agent of the Company or any Subsidiary that has been or will be granted or delegated any duty or power relating to the Plan’s administration or interpretation, against any cost or expense (including attorneys’ fees) or liability (including any sum paid in settlement of a claim with the Administrator’s approval) arising from any act or omission concerning this Plan unless arising from such person’s own fraud or bad faith.

10.8 Lock-Up Period.

The Company may, at the request of any underwriter representative or otherwise, in connection with registering the offering of any Company securities under the Securities Act, prohibit Participants from, directly or indirectly, selling or otherwise transferring any Shares or other Company securities during a period of up to one hundred eighty days following the effective date of a Company registration statement filed under the Securities Act, or such longer period as determined by the underwriter.

10.9 Data Privacy.

For the purpose of operating the Plan in the European Union, the Company will collect and process information relating to Participants in accordance with the privacy notice which is provided to each Participant.

10.10 Severability.

If any portion of the Plan or any action taken under it is held illegal or invalid for any reason, the illegality or invalidity will not affect the remaining parts of the Plan, and the Plan will be construed and enforced as if the illegal or invalid provisions had been excluded, and the illegal or invalid action will be null and void.

- 10.11 **Governing Documents.**
- If any contradiction occurs between the Plan and any Award Agreement or other written agreement between a Participant and the Company (or any Subsidiary) that the Administrator has approved, the Plan will govern, unless it is expressly specified in such Award Agreement or other written document that a specific provision of the Plan will not apply.
- 10.12 **Governing Law.**
- The Plan and all Awards will be governed by and interpreted in accordance with the laws of the United Kingdom, disregarding any state's choice-of-law principles requiring the application of a jurisdiction's laws other than the United Kingdom.
- 10.13 **Claw-back Provisions.**
- All Awards (including any proceeds, gains or other economic benefit the Participant actually or constructively receives upon receipt or exercise of any Award or the receipt or resale of any Shares underlying the Award) will be subject to any Company claw-back policy, including any claw-back policy adopted to comply with Applicable Laws (including the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act and any rules or regulations promulgated thereunder) as set forth in such claw-back policy or the Award Agreement.
- 10.14 **Titles and Headings.**
- The titles and headings in the Plan are for convenience of reference only and, if any conflict, the Plan's text, rather than such titles or headings, will control.
- 10.15 **Conformity to Securities Laws.**
- Participant acknowledges that the Plan is intended to conform to the extent necessary with Applicable Laws. Notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, the Plan and all Awards will be administered only in conformance with Applicable Laws. To the extent Applicable Laws permit, the Plan and all Award Agreements will be deemed amended as necessary to conform to Applicable Laws.
- 10.16 **Relationship to Other Benefits.**
- No payment under the Plan will be taken into account in determining any benefits under any pension, retirement, savings, profit sharing, group insurance, welfare or other benefit plan of the Company or any Subsidiary except as expressly provided in writing in such other plan or an agreement thereunder.
- 10.17 **Broker-Assisted Sales.**
- In the event of a broker-assisted sale of Shares in connection with the payment of amounts owed by a Participant under or with respect to the Plan or Awards, including amounts to be paid under the final sentence of Section 9.5: (a) any Shares to be sold through the broker-assisted sale will be sold on the day the payment first becomes due, or as soon thereafter as practicable; (b) such Shares may be sold as part of a block trade with other Participants in the Plan in which all participants receive an average price; (c) the applicable Participant will be

responsible for all broker's fees and other costs of sale, and by accepting an Award, each Participant agrees to indemnify and hold the Company harmless from any losses, costs, damages, or expenses relating to any such sale; (d) to the extent the Company or its designee receives proceeds of such sale that exceed the amount owed, the Company will pay such excess in cash to the applicable Participant as soon as reasonably practicable; (e) the Company and its designees are under no obligation to arrange for such sale at any particular price; and (f) in the event the proceeds of such sale are insufficient to satisfy the Participant's applicable obligation, the Participant may be required to pay immediately upon demand to the Company or its designee an amount in cash sufficient to satisfy any remaining portion of the Participant's obligation.

11. **DEFINITIONS**

As used in the Plan, the following words and phrases will have the following meanings:

- 11.1 **"ADSs"** means American Depositary Shares, representing Ordinary Shares on deposit with a U.S. banking institution selected by the Company and which are registered pursuant to a Form F-6.
- 11.2 **"Administrator"** means the Board or a Committee to the extent that the Board's powers or authority under the Plan have been delegated to such Committee.
- 11.3 **"Applicable Laws"** shall mean any applicable law, including without limitation: (a) the requirements relating to the administration of equity incentive plans under U.S. federal and state securities, tax and other applicable laws, rules and regulations, the applicable rules of any stock exchange or quotation system on which the Shares are listed or quoted and the applicable laws and rules of any foreign country or other jurisdiction where Awards are granted; and (b) corporate, securities, tax or other laws, statutes, rules, requirements or regulations, whether U.S. federal, state, local or foreign, applicable in the United Kingdom, United States or any other relevant jurisdiction.
- 11.4 **"Award"** means, individually or collectively, a grant under the Plan of Options, Share Appreciation Rights, Restricted Shares, Restricted Share Units or Other Share Based Awards.
- 11.5 **"Award Agreement"** means a written agreement evidencing an Award, which may be electronic, that contains such terms and conditions as the Administrator determines, consistent with and subject to the terms and conditions of the Plan.
- 11.6 **"Board"** means the Board of Directors of the Company.
- 11.7 **"Cause"** means (i) if a Participant is a party to a written employment or consulting agreement with the Company or any of its Subsidiaries or an Award Agreement in which the term "cause" is defined (a "Relevant Agreement"), "Cause" as defined in the Relevant Agreement, and (ii) if no Relevant Agreement exists, (A) the Administrator's determination that the Participant failed to substantially perform the Participant's duties (other than a failure resulting from the Participant's Disability); (B) the Administrator's determination that the Participant failed to carry out, or comply with any lawful and reasonable directive of the Board or the Participant's immediate supervisor; (C) the occurrence of any act or omission by the Participant that could reasonably be expected to result in (or has resulted in) the Participant's conviction, plea of no

contest, plea of nolo contendere, or imposition of unadjudicated probation for any felony or indictable offense or crime involving moral turpitude; (D) the Participant's unlawful use (including being under the influence) or possession of illegal drugs on the premises of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries or while performing the Participant's duties and responsibilities for the Company or any of its Subsidiaries; or (E) the Participant's commission of an act of fraud, embezzlement, misappropriation, misconduct, or breach of fiduciary duty against the Company or any of its Subsidiaries.

11.8 **"Change in Control"** means and includes each of the following:

- (a) a Sale; or
- (b) a Takeover.

The Administrator shall have full and final authority, which shall be exercised in its sole discretion, to determine conclusively whether a Change in Control has occurred pursuant to the above definition, the date of the occurrence of such Change in Control and any incidental matters relating thereto; provided that any exercise of authority in conjunction with a determination of whether a Change in Control is a "change in control event" as defined in Treasury Regulation Section 1.409A-3(i)(5) shall be consistent with such regulation.

11.9 **"Code"** means the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, and the regulations issued thereunder.

11.10 **"Committee"** means one or more committees or subcommittees of the Board, which may include one or more Company directors or executive officers, to the extent Applicable Laws permit. To the extent required to comply with the provisions of Rule 16b-3, it is intended that each member of the Committee will be, at the time the Committee takes any action with respect to an Award that is subject to Rule 16b-3, a "non-employee director" within the meaning of Rule 16b-3; however, a Committee member's failure to qualify as a "non-employee director" within the meaning of Rule 16b-3 will not invalidate any Award granted by the Committee that is otherwise validly granted under the Plan.

11.11 **"Company"** means Autolus Therapeutics plc, registered in England and Wales with company number 11185179, or any successor.

11.12 **"Control"** shall have the meaning given in section 995 (2) of the UK Income Tax Act 2007, unless otherwise specified.

11.13 **"Designated Beneficiary"** means the beneficiary or beneficiaries the Participant designates, in a manner the Administrator determines, to receive amounts due or exercise the Participant's rights if the Participant dies or becomes incapacitated. Without a Participant's effective designation, **"Designated Beneficiary"** will mean the Participant's estate.

11.14 **"Director"** means a Board member.

11.15 **"Disability"** means a permanent and total disability under Section 22(e)(3) of the Code, as amended.

- 11.16 “**Dividend Equivalents**” means a right granted to a Participant under the Plan to receive the equivalent value (in cash or Shares) of dividends paid on Shares.
- 11.17 “**Employee**” means any employee of the Company or its Subsidiaries.
- 11.18 “**Equity Restructuring**” means a nonreciprocal transaction between the Company and its shareholders, such as a share dividend, share split, spin-off, rights offering or recapitalization through a large, nonrecurring cash dividend, that affects the number or kind of Shares (or other Company securities) or the price of Shares (or other Company securities) and causes a change in the per share value of the Shares underlying outstanding Awards.
- 11.19 “**Exchange Act**” means the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended.
- 11.20 “**Fair Market Value**” means, as of any date, the value of Shares determined as follows: (i) if the Shares are listed on any established stock exchange, its Fair Market Value will be the closing sales price for Shares as quoted on such exchange for the last day preceding such date during which a sale occurred, as reported in The Wall Street Journal or another source the Administrator deems reliable; (ii) if the Shares are not traded on a stock exchange but is quoted on a national market or other quotation system, the closing sales price on the last date preceding such date during which a sale occurred, as reported in The Wall Street Journal or another source the Administrator deems reliable; or (iii) without an established market for the Shares, the Administrator will determine the Fair Market Value in its discretion. Notwithstanding the foregoing, with respect to any Award granted on the pricing date of the Company’s initial public offering, the Fair Market Value shall mean the initial public offering price of a Share as set forth in the Company’s final prospectus relating to its initial public offering filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission.
- 11.21 “**Greater Than 10% Shareholder**” means an individual then owning (within the meaning of Section 424(d) of the Code) more than 10% of the total combined voting power of all classes of equity securities of the Company or its parent or subsidiary corporation, as defined in Section 424(e) and (f) of the Code, respectively.
- 11.22 “**Incentive Option**” means an Option intended to qualify as an “incentive stock option” as defined in Section 422 of the Code.
- 11.23 “**NASDAQ Listing Date**” means the first date upon which the Shares are listed (or approved for listing) upon notice of issuance on the NASDAQ Global Market.
- 11.24 “**Non-Employee Sub-Plan**” means the Non-Employee Sub-Plan to the Plan adopted by the Board;
- 11.25 “**Non-Qualified Option**” means an Option not intended or not qualifying as an Incentive Option.
- 11.26 “**Option**” means an option to purchase Shares.
- 11.27 “**Ordinary Share**” means an ordinary share in the capital of the Company.
- 11.28 “**Other Share Based Awards**” means awards of Shares, and other awards valued wholly or partially by referring to, or are otherwise based on, Shares or other property.

- 11.29 “**Participant**” means a Service Provider who has been granted an Award.
- 11.30 “**Performance Criteria**” mean the criteria (and adjustments) that the Administrator may select for an Award to establish performance goals for a performance period.
- 11.31 “**Plan**” means this 2018 Equity Incentive Plan.
- 11.32 “**Prior Plans**” means any prior equity incentive plans of the Company, its Subsidiaries or their respective predecessors.
- 11.33 “**Prior Plan Award**” means an award outstanding under the Prior Plans as of the Plan’s effective date in Section 10.3.
- 11.34 “**Restricted Shares**” means Shares awarded to a Participant under Section 6 subject to certain vesting conditions and other restrictions.
- 11.35 “**Restricted Share Unit**” means an unfunded, unsecured right to receive, on the applicable settlement date, one Share or an amount in cash or other consideration determined by the Administrator to be of equal value as of such settlement date, subject to certain vesting conditions and other restrictions.
- 11.36 “**Rule 16b-3**” means Rule 16b-3 promulgated under the Exchange Act.
- 11.37 “**Sale**” shall mean the sale of all or substantially all of the assets of the Company.
- 11.38 “**Section 409A**” means Section 409A of the Code and all regulations, guidance, compliance programs and other interpretative authority thereunder.
- 11.39 “**Securities Act**” means the Securities Act of 1933, as amended.
- 11.40 “**Service Provider**” means an Employee or a Director who is an Employee.
- 11.41 “**Share**” means an Ordinary Share or the number of ADSs equal to an Ordinary Share.
- 11.42 “**Share Appreciation Right**” means a Share Appreciation right granted under Section 5.
- 11.43 “**Subsidiary**” means any entity (other than the Company), whether domestic or foreign, in an unbroken chain of entities beginning with the Company if each of the entities other than the last entity in the unbroken chain beneficially owns, at the time of the determination, securities or interests representing at least 50% of the total combined voting power of all classes of securities or interests in one of the other entities in such chain.
- 11.44 “**Substitute Awards**” shall mean Awards granted or Shares issued by the Company in assumption of, or in substitution or exchange for, awards previously granted, or the right or obligation to make future awards, in each case by a company acquired by the Company or any Subsidiary or with which the Company or any Subsidiary combines.
- (a) “**Takeover**” shall mean if any person (or a group of persons acting in concert) (the “**Acquiring Person**”):
- (i) obtains Control of the Company as the result of making a general offer to:-

- (A) acquire all of the issued ordinary share capital of the Company, which is made on a condition that, if it is satisfied, the Acquiring Person will have Control of the Company; or
- (B) acquire all of the shares in the Company which are of the same class as the Shares; or
- (ii) obtains Control of the Company as a result of a compromise or arrangement sanctioned by a court under Section 899 of the UK Companies Act 2006, or sanctioned under any other similar law of another jurisdiction; or
- (iii) becomes bound or entitled under Sections 979 to 985 of the UK Companies Act 2006 (or similar law of another jurisdiction) to acquire shares of the same class as the Shares; or
- (iv) obtains Control of the Company in any other way.

11.45 “**Termination of Service**” means the date the Participant ceases to be a Service Provider.

**APPENDIX 1
OPTION GRANT NOTICE**

**AUTOLUS THERAPEUTICS PLC
2018 EQUITY INCENTIVE PLAN [:NON-EMPLOYEE SUB-PLAN]¹**

Capitalized terms not specifically defined in this Option Grant Notice (the “**Grant Notice**”) have the meanings given to them in the 2018 Equity Incentive Plan [:Non-Employee Sub-Plan]² (as amended from time to time, the “**Plan**”) of Autolus Therapeutics plc (the “**Company**”).

The Company has granted to the participant listed below (“**Participant**”) the option described in this Grant Notice (the “**Option**”), subject to the terms and conditions of the Plan and the Option Agreement attached as Exhibit A (the “**Agreement**”), both of which are incorporated into this Grant Notice by reference.

Participant:

Grant Date:

Exercise Price per Share:

Shares Subject to the Option:

Final Expiration Date:

Vesting Commencement Date:

Vesting Schedule: [To be specified in individual award agreements]

Type of Option [Incentive Option/Non-Qualified Option]

By Participant’s signature below, Participant agrees to be bound by the terms of this Grant Notice, the Plan and the Agreement. Participant has reviewed the Plan, this Grant Notice and the Agreement in their entirety, has had an opportunity to obtain the advice of counsel prior to executing this Grant Notice and fully understands all provisions of the Plan, this Grant Notice and the Agreement. Participant hereby agrees to accept as binding, conclusive and final all decisions or interpretations of the Administrator upon any questions arising under the Plan, this Grant Notice or the Agreement.

AUTOLUS THERAPEUTICS PLC

PARTICIPANT

By: _____

Name:

Title:

[Participant Name]

¹ For Consultants and Directors who are not Employees

² For Consultants and Directors who are not Employees

OPTION AGREEMENT

Capitalized terms not specifically defined in this Agreement have the meanings specified in the Grant Notice or, if not defined in the Grant Notice, in the Plan.

1. GENERAL

1.1 Grant of Option.

The Company has granted to Participant the Option effective as of the grant date set forth in the Grant Notice (the “**Grant Date**”).

1.2 Incorporation of Terms of Plan.

The Option is subject to the terms and conditions set forth in this Agreement and the Plan, which is incorporated herein by reference. In the event of any inconsistency between the Plan and this Agreement, the terms of the Plan will control.

2. PERIOD OF EXERCISABILITY

2.1 Commencement of Exercisability.

The Option will vest and become exercisable according to the vesting schedule in the Grant Notice (the “**Vesting Schedule**”) except that any fraction of a Share as to which the Option would be vested or exercisable will be accumulated and will vest and become exercisable only when a whole Share has accumulated. Notwithstanding anything in the Grant Notice, the Plan or this Agreement to the contrary, unless the Administrator otherwise determines, the Option will immediately expire and be forfeited as to any portion that is not vested and exercisable as of Participant’s Termination of Service for any reason.

2.2 Duration of Exercisability.

The Vesting Schedule is cumulative. Any portion of the Option which vests and becomes exercisable will remain vested and exercisable until the Option expires. The Option will be forfeited immediately upon its expiration.

2.3 Expiration of Option.

The Option may not be exercised to any extent by anyone after, and will expire on, the first of the following to occur:

- (a) The final expiration date in the Grant Notice;
- (b) Except as the Administrator may otherwise approve, the expiration of three (3) months from the date of Participant’s Termination of Service, unless Participant’s Termination of Service is for Cause or by reason of Participant’s death or Disability;

- (c) Except as the Administrator may otherwise approve, the expiration of one (1) year from the date of Participant's Termination of Service by reason of Participant's death or Disability; and
- (d) Except as the Administrator may otherwise approve, Participant's Termination of Service for Cause.

3. **EXERCISE OF OPTION**

3.1 Person Eligible to Exercise.

During Participant's lifetime, only Participant may exercise the Option. After Participant's death, any exercisable portion of the Option may, prior to the time the Option expires, be exercised by Participant's Designated Beneficiary as provided in the Plan.

3.2 Partial Exercise.

Any exercisable portion of the Option or the entire Option, if then wholly exercisable, may be exercised, in whole or in part, according to the procedures in the Plan at any time prior to the time the Option or portion thereof expires, except that the Option may only be exercised for whole Shares.

3.3 Tax Withholding.

- (a) The Company has the right and option, but not the obligation, to treat Participant's failure to provide timely payment in accordance with the Plan of any withholding tax arising in connection with the Option as Participant's election to satisfy all or any portion of the withholding tax by requesting the Company retain Shares otherwise issuable under the Option.
- (b) Participant acknowledges that Participant is ultimately liable and responsible for all taxes owed in connection with the Option, regardless of any action the Company or any Subsidiary takes with respect to any tax withholding obligations that arise in connection with the Option. Neither the Company nor any Subsidiary makes any representation or undertaking regarding the treatment of any tax withholding in connection with the awarding, vesting or exercise of the Option or the subsequent sale of Shares. The Company and the Subsidiaries do not commit and are under no obligation to structure the Option to reduce or eliminate Participant's tax liability.

4. **OTHER PROVISIONS**

4.1 Adjustments.

Participant acknowledges that the Option is subject to adjustment, modification and termination in certain events as provided in this Agreement and the Plan.

4.2 Notices.

Any notice to be given under the terms of this Agreement to the Company must be in writing and addressed to the Company in care of the Company's Secretary at the Company's principal office or the Secretary's then-current email address or facsimile number. Any notice

to be given under the terms of this Agreement to Participant must be in writing and addressed to Participant (or, if Participant is then deceased, to the person entitled to exercise the Option) at Participant's last known mailing address, email address or facsimile number in the Company's personnel files. By a notice given pursuant to this Section, either party may designate a different address for notices to be given to that party. Any notice will be deemed duly given when actually received, when sent by email, when sent by certified mail (return receipt requested) and deposited with postage prepaid in a post office or branch post office regularly maintained by the United States Postal Service, when delivered by a nationally recognized express shipping company or upon receipt of a facsimile transmission confirmation.

4.3 Titles.

Titles are provided herein for convenience only and are not to serve as a basis for interpretation or construction of this Agreement.

4.4 Conformity to Securities Laws.

Participant acknowledges that the Plan, the Grant Notice and this Agreement are intended to conform to the extent necessary with all Applicable Laws and, to the extent Applicable Laws permit, will be deemed amended as necessary to conform to Applicable Laws.

4.5 Successors and Assigns.

The Company may assign any of its rights under this Agreement to single or multiple assignees, and this Agreement will inure to the benefit of the successors and assigns of the Company. Subject to the restrictions on transfer set forth in the Plan, this Agreement will be binding upon and inure to the benefit of the heirs, legatees, legal representatives, successors and assigns of the parties hereto.

4.6 Limitations Applicable to Section 16 Persons.

Notwithstanding any other provision of the Plan or this Agreement, if Participant is subject to Section 16 of the Exchange Act, the Plan, the Grant Notice, this Agreement and the Option will be subject to any additional limitations set forth in any applicable exemptive rule under Section 16 of the Exchange Act (including any amendment to Rule 16b-3) that are requirements for the application of such exemptive rule. To the extent Applicable Laws permit, this Agreement will be deemed amended as necessary to conform to such applicable exemptive rule.

4.7 Entire Agreement.

The Plan, the Grant Notice and this Agreement (including any exhibit hereto) constitute the entire agreement of the parties and supersede in their entirety all prior undertakings and agreements of the Company and Participant with respect to the subject matter hereof.

4.8 Agreement Severable.

In the event that any provision of the Grant Notice or this Agreement is held illegal or invalid, the provision will be severable from, and the illegality or invalidity of the provision will not be construed to have any effect on, the remaining provisions of the Grant Notice or this Agreement.

- 4.9 Limitation on Participant's Rights.
- Participation in the Plan confers no rights or interests other than as herein provided. This Agreement creates only a contractual obligation on the part of the Company as to amounts payable and may not be construed as creating a trust. Neither the Plan nor any underlying program, in and of itself, has any assets. Participant will have only the rights of a general unsecured creditor of the Company with respect to amounts credited and benefits payable, if any, with respect to the Option, and rights no greater than the right to receive the Shares as a general unsecured creditor with respect to the Option, as and when exercised pursuant to the terms hereof.
- 4.10 Not a Contract of Employment.
- Nothing in the Plan, the Grant Notice or this Agreement confers upon Participant any right to continue in the employ or service of the Company or any Subsidiary or interferes with or restricts in any way the rights of the Company and its Subsidiaries, which rights are hereby expressly reserved, to discharge or terminate the services of Participant at any time for any reason whatsoever, with or without Cause, except to the extent expressly provided otherwise in a written agreement between the Company or a Subsidiary and Participant.
- 4.11 Counterparts.
- The Grant Notice may be executed in one or more counterparts, including by way of any electronic signature, subject to Applicable Laws, each of which will be deemed an original and all of which together will constitute one instrument.
- 4.12 Incentive Options.
- If the Option is designated as an Incentive Option:
- (a) Participant acknowledges that to the extent the aggregate fair market value of shares (determined as of the time the option with respect to the shares is granted) with respect to which options intended to qualify as "incentive stock options" under Section 422 of the Code, including the Option, are exercisable for the first time by Participant during any calendar year exceeds \$100,000 or if for any other reason such options do not qualify or cease to qualify for treatment as "incentive stock options" under Section 422 of the Code, such options (including the Option) will be treated as non-qualified options. Participant further acknowledges that the rule set forth in the preceding sentence will be applied by taking the Option and other options into account in the order in which they were granted, as determined under Section 422(d) of the Code. Participant also acknowledges that if the Option is exercised more than three (3) months after Participant's Termination of Service, other than by reason of death or disability, the Option will be taxed as a Non-Qualified Option.

-
- (b) Participant will give prompt written notice to the Company of any disposition or other transfer of any Shares acquired under this Agreement if such disposition or other transfer is made (a) within two (2) years from the Grant Date or (b) within one (1) year after the transfer of such Shares to Participant. Such notice will specify the date of such disposition or other transfer and the amount realized, in cash, other property, assumption of indebtedness or other consideration, by Participant in such disposition or other transfer.

APPENDIX 2
RESTRICTED SHARE GRANT NOTICE

AUTOLUS THERAPEUTICS PLC
2018 EQUITY INCENTIVE PLAN [:NON-EMPLOYEE SUB-PLAN]³

Capitalized terms not specifically defined in this Restricted Share Grant Notice (the “**Grant Notice**”) have the meanings given to them in the 2018 Equity Incentive Plan [:Non-Employee Sub-Plan]⁴ (as amended from time to time, the “**Plan**”) of Autolus Therapeutics plc (the “**Company**”).

The Company has granted to the participant listed below (“**Participant**”) the Restricted Shares (the “**Restricted Shares**”) described in this Grant Notice (the “**Award**”), subject to the terms and conditions of the Plan and the Restricted Share Agreement attached as Exhibit A (the “**Agreement**”), both of which are incorporated into this Grant Notice by reference.

Participant:

Grant Date:

Number of Restricted Shares:

Vesting Commencement Date:

Vesting Schedule:

[To be specified in individual award agreements]

Mandatory Sale to Cover Withholding Taxes:

As a condition to acceptance of this award, to the fullest extent permitted under the Plan and Applicable Laws, withholding taxes and other tax related items will be satisfied through the sale of a number of the shares subject to the Award as determined in accordance with Section 3.3 of the Agreement and the remittance of the cash proceeds to the Company. Under the Agreement, the Company is authorized and directed by the Participant to make payment from the cash proceeds of this sale directly to the appropriate taxing authorities in an amount equal to the taxes required to be withheld. ***The mandatory sale of shares to cover withholding taxes and tax related items is imposed by the Company on the Participant in connection with the receipt of this Award, and it is intended to comply with the requirements of Rule 10b5-1(c)(1)(i)(B) under the Exchange Act and be interpreted to meet the requirements of Rule 10b5-1(c).***

³ For Consultants and Directors who are not Employees

⁴ For Consultants and Directors who are not Employees

By Participant’s signature below, Participant agrees to be bound by the terms of this Grant Notice, the Plan and the Agreement. Participant has reviewed the Plan, this Grant Notice and the Agreement in their entirety, has had an opportunity to obtain the advice of counsel prior to executing this Grant Notice and fully understands all provisions of the Plan, this Grant Notice and the Agreement. Participant hereby agrees to accept as binding, conclusive and final all decisions or interpretations of the Administrator upon any questions arising under the Plan, this Grant Notice or the Agreement.

AUTOLUS THERAPEUTICS PLC

PARTICIPANT

By: _____

[Participant Name]

Name:

Title:

RESTRICTED SHARE AGREEMENT

Capitalized terms not specifically defined in this Agreement have the meanings specified in the Grant Notice or, if not defined in the Grant Notice, in the Plan.

1. GENERAL

1.1 Issuance of Restricted Shares.

In consideration for payment of at least the nominal value, the Company will issue the Restricted Shares to the Participant effective as of the grant date set forth in the Grant Notice and will cause (a) a certificate or certificates representing the Restricted Shares to be registered in Participant's name or (b) the Restricted Shares to be held in book-entry form. If a certificate representing the Restricted Shares is issued, the certificate will be delivered to, and held in accordance with this Agreement by, the Company or its authorized representatives and will bear the restrictive legends required by this Agreement. If the Restricted Shares are held in book-entry form, then the book-entry will indicate that the Restricted Shares are subject to the restrictions of this Agreement.

1.2 Incorporation of Terms of Plan.

The Restricted Shares are subject to the terms and conditions set forth in this Agreement and the Plan, which is incorporated herein by reference. In the event of any inconsistency between the Plan and this Agreement, the terms of the Plan will control.

2. VESTING, FORFEITURE AND ESCROW

2.1 Vesting.

The Restricted Shares will become vested Shares (the "**Vested Shares**") according to the vesting schedule in the Grant Notice except that any fraction of a Share that would otherwise become a Vested Share will be accumulated and will become a Vested Share only when a whole Vested Share has accumulated.

2.2 Forfeiture.

In the event of Participant's Termination of Service for any reason, Participant will immediately and automatically forfeit to the Company any Shares that are not Vested Shares (the "**Unvested Shares**") at the time of Participant's Termination of Service, except as otherwise determined by the Administrator or provided in a binding written agreement between Participant and the Company. Upon forfeiture of Unvested Shares, the Company will become the legal and beneficial owner of the Unvested Shares and all related interests and Participant will have no further rights with respect to the Unvested Shares.

2.3 Escrow.

- (a) Unvested Shares will be held by the Company or its authorized representatives until (i) they are forfeited, (ii) they become Vested Shares or (iii) this Agreement is no longer in effect. By accepting this Award, Participant appoints the Company and its

authorized representatives as Participant's attorney(s)-in-fact to take all actions necessary to effect any transfer of forfeited Unvested Shares (and Retained Distributions (as defined below), if any, paid on such forfeited Unvested Shares) to the Company as may be required pursuant to the Plan or this Agreement and to execute such representations or other documents or assurances as the Company or such representatives deem necessary or advisable in connection with any such transfer. The Company, or its authorized representative, will not be liable for any good faith act or omission with respect to the holding in escrow or transfer of the Restricted Shares.

- (b) All cash dividends and other distributions made or declared with respect to Unvested Shares ("**Retained Distributions**") will be held by the Company until the time (if ever) when the Unvested Shares to which such Retained Distributions relate become Vested Shares. The Company will establish a separate Retained Distribution bookkeeping account ("**Retained Distribution Account**") for each Unvested Share with respect to which Retained Distributions have been made or declared in cash and credit the Retained Distribution Account (without interest) on the date of payment with the amount of such cash made or declared with respect to the Unvested Share. Retained Distributions (including any Retained Distribution Account balance) will immediately and automatically be forfeited upon forfeiture of the Unvested Share with respect to which the Retained Distributions were paid or declared.
- (c) As soon as reasonably practicable following the date on which an Unvested Share becomes a Vested Share, the Company will (i) cause the certificate (or a new certificate without the legend required by this Agreement, if Participant so requests) representing the Share to be delivered to Participant or, if the Share is held in book-entry form, cause the notations indicating the Share is subject to the restrictions of this Agreement to be removed and (ii) pay to Participant the Retained Distributions relating to the Share.

2.4 Rights as Shareholder.

Except as otherwise provided in this Agreement or the Plan, upon issuance of the Restricted Shares by the Company, Participant will have all the rights of a shareholder with respect to the Restricted Shares, including the right to vote the Restricted Shares and to receive dividends or other distributions paid or made with respect to the Restricted Shares.

3. **TAXATION AND TAX WITHHOLDING**

3.1 Representation.

Participant represents to the Company that Participant has reviewed with Participant's own tax advisors the tax consequences of the Restricted Shares and the transactions contemplated by the Grant Notice and this Agreement. Participant is relying solely on such advisors and not on any statements or representations of the Company or any of its agents.

3.2 Section 83(b) Election.

If Participant makes an election under Section 83(b) of the Code with respect to the Restricted Shares, Participant will deliver a copy of the election to the Company promptly after filing the election with the Internal Revenue Service.

3.3 Tax Withholding.

- (a) On each vesting date, and on or before the Restricted Shares vest, and at any other time as reasonably requested by the Company in accordance with applicable tax laws (including, without limitation, in connection with the payment of any Retained Distributions), Participant hereby authorizes any required withholding from the shares issuable to Participant and/or otherwise agree to make adequate provision in cash for any sums required to satisfy the federal, state, local and foreign tax withholding obligations of the Company or any parent or subsidiary that arise in connection with Participant's Restricted Shares (the "**Withholding Taxes**"). Specifically, pursuant to Section 3.3(b), Participant has agreed to a "same day sale" commitment with a broker-dealer that is a member of the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority (a "**FINRA Dealer**") whereby Participant has irrevocably agreed to sell a portion of the shares in connection with Participant's Restricted Shares to satisfy the Withholding Taxes and whereby the FINRA Dealer committed to forward the proceeds necessary to satisfy the Withholding Taxes directly to the Company and/or its parents or subsidiaries. If, for any reason, such "same day sale" commitment pursuant to Section 3.3(b) does not result in sufficient proceeds to satisfy the Withholding Taxes or would be prohibited by Applicable Laws at the applicable time, Participant hereby authorizes the Company and/or the relevant parent or subsidiary, or their respective agents, at their discretion, to satisfy the obligations with regard to all Withholding Taxes by one or a combination of the following: (i) withholding from any compensation otherwise payable to Participant by the Company or any parent or subsidiary; (ii) causing Participant to tender a cash payment (which may be in the form of a check, electronic wire transfer or other method permitted by the Company); or (iii) withholding shares from the shares issued or otherwise issuable to Participant in connection with Participant's Restricted Shares with a fair market value (measured as of the date shares are issued to Participant) equal to the amount of such Withholding Taxes; provided, however, that the number of such shares so withheld will not exceed the amount necessary to satisfy the Company's required tax withholding obligations using the minimum statutory withholding rates for federal, state, local and, if applicable, foreign tax purposes, including payroll taxes, that are applicable to supplemental taxable income; and, provided, further, that to the extent necessary to qualify for an exemption from application of Section 16(b) of the Exchange Act, if applicable, such share withholding procedure will be subject to the prior approval of the Company's Compensation Committee.
- (b) Participant hereby acknowledges and agrees to the following:
- (i) Participant hereby appoints such FINRA Dealer appointed by the Company for purposes of this Section 3.3(b) as Participant's agent (the "**Agent**"), and authorize the Agent:

- (A) To sell on the open market at the then prevailing market price(s), on Participant's behalf, as soon as practicable on or after each date on which the shares underlying Participant's Restricted Shares vest, the number (rounded up to the next whole number) of the shares to be delivered to Participant in connection with the vesting of those shares sufficient to generate proceeds to cover (A) the Withholding Taxes that Participant is required to pay pursuant to the Plan and this Agreement as a result of the shares vesting (or being issued, as applicable) and (B) all applicable fees and commissions due to, or required to be collected by, the Agent with respect thereto; and
 - (B) To remit any remaining funds to Participant.
- (ii) Participant hereby authorizes the Company and the Agent to cooperate and communicate with one another to determine the number of shares that must be sold pursuant to this Section 3.3(b).
 - (iii) Participant understands that the Agent may effect sales as provided in this Section 3.3(b) in one or more sales and that the average price for executions resulting from bunched orders will be assigned to Participant's account. In addition, Participant acknowledges that it may not be possible to sell shares underlying Participant's Restricted Shares as provided by in this Section 3.3(b) due to (A) a legal or contractual restriction applicable to Participant or the Agent, (B) a market disruption, or (C) rules governing order execution priority on the national exchange where the shares may be traded. In the event of the Agent's inability to sell shares underlying Participant's Restricted Shares, Participant will continue to be responsible for the timely payment to the Company of all Withholding Taxes and any other federal, state, local and foreign taxes that are required by Applicable Laws and regulations to be withheld, including but not limited to those amounts specified in this Section 3.3(b).
 - (iv) Participant acknowledges that regardless of any other term or condition of this Section 3.3(b), the Agent will not be liable to Participant for (A) special, indirect, punitive, exemplary, or consequential damages, or incidental losses or damages of any kind, or (B) any failure to perform or for any delay in performance that results from a cause or circumstance that is beyond its reasonable control.
 - (v) Participant hereby agrees to execute and deliver to the Agent any other agreements or documents as the Agent reasonably deems necessary or appropriate to carry out the purposes and intent of this Section 3.3(b). The Agent is a third-party beneficiary of this Section 3.3(b).
 - (vi) Participant hereby agrees that if Participant has signed the Grant Notice at a time that Participant is in possession of material non-public information, unless Participant informs the Company in writing within five business days following the date Participant ceases to be in possession of material non-public information that Participant is not in agreement with the provisions of this Section 3.3(b), Participant not providing such written determination shall be a determination and agreement that Participant has agreed to the provisions set forth in this Section 3.3(b) on such date as Participant has ceased to be in possession of material non-public information.

(i) This Section 3.3(b) shall terminate not later than the date on which all withholding taxes arising in connection with the vesting of Participant's Restricted Shares have been satisfied.

(c) Participant acknowledges that Participant is ultimately liable and responsible for all taxes owed in connection with the Restricted Shares, regardless of any action the Company or any Subsidiary takes with respect to any tax withholding obligations that arise in connection with the Restricted Shares. Neither the Company nor any Subsidiary makes any representation or undertaking regarding the treatment of any tax withholding in connection with the awarding, vesting or payment of the Restricted Shares or the subsequent sale of the Restricted Shares. The Company and the Subsidiaries do not commit and are under no obligation to structure this Award to reduce or eliminate Participant's tax liability.

4. **RESTRICTIVE LEGENDS AND TRANSFERABILITY**

4.1 Legends.

Any certificate representing a Restricted Share will bear the following legend until the Restricted Share becomes a Vested Share:

THE SHARES REPRESENTED BY THIS CERTIFICATE ARE SUBJECT TO FORFEITURE IN FAVOR OF THE COMPANY AND MAY BE TRANSFERRED ONLY IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE TERMS OF A RESTRICTED SHARE AGREEMENT BETWEEN THE COMPANY AND THE SHAREHOLDER, A COPY OF WHICH IS ON FILE WITH THE SECRETARY OF THE COMPANY.

4.2 Transferability.

The Restricted Shares and any Retained Distributions are subject to the restrictions on transfer in the Plan and may not be sold, assigned or transferred in any manner unless and until they become Vested Shares. Any attempted transfer or disposition of Unvested Shares or related Retained Distributions prior to the time the Unvested Shares become Vested Shares will be null and void. The Company will not be required to (a) transfer on its books any Restricted Share that has been sold or otherwise transferred in violation of this Agreement or (b) treat as owner of such Restricted Share or accord the right to vote or pay dividends to any purchaser or other transferee to whom such Restricted Share has been so transferred. The Company may issue appropriate **"stop transfer"** instructions to its transfer agent, if any, or make appropriate notations to the same effect in its records.

5. **OTHER PROVISIONS**

5.1 Adjustments.

Participant acknowledges that the Restricted Shares are subject to adjustment, modification and termination in certain events as provided in this Agreement and the Plan.

- 5.2 Notices.
- Any notice to be given under the terms of this Agreement to the Company must be in writing and addressed to the Company in care of the Company's Secretary at the Company's principal office or the Secretary's then-current email address or facsimile number. Any notice to be given under the terms of this Agreement to Participant must be in writing and addressed to Participant at Participant's last known mailing address, email address or facsimile number in the Company's personnel files. By a notice given pursuant to this Section, either party may designate a different address for notices to be given to that party. Any notice will be deemed duly given when actually received, when sent by email, when sent by certified mail (return receipt requested) and deposited with postage prepaid in a post office or branch post office regularly maintained by the United States Postal Service, when delivered by a nationally recognized express shipping company or upon receipt of a facsimile transmission confirmation.
- 5.3 Titles.
- Titles are provided herein for convenience only and are not to serve as a basis for interpretation or construction of this Agreement.
- 5.4 Conformity to Securities Laws.
- Participant acknowledges that the Plan, the Grant Notice and this Agreement are intended to conform to the extent necessary with all Applicable Laws and, to the extent Applicable Laws permit, will be deemed amended as necessary to conform to Applicable Laws.
- 5.5 Successors and Assigns.
- The Company may assign any of its rights under this Agreement to single or multiple assignees, and this Agreement will inure to the benefit of the successors and assigns of the Company. Subject to the restrictions on transfer set forth in this Agreement or the Plan, this Agreement will be binding upon and inure to the benefit of the heirs, legatees, legal representatives, successors and assigns of the parties hereto.
- 5.6 Limitations Applicable to Section 16 Persons.
- Notwithstanding any other provision of the Plan or this Agreement, if Participant is subject to Section 16 of the Exchange Act, the Plan, the Grant Notice, this Agreement and the Restricted Shares will be subject to any additional limitations set forth in any applicable exemptive rule under Section 16 of the Exchange Act (including any amendment to Rule 16b-3) that are requirements for the application of such exemptive rule. To the extent Applicable Laws permit, this Agreement will be deemed amended as necessary to conform to such applicable exemptive rule.
- 5.7 Entire Agreement.
- The Plan, the Grant Notice and this Agreement (including any exhibit hereto) constitute the entire agreement of the parties and supersede in their entirety all prior undertakings and agreements of the Company and Participant with respect to the subject matter hereof.

- 5.8 Agreement Severable.
- In the event that any provision of the Grant Notice or this Agreement is held illegal or invalid, the provision will be severable from, and the illegality or invalidity of the provision will not be construed to have any effect on, the remaining provisions of the Grant Notice or this Agreement.
- 5.9 Limitation on Participant's Rights.
- Participation in the Plan confers no rights or interests other than as herein provided. This Agreement creates only a contractual obligation on the part of the Company as to amounts payable and may not be construed as creating a trust. Neither the Plan nor any underlying program, in and of itself, has any assets. Participant will have only the rights of a general unsecured creditor of the Company with respect to amounts credited and benefits payable, if any, with respect to the Award.
- 5.10 Not a Contract of Employment.
- Nothing in the Plan, the Grant Notice or this Agreement confers upon Participant any right to continue in the employ or service of the Company or any Subsidiary or interferes with or restricts in any way the rights of the Company and its Subsidiaries, which rights are hereby expressly reserved, to discharge or terminate the services of Participant at any time for any reason whatsoever, with or without cause, except to the extent expressly provided otherwise in a written agreement between the Company or a Subsidiary and Participant.
- 5.11 Counterparts.
- The Grant Notice may be executed in one or more counterparts, including by way of any electronic signature, subject to Applicable Laws, each of which will be deemed an original and all of which together will constitute one instrument.

APPENDIX 3
PERFORMANCE RESTRICTED SHARE UNIT GRANT NOTICE

AUTOLUS THERAPEUTICS PLC
2018 EQUITY INCENTIVE PLAN[:NON-EMPLOYEE SUB-PLAN]⁵

Capitalized terms not specifically defined in this Performance Restricted Share Unit Grant Notice (the “**Grant Notice**”) have the meanings given to them in the 2018 Equity Incentive Plan [:Non-Employee Sub-Plan]⁶ (as amended from time to time, the “**Plan**”) of Autolus Therapeutics plc (the “**Company**”).

The Company has granted to the participant listed below (“**Participant**”) the Performance Restricted Share Units (the “**PRSUs**”) described in this Grant Notice (the “**Award**”), subject to the terms and conditions of the Plan and the Performance Restricted Share Unit Agreement attached as Exhibit A (the “**Agreement**”), both of which are incorporated into this Grant Notice by reference.

Participant:

Grant Date:

Number of PRSUs:

Vesting Commencement Date:

Vesting Schedule:

[To be determined and then specified in individual award agreements]

Mandatory Sale to Cover Withholding Taxes:

As a condition to acceptance of this award, to the fullest extent permitted under the Plan and Applicable Laws, withholding taxes and other tax related items will be satisfied through the sale of a number of the shares subject to the Award as determined in accordance with Section 3.2 of the Agreement and the remittance of the cash proceeds to the Company. Under the Agreement, the Company is authorized and directed by the Participant to make payment from the cash proceeds of this sale directly to the appropriate taxing authorities in an amount equal to the taxes required to be withheld. ***The mandatory sale of shares to cover withholding taxes and tax related items is imposed by the Company on the Participant in connection with the receipt of this Award, and it is intended to comply with the requirements of Rule 10b5-1(c)(1)(i)(B) under the Exchange Act and be interpreted to meet the requirements of Rule 10b5-1(c).***

⁵ For Consultants and Directors who are not Employees
⁶ For Consultants and Directors who are not Employees

By Participant’s signature below, Participant agrees to be bound by the terms of this Grant Notice, the Plan and the Agreement. Participant has reviewed the Plan, this Grant Notice and the Agreement in their entirety, has had an opportunity to obtain the advice of counsel prior to executing this Grant Notice and fully understands all provisions of the Plan, this Grant Notice and the Agreement. Participant hereby agrees to accept as binding, conclusive and final all decisions or interpretations of the Administrator upon any questions arising under the Plan, this Grant Notice or the Agreement.

AUTOLUS THERAPEUTICS PLC

PARTICIPANT

By: _____

[Participant Name]

Name:

Title:

PERFORMANCE RESTRICTED SHARE UNIT AGREEMENT

Capitalized terms not specifically defined in this Agreement have the meanings specified in the Grant Notice or, if not defined in the Grant Notice, in the Plan.

1. GENERAL

1.1 Award of PRSUs and Dividend Equivalents.

- (a) The Company has granted the PRSUs to Participant effective as of the grant date set forth in the Grant Notice (the “**Grant Date**”). Each PRSU represents the right to receive one Share or, at the option of the Company, an amount of cash, in either case, as set forth in this Agreement. Participant will have no right to the distribution of any Shares or payment of any cash until the time (if ever) the PRSUs have vested.
- (b) The Company hereby grants to Participant, with respect to each PRSU, a Dividend Equivalent for ordinary cash dividends paid to substantially all holders of outstanding Shares with a record date after the Grant Date and prior to the date the applicable PRSU is settled, forfeited or otherwise expires. Each Dividend Equivalent entitles Participant to receive the equivalent value of any such ordinary cash dividends paid on a single Share. The Company will establish a separate Dividend Equivalent bookkeeping account (a “**Dividend Equivalent Account**”) for each Dividend Equivalent and credit the Dividend Equivalent Account (without interest) on the applicable dividend payment date with the amount of any such cash paid.

1.2 Incorporation of Terms of Plan.

The PRSUs are subject to the terms and conditions set forth in this Agreement and the Plan, which is incorporated herein by reference. In the event of any inconsistency between the Plan and this Agreement, the terms of the Plan will control.

1.3 Unsecured Promise.

The PRSUs and Dividend Equivalents will at all times prior to settlement represent an unsecured Company obligation payable only from the Company’s general assets.

2. VESTING; FORFEITURE AND SETTLEMENT

2.1 Vesting; Forfeiture.

The PRSUs will vest according to the vesting schedule in the Grant Notice except that any fraction of a PRSU that would otherwise be vested will be accumulated and will vest only when a whole PRSU has accumulated. In the event of Participant’s Termination of Service for any reason, all unvested PRSUs will immediately and automatically be cancelled and forfeited, except as otherwise determined by the Administrator or provided in a binding written agreement between Participant and the Company. Dividend Equivalents (including any Dividend Equivalent Account balance) will vest or be forfeited, as applicable, upon the vesting or forfeiture of the PRSU with respect to which the Dividend Equivalent (including the Dividend Equivalent Account) relates.

- 2.2 Settlement.
- (a) PRSUs and Dividend Equivalents (including any Dividend Equivalent Account balance) will be paid in Shares or cash at the Company's option as soon as administratively practicable after the vesting of the applicable PRSU, but in no event more than sixty (60) days after the PRSU's vesting date. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Company may delay any payment under this Agreement that the Company reasonably determines would violate Applicable Laws until the earliest date the Company reasonably determines the making of the payment will not cause such a violation.
 - (b) If a PRSU is paid in cash, the amount of cash paid with respect to the PRSU will equal the Fair Market Value of a Share on the day immediately preceding the payment date. If a Dividend Equivalent is paid in Shares, the number of Shares paid with respect to the Dividend Equivalent will equal the quotient, rounded down to the nearest whole Share, of the Dividend Equivalent Account balance divided by the Fair Market Value of a Share on the day immediately preceding the payment date.
 - (c) If a PRSU is paid in Shares, Participant may be required to pay the nominal value thereof in the same manner as provided for Withholding Taxes below.

3. **TAXATION AND TAX WITHHOLDING**

3.1 Representation.

Participant represents to the Company that Participant has reviewed with Participant's own tax advisors the tax consequences of this Award and the transactions contemplated by the Grant Notice and this Agreement. Participant is relying solely on such advisors and not on any statements or representations of the Company or any of its agents.

3.2 Tax Withholding.

- (a) On each vesting date, and on or before the time Participant receives a distribution of the shares underlying the PRSUs, and at any other time as reasonably requested by the Company in accordance with applicable tax laws (including, without limitation, in connection with the payment of any Dividend Equivalent), Participant hereby authorizes any required withholding from the shares issuable to Participant and/or otherwise agree to make adequate provision in cash for any sums required to satisfy the federal, state, local and foreign tax withholding obligations of the Company or any parent or subsidiary that arise in connection with Participant's PRSU (the "**Withholding Taxes**"). Specifically, pursuant to Section 3.2(b), Participant has agreed to a "same day sale" commitment with a broker-dealer that is a member of the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority (a "**FINRA Dealer**") whereby Participant has irrevocably agreed to sell a portion of the shares to be delivered in connection with Participant's PRSUs to satisfy the Withholding Taxes and whereby the FINRA Dealer committed to forward the proceeds necessary to satisfy the Withholding Taxes directly to the Company and/or its parents or subsidiaries. If, for any reason, such

“same day sale” commitment pursuant to Section 3.2(b) does not result in sufficient proceeds to satisfy the Withholding Taxes or would be prohibited by Applicable Laws at the applicable time, Participant hereby authorizes the Company and/or the relevant parent or subsidiary, or their respective agents, at their discretion, to satisfy the obligations with regard to all Withholding Taxes by one or a combination of the following: (i) withholding from any compensation otherwise payable to Participant by the Company or any parent or subsidiary; (ii) causing Participant to tender a cash payment (which may be in the form of a check, electronic wire transfer or other method permitted by the Company); or (iii) withholding shares from the shares issued or otherwise issuable to Participant in connection with Participant’s PRSUs with a fair market value (measured as of the date shares are issued to Participant) equal to the amount of such Withholding Taxes; provided, however, that the number of such shares so withheld will not exceed the amount necessary to satisfy the Company’s required tax withholding obligations using the minimum statutory withholding rates for federal, state, local and, if applicable, foreign tax purposes, including payroll taxes, that are applicable to supplemental taxable income; and, provided, further, that to the extent necessary to qualify for an exemption from application of Section 16(b) of the Exchange Act, if applicable, such share withholding procedure will be subject to the prior approval of the Company’s Compensation Committee.

(b) Participant hereby acknowledges and agrees to the following:

- (i) Participant hereby appoints such FINRA Dealer appointed by the Company for purposes of this Section 3.2(b) as Participant’s agent (the “**Agent**”), and authorize the Agent:
 - (A) To sell on the open market at the then prevailing market price(s), on Participant’s behalf, as soon as practicable on or after each date on which the shares underlying Participant’s PRSUs vest, the number (rounded up to the next whole number) of the shares to be delivered to Participant in connection with the vesting of those shares sufficient to generate proceeds to cover (A) the Withholding Taxes that Participant is required to pay pursuant to the Plan and this Agreement as a result of the shares vesting (or being issued, as applicable) and (B) all applicable fees and commissions due to, or required to be collected by, the Agent with respect thereto; and
 - (B) To remit any remaining funds to Participant.
- (ii) Participant hereby authorizes the Company and the Agent to cooperate and communicate with one another to determine the number of shares that must be sold pursuant to this Section 3.2(b).
- (iii) Participant understands that the Agent may effect sales as provided in this Section 3.2(b) in one or more sales and that the average price for executions resulting from bunched orders will be assigned to Participant’s account. In addition, Participant acknowledges that it may not be possible to sell shares underlying Participant’s PRSUs as provided by in this Section 3.2(b) due to (A) a legal or contractual restriction applicable to Participant or the Agent, (B)

a market disruption, or (C) rules governing order execution priority on the national exchange where the shares may be traded. In the event of the Agent's inability to sell shares underlying Participant's PRSUs, Participant will continue to be responsible for the timely payment to the Company of all Withholding Taxes and any other federal, state, local and foreign taxes that are required by Applicable Laws and regulations to be withheld, including but not limited to those amounts specified in this Section 3.2(b).

- (iv) Participant acknowledges that regardless of any other term or condition of this Section 3.2(b), the Agent will not be liable to Participant for (A) special, indirect, punitive, exemplary, or consequential damages, or incidental losses or damages of any kind, or (B) any failure to perform or for any delay in performance that results from a cause or circumstance that is beyond its reasonable control.
 - (v) Participant hereby agrees to execute and deliver to the Agent any other agreements or documents as the Agent reasonably deems necessary or appropriate to carry out the purposes and intent of this Section 3.2(b). The Agent is a third-party beneficiary of this Section 3.2(b).
 - (vi) Participant hereby agrees that if Participant has signed the Grant Notice at a time that Participant is in possession of material non-public information, unless Participant informs the Company in writing within five business days following the date Participant ceases to be in possession of material non-public information that Participant is not in agreement with the provisions of this Section 3.2(b), Participant not providing such written determination shall be a determination and agreement that Participant has agreed to the provisions set forth in this Section 3.2(b) on such date as Participant has ceased to be in possession of material non-public information.
 - (vii) This Section 3.2(b) shall terminate not later than the date on which all withholding taxes arising in connection with the vesting of Participant's PRSUs have been satisfied.
- (c) Participant acknowledges that Participant is ultimately liable and responsible for all taxes owed in connection with the PRSUs and the Dividend Equivalents, regardless of any action the Company or any Subsidiary takes with respect to any tax withholding obligations that arise in connection with the PRSUs or Dividend Equivalents. Neither the Company nor any Subsidiary makes any representation or undertaking regarding the treatment of any tax withholding in connection with the awarding, vesting or payment of the PRSUs or the Dividend Equivalents or the subsequent sale of Shares. The Company and the Subsidiaries do not commit and are under no obligation to structure the PRSUs or Dividend Equivalents to reduce or eliminate Participant's tax liability.

-
4. **OTHER PROVISIONS**
- 4.1 **Adjustments.**
- Participant acknowledges that the PRSUs, the Shares subject to the PRSUs and the Dividend Equivalents are subject to adjustment, modification and termination in certain events as provided in this Agreement and the Plan.
- 4.2 **Notices.**
- Any notice to be given under the terms of this Agreement to the Company must be in writing and addressed to the Company in care of the Company's Secretary at the Company's principal office or the Secretary's then-current email address or facsimile number. Any notice to be given under the terms of this Agreement to Participant must be in writing and addressed to Participant at Participant's last known mailing address, email address or facsimile number in the Company's personnel files. By a notice given pursuant to this Section, either party may designate a different address for notices to be given to that party. Any notice will be deemed duly given when actually received, when sent by email, when sent by certified mail (return receipt requested) and deposited with postage prepaid in a post office or branch post office regularly maintained by the United States Postal Service, when delivered by a nationally recognized express shipping company or upon receipt of a facsimile transmission confirmation.
- 4.3 **Titles.**
- Titles are provided herein for convenience only and are not to serve as a basis for interpretation or construction of this Agreement.
- 4.4 **Conformity to Securities Laws.**
- Participant acknowledges that the Plan, the Grant Notice and this Agreement are intended to conform to the extent necessary with all Applicable Laws and, to the extent Applicable Laws permit, will be deemed amended as necessary to conform to Applicable Laws.
- 4.5 **Successors and Assigns.**
- The Company may assign any of its rights under this Agreement to single or multiple assignees, and this Agreement will inure to the benefit of the successors and assigns of the Company. Subject to the restrictions on transfer set forth in the Plan, this Agreement will be binding upon and inure to the benefit of the heirs, legatees, legal representatives, successors and assigns of the parties hereto.
- 4.6 **Limitations Applicable to Section 16 Persons.**
- Notwithstanding any other provision of the Plan or this Agreement, if Participant is subject to Section 16 of the Exchange Act, the Plan, the Grant Notice, this Agreement, the PRSUs and the Dividend Equivalents will be subject to any additional limitations set forth in any applicable exemptive rule under Section 16 of the Exchange Act (including any amendment to Rule 16b-3) that are requirements for the application of such exemptive rule. To the extent Applicable Laws permit, this Agreement will be deemed amended as necessary to conform to such applicable exemptive rule.

- 4.7 Entire Agreement.
- The Plan, the Grant Notice and this Agreement (including any exhibit hereto) constitute the entire agreement of the parties and supersede in their entirety all prior undertakings and agreements of the Company and Participant with respect to the subject matter hereof.
- 4.8 Agreement Severable.
- In the event that any provision of the Grant Notice or this Agreement is held illegal or invalid, the provision will be severable from, and the illegality or invalidity of the provision will not be construed to have any effect on, the remaining provisions of the Grant Notice or this Agreement.
- 4.9 Limitation on Participant's Rights.
- Participation in the Plan confers no rights or interests other than as herein provided. This Agreement creates only a contractual obligation on the part of the Company as to amounts payable and may not be construed as creating a trust. Neither the Plan nor any underlying program, in and of itself, has any assets. Participant will have only the rights of a general unsecured creditor of the Company with respect to amounts credited and benefits payable, if any, with respect to the PRSUs and Dividend Equivalents, and rights no greater than the right to receive cash or the Shares as a general unsecured creditor with respect to the PRSUs and Dividend Equivalents, as and when settled pursuant to the terms of this Agreement.
- 4.10 Not a Contract of Employment.
- Nothing in the Plan, the Grant Notice or this Agreement confers upon Participant any right to continue in the employ or service of the Company or any Subsidiary or interferes with or restricts in any way the rights of the Company and its Subsidiaries, which rights are hereby expressly reserved, to discharge or terminate the services of Participant at any time for any reason whatsoever, with or without Cause, except to the extent expressly provided otherwise in a written agreement between the Company or a Subsidiary and Participant.
- 4.11 Counterparts.
- The Grant Notice may be executed in one or more counterparts, including by way of any electronic signature, subject to Applicable Laws, each of which will be deemed an original and all of which together will constitute one instrument.

APPENDIX 4
RESTRICTED SHARE UNIT GRANT NOTICE

AUTOLUS THERAPEUTICS PLC
2018 EQUITY INCENTIVE PLAN[:NON-EMPLOYEE SUB-PLAN]⁷

Capitalized terms not specifically defined in this Restricted Share Unit Grant Notice (the “**Grant Notice**”) have the meanings given to them in the 2018 Equity Incentive Plan [:Non-Employee Sub-Plan]⁸ (as amended from time to time, the “**Plan**”) of Autolus Therapeutics plc (the “**Company**”).

The Company has granted to the participant listed below (“**Participant**”) the Restricted Share Units (the “**RSUs**”) described in this Grant Notice (the “**Award**”), subject to the terms and conditions of the Plan and the Restricted Share Unit Agreement attached as Exhibit A (the “**Agreement**”), both of which are incorporated into this Grant Notice by reference.

Participant:

Grant Date:

Number of RSUs:

Vesting Commencement Date:

Vesting Schedule:

[To be specified in individual award agreements]

Mandatory Sale to Cover Withholding Taxes:

As a condition to acceptance of this award, to the fullest extent permitted under the Plan and Applicable Laws, withholding taxes and other tax related items will be satisfied through the sale of a number of the shares subject to the Award as determined in accordance with Section 3.2 of the Agreement and the remittance of the cash proceeds to the Company. Under the Agreement, the Company is authorized and directed by the Participant to make payment from the cash proceeds of this sale directly to the appropriate taxing authorities in an amount equal to the taxes required to be withheld. ***The mandatory sale of shares to cover withholding taxes and tax related items is imposed by the Company on the Participant in connection with the receipt of this Award, and it is intended to comply with the requirements of Rule 10b5-1(c)(1)(i)(B) under the Exchange Act and be interpreted to meet the requirements of Rule 10b5-1(c).***

⁷ For Consultants and Directors who are not Employees

⁸ For Consultants and Directors who are not Employees

By Participant’s signature below, Participant agrees to be bound by the terms of this Grant Notice, the Plan and the Agreement. Participant has reviewed the Plan, this Grant Notice and the Agreement in their entirety, has had an opportunity to obtain the advice of counsel prior to executing this Grant Notice and fully understands all provisions of the Plan, this Grant Notice and the Agreement. Participant hereby agrees to accept as binding, conclusive and final all decisions or interpretations of the Administrator upon any questions arising under the Plan, this Grant Notice or the Agreement.

AUTOLUS THERAPEUTICS PLC

PARTICIPANT

By: _____

[Participant Name]

Name:

Title:

RESTRICTED SHARE UNIT AGREEMENT

Capitalized terms not specifically defined in this Agreement have the meanings specified in the Grant Notice or, if not defined in the Grant Notice, in the Plan.

1. GENERAL

1.1 Award of RSUs and Dividend Equivalents.

- (a) The Company has granted the RSUs to Participant effective as of the grant date set forth in the Grant Notice (the “**Grant Date**”). Each RSU represents the right to receive one Share or, at the option of the Company, an amount of cash, in either case, as set forth in this Agreement. Participant will have no right to the distribution of any Shares or payment of any cash until the time (if ever) the RSUs have vested.
- (b) The Company hereby grants to Participant, with respect to each RSU, a Dividend Equivalent for ordinary cash dividends paid to substantially all holders of outstanding Shares with a record date after the Grant Date and prior to the date the applicable RSU is settled, forfeited or otherwise expires. Each Dividend Equivalent entitles Participant to receive the equivalent value of any such ordinary cash dividends paid on a single Share. The Company will establish a separate Dividend Equivalent bookkeeping account (a “**Dividend Equivalent Account**”) for each Dividend Equivalent and credit the Dividend Equivalent Account (without interest) on the applicable dividend payment date with the amount of any such cash paid.

1.2 Incorporation of Terms of Plan.

The RSUs are subject to the terms and conditions set forth in this Agreement and the Plan, which is incorporated herein by reference. In the event of any inconsistency between the Plan and this Agreement, the terms of the Plan will control.

1.3 Unsecured Promise.

The RSUs and Dividend Equivalents will at all times prior to settlement represent an unsecured Company obligation payable only from the Company’s general assets.

2. VESTING; FORFEITURE AND SETTLEMENT

2.1 Vesting; Forfeiture.

The RSUs will vest according to the vesting schedule in the Grant Notice except that any fraction of an RSU that would otherwise be vested will be accumulated and will vest only when a whole RSU has accumulated. In the event of Participant’s Termination of Service for any reason, all unvested RSUs will immediately and automatically be cancelled and forfeited, except as otherwise determined by the Administrator or provided in a binding written agreement between Participant and the Company. Dividend Equivalents (including any Dividend Equivalent Account balance) will vest or be forfeited, as applicable, upon the vesting or forfeiture of the RSU with respect to which the Dividend Equivalent (including the Dividend Equivalent Account) relates.

- (a) RSUs and Dividend Equivalents (including any Dividend Equivalent Account balance) will be paid in Shares or cash at the Company's option as soon as administratively practicable after the vesting of the applicable RSU, but in no event more than sixty (60) days after the RSU's vesting date. Notwithstanding the foregoing, to the extent permitted under Applicable Laws, the Company may delay any payment under this Agreement that the Company reasonably determines would violate Applicable Laws until the earliest date the Company reasonably determines the making of the payment will not cause such a violation.
- (b) If an RSU is paid in cash, the amount of cash paid with respect to the RSU will equal the Fair Market Value of a Share on the day immediately preceding the payment date. If a Dividend Equivalent is paid in Shares, the number of Shares paid with respect to the Dividend Equivalent will equal the quotient, rounded down to the nearest whole Share, of the Dividend Equivalent Account balance divided by the Fair Market Value of a Share on the day immediately preceding the payment date.
- (c) If an RSU is paid in Shares, Participant may be required to pay the nominal value thereof in the same manner as provided for Withholding Taxes below.

3. TAXATION AND TAX WITHHOLDING

3.1 Representation.

Participant represents to the Company that Participant has reviewed with Participant's own tax advisors the tax consequences of this Award and the transactions contemplated by the Grant Notice and this Agreement. Participant is relying solely on such advisors and not on any statements or representations of the Company or any of its agents.

3.2 Tax Withholding.

- (a) On each vesting date, and on or before the time Participant receives a distribution of the shares underlying the RSUs, and at any other time as reasonably requested by the Company in accordance with applicable tax laws (including, without limitation, in connection with the payment of any Dividend Equivalent), Participant hereby authorizes any required withholding from the shares issuable to Participant and/or otherwise agree to make adequate provision in cash for any sums required to satisfy the federal, state, local and foreign tax withholding obligations of the Company or any parent or subsidiary that arise in connection with Participant's RSU (the "**Withholding Taxes**"). Specifically, pursuant to Section 3.2(b), Participant has agreed to a "same day sale" commitment with a broker-dealer that is a member of the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority (a "**FINRA Dealer**") whereby Participant has irrevocably agreed to sell a portion of the shares to be delivered in connection with Participant's RSUs to satisfy the Withholding Taxes and whereby the FINRA Dealer committed to forward the proceeds necessary to satisfy the Withholding Taxes directly to the Company and/or its parents or subsidiaries. If, for any reason, such

“same day sale” commitment pursuant to Section 3.2(b) does not result in sufficient proceeds to satisfy the Withholding Taxes or would be prohibited by Applicable Laws at the applicable time, Participant hereby authorizes the Company and/or the relevant parent or subsidiary, or their respective agents, at their discretion, to satisfy the obligations with regard to all Withholding Taxes by one or a combination of the following: (i) withholding from any compensation otherwise payable to Participant by the Company or any parent or subsidiary; (ii) causing Participant to tender a cash payment (which may be in the form of a check, electronic wire transfer or other method permitted by the Company); or (iii) withholding shares from the shares issued or otherwise issuable to Participant in connection with Participant’s RSUs with a fair market value (measured as of the date shares are issued to Participant) equal to the amount of such Withholding Taxes; provided, however, that the number of such shares so withheld will not exceed the amount necessary to satisfy the Company’s required tax withholding obligations using the minimum statutory withholding rates for federal, state, local and, if applicable, foreign tax purposes, including payroll taxes, that are applicable to supplemental taxable income; and, provided, further, that to the extent necessary to qualify for an exemption from application of Section 16(b) of the Exchange Act, if applicable, such share withholding procedure will be subject to the prior approval of the Company’s Compensation Committee.

(b) Participant hereby acknowledges and agrees to the following:

- (i) Participant hereby appoints such FINRA Dealer appointed by the Company for purposes of this Section 3.2(b) as Participant’s agent (the “**Agent**”), and authorize the Agent:
 - (A) To sell on the open market at the then prevailing market price(s), on Participant’s behalf, as soon as practicable on or after each date on which the shares underlying Participant’s RSUs vest, the number (rounded up to the next whole number) of the shares to be delivered to Participant in connection with the vesting of those shares sufficient to generate proceeds to cover (A) the Withholding Taxes that Participant is required to pay pursuant to the Plan and this Agreement as a result of the shares vesting (or being issued, as applicable) and (B) all applicable fees and commissions due to, or required to be collected by, the Agent with respect thereto; and
 - (B) To remit any remaining funds to Participant.
- (ii) Participant hereby authorizes the Company and the Agent to cooperate and communicate with one another to determine the number of shares that must be sold pursuant to this Section 3.2(b).
- (iii) Participant understands that the Agent may effect sales as provided in this Section 3.2(b) in one or more sales and that the average price for executions resulting from bunched orders will be assigned to Participant’s account. In addition, Participant acknowledges that it may not be possible to sell shares underlying Participant’s RSUs as provided by in this Section 3.2(b) due to (A) a legal or contractual restriction applicable to Participant or the Agent, (B) a

market disruption, or (C) rules governing order execution priority on the national exchange where the shares may be traded. In the event of the Agent's inability to sell shares underlying Participant's RSUs, Participant will continue to be responsible for the timely payment to the Company of all Withholding Taxes and any other federal, state, local and foreign taxes that are required by Applicable Laws and regulations to be withheld, including but not limited to those amounts specified in this Section 3.2(b).

- (iv) Participant acknowledges that regardless of any other term or condition of this Section 3.2(b), the Agent will not be liable to Participant for (A) special, indirect, punitive, exemplary, or consequential damages, or incidental losses or damages of any kind, or (B) any failure to perform or for any delay in performance that results from a cause or circumstance that is beyond its reasonable control.
 - (v) Participant hereby agrees to execute and deliver to the Agent any other agreements or documents as the Agent reasonably deems necessary or appropriate to carry out the purposes and intent of this Section 3.2(b). The Agent is a third-party beneficiary of this Section 3.2(b).
 - (vi) Participant hereby agrees that if Participant has signed the Grant Notice at a time that Participant is in possession of material non-public information, unless Participant informs the Company in writing within five business days following the date Participant ceases to be in possession of material non-public information that Participant is not in agreement with the provisions of this Section 3.2(b), Participant not providing such written determination shall be a determination and agreement that Participant has agreed to the provisions set forth in this Section 3.2(b) on such date as Participant has ceased to be in possession of material non-public information.
 - (vii) This Section 3.2(b) shall terminate not later than the date on which all withholding taxes arising in connection with the vesting of Participant's RSUs have been satisfied.
- (c) Participant acknowledges that Participant is ultimately liable and responsible for all taxes owed in connection with the RSUs and the Dividend Equivalents, regardless of any action the Company or any Subsidiary takes with respect to any tax withholding obligations that arise in connection with the RSUs or Dividend Equivalents. Neither the Company nor any Subsidiary makes any representation or undertaking regarding the treatment of any tax withholding in connection with the awarding, vesting or payment of the RSUs or the Dividend Equivalents or the subsequent sale of Shares. The Company and the Subsidiaries do not commit and are under no obligation to structure the RSUs or Dividend Equivalents to reduce or eliminate Participant's tax liability.

-
4. **OTHER PROVISIONS**
- 4.1 **Adjustments.**
- Participant acknowledges that the RSUs, the Shares subject to the RSUs and the Dividend Equivalents are subject to adjustment, modification and termination in certain events as provided in this Agreement and the Plan.
- 4.2 **Notices.**
- Any notice to be given under the terms of this Agreement to the Company must be in writing and addressed to the Company in care of the Company's Secretary at the Company's principal office or the Secretary's then-current email address or facsimile number. Any notice to be given under the terms of this Agreement to Participant must be in writing and addressed to Participant at Participant's last known mailing address, email address or facsimile number in the Company's personnel files. By a notice given pursuant to this Section, either party may designate a different address for notices to be given to that party. Any notice will be deemed duly given when actually received, when sent by email, when sent by certified mail (return receipt requested) and deposited with postage prepaid in a post office or branch post office regularly maintained by the United States Postal Service, when delivered by a nationally recognized express shipping company or upon receipt of a facsimile transmission confirmation.
- 4.3 **Titles.**
- Titles are provided herein for convenience only and are not to serve as a basis for interpretation or construction of this Agreement.
- 4.4 **Conformity to Securities Laws.**
- Participant acknowledges that the Plan, the Grant Notice and this Agreement are intended to conform to the extent necessary with all Applicable Laws and, to the extent Applicable Laws permit, will be deemed amended as necessary to conform to Applicable Laws.
- 4.5 **Successors and Assigns.**
- The Company may assign any of its rights under this Agreement to single or multiple assignees, and this Agreement will inure to the benefit of the successors and assigns of the Company. Subject to the restrictions on transfer set forth in the Plan, this Agreement will be binding upon and inure to the benefit of the heirs, legatees, legal representatives, successors and assigns of the parties hereto.
- 4.6 **Limitations Applicable to Section 16 Persons.**
- Notwithstanding any other provision of the Plan or this Agreement, if Participant is subject to Section 16 of the Exchange Act, the Plan, the Grant Notice, this Agreement, the RSUs and the Dividend Equivalents will be subject to any additional limitations set forth in any applicable exemptive rule under Section 16 of the Exchange Act (including any amendment to Rule 16b-3) that are requirements for the application of such exemptive rule. To the extent Applicable Laws permit, this Agreement will be deemed amended as necessary to conform to such applicable exemptive rule.

- 4.7 Entire Agreement.
- The Plan, the Grant Notice and this Agreement (including any exhibit hereto) constitute the entire agreement of the parties and supersede in their entirety all prior undertakings and agreements of the Company and Participant with respect to the subject matter hereof.
- 4.8 Agreement Severable.
- In the event that any provision of the Grant Notice or this Agreement is held illegal or invalid, the provision will be severable from, and the illegality or invalidity of the provision will not be construed to have any effect on, the remaining provisions of the Grant Notice or this Agreement.
- 4.9 Limitation on Participant's Rights.
- Participation in the Plan confers no rights or interests other than as herein provided. This Agreement creates only a contractual obligation on the part of the Company as to amounts payable and may not be construed as creating a trust. Neither the Plan nor any underlying program, in and of itself, has any assets. Participant will have only the rights of a general unsecured creditor of the Company with respect to amounts credited and benefits payable, if any, with respect to the RSUs and Dividend Equivalents, and rights no greater than the right to receive cash or the Shares as a general unsecured creditor with respect to the RSUs and Dividend Equivalents, as and when settled pursuant to the terms of this Agreement.
- 4.10 Not a Contract of Employment.
- Nothing in the Plan, the Grant Notice or this Agreement confers upon Participant any right to continue in the employ or service of the Company or any Subsidiary or interferes with or restricts in any way the rights of the Company and its Subsidiaries, which rights are hereby expressly reserved, to discharge or terminate the services of Participant at any time for any reason whatsoever, with or without Cause, except to the extent expressly provided otherwise in a written agreement between the Company or a Subsidiary and Participant.
- 4.11 Counterparts.
- The Grant Notice may be executed in one or more counterparts, including by way of any electronic signature, subject to Applicable Laws, each of which will be deemed an original and all of which together will constitute one instrument.

APPENDIX 5
NON-EMPLOYEE SUB-PLAN

TO THE AUTOLUS THERAPEUTICS PLC 2018 EQUITY INCENTIVE PLAN

This sub-plan (the “**Non-Employee Sub-Plan**”) to the Autolus Therapeutics plc 2018 Equity Incentive Plan (the “**Plan**”) governs the grant of Awards to Consultants (defined below) and Directors who are not Employees, and has been adopted in accordance with Section 10.5 of the Plan. The Non-Employee Sub-Plan incorporates all the provisions of the Plan except as modified in accordance with the provisions of this Non-Employee Sub-Plan and was adopted by the Board on [], 2018.

Awards granted pursuant to the Non-Employee Sub-Plan are not granted pursuant to an “**employees’ share scheme**” for the purposes of UK legislation.

For the purposes of the Non-Employee Sub-Plan, the provisions of the Plan shall operate subject to the following modifications:

1. **Eligibility**

1.1 A definition of “Consultant” shall be included as follows:

“**Consultant**” means any person, including any adviser, engaged by the Company or its parent or Subsidiary to render services to such entity if the consultant or adviser: (i) renders bona fide services to the Company; (ii) renders services not in connection with the offer or sale of securities in a capital-raising transaction and does not directly or indirectly promote or maintain a market for the Company’s securities; and (iii) is a natural person.

1.2 The definition of “**Service Provider**” set out in the Plan shall be read and construed as follows:

“**Service Provider**” means a Consultant or Director.

NON-EMPLOYEE SUB-PLAN

TO THE AUTOLUS THERAPEUTICS PLC 2018 EQUITY INCENTIVE PLAN

This sub-plan (the “**Non-Employee Sub-Plan**”) to the Autolus Therapeutics plc 2018 Equity Incentive Plan (the “**Plan**”) governs the grant of Awards to Consultants (defined below) and Directors who are not Employees, and has been adopted in accordance with Section 10.5 of the Plan. The Non-Employee Sub-Plan incorporates all the provisions of the Plan except as modified in accordance with the provisions of this Non-Employee Sub-Plan and was adopted by the Board on June 15, 2018.

Awards granted pursuant to the Non-Employee Sub-Plan are not granted pursuant to an “**employees’ share scheme**” for the purposes of UK legislation.

For the purposes of the Non-Employee Sub-Plan, the provisions of the Plan shall operate subject to the following modifications:

1. **Eligibility**

1.1 A definition of “Consultant” shall be included as follows:

“**Consultant**” means any person, including any adviser, engaged by the Company or its parent or Subsidiary to render services to such entity if the consultant or adviser: (i) renders bona fide services to the Company; (ii) renders services not in connection with the offer or sale of securities in a capital-raising transaction and does not directly or indirectly promote or maintain a market for the Company’s securities; and (iii) is a natural person.

1.2 The definition of “**Service Provider**” set out in the Plan shall be read and construed as follows:

“**Service Provider**” means a Consultant or Director.

Consent of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

We consent to the reference to our firm under the caption “Experts” and to the use of our report dated February 8, 2018, with respect to the financial statements of Autolus Limited in the Registration Statement (Form F-1 No. 333-224720) and related Prospectus of Autolus Therapeutics plc for the registration of 7,812,500 American Depositary Shares.

/s/ Ernst & Young LLP

Reading, United Kingdom

June 18, 2018

Consent of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

We consent to the reference to our firm under the caption “Experts” and to the use of our report dated February 8, 2018 (except Note 1.1, as to which the date is June 18, 2018), with respect to the balance sheet of Autolus Therapeutics plc (formerly Autolus Therapeutics Limited), in the Registration Statement (Form F-1 No. 333-224720) and related Prospectus of Autolus Therapeutics plc for the registration of 7,812,500 American Depositary Shares.

/s/ Ernst & Young LLP

Reading, United Kingdom

June 18, 2018

POWER OF ATTORNEY

KNOW ALL BY THESE PRESENTS, that the undersigned, Linda Bain, hereby constitutes and appoints Christian Itin and Matthias Alder, and each of them, her true and lawful agent, proxy and attorney-in-fact, with full power of substitution and resubstitution, for and in her name, place and stead, in any and all capacities, to (i) act on, sign and file with the Securities and Exchange Commission any and all amendments (including post-effective amendments) to this Registration Statement on Form F-1 (File No. 333-224720) together with all schedules and exhibits thereto and any subsequent registration statement filed pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, together with all schedules and exhibits thereto, (ii) act on, sign and file such certificates, instruments, agreements and other documents as may be necessary or appropriate in connection therewith, (iii) act on and file any supplement to any prospectus included in this Registration Statement or any such amendment or any subsequent registration statement filed pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, and (iv) take any and all actions which may be necessary or appropriate to be done, as fully for all intents and purposes as she might or could do in person, hereby approving, ratifying and confirming all that such agent, proxy and attorney-in-fact or any of his or her substitutes may lawfully do or cause to be done by virtue thereof.

/s/ Linda Bain

Linda Bain

June 18, 2018